



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Educ T 918. 55. 555

**HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY**



**TRANSFERRED FROM THE
GRADUATE SCHOOL
OF
BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION**

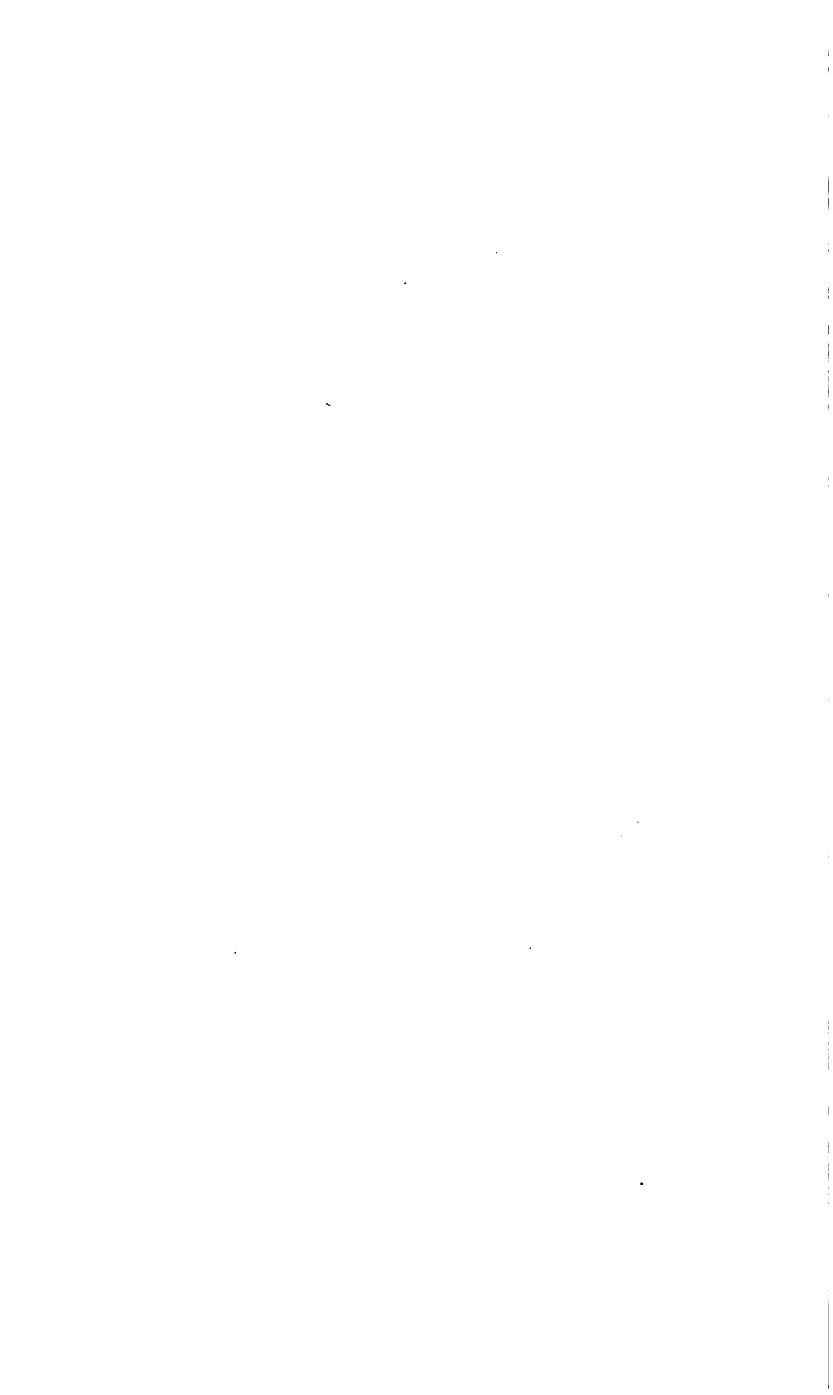


3 2044 097 062 814

W. H. Jones
D. H. S.

H. Bartlett
Dorchester
B. H.
S.

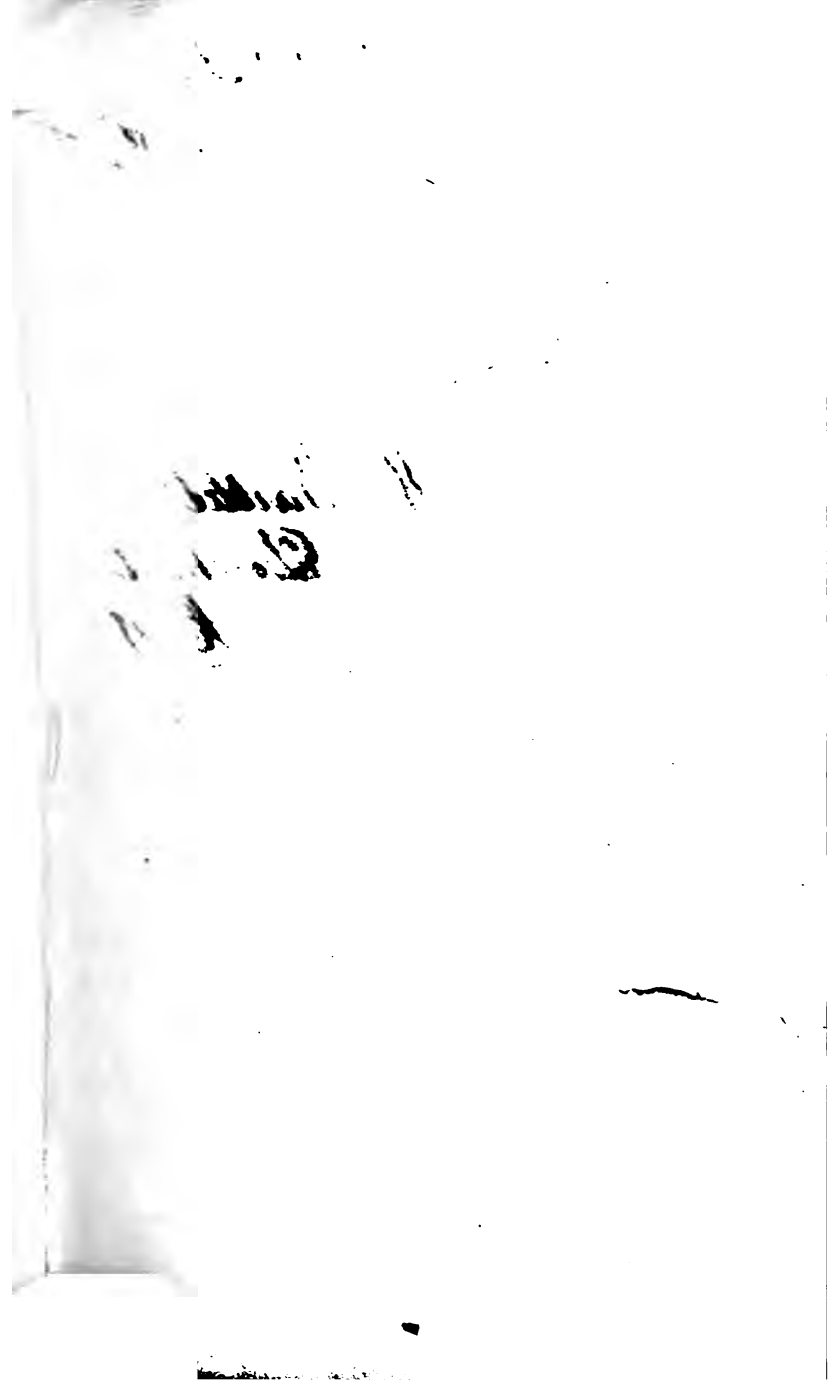
W. Bartlett



W. H. Jones
D. H. S.

H. Bartlett
Dorchester
B. H.
S.

W. Bartlett



A -

FIRST BOOK IN LATIN;

CONTAINING

GRAMMAR, EXERCISES, AND VOCABULARIES,

ON THE METHOD OF

CONSTANT IMITATION AND REPETITION.

BY

JOHN M'CLINTOCK, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES,

AND

GEORGE R. CROOKS, A.M.,

ADJUNCT PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN DICKINSON COLLEGE.

EIGHTH EDITION.

NEW YORK:

HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS.

1855.

Edg. T 918.55.555

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
RECEIVED THROUGH THE
GRADUATE SCHOOL OF
BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION

Apr 24, 1928

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846,
By HARPER & BROTHERS,
In the Clerk's Office of the Southern District of New York.

Stone & Webster
G

29-12
25

P R E F A C E.

THIS book is designed, as the title-page states, to contain within itself Grammar, Exercises, Reading-book, and Dictionary; in short, all that the pupil will need before commencing the regular reading of Cæsar or any other easy Latin author. It has been prepared, as far as possible, on the following principles:

1. The object of studying languages is twofold: (1), the acquisition of the languages themselves; and (2), the mental discipline gained in acquiring them.

2. No language can be thoroughly acquired without the outlay of much labour and time. All schemes which promise to dispense with such outlay must be pronounced visionary and chimerical.

3. But labour without fruit does not contribute to mental cultivation. Labour and pain are not necessary companions: learning should not be "wrung from poor striplings like blood from the nose, or the plucking of untimely fruit."*

4. The grammar of a language cannot be understood until the language itself is at least partially acquired.

5. The vernacular may be learned, so far as its use is concerned, without grammar: a foreign living language may be so learned, but never so thoroughly, nor even so rapidly, as with grammatical aids. In the study of a dead language grammar is indispensable.

6. "A grammar intended for beginners should be formed altogether differently from one intended for

* Milton.

the higher classes, both in the distribution of the matter and in the mode of presenting it. Those who think that the pupil should use the same grammar from the beginning of his course to the end, are quite in error.”*

7. In elementary books, or in teaching, no etymological form nor grammatical principle should be presented to the pupil without an immediate application thereof to *practice*, which should be kept up, both orally and in writing, from the very first lesson.

8. The all-important rule of practice, in the acquisition of language, is *imitation* and *repetition*. This is no new invention; all good teachers have known and used it; but yet it has been but slightly employed in elementary books heretofore.

9. Models for imitation should be simple at first, and gradually made more complicated; but they should always be selected from pure authors, say, in Latin, from Cicero and Cæsar.

10. The pupil's ear should be trained to correctness from the beginning, and the simplest rules of prosody learned and applied as soon as possible. For this purpose, the quantity of all syllables should be marked in elementary books, and attention to it should be strictly enforced by the teacher.

11. The foreign idiom, both as to the use and arrangement of words, should be made familiar to the pupil by constant practice. Nothing can be more hurtful than exercises in which foreign words are used in the idiom, and according to the arrangement of the vernacular.

How far we have been successful in carrying out these principles, the book itself must show.

We have aimed to combine the advantages of constant repetition and imitation of Latin sentences from the beginning, with a more thorough drilling in etymological forms than is common. In order to effect this combination, we have necessarily deviated from the ordinary grammatical course to some extent; but we trust that experienced teachers will find, from an examination of the table of contents alone, that our arrangement is not devoid of systematic and even logical order.

While we have not gone out of our way to bring in novelties, we have yet adopted every new method which we have deemed to be an improvement. None of the class-books of any repute in England or Germany have escaped our notice in the preparation of this work; and we have made free use of them all, without slavish adherence to any. Perhaps the most marked peculiarity of the etymological part of the book will be found to be the doctrine of the genders of nouns of the third declension, which we have reduced, for the first time, to a form at once philosophical, we hope, and practical.* Some steps toward the method here presented have been taken by MADVIG, WEISENBORN, and others in Germany; but none of these writers has brought out a clear exposition of the doctrine, adapted to the actual purposes of instruction. The arrangement, also, of the verbs,† according to the formation of the perfect-stem, founded mainly upon the classification of GROTEFEND (better set forth by ALLEN), will be found, we trust, to be an improvement upon any yet offered.

* The summary of rules, with all the exceptions, will be found to occupy two pages only, viz., p. 132, 133.

† Lessons lxii.-lxix., and p. 268-279.

The Syntax, in its details, generally follows ZUMPT but in the arrangement, especially of Part II., we have approached nearer to the plan of BILLROTH. The admirable syntax of BECKER, adopted by KÜHNER in his Greek and Latin Grammars, we deem too difficult for beginners.

The Exercises are selected, as far as possible, from Cæsar's Gallic War. Although we have laboured hard to keep out bad Latin, we do not hope that all our sentences will escape criticism. We have found, from actual experiment in our classes, that the exercises to be rendered from English into Latin are within the capacity of any student of ordinary industry who studies the book in order; and we do not know that this can be said of any book of the kind, of equal extent, in use among us.

A few words as to the use of the book may not be out of place. Our own method has been to employ the lessons, for a considerable time at least, entirely in oral instruction, the teacher pronouncing first the Latin sentences distinctly, and requiring the pupil to give the corresponding English without book; and then pronouncing the English sentences, and requiring the pupil to give the corresponding Latin. As the quantities are marked (in Part I.) in all syllables except those to which the general rules apply, we require the pupil to observe quantity in his pronunciation from the very beginning, so that he learns prosody by practice before the rules are given. For the purpose of review, the summary of Etymology (Part III.), which contains, in short compass, all that is necessary to be learned by heart, will be found very convenient. After the student has passed

through Parts I. and II., he will find little difficulty in committing accurately the Rules of Syntax (Part IV.), with most of which he will be already familiar. The Reading Lessons at the end will give him easy practice in the syntax and in word-building. For the convenience of those who may need it, we have condensed into a few pages, in Appendix I., all of Prosody that is essential for the understanding of hexameter verse.

The preparation of this book was originally suggested by our sense of the inadequacy of the ordinary modes of instruction, and especially by the advantage which we ourselves had derived from the use of OLLENDORFF'S method in the study of the German language. Finding that Rev. T. K. ARNOLD had prepared a series of books on the same principle, we used them in our own classes for some time, with a view to revising them for republication. They were found unsuited to our purpose in many respects, and we therefore formed the design of preparing an entirely new series, adapted to the use of American schools. The first of these is now presented to the public.

Dickinson College, April 7, 1846.

. In Part I. the quantity is marked on all syllables except those to which the general rules apply. At the beginning of Part II. additional rules of quantity are given, and the marks are subsequently omitted on many syllables, in order to afford the pupil exercise upon the rules. In the Syntax and Reading Lessons they are omitted almost entirely. Great pains have been taken to ensure accuracy in the marks of quantity, but we cannot hope to have avoided error entirely.

REFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

IN this edition, a number of errors in the marks of quantity, which had crept into the first, are corrected. We have also placed a series of Examination Questions at the end of the book, which will add, we hope, to its practical value.

Carlisle, November, 1846.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. Division of the Letters	Page 1
§ 2. Syllables, Quantity, Accent	1
§ 3. Pronunciation	3
§ 4. Division of Words	4

PART I.

PARTIAL EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

<i>Summary of Essential Points</i>	8
§ 5. <i>First Declension of Nouns.—First Conjugation of Verbs.</i> (I.—V.)	10
First Declension of Nouns, Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases	10
First Conjugation of Verbs, <i>Intransitive</i>	14
First Declension of Nouns, Accusative Case.—First Conjugation of Verbs, <i>Transitive</i>	17
First Declension of Nouns, Dative and Ablative Cases	19
§ 6. <i>Second Declension of Nouns.—Second Conjugation of Verbs.</i> (VI.—VIII.)	22
Second Declension, <i>Masculine</i>	22
Second Declension, <i>Neuter</i> .—Second Conjugation of Verbs	26
§ 7. <i>Adjectives of First Class, Three Endings.</i> (IX.—X.)	28
Forms of Adjectives in <i>us, a, um</i>	28
Some forms of <i>Esse, to be</i>	30
§ 8. <i>Third and Fourth Conjugations of Verbs.</i> (XI.)	33
§ 9. <i>Passive Verbs.</i> (XII.—XIII.)	36
§ 10. <i>Third Declension of Nouns, Partial Treatment.</i> (XIV.—XV.)	40
§ 11. <i>Adjectives of Second Class, Two Endings.</i> (XVI.)	44
§ 12. <i>Adjectives of Third Class, One Ending.</i> (XVII.)	46
§ 13. <i>Fourth Declension of Nouns.</i> (XVIII.)	48
§ 14. <i>Fifth Declension of Nouns.</i> (XIX.)	51
§ 15. <i>Pronouns.</i> (XX.—XXXI.)	53
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 1st Person. Verb, 1st Person	53
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 2d Person. Verb, 2d Person	57
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 3d Person	61
Pronouns, <i>Demonstrative</i>	63
Pronoun, <i>Relative</i>	68
Pronoun, <i>Interrogative</i>	70

	Page
Pronouns, <i>Indefinite</i>	72
Pronouns, <i>Correlative</i>	74
§ 16. <i>Numerals</i> . (XXXII.—XXXIII.)	77
§ 17. <i>Verbs of Third Conjugation in io</i> . (XXXIV.)	81
§ 18. <i>Verbs, Deponent</i> . (XXXV.)	83
§ 19. <i>Adverbs</i> . (XXXVI.)	85
§ 20. <i>Prepositions</i> . (XXXVII.—XXXVIII.)	88
§ 21. <i>Analysis of Tense-formations</i> . (XXXIX.—XLI.)	92

PART II

FULLER EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

§ 1. <i>Additional Rules of Quantity</i>	99
§ 2. <i>Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, Partial Treatment</i> . (XLIII.—XLVI.)	102
Perfect Tenses of <i>Esse</i>	102
Perfect Tenses of 1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations	104
Perfect Tenses of 3d Conjugation	106
§ 3. <i>Third Declension of Nouns, Fuller Treatment</i> . (XLVII. —LVII.)	110
Irregular Nouns	129
Summary of Rules of Gender, Third Declension	132
§ 4. <i>Comparison of Adjectives</i> . (LVIII.—LX.)	134
§ 5. <i>Comparison of Adverbs</i>	140
§ 6. <i>Supine</i> . (LXI.)	141
§ 7. <i>Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, Active Voice. Fuller Treatment</i> . (LXII.—LXIX.)	144
Forms of Perfect Stem, 1st Conjugation	144
Forms of Perfect Stem, 2d Conjugation	146
Forms of Perfect Stem, 3d Conjugation	149
Forms of Perfect Stem, 4th Conjugation	159
§ 8. <i>Tenses for Completed Action, Passive Voice</i> . (LXX.)	162
§ 9. <i>Participles</i> . (LXXI.—LXXV.)	165
Present Participle Active	165
Future Participle Active	168
Perfect Participle Passive	170
Ablative Absolute	172
§ 10. <i>Infinitive</i> . (LXXVI.—LXXIX.)	176
Forms of Infinitive	176
Accusative with Infinitive	178
§ 11. <i>Gerund</i> . (LXXX.)	184
§ 12. <i>Gerundive</i> . (LXXXI.—LXXXII.)	187
Gerundive used for Gerund	187
Gerundive used to express Duty or Necessity	189
§ 13. <i>Imperative Mood</i> . (LXXXIII.)	192
§ 14. <i>Sentences</i>	194
§ 15. <i>Conjunctions</i> . (LXXXIV.—LXXXV.)	195

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xi

	Page
§ 16. <i>Subjunctive Mood.</i> (LXXXVI.—XCIII.)	199
Subjunctive Present	199
Subjunctive Perfect	202
Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect. Conditional Sentences	205
Subjunctive with <i>ut, ne</i> (<i>Purpose</i>)	209
Subjunctive with <i>ut</i> (<i>Consequence</i>). Succession of Tenses	212
Subjunctive with <i>quia, quo, quominus</i> . Periphrastic Forms	214
Subjunctive with <i>quum</i>	217
Subjunctive in Relative Sentences	220
§ 17. <i>Oratio Obliqua.</i> (XCIV.)	223
§ 18. <i>Impersonal Verbs.</i> (XCV.—XCVI.)	226
§ 19. <i>Irregular Verbs.</i> (XCVII.—CI.)	230
<i>Posse</i>	230
<i>Velle, Nolle, Malle</i>	232
<i>Ferre</i>	234
<i>Fieri, Edere</i>	236
<i>Ire, Quire, Nequire</i>	238
§ 20. <i>Defective Verbs.</i> (CII.)	241

PART III.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

§ 1. <i>Letters, Quantity, &c.</i>	247
§ 2. <i>Noun</i>	248
§ 3. <i>Adjective</i>	251
§ 4. <i>Numerals</i>	254
§ 5. <i>Pronoun</i>	255
§ 6. <i>Verb</i>	258
1. Classes of Verbs	258
2. Parts of the Verb	258
3. Conjugation	259
4. The Auxiliary <i>Esse, to be</i>	260
5. Paradigms of Regular Verbs	261
6. Verbs in <i>io</i> of the 3d Conjugation	266
7. Deponent Verbs	266
8. Periphrastic Conjugation	266
9. Formation of Perfect Stem	267
10. Lists of Verbs, with various Perfects and Supines	268
First Conjugation	268
Second Conjugation	269
Third Conjugation	271
Fourth Conjugation	276
Deponent Verbs	277
Inchoative Verbs	279
11. Irregular Verbs, Paradigms	279
12. Defective Verbs	282

13. Impersonal Verbs	Page 283
§ 7. <i>Adverb</i>	285
§ 8. <i>Preposition</i>	288
§ 9. <i>Conjunction</i>	289
§ 10. <i>Interjection</i>	290

PART IV.

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.

PART I. SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I. Subject and Predicate	293
II. Use of Cases	295
<i>Nominative</i>	295
<i>Genitive</i>	295
<i>Dative</i>	298
<i>Accusative</i>	300
<i>Ablative</i>	302
III. Use of the Indefinite Verb	306
<i>Infinitive</i>	306
<i>Participle</i>	307
<i>Gerund</i>	308
<i>Gerundive</i>	308
<i>Supine</i>	309

PART II. COMPOUND SENTENCES.

I. Co-ordinate Sentences	310
II. Subordinate Sentences	310
A. <i>Participial Sentences</i>	311
B. <i>Accusative with Infinitive</i>	312
C. <i>Conjunctive Sentences</i>	313
D. <i>Relative Sentences</i>	316
E. <i>Interrogative Sentences</i>	318
<i>Oratio Obliqua</i>	319

APPENDIX I. Prosody	323
APPENDIX II. Greek Nouns	326
APPENDIX III. The Calendar	327
APPENDIX IV. Abbreviations	329
WORD-BUILDING	333
READING LESSONS	340
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	355
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	363

INTRODUCTION.*

§ 1. DIVISION OF THE LETTERS.

(1.) THE letters are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*; *k* is used in but few words, and *y* and *z* only in words borrowed from the Greek.

(2.) Six are *vowels*,¹ viz., *a, e, i, o, u, y*: the remaining nineteen are *consonants*.²

¹ Sounds formed by an *uninterrupted* emission of the air from the throat. Called *vowels* (*vocales* = sounding letters), because capable of being sounded by themselves.

² Sounds formed by *interrupting* the emission of air from the throat. Called *consonants* (*con-sonare* = to sound together), because incapable of being sounded by themselves.

(3.) The consonants are divided into

(a) Liquids,³ *l, m, n, r*;

(b) Spirants,³ *h, s, j*;

(c) Mutes,³ *b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t, v*;

³ The *Liquids* are formed by a *partial* interruption of the voice; the *Spirants* chiefly by the breath; and the *Mutes* by a more complete interruption of the passage of the air from the throat. *H* is regarded, indeed, simply as an aspiration, though in many words it fills the place of a consonant.

(d) Double consonants,⁴ *x, z*.

⁴ *X* is compounded of *cs*, *gs*, and *z* (occurring only in Greek words) of *ds*.

(4.) The union of two vowels into one syllable forms a *diphthong*. These are, in Latin, *au, eu, ae, oe* (generally written *æ, œ*), and, in a few words, *ei, oi, ui*.

§ 2. SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT.

(5.) Every word contains as many syllables as vowels; e. g., *miles*, a soldier, is not pronounced in one syllable, as the English word *miles*, but in two, *mī-les*.

(6.) The quantity of syllables (that is, their *length*

* This Introduction may be omitted by *very young pupils* in their first study of the work; but the references to it in the subsequent lessons should be carefully attended to.

or *shortness*) depends upon that of the vowels which they contain. The dash (—) placed over a vowel denotes that it is *long*; the semicircle (˘), that it is *short*. A vowel that may be used either as long or short is marked (ˉ), and is said to be *common*.

(7.) The following rules for the quantity of syllables must be carefully observed:

(a) All diphthongs are *long*; e. g., mens-æ, *tables*; a ū-rum, *gold*.

(b) A vowel followed by another vowel is *short*; e. g., Dēus, *God*.

This rule applies, even though *h* intervene between the two vowels, as *h* is not regarded as a consonant (3, b, n. 3); e. g., trāho, vēho.

(c) A vowel followed by two consonants, or a double one (3, d), is *long by position*; e. g., in amānt, the *a* before *nt* is long by position.

 [Every syllable to which none of these three rules is applicable will be marked with its proper quantity in the following pages, until other rules are given.]

(8.) A word of but one syllable is called a *Monosyllable*; of two, a *Dissyllable*; of more than two, a *Polysyllable*. Thus, *lex* is a monosyllable; *lēgīs*, a dissyllable; *incōlās*, a polysyllable.

(9.) The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the second from the last, the *antepenult*. Thus, in the word *incōlās*, the syllable *lās* is the ultimate, *cō*, the penult, and in the antepenult.

(10.) The *accent* of a syllable is a stress or elevation of the voice in pronouncing it. Observe the following rules:

(a) Every *dissyllable* is accented on the *penult*; e. g., bōnus, pōno.

(b) Every *polysyllable* is accented,

1. On the *penult*, when the penult is *long*: e. g.,
āmarē

2. On the *antepenult*, when the penult is *short* :
e.g., *ánīmŭs*.

§ 3. PRONUNCIATION.

(11.) [Almost every modern nation has its own way of pronouncing Latin. But as the vowels have nearly the same sounds in all the different countries of *Continental Europe*, there is something approaching to uniformity in their pronunciation; the English, however, give peculiar sounds to some of the vowels, and they pronounce Latin, therefore, unlike all the rest of the world. In this country two methods prevail, which, for convenience' sake, may be called the *Continental* and the *English*. We give them both, stating, at the same time, our decided preference for the first, both on the score of consistency and convenience. In both methods the *consonants* are pronounced nearly as in English.]

(a) *The Continental Method.*

Table of Vowel Sounds.

Short <i>ā</i> , as in hat.	Long <i>ī</i> , as in machine
Long <i>ā</i> , as in father.	Short <i>ō</i> , as in not.
Short <i>ē</i> , as in net.	Long <i>ō</i> , as in no.
Long <i>ē</i> , as in there.	Short <i>ŭ</i> , as in tub.
Short <i>ī</i> , as in sit.	Long <i>ū</i> , as in full.

Diphthongs.

æ or *œ*, as *e* in there.
au, as *ou* in our.
eu, as *eu* in feud.
ei (rarely occurring), as *i* in nice.

(b) *The English Method.*

The vowels have the English *long* or *short* sounds
 Exc. A final, in words of more than one syllable.
 has a *broad* sound; as, *fama* (fame-ah).

Monosyllables.

In monosyllables, if the vowel be the *last* letter, it has the *long* sound; as *mē*, *dō*; if any *other letter*, the *short* sound: as *et*, *dh*.

Dissyllables and Polysyllables.

(1.) The vowel of an *accented penult* has the *long* sound,

(a) Before another vowel ; as, Déus.

(b) Before a single consonant ; as, Jóvis.

It has the *short* sound,

(a) Before two consonants, or a double consonant ;
as, múnus, réxit.

(2.) The vowel of an *accented antepenult* has the *short* sound ; as, régibus.

(3.) An *accented* vowel before a mute and liquid has usually the *long* sound ; as, sácræ.

§ 4. DIVISION OF WORDS.

(12.) I. Words are divided, according to their *signification*, into *eight* classes, called Parts of Speech, viz., Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

(13.) The *Noun* is the name of an object (person, or thing) ; e. g., *John, man, house*.

Nouns are divided into,

(a) Proper, denoting *individual* objects ; e. g., *John, Cæsar, Rome*.

(b) Common, denoting one or more of a *class* of objects ; e. g., *man, house, horses*.

(c) Abstract, denoting a *quality* ; e. g., *goodness, haste, virtue*.

(14.) The *Adjective* expresses a quality or property belonging to an object ; e. g., *good, small* ; as, a *good* boy, a *small* house.

(15.) The *Pronoun* is a substitute for the noun ; e. g., *he, she, it*, are substitutes for *man, woman, book*.

(16.) The *Verb* declares something of a person or thing.

E. g., the boy *dances* ; the boy *sleeps* ; the boy *is* good. (In this last case the quality "good" is affirmed of "boy," by means of the verb *is*.)

 *Participles, Gerunds, and Supines* are words partaking in the meaning of the verb, and in the form of the noun.

(17.) The *Adverb* qualifies the meaning of a verb, adjective, or other adverb ; *e. g.*, the boy learns *rapidly* ; the boy is *remarkably* faithful ; the boy learns *very* rapidly.

(18.) *Prepositions* express the relations of objects simply ; *e. g.*, *from* me ; *in* the house.

(19.) *Conjunctions* connect words and sentences ; *e. g.*, Thomas *and* John went to town ; Thomas went, *but* John remained.

(20.) *Interjections* are merely signs of emotion ; *e. g.*, *alas* !

(21.) II. Words are divided; according to their form, into,

(1) Four *inflected*, viz., Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb.

(2) Four *uninflected*, viz., Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

Rem. Inflection is the variation of a word to express different relations ; *e. g.*, boy, boys, the boy's hat ; I love, I *am* loved, &c. The inflection of Nouns is called *Declension* ; of Verbs, *Conjugation*. The

• Latin language makes much more use of inflection than the English

(22.) III. Words are divided, according to their formation, into,

(1) *Derivative*, *i. e.*, derived from other words.

(2) *Primitive*, *i. e.*, not derived from other words.

E. g., *manly*, *manhood*, are derivatives from the primitive *man*.

(3) *Compound*, *i. e.*, made up by the union of two or more words.

(4.) *Simple*, *i. e.*, not so made up.

E. g., *man-kind* is a compound, made up of the two simple words *man* and *kind*.



P A R T I.

PARTIAL EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS,

INCLUDING

TENSES OF VERBS FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION.

SUMMARY.

[THE rules and statements on this page and the following are to be thoroughly learned, as they must be applied constantly.]

(23.) OF THE LETTERS.

- (1) Six are *vowels*, *a, e, i, o, u, y*;
- (2) Four *liquids*, *l, m, n, r*;
- (3) Three *c-sounds*, *c, g, q*;
- (4) Two *p-sounds*, *b, p*;
- (5) Two *t-sounds*, *d, t*;
- (6) Two double consonants, *x, z*.
- (7) The diphthongs are *au, eu, ae, oe* (and rarely *ei, oi, ui*).

(24.) GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- (1) A vowel before another is *short*; *e. g.*, *vīa*.
- (2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; *e. g.*, *amānt*.

[As a mute followed by a liquid causes some exceptions to this rule, we shall mark the quantity, in that case, *doubtful*; thus, *āgri*.]

- (3) All diphthongs are *long*; *e. g.*, *mensē, aūrūm*.

[In the following pages of Part I., the quantity of all syllables is marked, except those which are covered by the above rules.]

(25.) GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

[In English, gender is determined by sex alone; *e. g.*, *man* is masculine, *woman* feminine. But in Latin, gender is determined partly by the meaning of nouns, and partly by their *endings*. The general rules here given from the *meanings* apply to nouns of all the declensions.]

I. MASCULINES : Names of *male beings* ; of most *rivers, winds, mountains, months, and nations*.

II. FEMININES : Names of *female beings, cities, countries, trees, plants, and islands*.

III. NEUTERS : All *indeclinable words*.

IV. COMMON : Such as have but one form for masculine and feminine ; *e. g., ex ù l, an exile* (male or female).

[These four rules are contained in the following verses.]

(25. a.) *Males, rivers, winds, and mountains* most we find
 With *months and nations* MASCULINE declined ;
 But *females, cities, countries, trees* we name,
 As FEMININE ; most *islands, too, the same*.
 COMMON are such as *both the genders take*,
 And NEUTER all words undeclined we make.

[There are many exceptions from these rules, which must be learned by observation.]

EXPLANATION OF MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

The mark *—* indicates a *short* vowel.

“ “ *—* indicates a *long* vowel.

“ “ *=* indicates that two words or phrases are *equivalent* to each other.

“ “ *+* between two words shows that they are *compounded together*.

e. g. means, *for example* (*exempli gratia*).

Passages in brackets [] are not meant to be committed to memory.

In the Exercises, words in parentheses () are not meant to be translated.

The References are made to *paragraphs*, not to *pages*.
 In a reference, R. means *Remark* ; N. means *foot-note*.

§ 5.

FIRST DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—FIRST CON- JUGATION OF VERBS. (I.—V.)

LESSON I.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases.

(26.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>Shade or shadow,</i>	Umbră.
(b) <i>Of the shade,</i>	Umbræ.
(c) <i>The wood,</i>	Sylvă.
(d) <i>Of the wood,</i>	Sylvæ.

(27.) The Latin has *no article*. Umbră may be a shade, or *the shade*, according to its connection with other words.

(28.) The words umbră and sylvă are names of things belonging to certain *classes*, and are, therefore, *common nouns* (13, b).

(29.) In English, certain words (of, with, by, &c.) are generally placed before nouns, to express their relations to other words; *e. g.*, *of the wood*, &c.; but in Latin these relations are commonly indicated by different *endings* of the noun (21, (2), R.); *e. g.*, sylv-ă, the wood; sylv-æ, *of the wood*.

(30.) That part of the noun to which the *ending* is added is called the *stem*; *e. g.*, sylv- is the stem of sylv-ă; terr- is the stem of terr-ă, *the earth*.

(31.) There are in Latin *six endings*, which, added to the stem, form *six cases*, the *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative*.

(32.) And as we may speak of objects as *one or more*, there are two numbers, the *singular and plural*.

distinguished by their endings; *e. g.*, *umbrā*, *the shadow*; *umbræ*, *the shadows*.

(33.) In this lesson we shall use but three cases, the nominative, vocative, and genitive.

(a) The *nominative* answers to the question *who?* or *what?* and gives the simple name of the thing spoken of. In the example (26, a), *umbrā*, *shade*, is in the nominative.

(b) The *same* form of the noun, when spoken to, is called the vocative; *e. g.*, *umbrā*, *shade*; *O shade!*

(c) The *genitive* expresses, in general, those relations which are expressed in English by the possessive case, or by the preposition *of*, and answers to the question *whose?* of *whom?* of *what?* *e. g.*, *umbrā*, *the shade* (of *what?*), *sylvæ* (of *the wood*). Here *sylvæ* is in the genitive.

(34.) There are *five* declensions of nouns, distinguished from each other by the endings of the *genitive singular*. In this lesson we shall use only nouns of the

FIRST DECLENSION.

Case-Endings and Paradigm.—Nominative and Genitive.

(35.) (a)

ENDINGS.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. and Voc.	ā	æ
Gen.	æ	ārūm.

(b) By adding these endings to the stem *sylv-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. and Voc.	<i>sylv-ā</i> , <i>the wood</i> ; <i>O wood!</i>	<i>sylv-æ</i> , <i>the woods</i> ; <i>O woods!</i>
Gen.	<i>sylv-æ</i> , <i>of the wood</i> .	<i>sylv-ārūm</i> , <i>of the woods</i> .

(36.) (a) Thus, nouns of the first declension have the nom. and voc. ending *ā* (*short*), and the gen. ending *æ* (*long*, 24, 3).

(b) The penult *a* of the gen. pl. is long. (c) They are of the feminine gender, except the names of *men* or *male* beings, or *rivers*: thus, *sylv-ă* is fem.; but *naut-ă*, a *sailor*, *poet-ă*, a *poet*, and the like, are masc.

[A few *Greek* nouns of this declension end in *e* fem., and *as, es*, masc. See Appendix.]

(37.)

EXERCISE.

[In the Vocabularies, the *nom. case* is always given, with the *genitive* ending subjoined.]

I. Vocabulary.

Queen, *rēgină*, æ.

Crown, *cōrōnă*, æ.

Wing, *ălă*, æ.

Dove, *cōlumbă*, æ.

Feather, *plumă*, æ.

Daughter, *filiă*, æ.

A Celt, *Celtă*, æ.

Farmer, *ăgricōlă*, æ. (m.)

Rose, *rōsă*, æ.

Maid-servant, *ancillă*, æ.

Galba, *Galbă*, æ. (m.)

Flight, *fugă*, æ.

Province, *prōvinciă*, æ.

Memory, recollection, *mēmōriă*, æ.

Gaul, *Galliă*, æ.

Eagle, *ăquilă*, æ.

A Belgian, *Belgă*, æ.

Injury, *injuriă*, æ.

Language, *linguă*, æ.

II. Translate into Latin.

Of a crown.—Of a queen.—O Galba!—Of crowns.—Of a feather.—Of eagles.—Of the Celt.—Wings.—Roses.—Of doves.—Of injuries.—Of a daughter.—O daughter!—Of the province.—Languages.—Provinces.—Belgians.—Of the provinces.—Of the maid-servant.—O maid-servant!—The farmers.—O farmer!—Of memory.—O Belgian!—Of Gaul.—The eagles.

III. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

[A few questions are subjoined in the foot-notes, merely as specimens to the first lessons.]

LESSON II.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases.

(38.) Examples.

(a) The queen's crown. | Cōrōnă rēginæ.

* What is the quantity of *u* in *umbră*? (24, 2.) Of *æ* in *sylv-æ*? (24, 3.) Of *u* in *cōlumbă*? (24, 2.) Of the penult (9) in *filiă*? (24, 1.) Of *i* in *linguă*? Of *i* in *ancillă*? (24, 2.)

(a) *Rule of Position.*—The genitive (when *unemphatic*) stands *after* the noun on which it depends; e. g., *rēginæ* in (a) stands *after* *cōrōnā*.

(b) The queen's crown (i. e., *Rēginæ cōrōnā*.
not the king's).

(b) *Rule of Position.*—The genitive (when *emphatic*) stands *before* the noun on which it depends; e. g., in (b) *rēginæ* stands *before* *cōrōnā*.

[Words in the exercises considered *emphatic* are in *italics*.]

(39.)

EXERCISE.

I. Translate into English.

Ālā cōlumbæ.	Rōsā ancillæ.	Fūgā Belgārūm.
Plūmā āquīlæ.	Galbæ fūgā.	Plūmæ āquīlārūm.
Ō rēginā (voc.).	Prōvinciā Galliæ.	Injuriārūm mēmōriā
Filiā āgricolæ.	Mēmōriā fūgæ.	Linguā Celtārūm.
Rēginæ filiā.	Ō filiā!	Filiæ rēginārūm.
Cōlumbæ plūmā.	Āquīlārūm fūgā.	Linguā Belgārūm.

II. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

III. Translate into Latin.

The queen's dove.	The wings of eagles.
The farmer's eagle.	O eagle.
The flight of doves.	Galba's daughter.
The girl's rose.	The shades of the woods.
The queen's rose.	The memory of the queen.
The flight of the Celts.	The girl's dove.
The wings of the doves.	The language of the province.
The recollection of an injury.	O Belgians!
O Celts!	The flight of the queen.

* 1. What is the quantity of the ultimate (9) of ancillæ? Why? (24, 3.) Of its penult? (9.) Why? (24, 2.) Of the penult of Galliæ? Why? (24, 1.)

2. What is the quantity of *a* in injuriarum? (36, b.) in memoria? (36, a.)

3. What is the stem of columba, ala, rosa? &c. (30.)

4. What is the gender of rosa, ala, fuga? &c. (36, c.) What is the gender of Galba, agricola? (25, a.)

5. What is the case of rosa, provinciæ, injuriarum, memoria? What their number?

6. How many cases have Latin nouns? (31.) What are they? (31.)

LESSON III.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative and Genitive Cases.—First Conjugation of Verbs.—Intransitives

(40.) *Examples.*

<i>To fly,</i>	völärë.
<i>To dance,</i>	saltärë.
(a) <i>The eagle flies,</i>	äquilä vólät.
(b) <i>The girl dances,</i>	püellä saltät.

(41.) SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

(a.) Every sentence (*e. g., the eagle flies*) consists of two parts:

1. The *subject*, *i. e.*, that of which something is declared (a noun, or some word used instead of a noun); *e. g., eagle*.

2. The *predicate*, *i. e.*, that which is declared of the subject (generally a verb); *e. g., flies*.

Rem. The predicate is frequently an adjective or participle connected with the subject by the verb *is*; *e. g., the rose is sweet*.

(b.) The verb in the predicate agrees with the subject in number and person; *e. g., the eagle flies*: here *flies* is in the *third person singular*, to agree with *eagle*.

(42.) ACTIVE VERBS are those which express activity; *e. g., the eagle flies, the boy dances*. Active verbs are either

(a) *Transitive*, *i. e.*, such as require an *object* to complete their meaning; *e. g., the boy killed (whom? or what?) the squirrel*. Here *killed* is a transitive verb.

(b) *Intransitive*, *i. e.*, such as *do not* require an object; *e. g., the birds fly; the boy dances*.

[All the verbs used in this lesson are intransitives.]

(43.) (a) The *infinitive* form of a verb expresses its action indefinitely, without reference to person or time; *e. g., to dance, to plough*.

(b) The *indicative* mood of a verb expresses its action *definitely*, as a fact or question ; e. g., he *ploughs*. *Does he dance?*

[The imperative and subjunctive moods are treated of hereafter.]

(44.) TENSES.

(a) The *present* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *present* time ; e. g., *I am ploughing, I plough*.

(b) The *imperfect* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *past* time ; e. g., *I was ploughing, I ploughed*.

(c) The *future* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *future* time ; e. g., *I shall be ploughing, I shall plough*.

[Rem. As these three forms all express *imperfect* or *incomplete* action, they should be called *Present Imperfect, Past Imperfect, Future Imperfect*. But as the present names are fixed by almost universal usage, we retain them ; advising the student to fix distinctly in his mind the principle that these forms properly express action as *continuing* or *incomplete*. The tense-forms for *completed* action will be given hereafter.]

(45.) CONJUGATIONS.

(a) In Latin, the different moods, tenses, numbers, and persons of verbs are expressed by various endings ; and the affixing of these to the proper *stem* of the verb is called conjugation. (21, Rem.)

(b) There are *four conjugations* of verbs, distinguished by their *infinitive-endings*.

(c) The infinitive-ending of the *first conjugation* is *ārē* (a long) ; e. g., *vōl-ārē, to fly ; ār-ārē, to plough*.

(d) To find the *stem* of any verb, strike off the *infinitive-ending* ; e. g., *vōl-ārē*, stem *vōl-* ; *ār-ārē*, stem *ār-*. To form any mood, tense, &c., of a verb, affix the proper ending to the stem thus found.

(46.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, <i>ārē</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Plural.	<i>āt.</i> <i>ant.</i>	<i>ābāt.</i> <i>ābant.</i>	<i>ābīt.</i> <i>ābunt.</i>

(47.) By affixing these endings to the stem *vōl-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, <i>vōl-ārē</i> , to fly.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	<i>vōl-āt, he, she, it flies.</i>	<i>vōl-ābāt, he, she, it was flying.</i>	<i>vōl-ābīt, he, she, it will fly.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>vōl-ant, they fly.</i>	<i>vōl-ābant, they were flying.</i>	<i>vōl-ābunt, they will fly.</i>

Rem. In Latin we need not use the personal pronouns *he, she, it, or they*, with the verb, as in English, because the person-endings *t* and *nt* indicate the person sufficiently.*

(48.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Girl, *puellā*, æ.

Forces, *cōpiæ*, † *ārum* (pl.).

Sailor, *nautā*, æ (m.).

A Belgian, *Belgā*, æ.

To hasten, *festin-ārē*.

To watch, *vigil-ārē*.

Galba, *Galbā*, æ.

To fly, *vōl-ārē*.

To dance, *salt-ārē*.

To cry out, *exclām-ārē*.

To sup, *cæn-ārē*.

To walk, *ambul-ārē*.

II. Example.

The eagle flies. | *Āquilā vōlāt.*

Rule of Position.—The subject nominative generally precedes the verb; *e. g.*, in the above example, *āquilā* precedes *vōlāt*.

[In the above example, which word is the subject? Why? (41, a, 1.) Which the predicate? Why? (41, a, 2.) How does *vōlāt* agree with *āquilā*? Why? (41, b.)]

III. Translate into English.

Cōlumbæ vōlant.—*Ancillā saltāt.*—*Puellæ exclāmant.*—*Rēgīnā cænābāt.*—*Puellā ambulābāt.*—*Cōpiæ festinant.*—*Āquilā vōlābant.*—*Galbā festinābīt.*—*Rēgīnā saltāt.*—*Nautæ vigilābant.*—*Filiā rēgīnæ saltābīt.*—*Belgæ festinant.*—*Filiā Gal-*

* But when a new subject is introduced, or emphasis is required, the personal pronoun must be used in Latin.

† *Cōpiā*, in the singular, means *abundance*; in the plural, *forces*.

hæ exclāmāt.—Puellæ ambulābant.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm festinā bunt.—Saltābant.—Ambulābant.—Cōnābunt.—Nautæ ambulābīt.—Vigilābunt.—Nautæ saltant.—Agricōlā cōnābīt.

IV. *Answer the questions in the foot-note.**

V. *Translate into Latin.*

The dove flies.—The girl walks.—The maid-servant hastens.
 --The sailors dance.—The queen's maid-servant cries out.—The farmer was supping.—The queen will sup.—The sailor was watching.—The farmer's daughter will dance.—The girl's dove will fly.—The queen's maid-servant will walk.—She was hastening.—They were watching.—He (or she) was supping.—The eagles were flying.—Galba was hastening.—The forces of the Belgians will hasten.—Eagles will fly.—The sailors were crying out.—The queen was walking.

LESSON IV.

First Declension of Nouns, Accusative Case.—First Conjugation of Verbs, Transitives.

(49.)	To love,	ām-ārō.
	Queen,	rōgīnā.
	Daughter,	filiā.

(a) The queen loves her daughter.	Rōgīnā filiām āmāt.
	The queen her-daughter loves.

Rem. The possessives, *his, her, &c.*, are not expressed in Latin, except for the sake of perspicuity or emphasis.

(50.) (a) It has been stated (41) that every sentence consists of two parts, *subject* and *predicate*; so the English sentence (49, a) contains the subject, *queen*, and the predicate, *loves*. But this predicate is *limited* by

* What is the quantity of the ultimate of *Cōlumbæ*? Why? (24, 3.) Of the penult? Why? (24, 2.) Of the ultimate *a* of *puella*? (36, a.) Of the penult? (24, 2.) Why? Of the antepenult? Why? (24, 1.) What kind of action does *vōlant* express? (44, a.) In what time? What kind does *ambulābāt*? (44, b.) In what time? In what tenses may incomplete action be expressed? (Pres., past, and fut.) What is the stem of *vōlant*? Of *exclāmant*? Of *cōnābant*? [The stem may be found by striking off any tense-ending.] Why can the personal pronoun be omitted in Latin? (47 Rem.) When must it be used? (47, Rem., N.)

the word *daughter*, which is called the *direct object* of the verb. So, in the Latin sentence (49, *a*), we have,

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Direct object.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Rēginā.	filīām.	āmāt.

(*b*) A verb thus taking an object is called a *Transitive* verb (42, *a*), and its direct object is said to be in the *Objective* case in English (*e. g.*, daughter), and in the *Accusative* case in Latin (*e. g.*, filīām). We have thus the following:

(51.) *Rules of Syntax.*

(*a*) The Accusative is the case of the *direct object*.

(*b*) Transitive verbs govern the *accusative*.

(52.) The accusative-endings of the first declension are,

Sing. ā m; *e. g.*, filī-am, rēgin-am, *daughter, queen*.

Plur. ā s; *e. g.*, filī-ās, rēgin-as, *daughters, queens*.

(53.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Moon, lūnā, *æ*.

To delight, dēlectārē.

Medicine, mēdicinā, *æ*.

To prepare, pārārē.

Shade or } umbrā, *æ*.

Shadow, }

To obscure, obscurārē.

To arm, armārē.

Through (prep.), pār (with acc.).

To take possession of; } occupārē
or, to seize, }

Island, insulā, *æ*.

To call, vōcārē.

To (prep.), ad. (with accus.).

Poet, poetā, *æ*.

To praise, laudārē.

To love, amārē.

Earth, terrā, *æ*.

II. Example.

The poet praises the queen. | Poetā rēginām laudāt.

Rule of Position.—The object accusative stands before the transitive verb; *e. g.*, in the above example, the object rēginām stands before the transitive verb laudāt.

III. Translate into English.

Lūnā nautās dēlectāt.—Agrīcolā filīās amāt.—Ancillæ mēdicinām pārant.—Umbra terræ (33, *c*) lūnām obscurāt.—Nautæ rēginām laudant.—Galbā cōpiās armābāt.—Umbra sylvārūm agrīcolās dēlectāt.—Galbā sylvās occupāt.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm sylvās occupābant.—Cōlumbæ pār sylvās vōlābant.—Rēginā ancillās vōcāt.—Ancillæ rēginām amant.—Agrīcolā filīām vōcā-

bāt.—Rēginā poētām laudābīt.—Rōsæ ancillās dēlectant.—Cōpiās armābunt (47, Rem.).—Sylvās occūpābunt (47 Rem.).

IV. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

V. Translate into Latin.

The moon delights the farmer.—The farmer's daughter (38, b) prepares the medicine.—The eagle's feathers delight the queen.—The Belgians arm (their) forces.—The shade of the wood delights the poet.—Galba will take possession of the wood.—(They) walk through the woods.—(They) take possession of the island.—The farmer loves (his) daughter.—The farmer's daughter praises the poet.—The queen will call the maid-servants.—The queen loves (her) maid-servants.—The shadow of the earth will obscure the moon.—The poet will praise the sailors.

LESSON V.

First Declension.—Dative and Ablative Cases.

(54.) THE *dative* case of nouns expresses the object *to* or *for* which any thing is done; *e. g.*, the man gives (*to*) the boy a book. Here *boy* is in the dative case.

Rem. The accusative case, *book*, is the *direct* object of the verb *gives*; the dative, *boy*, the *remote* object.

(55.) (a) The *ablative* case of nouns expresses the person or thing *with*, *from*, *in*, or *by* which any thing is done; *e. g.*, he filled the cup *with* wine. Here, *with* wine would be expressed in Latin by one word, in the ablative.

(b) The ablative is also governed by prepositions expressing the relations *with*, *from*, *by*, &c.

(56.) The Dative endings are, *Sing.* æ: *Plur.* is (*long*).

* (1.) What pronouns are not expressed in Latin? (47, R., 49, R.) For what purpose are they sometimes used? (2.) By what is the transitive verb limited? (By a direct object.) What is the case of the direct object in Latin? (51, a.) What is the direct object of *āmāt*, *laudāt*? &c.

The Ablative endings are, *Sing.* ā (*long*) . *Plur.* is (*long*).

(57.)

FIRST DECLENSION.

CASE-ENDINGS AND PARADIGM COMPLETE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ā.	ae.
Gen.	ae.	ārum.
Dat.	ae.	is.
Acc.	ām.	ās.
Voc.	ā.	ae.
Abl.	ā.	is.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	sylv-ā, <i>a wood.</i>	sylv-ae, <i>woods.</i>
Gen.	sylv-ae, <i>of a wood.</i>	sylv-ārum, <i>of woods.</i>
Dat.	sylv-ae, <i>to a wood.</i>	sylv-is, <i>to woods.</i>
Acc.	sylv-ām, <i>a wood.</i>	sylv-ās, <i>woods.</i>
Voc.	sylv-ā, <i>O wood !</i>	sylv-ae, <i>O woods !</i>
Abl.	sylv-ā, <i>with, &c., a wood.</i>	sylv-is, <i>with, &c., woods.</i>

Rem. Some nouns of this declension are used only in the *plural*, viz., *dīvitiæ*, *riches*; *nuptiæ*, *a marriage*; *insidiæ*, *an ambush*.

(58.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Way, viā, ae.

To show, monstrārē.

Ambush, or snares, insidiæ, ārum
(used only in the pl.).

Wild beast, fērā, ae.

To give, dārē.*

To beseech, obsecrārē.

Letter, littēræ, ārum.†

Friendship, amicitia.

To establish, } confirmārē.
To strengthen, }

With (prep.), cūm (governing the ab-
lative case).

To abound, abundārē, (with abl.).

Deserter, perfugā, ae.

Tear, lācrymā, ae.

Inhabitant, incolā, ae (25, IV.).

II. Examples.

- (a) The farmer shows the way to the girls. | Agricolā puellis viām mon-
strāt.

Rule of Position.—The remote object usually precedes the direct; e. g., in example (a), *puellis* precedes *viām*.

- (b) The queen walks with the maid-servants. | Reginā cūm ancillis ambū-
lāt.

Rule of Position.—The preposition and its noun precede the verb; e. g., in example (b), the words *cūm ancillis* precede *ambūlāt*.

* Dārē has ā short before rē.

† Littērā, *sing.*, means a letter (as of the alphabet); littēræ, *plur.*, a letter = an epistle.

III. *Translate into English.*

Galbā insīdiās pārāt.—Galbā Belgīs (54) insīdiās pārāt.—Belgæ amicitiam confirmant.—Belgæ cum reginā amicitiam confirmant.—Insulā fēris* abundāt.—Poētā reginæ (dat., 54) rōsam dābāt.—Cōpiæ pēr insulām festinant.—Pērfūgæ reginām obsēcrābant.—Pērfūgæ cūm lācrīmīs reginām obsēcrābant.—Pērfūga reginæ (dat., 54) littērās dābāt.—Incōlæ reginām obsēcrābant.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The poet praises the queen.—Galba establishes friendship.—Galba establishes friendship with the Belgians.—The Belgians will prepare snares.—The Belgians will prepare snares for the inhabitants (54).—The islands abound (in) herbs (58, III., note).—Poets give roses to queens (54).—The Belgians are beseeching Galba.—The Belgians are beseeching Galba with tears.—The queen will establish friendship.—The queen will establish friendship with the Belgians.—The deserters will beseech the queen.—The deserters will beseech the queen with tears.—The Belgians were preparing snares.—The Belgians were preparing snares for the deserters (54).

* Fēris is the abl. *Rule of Syntax.*—The *abl.* case is used with all verbs and adjectives of *abounding* and *wanting*.

§ 6.

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS. (VI.—VIII).

LESSON VI.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Masculine.

(59.) *Examples.*

<i>Crassus,</i>	Crass-ūs.	<i>Of Crassus,</i>	Crass-ī.
<i>Messenger,</i>	nunti-ūs.	<i>messengers,</i>	nunti-ī.
<i>To hasten,</i>	festinārē.		
<i>The messenger of Crassus</i>	Nunti-ūs	<i>Crassus</i>	Crass-ī
<i>hastens.</i>		<i>festināt.</i>	
<i>The messengers hasten.</i>	Nunti-ī	<i>festinant.</i>	

(60.) The *Second Declension* comprises all nouns whose gen. sing. ending is *ī* (*long*). The nom. has two endings, *ūs* for masc. gender, and *ūm* for the neut.

(61.) The *case-endings* for the masculine gender are as follows :

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	ūs.	Nom.	ī.
Gen.	ī.	Gen.	ōrūm.
Dat.	ō.	Dat.	īs.
Acc.	ūm.	Acc.	ōs.
Voc.	ē.	Voc.	ī.
Abl.	ō.	Abl.	īs.

Rem. The nouns in *ūs* of this declension are the only Latin nouns in which the vocative-ending differs from the nominative.

(62.) By adding these endings to the stem *serv-* of the noun *serv-ūs* (a slave), we get the

PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	serv-ūs, a slave.	serv-ī, slaves.
Gen.	serv-ī, of a slave.	serv-ōrūm, of slaves.
Dat.	serv-ō, to or for a slave.	serv-īs, to or for slaves.
Acc.	serv-ūm, a slave.	serv-ōs, slaves.
Voc.	serv-ē, O slave!	serv-ī, O slaves!
Abl.	serv-ō, with, by, &c., a slave.	serv-īs, with, by, &c., slaves.

[*Rem.* 1. Nearly all nouns in *ūs* are *masc.*; but the names of *trees, plants* &c., are *fem.* by the general rule (25, a). The four nouns, *alvūs* belly; *cōlūs*, distaff; *hūmūs*, ground; *vannūs*, fan, are also *fem.* *Virūs*, juice; *pēlāgūs*, the sea; *vulgūs*, the common people, are *neuter*.

Rem. 2. *Filiūs*, son, and proper names in *iūs*, take *i* for the vocative-ending; e. g., *fili*, O son! *Tulli*, O Tully!

Rem. 3. *Dēūs*, God, has *deūs* for *voc. sing.*; and in the plural *N.* and *V. dii*, *G. deōrūm*, *D.* and *Abl. diīs*, *Acc. deōs*.]

[For Greek nouns of this declension, see Appendix.]

(63.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Master (of a family or of slaves), <i>dō-</i>	<i>Captive</i> , <i>captiv-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>
<i>min-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>	<i>A German</i> , <i>Germān-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>
<i>Slave</i> , <i>serv-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>	<i>To call</i> , <i>vōcārē</i> .
<i>Village</i> , <i>vīc-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>	<i>To recall</i> , <i>rēvōcārē</i> .*
<i>Ambassador</i> , or <i>lieutenant</i> , <i>lēgāt-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>	<i>To call together</i> , <i>convōcārē</i> .*
<i>Garden</i> , <i>hort-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>	<i>An Æduan</i> , <i>Ædu-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>
<i>To</i> , <i>ad</i> (prep. with acc.).	<i>To flog</i> , <i>vērbērārē</i> .
<i>In</i> , <i>in</i> (prep. with abl.).	<i>To ride</i> (on horseback), <i>ēquitārē</i> .

 He rides to the village, *ad vīcū ēquitāt*. When *to* implies motion, it must be translated by *ad* with the accusative.

II. Translate into English.

Dōmīnūs servūm vōcāt.—*Servūs dōmīnō* (54) *mēdicīnām pārāt*.—*Crassūs vīcūm occūpāt*.—*Nuntiūs Crassī vīgīlāt*.—*Servī ad vīcūm festīnant*.—*Nuntiūs lēgātō* (54) *vīam monstrāt*.—*Servī dōmīnōs laudant*.—*Āgrīcōlā ad vīcūm ēquitāt*.—*Captīvī festīnābunt*.—*Galbā copīās* (48, *I.*) *Germānōrūm convōcāt*.—*Nuntiūs captīvōs rēvōcāt*.—*Servī in hortō ambulābunt*.—*Æduī Crassō* (54) *insīdiās pārābant*.—*Nuntiūs cōpīās Æduōrūm rēvōcābāt*.—*Dōmīnūs servōs verbērāt*.

III. Translate into Latin.

[Recollect that words in parentheses () are not to be translated.]

The messengers call-together the Æduans.—The slaves prepare medicines for (their) master (dat., 54).—The Æduans take-possession-of the woods.—The master praises (his) slaves.—The slave is hastening to (ad, with acc.) the woods.—The ambassadors ride to the village.—Crassus will prepare an ambush for the

* The prefix *con* gives the verb the additional meaning of *together*; the prefix *re* of *back*, as in *rēvōcārē* and *convōcārē*.

Æduans.—The lieutenant calls together the Germans.—The messenger will show the way to the captives (54).—The slaves are watching.—The master flogs (his) slave.—Galba will recall the lieutenant.—The Germans were preparing an ambush for Galba (54).—The slave was showing the way to the messenger (54).—The messenger was hastening to the village.—The slaves are watching in the garden.

LESSON VII.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Masculines continued.

(64.) ALL nouns of the second declension whose stem ends in *r* reject the ending *ūs* in the nom. and *ē* in the voc.; e. g., N. and V. *ägēr*, *field*, instead of *ägēr-ūs*, *ägēr-ē*. Moreover, most of those which have *e* in the nominative drop it in the oblique* cases: e. g., N. *ägēr*, G. *ägri* instead of *ägēr-i*.

(65.) Learn the following

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.			
Nom.	<i>ägēr</i> , <i>field</i> (m).	<i>puēr</i> (m.), <i>boy</i> .	<i>vir</i> , <i>man</i> .
Gen.	<i>ägri</i> , <i>of the field</i> .	<i>puēri</i> , <i>of the boy</i> .	<i>virī</i> , <i>of the man</i> .
Dat.	<i>ägri-ō</i> , <i>to or for field</i> .	<i>puēri-ō</i> , <i>to or for</i> .	<i>virī-ō</i> , <i>to or for</i> .
Acc.	<i>ägri-ūm</i> , <i>field</i> .	<i>puēri-ūm</i> , <i>boy</i> .	<i>virī-ūm</i> , <i>man</i> .
Voc.	<i>ägēr</i> , <i>O field!</i>	<i>puēr</i> , <i>O boy!</i>	<i>vir</i> , <i>O man!</i>
Abl.	<i>ägri-ō</i> , <i>with, by, &c., field</i> .	<i>puēri-ō</i> , <i>with, by, &c.</i>	<i>virī-ō</i> , <i>with, by, &c.</i>
PLURAL.			
Nom.	<i>ägri</i> , <i>fields</i> .	<i>puēri</i> , <i>boys</i> .	<i>virī</i> , <i>men</i> .
Gen.	<i>ägri-ōrūm</i> , <i>of fields</i> .	<i>puēri-ōrūm</i> , <i>of boys</i> .	<i>virī-ōrūm</i> , <i>of men</i> .
Dat.	<i>ägri-is</i> , <i>to or for fields</i> .	<i>puēri-is</i> , <i>to or for</i> .	<i>virī-is</i> , <i>to or for</i> .
Acc.	<i>ägri-ōs</i> , <i>fields</i> .	<i>puēri-ōs</i> , <i>boys</i> .	<i>virī-ōs</i> , <i>men</i> .
Voc.	<i>ägri</i> , <i>O fields!</i>	<i>puēri</i> , <i>O boys!</i>	<i>virī</i> , <i>O men!</i>
Abl.	<i>ägri-is</i> , <i>with fields</i> .	<i>puēri-is</i> , <i>with, by, &c.</i>	<i>virī-is</i> , <i>with, by, &c.</i>

Rem. Only the following nouns keep the *e* in all the cases, viz., *ādultēr*, *adulterer*; *puēr*, *boy*; *sōcēr*, *father-in-law*; *gēnēr*, *son-in-law*; *vespēr*, *evening*; *libērī* (used only in plural), *children*; with the compounds of *fēr* and *gēr*; e. g., *Lūcifer*, *Lucifer*; *cornīgēr*, *horned*.

* The oblique cases include all the cases except the nominative and vocative.

(66.)

EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.**Boy*, puër, i.*Master* (of a school), măgîstër, trî (64).*Father-in-law*, söcër, i (65, R.).*Herb*, herbă, æ.*Scholar*, discipul-üs, i.*Son*, fili-üs, i (62, R. 2).*Man*, vîr, i.*Game*, lüd-üs, i.*Son-in-law*, gënër, i (65, R.).*Children*, libëri, orum (rarely used in singular).*Field*, ägër, ägrî (64).II. *Example.*(a) *The wood abounds in wild beasts.**Sylvä föris äbundät.**The wood in-wild-beasts abounds.*(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—The ablative case is used with adjectives and verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*.III. *Translate into English.*

Puër măgîstrüm ämät.—Rëgînä söcërum ämăbît.—Puëri in ägrö ambülăbunt.—Ägrî herbîs (abl., 66, II., a) äbundant.—Ägrîcölä për ägrös (58, II., b) äquităt.—Ägrîcölä söcërum vöcăt.—Püëllæ măgîstrüm laudant.—Vîri in ägrîs ambülăbant.—Lüdi puërös delectant.—Rëgînä gënërös ämăbît.—Vîri ad vicüm festinăbant.—Ägrîcölä libërös ämät.—Măgîstër discipulös convöcăt.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The girls walk in the fields.—The field abounds in herbs (66, II., a).—The sailor calls back the boys.—The queen loves (her) son-in-law.—The queen gives (her) son-in-law (dat., 54) a rose.—The scholars love (their) master.—The fields abound in herbs (66, II., a).—The farmers were walking through the fields.—The son of the master calls the boys.—The master walks in the garden with (his) sons.—The herbs of the field delight the poet.—Games delight girls.—The farmer shows the way to the boy.—The master will praise (his) scholars.—The master will flog (his) scholars.

LESSON VIII.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Neuter.—Verbs, Second Conjugation.

(67.)	Slave.	servūs (masc.).
	Cup.	pōcŭlŭm (neut.).
	To fill.	implērē.
	The slave fills his master's cup.	Servūs pōcŭlŭm dōmīni implēt.
		The slave the-cup of-his-master fills.

(68.) The case-endings of the second declension for the neuter gender are,

Nom. Acc., Voc.	Sing. ŭm.	Plur. ā.
Gen.	ī.	ōrŭm.
Dat., Abl.	ō.	īs.

Rem. The endings of the nom., acc., and voc. are *always* the same in neuter nouns. In this declension, those of dat. and abl. are alike also.

(69.) By adding these endings to the stem pōcŭl-, we get the

PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>cups.</i>
Gen.	pōcŭl-ī, <i>of a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ōrŭm, <i>of cups.</i>
Dat.	pōcŭl-ō, <i>to or for a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-īs, <i>to or for cups.</i>
Acc.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>cups.</i>
Voc.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>O cup!</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>O cups!</i>
Abl.	pōcŭl-ō, <i>with, by, &c., a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-īs, <i>with, from, &c., cups.</i>

THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

(70.) The second conjugation comprises all verbs whose infinitive-ending is ērē (e long before rē); e. g., mōn-ērē, *to advise*; dōc-ērē, *to teach*.

(71.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

INFINITIVE, ērē.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	ēt.	ēbāt.	ēbit.
3d Plural.	ent.	ēbant.	ēbunt.

(72.) By affixing these endings to the stem *mōn-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, <i>mōn-ēre</i> , to advise.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Futura.
3d Sing.	<i>mōn-ēt, he, she, &c., advises.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbāt, he, she, &c., was advising.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbit, he, she, &c., will advise.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>mōn-ēt, they advise.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbant, they were advising.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbunt, they will advise.</i>

(73.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Assistance, auxiliū, ī (68).*To ask, entreat*, rōgārē.*Camp*, castrā, ōrūm (pl.)*To move*, mōvērē (70).*Cup*, pōcūlū, ī.*Wine*, vinū, ī.*To fill*, implērē (70).*Danger*, pēricūlū, ī.*To fear*, timērē (70).*Forum*, fōrū, ī.*Town*, oppidū, ī.

II. Translate into English.

I.ægātūs auxiliū rōgāt.—*Galbā* cōpiās ād (63, I., ) castrā rēvocāt.—*Servūs* pōcūlū vinō (55, a) implēt.—*Crassūs* castrā mōvēt.—*Cōpiæ* ād oppidū festinābant.—*Āgricolā* oppidū laudāt.—*Cōpiæ* *Germānōrū* ād castrā festinābunt.—*Nuntiūs* pēricūlū timēt.—*Puerī* pēr fōrū ambulānt.—*Gerruānī* pēriculā nōn timēt.—*Lēgātī* pēr oppidū ambulābunt.—*Āgricolā* oppidā *Ædūōrū* laudābāt.—*Crassūs* oppidū occūpābāt.—*Servī* pōcūlā implēbant.

III. Translate into Latin.

The *Æduans* were asking assistance.—The *Germans* will move (their) camp.—The *Germans* were praising the town.—The ambassadors of the *Æduans* hasten to (63, I., ) the camp.—The forces of the *Belgians* fear the danger.—The messenger will recall the ambassadors to the camp.—*Galba's* messenger will recall the *Germans* to the town.—The ambassadors praise the towns of the *Germans*.—The farmers were walking through the forum.—The boy walks through the town.—The sailors will not fear the danger.—*Crassus* will not move (his) camp.—The *Germans* were taking possession of the town.—The servant was filling the cup.

§ 7.

ADJECTIVES OF FIRST CLASS. (IX.—X.)

LESSON IX.

Adjectives.—Class I, ũ s, ä, ũ m.

(74.) THE *Adjective* (14), in Latin, agrees with the noun in *gender, number, and case*, and therefore has *endings* to distinguish these; *e. g.*, *puēr b ōn-ūs, a good boy*; *pūellā b ōn-ā, a good girl*; *dōnum b ōn-ū m, a good gift*.

(75.) We divide adjectives into *three* classes, according to their endings. Those of the *first class* have the *fem.* ending of the first decl. of nouns, and the *masc.* and *neut.* endings of the second. Thus,

(76.) ENDINGS.

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.						
N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
G.	ūs.	ā.	ūm.	b ōn-ūs.	b ōn-ā.	b ōn-ūm.
D.	ī.	æ.	ī.	b ōn-ī.	b ōn-æ.	b ōn-ī.
A.	ō.	æ.	ō.	b ōn-ō.	b ōn-æ.	b ōn-ō.
V.	ūm.	ām.	ūm.	b ōn-ūm.	b ōn-ām.	b ōn-ūm.
A.	ē.	ā.	ūm.	b ōn-ē.	b ōn-ā.	b ōn-ūm.
A.	ō.	ā.	ō.	b ōn-ō.	b ōn-ā.	b ōn-ō.
PLURAL.						
N.	ī.	æ.	ā.	b ōn-ī.	b ōn-æ.	b ōn-ā.
G.	ōrum.	ārum.	ōrum.	b ōn-ōrum.	b ōn-ārum.	b ōn-ōrum.
D.	īs.	īs.	īs.	b ōn-īs.	b ōn-īs.	b ōn-īs.
A.	ōs.	ās.	ā.	b ōn-ōs.	b ōn-ās.	b ōn-ā.
V.	ī.	æ.	ā.	b ōn-ī.	b ōn-æ.	b ōn-ā.
A.	īs.	īs.	īs.	b ōn-īs.	b ōn-īs.	b ōn-īs.

(77.) Adjectives whose stem ends in *ēr* do not take the endings *ūs* of the nominative and *ē* of the vocative.

(a) Most of them drop the *ē* in inflection; *e. g.*,

pulchēr, pulchr-ā, pulchr-ūm, beautiful;
pulchr-ī, pulchr-æ, pulchr-ī, &c.

(b) But aspēr, rough; lăcēr, torn; libēr, free; mīsēr, miserable; prospēr, fortunate; tēnēr, tender (and the compounds of gēr and fēr; e. g., cornīgēr, flammīfēr), retain it; e. g.,

mīsēr, mīsēr-ă, mīsēr-ŭm,
mīsēr-ī, mīsēr-æ, mīsēr-ī, &c.

(78.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Good, bōn-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
Great, magn-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
Many, mult-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
Thick, dens-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
Broad, wide, lăt-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
My, mē-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
Thy, tū-ŭs, ă, ŭm.

His, hers, its (own), su-ŭs, ă, ŭm.
To see, vidērē.
Master (of slaves), hērŭs, ī.
To have, hăbērē.
Example, exemplŭm, ī.
River, flŭvius, ī.
To frighten, terrērē.

II. Examples.

(a) *The slave fills the large cup.* | Servŭs pōcŭlŭm magnŭm implēt.

Rule of Position.—(a) The adjective, unless emphatic, follows the noun; e. g., in the above example, magnŭm follows pōcŭlŭm.

(b) *The slave fills the queen's large cup.* | Servŭs magnŭm rēginæ pōcŭlŭm implēt.

Rule of Position.—(b) When the noun governs another in the genitive, the adjective stands first, and the genitive between it and its noun; e. g., in example (b), magnŭm rēginæ pōcŭlŭm.

III. Translate into English.

Rēgină fīliă suăm ămăt.—Servŭs pōcŭlŭm meŭm implēt.—Servi pōcŭlă magnă implent.—Puērī māgistrŭm bōnŭm ămant.—Belgæ vicōs multōs hăbent.—Agrīcŏlă bŏnŭs viăm monstrăt.—Māgistēr puērōs bŏnōs dŏcēbīt.—Māgistrī bŏnī exemplă bŏnă puērīs (54) dant.—Lŏgătŭs magnăm rēgină (78, II., b) cŏrŏnăm vidēt.—Perfŭgæ ăd flŭviŭm lătŭm festinant.—Servŭs magnŭm puērī (78, II., b) pōcŭlŭm implēbăt.—Sylvæ densæ nuntiōs terrent.—Puērī sylvăm densăm tīmēbunt.—Servŭs bŏnŭs hērŭm ămăt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The Æduans have many villages.—The queen loves (her)

good son.—The farmer shows the thick wood.—Good slaves love (their) masters.—Good masters love (their) slaves.—The Belgians have many towns.—The broad rivers frighten the deserters.—The boy sees the large town.—Crassus recalls the good lieutenant.—The son praises the great queen.—The Germans have large villages.—He praises thy slave.—He loves thy daughter.—He will praise *his own* daughter.—The deserters were hastening to the broad river.—The slave will fill the large cup of his master (78, II., b).—The lieutenant will see many villages of the Belgians (78, II., b).—The thick wood will frighten the boys.

LESSON X.

Some Forms of Esse.—Adjectives continued.

(79.) Learn the following forms of the irregular verb *Esse*, to be:

INFINITIVE, esse, to be.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	est, is.	erat, was.	erit, he, she, it will be.
3d Plur.	sunt, are.	erant, were.	erunt, they will be.

(80.) (a) *Indolence is a vice.* | *Īnertiā vītium est.*
Indolence a vice is.

Here *īnertiā* is the *subject* of the sentence; *vītium* is the *predicate*; both in the nominative.

Rule of Syntax.—(a) The *noun* in the predicate must be in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing.

(81.) (b) *The rose is beautiful.* | *Rösā pulchrā est.*
The rose beautiful is.

Here *rösā* is the *subject*, and *pulchrā* the *predicate*; both in *nom. sing. fem.*

Rule of Syntax.—(b) The *adjective* in the predicate agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

[As a general rule, a sentence should not end with a *monosyllable*; but in short passages, such as the above, especially when the word before *est* ends in a *vowel*, or *m*, it is admissible.]

(82.)

EXERCISE.

[Refer to Rules of Position (78, II.) and to Rem. on adjectives ending in *er* (77).]

I. Vocabulary.

Happy, beātūs, ā, ūm.*True*, vērus, ā, ūm.*Friendship*, āmicitiā, æ.*Everlasting*, sempiternūs, ā, ūm.*Labienus*, Lābiēnūs, ī.*Foolish*, stultūs, ā, ūm.*Tender*, tēnēr, ā, ūm (77, b).*Flame*, flammā, f.*Red, ruddy*, rūbēr, ā, ūm (77, a)*A leaf*, fōliūm, ī.*Bull*, taurūs, ī.*Horned*, corniger, ā, ūm (77, b).*Lamb*, āgnūs, ī.*Miserable*, miser, a, um (77, b).*Europe*, Eurōpā, æ.*Peninsula*, pēninsulā, æ.*Anger*, ira, æ.*Illustrious*, clārūs, ā, ūm.*Crow*, corvūs, ī.*Black*, nīgēr, ā, ūm (77, a).*Not*, nōn (always placed before the word which it qualifies)*Always*, sempēr (adv.).*Cow*, vaccā, æ.*Attica*, Atticā, æ.*Britain*, Britannīā, æ.*Ireland*, Hibernīā, æ.

Rem. In such phrases as *the good, the wise, &c.*, the noun (*noun*) is omitted in Latin, as in English; e. g., *good men* = bōnī; *fools* = stultī; *the happy* = beātī. Also, *many things* = multā (neut.); *all things* = omniā.

II. Examples.

*The good are always happy.**True friendships are everlasting.**Labienus was a lieutenant.**The foolish are not happy.*

Bōnī sempēr beātī sunt.

Vēræ āmicitiæ sempiternæ sunt.

Lābiēnūs lēgātūs ērāt.

Stultī nōn sunt beātī.

III. Translate into English.

Puellā pulchrā est (81, b).—Herbæ āgrōrūm tēnēræ sunt (81, b).—Alæ āquīlārūm māgnæ sunt.—Flammā rubrā est.—Fōliā rōsārūm pulchrā sunt.—Taurī cornīgērī sunt.—Āgnī tēnērī in āgris sunt.—Rēginā pulchrā in hortō ambulābāt.—Puēr āgnōs pulchrōs vidēt.—Vērā āmicitiā sempiternā est.—Stultī miserī sunt.—Eurōpā pēninsulā (80, a) est.—Atticā pēninsulā est.—Irā vitiūm est magnūm.—Crassūs lēgātūs ērāt.—Lābiēnūs lēgātūs clārūs ērāt.—Corvūs plūmās nīgrās hābēt.—Stultī nōn sunt beātī.—Bōnūs sempēr beātūs est.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The queen was beautiful.—The queen's daughter was beau-

tiful.—The beautiful daughter walks in the garden.—The fields abound in tender herbs (66, II., *a*).—The feathers of doves are beautiful.—The feathers of crows are black.—The flames were ruddy.—The leaves of roses are tender.—Cows are horned.—The queen walks in the garden with (*cūm*) her beautiful daughters (*filiābūs**).—The girl will see the tender lambs in the fields.—The good are not always happy.—Fools are not always miserable.—Crassus was a great lieutenant.—Britain is an island.—Ireland is an island.—Geneva is a large town.—Anger is always a vice.—Everlasting friendships are true.—Friendships are not always everlasting.

* *Filiā*, daughter, and *deā*, goddess, have abl. pl. in *ābūs*, instead of *is*, to distinguish them from *filiis*, sons, *diis*, gods.

§ 8.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

LESSON XI.

Verbs.—Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(83.) THE *Third Conjugation* comprises all verbs whose infinitive ending is *ĕrĕ* (*ĕ* short before *rĕ*); e. g., *scrib-ĕrĕ*, to write.

(84.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, <i>ĕre</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
Singular.	Present. ĭt.	Imperfect. ĕbāt.	Future. ĕt.
Plural.	unt.	ĕbant.	ent.

(85.) By affixing these endings to the stem *scrib-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, <i>scrib-ĕre</i> , to write.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	<i>scrib-it, he, she, &c., writes.</i>	<i>scrib-ĕbat, he, she, &c., was writing.</i>	<i>scrib-ĕt, he, she, &c., will write.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>scrib-unt, they write.</i>	<i>scrib-ĕbant, they were writing.</i>	<i>scrib-ent, they will write.</i>

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

(86.) The *Fourth Conjugation* comprises all verbs whose infinitive-ending is *irĕ* (*ī* long before *rĕ*); e. g., *aud-irĕ*, to hear.

(87) SOME ENDINGS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, <i>ire</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present. ĭt.	Imperfect. iĕbat.	Future. iĕt.
3d Plur.	iunt.	iĕbant.	ient.

(88.) By affixing these endings to the stem *aud-*, we have the following

34 THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, aud-ire, to hear.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	aud-īt, <i>he, she, &c., hears.</i>	aud-iēbat, <i>he, she, &c., was hearing.</i>	aud-iēt, <i>he, she, &c., will hear.</i>
3d Plur.	aud-iunt, <i>they hear.</i>	aud-iēbant, <i>they were hearing.</i>	aud-ient, <i>they will hear.</i>

(89.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

To send, mittēre (83).

In (prep.), in.*

To sleep, dormīre (86).

Bed-chamber, cūbiculūm, I.

To run, currēre (83).

To rule, rēgere (83).

A Gaul, Gallus, I.

Tower, castellūm, I.

Small, parvūs, ā, ūm.

To come, venīre (86).

A Roman, Rōmānūs, I.

To lead, dūcere (83).

World, mundūs, I.

To conquer, vincere (83).

To fortify, mūnīre (86).

Divitiacus, Divitiācūs, I.

II. Example.

Crassus comes to the large town. | Crassus magnūm ad oppidūm vēnit.

Rule of Position.—The adjective belonging to a noun governed by a preposition is frequently placed *before* the preposition, *e. g.*, magnūm in the example.

III. Translate into English.

Belgæ lēgātōs mittunt.—Belgæ lēgātōs ad Crassūm mittunt.—Puēri in cūbiculō dormiunt.—Puellæ parvō (89, II.) in cūbiculō dormiēbant.—Rēginā magnūm ad oppidūm vēniēt.—Galbā cōpiās Rōmānōrūm dūcīt.—Diī (62, R., 3). mundūm rēgunt.—Deūs mundūm sempēr rēgīt.—Rōmānī Gallōs vincēbant.—Lēgātūs castellā mūniēbāt.—Æduī nuntiūm ad Labiēnūm mittunt.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm ad oppidūm vēnient.—Divitiācūs cōpiās Æduōrūm dūcēbāt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The horse runs.—The boy sleeps.—The boy was running.—The slave comes.—Crassus fortifies many towers.—The slave was coming to (63, I., ) his master.—The beautiful boy will sleep in a little bed-chamber (89, II.).—The gods always govern

* In, signifying *into* or *unto*, governs the *accusative*; signifying *in* governs the *ablative*.

the world.—The Romans are coming to the large town.—The farmer was sleeping in the field.—Divitiacus was leading the forces of the *Æduans*.—The Belgians send messengers to Crassus.—Crassus sends a messenger to the Belgians.—The girls will sleep in a little bed-chamber.—Crassus will fortify the towers.—The Romans take-possession-of the towers of Gaul.

§ 9.

PASSIVE VERBS. (XII.—XIII.)

LESSON XII.

Verbs.—Passive Voice.—First and Second Conjugations.

(90.) THE endings of the third persons of verbs, in the tenses for *incomplete* or *continued* action (44), are the same in the passive as in the active voice, with the addition of the syllable *ür*. Thus, we have in the

(91.) FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.	
Active.	Passive.
3d Sing. <i>ām-āt, he, she, it, loves.</i>	<i>am-āt-ür, he, she, it is loved.*</i>
3d Plur. <i>ām-ant, they love.</i>	<i>ām-ant-ür, they are loved.</i>
IMPERFECT.	
3d Sing. <i>ām-ābāt, he was loving.</i>	<i>ām-ābāt-ür, he was loved.</i>
3d Plur. <i>ām-ābant, they were loving.</i>	<i>ām-ābant-ür, they were loved.</i>
FUTURE.	
3d Sing. <i>ām-ābīt, he shall or will love.</i>	<i>ām-ābīt-ür, he shall or will be loved.</i>
3d Plur. <i>ām-ābunt, they shall or will love.</i>	<i>ām-ābunt-ür, they shall or will be loved.</i>

(92.) SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.	
Active.	Passive.
3d Sing. <i>mön-ēt, he advises.</i>	<i>mön-ēt-ür, he is advised.</i>
3d Plur. <i>mön-ent, they advise.</i>	<i>mön-ent-ür, they are advised.</i>
IMPERFECT.	
3d Sing. <i>mön-ēbāt, he was advising.</i>	<i>mön-ēbāt-ür, he was advised.</i>
3d Plur. <i>mön-ēbant, they were advising.</i>	<i>mön-ēbant-ür, they were advised.</i>
FUTURE.	
3d Sing. <i>mön-ēbīt, he will advise.</i>	<i>mön-ēbīt-ür, he will be advised.</i>
3d Plur. <i>mön-ēbunt, they will advise.</i>	<i>mön-ēbunt-ür, they will be advised.</i>

* The English language has no forms for incomplete action in the passive voice. *He is loved, he was loved, &c., the house is built, &c.,* properly express action complete. An awkward periphrasis—he is *being* loved.

(93.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Game, sport, lūdū, i.
To delight, delectārē.

To teach, dōcēre.
Seize, occupārē.

II. Examples.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| (a) Crassus calls the lieutenant. | Crassūs lēgātūm vōcāt |
| (b) The lieutenant is called by Crassus. | Lēgātūs ā Crassō vōcātūr |

In these examples, the same action is expressed (viz., the calling of the lieutenant) in (a) by the active form, in (b) by the passive. Every sentence in which a transitive verb occurs may thus be changed into the passive form. The agent (Crassus) is the subject nominative in (a); and in (b) is expressed by the ablative (Crassō) with the preposition ā, by.

Rem. If the subject be a thing, not a person, nor considered as a person, the preposition is omitted; e. g., Pōcūlūm vīnō impletūr, the cup is filled with wine. (This is the abl. of cause or means.)

III. Translate into English.

Auxiliū ā lēgātō rōgātūr.—Auxiliū ā lēgātō rōgābātūr.—Auxiliū ā lēgātō rogabitur.—Cōpiā ā Galbā rēvōcantūr.—Pōcūlū ā servō implebātūr.—Oppidā ā Crassō occupābantūr.—Mēdicinā āb ancillis pārābītūr.—Puērī bonī ā māgistrō laudantūr.—Cōpiā Germānōrū ā Labiēnō rēvōcābuntūr.—Pōcūlā vīnō (93, II., R.) implentūr.—Puērī lūdīs (93, II., R.) delectantūr.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The master is loved by (his) scholars.—The master will be loved by (his) good scholars.—The cups will be filled (with) wine (93, II., R.).—The Germans were called together by Crassus.—The villages were seized by the Romans.—The towns will be seized by the Æduans.—Medicines are prepared by the slaves.—Good boys will be praised by their masters.—The good boys will be advised by their masters.—The scholars are taught by their master.—The scholar was taught by his

the house is being built—is sometimes employed, but is not to be approved. The house is building is a form sanctioned by usage, but in many verbs it would be ambiguous. The pupil must remember, then, that in the exercises in the First Part, the forms is loved, is advised, was advised, &c., are used to express incomplete action.

38 PASSIVES OF THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

master.—The girls are delighted with games (93, II., R.).—The slaves will be delighted with games.—The queen is praised by (her) maid-servant.—The queen was praised by (her) maid-servant.—The queen will be praised by (her) maid-servant.

LESSON XIII.

Verbs.—Passive Voice.—Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(94.)

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.			
	Active.		Passive.
3d Sing.	rēg-īt, <i>he, she, it rules.</i>		rēgīt-ūr, <i>he, she, it is ruled.</i>
3d Plur.	rēg-unt, <i>they rule.</i>		rēgunt-ūr, <i>they are ruled.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
3d Sing.	rēg-ēbāt, <i>he was ruling.</i>		rēgēbāt-ūr, <i>he was ruled.</i>
3d Plur.	rēg-ēbant, <i>they were ruling.</i>		rēgēbant-ūr, <i>they were ruled.</i>
FUTURE.			
3d Sing.	rēg-ēt, <i>he shall or will rule.</i>		rēgēt-ūr, <i>he shall or will be ruled.</i>
3d Plur.	rēg-ent, <i>they shall or will rule.</i>		rēgent-ūr, <i>they shall or will be ruled.</i>

(95.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.			
	Active.		Passive.
3d Sing.	aud-īt, <i>he hears.</i>		audīt-ūr, <i>he is heard.</i>
3d Plur.	aud-iunt, <i>they hear.</i>		audiunt-ūr, <i>they are heard.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
3d Sing.	aud-iēbāt, <i>he was hearing.</i>		audiēbāt-ūr, <i>he was heard.</i>
3d Plur.	aud-iēbant, <i>they were hearing.</i>		audiēbant-ūr, <i>they were heard.</i>
FUTURE.			
3d Sing.	aud-iēt, <i>he shall or will hear.</i>		aud-iēt-ūr, <i>he shall or will be heard.</i>
3d Plur.	aud-ient, <i>they shall or will hear.</i>		audient-ūr, <i>they shall or will be heard.</i>

(96.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

A Roman, Rōmānūs, I.
To lay aside, depōnērē.
Garrison, præsidiūm, I.

A Gaul, Gallūs, I.
To distribute, } dispōnērē.
arrange, }

II. Translate into English.

Lēgātī ā Belgīs mittuntūr.—Mundūs ā Deō rēgītūr.—Cōpis

Rōmānōrūm ā Galbā dūcuntūr.—Gallī a Rōmānīs vincuntūr.—
Irā ā rēgīnā dēpōnītūr.—Castellūm ā Labiēnō mūnītūr.—Præ-
diā ā lēgātō dispōnuntūr.—Lēgātī ād Æduōs mittebantūr.—Cō-
piæ Æduōrūm ad vicūm dūcentūr.—Epistōlā ā rēgīnā scribītūr.—
Oppidā Belgārūm muniēbantūr.—Nuntiī ād Crassūm mittentūr.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

Galba is conquered by the Belgians.—The camp is fortified by Crassus.—The forces of Crassus are led to the camp.—The forces of the Ædui are sent to the village.—Anger will be laid aside by the queen.—Galba was conquered by the Gauls.—Letters will be written by the queen.—Letters are written to (ad) Crassus.—The garrisons are not distributed by Crassus.—The towers are not fortified by the Belgians.—The world is always governed by God.—The Germans are ruled by a lieutenant.—A letter will be written by the queen.

§ 10.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—PARTIAL
TREATMENT. (XIV.—XV.)

LESSON XIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.

(97.) THE *Third Declension* comprises all nouns whose *gen. sing.* ends in *īs*.

Rem. To find the stem of any noun of this declension, strike off *īs* from the *gen. sing.*; e. g., *gen. hōminis* (*of a man*), stem *hōmīn*.

(98.) The case-endings are as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
N.	M. & F.	Neut.	N.	M. & F.	Neut.
G.	īs.	īs.	G.	ūs (iūm).	ūs (iūm).
D.	ī.	ī.	D.	ībūs.	ībūs.
A.	ēm (īm).	like N.	A.	ēs.	ā (iā).
V.	like N.	like N.	V.	ēs.	ā (iā).
A.	ē (ī).	ē (ī).	A.	ībūs.	ībūs.

Rem. 1. The nom. ending is not given, because of the many forms in which that case occurs. Of the changes to which the stem is subject, see hereafter (Part II.).

2. Of the endings *īm*, *ī* (*in acc. and abl. sing.*), and *īa*, *iūm* (*plur.*), see hereafter (Part II.).

3. The *genders* of all nouns of this declension are marked in the vocabularies. The general rules of gender (25, a) of course apply to this declension: special rules are given (355). We give here only

(99.) *Partial Rule of Gender.*—Most nouns which add *s* to the stem to form the nominative are feminine.

(100.) PARADIGMS—MASCULINE AND FEMININE FORMS.

Sing.	Speech (m.).	Honour (m.).	City (f.).	Nation (race), f.	Law (f.).
N. and V.	sermō.	hōnōr.	urb-s.	gens (gents).	lex (legs).
Gen.	sermōn-īs.	hōnōr-īs.	urb-īs.	gent-īs.	lēg-īs.
Dat.	sermōn-ī.	hōnōr-ī.	urb-ī.	gent-ī.	lēg-ī.
Acc.	sermōn-ēm.	hōnōr-ēm.	urb-ēm.	gent-ēm.	lēg-ēm.
Abl.	sermōn-ē.	hōnōr-ē.	urb-ē.	gent-ē.	lēg-ē.
Plur.	Speeches.	Honours.	Cities.	Races.	Laws.
N., A., V.	sermōn-ēs.	hōnōr-ēs.	urb-ēs.	gent-ēs.	lēg-ēs.
Gen.	sermōn-ūm.	hōnōr-ūm.	urb-ūm.	gent-ūm.	lēg-ūm.
D. and A.	sermōn-ībūs.	hōnōr-ībūs.	urb-ībūs.	gent-ībūs.	lēg-ībūs.

Rem. 1. Observe that *d* or *t* in the stem is *dropped* in the nom. before *s*; and *c* or *g* combined with *s* to form *x*; e. g., laus=laud-*s*, arx=arc-*s*; lex=leg-*s*; gens=gent-*s*.

2. All the endings are *short* but *i* (dat. sing.) and *es* (N., A., V. plur.).

(101.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

[In the following vocabularies, the *stem* of every noun of the third declension is placed immediately *after* the nominative form, and *before* the genitive ending.]

King, rēx, (rēg) is, m.

Law, lēx, (lēg) is, f.

To abrogate, ābrōgāre.

Just, justūs, ā, ūm.

Worthy, dignūs, ā, ūm.

Part, pars, (part) is, f.

Common people, plebs, (plēb) is, f.

To leave, rēlinquēre.

Rock, pētrā, m.

Tree, arbōr, (arbōr) is, f.

To build a nest, nīdificāre.

Cæsar, Cæsār, (Cæsār) is.

And, et (conj.).

Consul, consūl, (constūl) is, m.

General, impērātōr, (impērātōr) is, m.

A Helvetian, Helvētiūs, l.

II. Translate into English.

Rex lēg-ēs ābrōgāt.—Cōpiæ ād urb-ēm festinant.—Lēg-ēs justæ sunt.—Pars plēb-īs urb-ēm rēlinquīt.—Magnā pars plēb-īs urb-ēm rēlinquīt.—Āquillæ in pētrīs et arbōr-ībūs nīdificant.—Lēg-ēs ā rēg-ē ābrōgantūr.—Cōpiæ ād urb-ēm rēvōcantūr.—Helvētiū ād Cæsār-ēm lēgātōs mittunt.—Nuntūs sermōn-ēm consūl-īs laudāt.—Impērātōr nuntiōs rēvōcāt.—Rex dignīs (54, and 82, I., R.) hōnōr-ēs dābīt.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm urb-ēm rēlinquēbant.—Cæsār ād vicōs festinābāt.—Lēgātī ād impērātōr-ēm mittuntūr.—Impērātōr nuntiōs ād urb-ēm mittēt.—Lēgātūs part-ēm cōpiārūm rēvōcābīt.

III. Translate into Latin.

The laws were just.—The king will revoke the laws.—The general will leave the village.—The consuls send ambassadors.—The consuls recall the ambassadors.—Doves build their nests in gardens and trees.—The consuls are praised.—The city is fortified.—Honours will be given.—Honours are given to the worthy (82, I., R.).—Ambassadors will be sent to the consuls.—Honours are given to Cæsar (54).—The speech of the consul is praised.—Honours are given to the general.—A great part of the common-people will leave the city.—The consuls will recall the common-people.—The ambassadors will leave the city.—The general will be sent.—Cæsar will be recalled.—The laws were unjust.

LESSON XV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(102.)

PARADIGMS.—NEUTER FORMS.

Sing.	Sea (n.).	Song (n.).	Work (n.).	Animal (n.).
N., A., V.	mār-ē.	carmēn.	ōpūs.	ānīmāl.
G.	mār-īs.	carmīn-is.	ōpēr-īs.	ānīmāl-is.
D.	mār-ī.	carmīn-ī.	ōpēr-ī.	ānīmāl-ī.
Abl.	mār-ī.	carmīn-ē.	ōpēr-ē.	ānīmāl-ī.
Plur.	Seas.	Songs.	Works.	Animals.
N., A., V.	mār-iā.	carmīn-ā.	ōpēr-ā.	ānīmāl-iā.
G.	mār-iūm.	carmīn-ūm.	ōpēr-ūm.	ānīmāl-iūm.
D., Abl.	mār-ībūs.	carmīn-ībūs.	ōpēr-ībūs.	ānīmāl-ībūs.

Rem. 1. Neuters whose nom. ends in *al*, *ar*, or *e*, take *ī* for abl. sing. ending; *iā*, nom. plur., and *iūm*, gen. plur.

2. *Partial Rule of Gender.*—Nouns whose stems end in *al* or *ar* are neuter.

(103.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Name, nōmēn, (nōmīn) *is* (n.).

To enrol, conscribērē.

Treaty, fœdūs, (fœdēr) *is* (n.).

To violate, violārē.

Spoil or booty, prædā, æ.

Ally, sociūs, ī.

Summer, æstās, (æstāt) *is* (f.).

Cold, frigūs, (frigōr) *is* (n.).

Burden, ōnūs, (ōnēr) *is* (n.).

To carry, portārē.

Wound, vulnūs, (vulnēr) *is* (n.).

To cure, heal, sārārē.

To mitigate, mītigārē.

River, flūmēn, (flūmīn) *is* (n.).

To swim across, transnārē (gov. acc.)

Work, ōpūs, (ōpēr) *is* (n.).

Fish, piscis, (pisc) *is* (m.).

Time, tempūs, (tempōr) *is* (n.).

To change, mūtārē.

Man, hōmō, (hōmīn) *is* (m.).

Stormy, turbid, turbidūs, ā, ūm.

II. Translate into English.

Consul nōmīnā conscribīt.—Cæsār fœdūs (acc.) violābāt, æt prædām sociūs (54) dābāt.—Æstās frigūs (acc.) mītigāt.—Perfugæ flūmēn (acc.) transnābant.—Magnūm ōpūs est.—Flūmēn piscībūs ābundāt (66, I., a).—Tempūs hōmīnēs mūtāt.—Tempōrā mūtāntūr.—Frigūs æstātē (93, II., R.) mītigābītūr.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm flūmīnā transnābant.—Servūs ōnūs (acc.) magnūm portāt.—Cæsār nōmīnā nōn conscribēt.—Ōnūs magnūm est.—Mēdicīnā vulnūs sārāt.—Carmīnā puellās dēlectant.—Nōmīnā hōmīnūm mūtābuntūr.—Māriā turbidā sunt.—Flūmēn magnūm erat turbidūm.—Magnā sunt ōnērā captīvōrūm.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

The Germans violate treaties.—The consuls will not enrol the names.—The slaves were carrying great burdens.—The messenger was-swimming-across the river.—The boy swims-across the river.—Great burdens are carried.—The burden will be carried by the slave.—The rivers abound in fish (66, II., *a*).—The wounds are healed.—The burdens are great.—The lieutenant will not violate the treaty.—The names are enrolled by the consuls (93, II.).—The treaty is violated.—The treaty is violated by Cæsar.—The treaty will be violated, and the spoil will be given to the allies (*dat.*).—The consul enrols the names of the deserters.—The names of the deserters will be enrolled.

The wounds of the prisoners will be healed.

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

LESSON XVI.

Adjectives.—Second Class.—Two Endings.

(104.) ADJECTIVES of the *Second Class* have *is* in the nom. sing. for *masc.* and *fem.* endings, and *ě* for the *neuter*. They are declined throughout like the third declension of nouns; *e. g.*, *brěvis*, *short*.

(105.)

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>ě</i> .	brěv- <i>ēs</i> .	brěv- <i>ēs</i> .	brěv- <i>īā</i> .
G.	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>iūm</i> .	brěv- <i>iūm</i> .	brěv- <i>iūm</i> .
D.	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>ībūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ībūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ībūs</i> .
Acc.	brěv- <i>ēm</i> .	brěv- <i>ēm</i> .	brěv- <i>ě</i> .	brěv- <i>ēs</i> .	brěv- <i>ēs</i> .	brěv- <i>īā</i> .
Abl.	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>ībūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ībūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ībūs</i> .

Rem. 1. Twelve adjectives* of this class take *ěr* for the ending of the nom. sing. masc. instead of *is*; *e. g.*, *ācěr*, *ācřis*, *ācřě*; *cělěr*, *celěbřis*, *celěbřě*.

Rem. 2. The abl. has *ě* instead of *i* in *jüvėnīs*, *a youth*; *sedilīs* *adile*. The gen. pl. has *ūm* instead of *iūm* in *cělěr*, *swift*.

(106.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Father, *pătěr*, (*patr*) *is*.

Noble, *nöbřis*, *ě*.

Every, } *omnis*, *ě*.

All, the whole, }

Sweet, *dulcīs*, *ě*.

To demand, *poscěrě*.

Soldier, *mřēs*, (*mřit*) *is* (m.).

Study, zeal, *stüdiūm*, *i*.

Kind, *bėnignūs*, *a. um*.

Dog, *cānis*, (*cān*) *is* (c., 25, IV.).

To endure, *tölěrārě*.

Hostage, *öbsēs*, (*öbsid*) *is* (c., 25, IV.).

Uncertain, *incertūs*, *ā, ūm*.

Useful, *ütřis*, *ě*.

Iron, *ferrūm*, *i*.

Gold, *aurūm*, *i*.

Severe, heavy, *grāvīs*, *ě*.

Life, *vřtā*, *es (ē)*.

Brave, *fortīs*, *ě*.

Patiently, *pätientěr* (adv.).

Wolf, *lüpūs*, *i* (m.).

Like, *sřmřis*, *ě*.

A chief, *princeps*, (*princřp*) *is* (c., 25, IV.).

* *Ācěr*, *sharp*.

Ālēcěr, *cheerful*.

Campeštěr, *of the plain*.

Cělěběr, *famous*.

Cělěr, *swift*.

Ēquestěr, *equestrian*.

Pālustěr, *marshy*.

Pėdestěr, *pedestrian*.

Sālüběr, *salubrious*.

Sylvestěr, *woody*.

Terrestěr, *terrestrial*.

Völęcěr, *swift*.

II. *Examples.*

(a) *The father is kind to his son.* | Pătēr filiō bēnignūs est.

(b) *The dog is like (to) the wolf.* | Cānis lūpō sīmīlis est.

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The dative case is used with all adjectives that are followed by the words *to* or *for* in English: hence with adjectives expressing (a) *advantage* or *disadvantage*, (b) *likeness* or *unlikeness*.

[Adjectives of *likeness* or *unlikeness* also take the gen.]

III. *Translate into English.*

Militēs omnēs pēriculū timent.—Impērātōr fortīs militēs omnēs convocat.—Vitā brevīs est.—Vitā est brevīs et incertā.—Vinū est dulcē.—Principēs fortēs oppidā omniā muniēbant.—Cēsār obsidēs nobīlēs poscit.—Tempūs brevē est.—Nōn omnēs militēs sunt fortēs.—Ferrū utīlē est.—Aurū et ferrū sunt utīliā hominībūs (106, II., c).—Milēs vulnūs grāvē pātientēr tōlērāt.—Consul fortīs pēriculā nōn timēbit.—Ferrū utīlē hominībūs (106, II., c) est.—Militēs fortēs vulnērā grāviā pātientēr tōlērābunt.—Studiū est puērīs (106, II., c) utīlē.—Impērātōr militībūs (106, II., c) bēnignūs ērāt.—Cānis lūpō sīmīlis est.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The noble queen comes to the city.—The brave lieutenant endures patiently (his) severe wound.—All the soldiers hasten to the camp.—The brave chiefs will fortify many towns.—The noble hostages come to Cēsār (63, I., 57).—The time is uncertain.—Soldiers are not always useful.—Towns are useful for men (106, II., c).—Noble ambassadors are sent.—Many hostages are demanded by the consuls (93, II.).—All the soldiers will be called together.—Not all chiefs are noble.—Wine is sweet and iron is useful.—The dangers are not feared by the brave soldiers (93, II.).—The brave lieutenant praises the noble chief.—Dogs are like wolves (106, II.).—The study of *letters* (littērārū) is useful for all (106, II.).—The soldiers are kind to the prisoners (106, II.).—Gold is heavy.—Iron is not like gold (106, II.).

Even in these, the ending *is* is sometimes found in *nom. sing. masc.*; e. g., *tumultus equestris*, Liv., xxix., 35.

§ 12.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD CLASS.

LESSON XVII.

Adjectives.—Third Class.—One Ending.

(107.) ADJECTIVES of the *Third Class* have but one ending in the nominative for all three genders; *e. g.*, *fēlīx* (m., f., n.), *happy*; *audāx* (m., f., n.), *bold*; *paupēr* (m., f., n.), *poor*.

(108.) PARADIGM.—*Fēlīx*, *happy*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	fēlīx.	fēlīx.	fēlīx.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-īā.
G.	fēlīc-īs.	fēlīc-īs.	fēlīc-īs.	fēlīc-īūm.	fēlīc-īūm.	fēlīc-īūm.
D.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.
Acc.	fēlīc-ēm.	fēlīc-ēm.	fēlīx.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-īā.
Ab.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.

[*Rem. 1.* The abl. has *ē* instead of *ī* (*a*) in *paupēr*, *poor*; *sēnex*, *old* (gen. *sēnīs*); *princeps*, *chief*; *compos*, *possessed of*, and most ending in *ēs*; *e. g.*, *hospēs*, *guest*; *pubēs*, *grown up*, &c. Also in the compounds of *corpūs*, *cōlōr*, and *pēs*.

(*b*) Participles in *ns* have, as participles, *ē*, but as *adjectives* *ī*; *e. g.*, *flōrentē rōsā*, *the rose blooming*; *flōrentī rōsā*, *in a blooming rose*.

(*c*) Adjectives used as nouns take *ē*; *e. g.*, *sāpiēs*, *a wise man*, abl. *sāpientē*.

Rem. 2. The gen. pl. takes *ūm* instead of *īūm* in *vētūs*, *old* (*vētērūm*); *consors*, *partaking of*; *dēgēnēr*, *degenerate*; *dīvēs*, *rich*; *īnops*, *helpless*; *mēmōr*, *mindful*; *immēmōr*, *unmindful*; *supplex*, *suppliant*; *ūbēr*, *rich*; *vīgīl*, *watching*. Also in all which take *ē* in the abl.; *e. g.*, *princeps*, *prīncipē*, *prīncipūm*.]

(109.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

War, bellūm, i.*Fierce*, ātrōx, (ātrōc) is (107).*To wage, carry on*, gērērē.*Horse-soldier*, ēquēs, (ēquīt) is (m.).*Tenacious*, tēnax, (tēnāc) is (107).*Wise*, sāpiens, (sāpient) is (107).*Death*, mors, (mort) is (f.).*To renew*, rēdintēgrārē.*Rich*, dīvēs, (dīvīt) is (107).*To terrify*, terrērē.*Stag*, cervūs, i.*Powerful*, pōtens, (pōtent) is (107).*Scout*, explōrātōr, is (m.).*To kill*, occidērē.*Battle*, praeliūm, i.*And*, ēt (conj.).*Swift*, vēlox, (vēlōc) is.*Horse*, ēquus, i.*Citizen*, civīs, (civ) is (c., 25, IV.).

II. Example.

The inhabitants carry on a fierce war. | Incōlæ bellūm ātrox gērunt.
[Refer to 78, II., a.]

III. Translate into English.

Incōlæ bellā magnā ēt ātrōciā gērunt.—Nuntiūs vēlox ād castrā vēnit.—Equitēs vēlōcēs ād sylvām festinant.—Vir sāpiens mortēm nōn timēt.—Discipulūs mēmōriām tenācēm hābēt.—Mēmōriā in puēris est tēnax.—Impērātōr nuntiūm vēlōcēm mittēt.—Princīpēs fortēs praeliūm ātrox redintegrābunt.—Cervūs vēlox est.—Equūs vēlox currīt.—Cānēs sunt vēlōcēs.—Sāpiens (82, I., R.) nōn sempēr dīvēs est.—Dīvītēs nōn sempēr beātī sunt.—Princeps pōtens lēgātōs mittīt.—Princīpēs pōtentēs captivōs occidunt.—Impērātōr princīpēs omnēs convōcāt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The thick woods terrify the swift messenger.—The fierce battle terrifies all the inhabitants.—The noble general was praising the swift messenger.—The illustrious consul sends ambassadors to (63, I., ) the powerful chief.—The powerful chief will kill all the prisoners.—Rich (men) are not always wise.—The wise (man) does not fear the fierce battle.—The soldiers praise the rich citizen.—The memory in boys is always tenacious.—Dogs and horses are swift.—The consul will not renew the fierce battle.—The illustrious general will recall the swift horse-soldiers.—Rich citizens fear fierce wars.—The fierce battles were terrifying all the hostages.—The wise general calls-together all the ambassadors.—The fierce battle will be renewed.—All the prisoners will be killed by the powerful chiefs (93, II.).—The swift messengers are frightened.—Great wars are carried on.—Rich citizens are killed.

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

LESSON XVIII.

Nouns.—Fourth Declension.

(110.) THE *Fourth Declension* comprises all nouns whose gen. sing. ends in ūs (*long*). The nom. ending for *masculines* is ūs, and for *neuters* ū; *e. g.*, fruct-ūs, *fruit*, masc.; corn-ū, *horn*, neut.

(111.) The case-endings are as follows:

Sing.	Masc.	Neut.	Plur.	Masc.	Neut.
N. and V.	ūs.	ū.	N. and V.	ūs.	ūš.
Gen.	ūs.	ūs or ū.	Gen.	ūūm.	ūūm.
Dat.	ūī.	ū.	Dat.	ībūs.	ībūs.
Acc.	ūm.	ū.	Acc.	ūs.	ūš.
Abl.	ū.	ū.	Abl.	ībūs.	ībūs.

(112.) By adding these endings to the stems *fruct-* and *corn-*, we get the

PARADIGM.*

	Sing., fruit (m.).	Plur., fruit.		Sing., horn (n.).	Plur., horns.
N. and V.	fruct-ūs.	fruct-ūs.	N., A., V.	corn-ū.	corn-ūš.
Gen.	fruct-ūs.	fruct-ūūm.	Gen.	corn-ūs, or ū.	corn-ūūm.
Dat.	fruct-ūī.	fruct-ībūs.	Dat., Abl.	corn-ū.	corn-ībūs.
Acc.	fruct-ūm.	fruct-ūs.			
Abl.	fruct-ū.	fruct-ībūs.			

[*Rem.* 1. The following take ūbūs in dat. and abl. plur. instead of ībūs, viz., ācūs (f.), *needle*; arcūs (m.), *bow*; artūs (m.), *joint*; ficūs (f.), *fig-tree*; lācūs (m.), *lake*; partūs (m.), *birth*; portūs (m.), *harbor*; quercūs (f.), *oak*; spēcūs (m.), *den*; tribūs (f.), *tribe*; pēcū (n.), *cattle*; vērū (n.), *a spit*.†]

2. The *feminine* nouns of this declension are, ācūs, *needle*; anūs

* The fourth declension is only a contracted form of the third: thus.

N. fruct-us.
G. fruct-ūis, contr. fructūs.
D. fruct-ūī.
Acc. fruct-ūim, contr. fructūm, &c.

† The following verses embrace these:

Arcūs, ācūs, portūs, vērū,
Ficūs, lācūs, artūs,
Spēcūs, quercūs; also, pēcū.
Tribūs too, and partūs

old woman; *dōmūs*, *house*; *ficūs*, *fig*; *mānūs*, *hand*; *nūrūs*, *daughter-in-law*; *porticūs*, *gallery*; *tribūs*, *tribe*; *quercūs*, *oak*. Also, *īdūs*, *-ūm* (used only in plural), *the Ides*.*

3. *Dōmūs* (f.), *house*, is thus declined:

	N., V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	dōm-ūs.	-ūs. } -ī. }	-nī.	-ūm.	-ō.
Plur.	dōm-ūs.	-ūm. } -ōrum. }	-ībūs.	-ōs, -ūs (rarely). }	-ībūs.

4. The gen. *dōmī* is used only in the sense of *at home*; e. g., *dōmī mēæ*, *at my home*, *at my house*.

(113.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

To lead over, or across, *transducĕrĕ*.

Approach, *adventūs*, *ūs* (m.).

To await, *expectāre*.

Singing, *cantūs*, *ūs* (m.).

Fruit, *fructūs*, *ūs* (m.).

To adorn, *ornāre*.

Four, *quattuor* (indeclin.).

To build, *ædificāre*.

Horn, *cornū*, *ūs* (n.).

Army, *exercitūs*, *ūs* (m.).

Harbour, *portūs*, *ūs* (m.).

Enemy, *hostīs*, (host) *is* (c., 25, IV.).

Bird, *avis*, (āv) *is* (f.).

Grief, *luctūs*, *ūst* (m.).

To lay aside, *dēponĕrĕ*.

Sadness, *mœror*, *ōrist* (n.).

Tempest, *prœcellā*, æ.

To raise, *tollĕrĕ*.

Wave, *fluctūs*, *ūs* (m.).

Star, *sidūs*, (*sidĕr*) *is* (n.) (102).

Shore, *littūs*, (*littōr*) *is* (n.) (102).

Wind, *ventūs*, *ī* (m.).

Roll, *volvĕrĕ*.

Boundary, *fīnīs*, (*fīn*) *is* (m.).

The Rhine, *Rhēnūs*, *ī*.

Ship, *navīs*, (*nāv*) *is* (f.).

II. Examples.

(a) *The Helvetians lead part of their forces across the Rhine.*

Helvētī partēm cōpiārūm Rhēnūm transducunt.

(b) *Cæsar leads a great army of Germans across the Rhine.*

Cæsār magnūm Germānōrūm exercitūm trans Rhēnūm transducit.

Rule of Syntax.—(a) Verbs compounded with the preposition *trans* are generally followed by *two accusatives*; e. g., *partem* and *Rhenum* in (a).

(b) But sometimes the preposition is repeated; e. g., *trans* in (b).

III. Translate into English.

Helvētī Cæsārīs (38, b) *adventūm expectābant.*—*Adventū*

* *Ācūs*, *mānūs*, *tribūs*, *dōmūs*, *porticūs*, and *īdūs*. The rest are fem. by the general rule (25, II.).

† *Mœror* = *silent grief*; *luctūs* = *mourning*.

(abl., 55, a) Cæsāris hostēs terrentūr.—Āvis puellām cantū (55, a) dēlectāt.—Fructūs arbōrēs (acc. pl.) ornant.—Fructūs terræ āgrīcōlām dēlectant.—Pātēr dōmūs (acc. pl.) quāttūr ædificābīt.—Nāvēs in portū sunt.—Rēginā luctūm dēpōnīt.—Sāpientēs luctūm ēt mērorēm dēpōnunt.—Prōcellā magnōs fluctūs (acc. pl.) tollēbāt.—Prōcellā fluctūs (acc. pl.) ād sīdērā tollīt.—Puēr taurūm cornū (abl., 55, a) tēnēt.—Cornuā cervī magnā sunt.—Fluctūs magnī ventīs (55, a) volvuntūr.—Lēgātūs exercītūm dūcīt.—Lēgātūs āb Æduīs (from the Æduans; i. e., their country) exercītūm dūcīt.—Āgrīcōlā taurūm cornībūs (55, a) tēnēbāt.—Adventūs patrīs puellām dēlectābīt.—Cæsār exercītūm flūmēn transdūcīt (113, II., a).—Lēgātūs pēr finēs Helvētiōrūm exercītūm dūcēt.—Ariōvistūs Germānōs trans Rhēnūm transdūcīt (113, II., b).

Rem. Home is translated by dōmūm, the acc. of domus; thus, *The sailor leads the boy home*—Nautā puērūm dōmūm dūcīt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

My father will build four houses.—The tempest is rolling great waves to the shores (63, I., 5).—Vast waves are raised to the stars by tempests.—The turbid sea is rolling vast waves to the shores.—The farmer leads the girls home from (ab) the city.—Cæsar will lead the army over the turbid river.—Cassius leads the army through the boundaries of the Æduans and Helvetians.—The Helvetians await the coming of Cæsar.—The boy will hold the bull by the horns (55, a).—The farmer is delighted by the fruits (55, a) of the earth.—The king lays aside his griefs and sadness.—The singing of the birds (āviūm) will delight the soldiers.—The trees are adorned by many fruits.—There are many large ships in the harbour.—The winds raise the great waves to the stars.—The lieutenant was leading the army of the Æduans across the Rhine. (Repeat *trans* (113, II., b)).—The horns of bulls are large.—The queen will lay aside her grief and sadness.—The master sends his slaves home

§ 14.

FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

LESSON XIX.

Nouns.—Fifth Declension.

(114.) THE *Fifth Declension* comprises all nouns whose *gen. ending* is *ĕi*. The *nom. ending* is *ĕs*.

(115.) There are but few nouns of this declension, and they are all *feminine* except *diĕs*, *day*, and *meridiĕs*, *mid-day*; and even *diĕs* is *fem.* in the *sing.* when it means a *fixed* day.

(116.) The case-endings are as follows:

	N. V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ĕs.	ĕi.	ĕi.	ĕm.	ĕ.
Plur.	ĕs.	ĕrĭm.	ĕbŭs.	ĕs.	ĕbŭs.

Rem. In the *gen.* and *dat.* the *e* in *ei* is *long* when a vowel stands before it; *e. g.*, *di-ĕi*: *short* when a consonant stands before it; *e. g.*, *fid-ĕi*.

(117.) By adding the endings to the stems *r-* and *dĭ-*, we get the

PARADIGMS.

Thing (f.).	N. V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Singular.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕi.	r-ĕi.	r-ĕm.	r-ĕ.
Plural.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕrĭm.	r-ĕbŭs.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕbŭs.
Day (m.).					
Singular.	dĭ-ĕs.	dĭ-ĕi.	dĭ-ĕi.	dĭ-ĕm.	dĭ-ĕ.
Plural.	dĭ-ĕs.	dĭ-ĕrĭm.	dĭ-ĕbŭs.	dĭ-ĕs.	dĭ-ĕbŭs.

Rem. Only *rĕs*, *diĕs*, *spĕciĕs*, have the *plur. complete*; the *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. plur.* are wanting in all others.

(118.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Hope, *spĕs*, *ĕi*.

Day, *diĕs*, *ĕi* (m.).

To appoint, *constitŭĕrĕ*.

To lead out, *ĕdŭcĕrĕ*.

To lead back, *rĕdŭcĕrĕ*.

Line of battle, *ĕlĕs*, *ĕi*.

To draw up, *instrŭĕrĕ*.

About, *cĭrcĭtĕr* (*prep.* with *acc.*).

About mid-day, *cĭrcĭtĕr meridiĕm*.

Victory, *victoriĕs*, *ĕ*.

Mid-day, *meridiĕs*, *ĕi* (m.).

Sixth, *sextŭs*, *ĕ*, *ŭm*.

Reward, *prĕmiŭm*, *i*.

Sun, *sŏl*, (*sŏl*) *is* (m.).

Setting, *ŏccŭsŭs*, *ŭs*.

Seventh, *septimŭs*, *ĕ*, *ŭm*.

Out of, *ĕ* or *ex* (*prep.* with *ablative*).

Faith, *promise*, *fidĕs*, *ĕi*.

The next, *postĕrŭs*, *ĕ*, *ŭm*.

To fight, *pugnĕrĕ*.

II. *Examples.*

- (a) *Cæsar draws up the line of battle.* | Cæsār āciēm instrūit.
 (b) *The next day they move the camp.* | Postērō dĩē castrā mōvent.
 (c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The point of time at which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative; e. g., in (b) *postero die.*—*At sun-set* = sōlis occāsū.

III. *Translate into English.*

Spēs victōriæ militēs delectāt.—Militēs spē (93, II., R.) victōriæ delectantūr.—Dĩēs venīt.—Cæsār dĩēm constitūit.—Cæsār dĩēm cūm lēgātīs constitūit.—Impērātōr fortis exercitūm ēducīt, ēt āciēm instrūit.—Circītēr mēridĩēm pugnant.—Cæsār, circītēr mēridĩēm, exercitūm īn castrā rēducīt.—Sextō dĩē (118, II., c) Cæsār exercitūm ex castrīs ēducīt.—Spēs prēmiorū pūērōs delectāt.—Pūēri spē prēmiorū delectantūr.—Sōlis occāsū Helvētīi castrā mōvēbant.—Septimō dĩē Belgæ cōpiās omnēs ex castrīs ēducēbant.—Sōlis occāsū Ariovistūs āciēm instrūit.—Circītēr mēridĩēm prōliūm rēdintēgrābunt.—Consul clārūs dĩēm cūm lēgātīs constitūit.—Prīncipēs nobīlēs fidēm viōlant.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The hope of victory delights the noble chiefs.—The consul about mid-day leads out the army and renews the fierce battle.—The powerful chiefs, at the-setting of-the-sun (118, II., c), kill all the prisoners.—The day will come.—The consul, at the setting of the sun, will renew the great battle.—At the setting of the sun the great battle will be renewed.—On the sixth day all the forces will be led back to the camp.—The Germans appoint a day with Cæsar.—The next day the Germans move (their) camp.—Ariovistus, on the next day, draws but the line of battle.—Cæsar appoints the mid-day with the ambassadors.—About mid-day the messengers come.—About mid-day the consul will come.—Cæsar will not violate (his) promise.

PRONOUNS. (XX.—XXXI.)

LESSON XX. 2.

Proneuns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal.—Verbs, First Person.

(119.) THE three pronouns *ěgō, I; tū, thou; suī, of himself, herself, itself*, are called *Substantive*, because they are used as substantives, not as adjectives; and *Personal*, because they express the person *speaking*, the person *spoken to*, and the person *spoken of*.

(120.) The *Substantive-Personal* Pronoun of the *first person* is thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ěgō, <i>I.</i>	měi, <i>of me.</i>	mīhl, <i>to me.</i>	mě, <i>me.</i>	mě, <i>by me, &c.</i>
Plur.	nōs, <i>we.</i>	nostrī, nostrūm, } <i>of us.</i>	nōbis, <i>to us.</i>	nōs, <i>us.</i>	nōbis, <i>by us, &c.</i>

(121.) Derived from the *Substantive-Personal* Pronouns are the *Adjective-Personal* or *Possessive* Pronouns; called *Adjective*, because they agree with nouns; and *Possessive*, because they express possession (*my, thy, his, &c.*).

(122.) The *Adjective-Personal* Pronouns of the *first person* are declined, in both sing. and plur., like adjectives of the *First Class* (76, 77, a). They are,

(a)	Derived from mēi,	N. mēis, mēā, mēum, <i>my, mine.</i> G. mēi, mēas, mēi, <i>of my (voc. masc. mī).</i> &c. &c. (like b ō n ā s, 76.)
(b)	" from nostrī,	N. nostrēr, nostrā, nostrum, <i>our, ours.</i> G. nostrī, nostræ, nostrī, <i>of our.</i> &c. &c. (like pulchēr, 77, a).

(123.) The following forms of *Verbs in the first person* must now be learned:

FIRST CONJUGATION : FIRST PERSON ENDINGS.

INFIN. ACT., <i>ārē</i> .			INFIN. PASS., <i>ārī</i> .			
	Indic. present.		Imperfect.		Futura.	
	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>
1st Sing.	ō.	ōr.	ābām.	ābār.	ābō.	ābōr.
1st Plur.	āmūs.	āmūr.	ābāmūs.	ābāmūr.	ābimūs.	ābimūr.

(124.) Thus, from the stem *ām*, of *ām-ār-ē*, to love, we have :

INFIN. ACT., <i>āmārē</i> , to love.		INFIN. PASS., <i>āmārī</i> , to be loved.			
Indic. Pres.		Imperfect.		Futura.	
<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>
ām-ō, <i>I love.</i>	ām-ōr, <i>I am loved.</i>	ām-ābām, <i>I was loving.</i>	ām-ābār, <i>I was loved.</i>	ām-ābō, <i>I shall love.</i>	ām-ābōr, <i>I shall be loved.</i>
ām-āmūs, <i>we love.</i>	ām-āmūr, <i>we are loved.</i>	ām-ābāmūs, <i>we were loving.</i>	ām-ābāmūr, <i>we were loved.</i>	ām-ābimūs, <i>we shall love.</i>	ām-ābimūr, <i>we shall be loved.</i>

[*Rem.* The student will learn the *passive* endings readily by observing that *r* is the passive characteristic, which is added to the active; the consonant ending of the active, where it has one, being dropped.]

(125.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Book, *libēr*, *bri* (m.), (64).Friend, *amicūs*, *i* (m.).Brother, *frātēr*, (*fratr*) *is* (m.).Cicero, *Cicērō*, (*Cicērōn*) *is* (m.).Sister, *sōrōr*, (*sōrōr*) *is* (f.).With (i. e., at one's house), *apūd*
(prep. acc.).Fault, *culpā*, *ae*.Yesterday, *hērī* (adv.).All my (possessions), *omniā meā*
(neut. pl.).Five, *quinquē*.Sharply, *ācrītēr*.To-morrow, *crās* (adv.).Very much, greatly, *valdē* (adv.).To blame, *vītūpērārē*.To sing, *cantārē*.Three, *trēs*, *triā* (adj. of Class II.).

II. Examples.

(a) *I have a book.*Est mihī *libēr* (i. e., there is
a book to me).

Rule of Syntax.—The dative case is used with *est* or *sunt*, to denote the person who *has* or *possesses* something.*

The thing possessed is nom. to *est* or *sunt*.

(b) *The boy was walking with me in the garden yesterday.*

Puer mēcūm in hortō hērī ambulābāt.

Rule of Position.—The preposition *cūm* is suffixed to the personal pronouns; e. g., *mēcūm*, with me; *nōbiscūm*, with us, instead of *cūm mē*, *cūm nōbīs*.

* Recollect that the personal and possessive pronouns are not expressed in Latin, unless emphasis or perspicuity demands it.]

* This is called the *Dative of Possession*, and should always be referred to as such by the pupil.

III. *Translate into English.*

Ēgō cantō, amicus audit.—*Ēgō et frater ambulamus.**—*Ēgō et filius meus festinamus.*—*Sunt mihi tres libri* (125, II., a).—*Sunt mihi quattuor equi et quinque canes.*—*In horto ambulabam.*—*Ā bonis* (82, I., R.) *amabor.*—*Cicerō ā me laudatur.*—*Hostes nobiscum* (125, II., b) *acriter pugnant.*—*Hērī in agris ambulabamus.*—*Pater ad nos nuntium mittet.*—*Culpā nostrā est.*—*Crās in horto cānābimur.*—*Dēlectābimur.*—*Puerī in horto nobiscum ambulabunt.*—*Littērārū studiū†* (38, b) *mihi* (106, II.) *utile erit.*—*Ā māgistrō laudābār.*—*Omniā meā mecūm portō.*—*Ēgō ā fratre valde amōr.*—*Nōs laudāmūr, puellae vituperantur.*—*Nōs ā māgistrō verbērābimūr.*

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

We praise the beautiful girl.—We have (125, II., a) four large cups.—I have (= there are to me) four sons and three daughters (125, II., a).—We shall praise Cæsar's brave soldiers.—I walk, my friend rides.—I and my sister will ride.*—I and my brother will walk* in the king's garden.†—I and my father will sup* in the garden to-morrow.—We shall always praise the wise and good.—The works of Cicero will be praised by us (93, II., b), the works of Cæsar by the soldiers.—The fault is mine.—We have many large cups (125, II., a).—I have three beautiful sisters.—I have four brothers.—My father will walk with me in Cæsar's garden (*Cæsaris in horto*).‡—The study of literature is useful to us (106, II.).—To-day we shall sup with (apud) Crassus.

LESSON XXI.

Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, continued.—Verbs, First Person, continued.

(126.) THE following are some of the *endings* for the *first person* in verbs of the

* If a predicate have two or more nominatives, connected by a conjunction, it takes generally the plural number; and if the nominatives be of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, the second rather than the third.

† *Littērārū studiū* = the *pursuit* (or study) of literature (letters).

‡ In all such cases, put the prep. *between* the genitive and the noun governed by the prep.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	mōn-	eō.	eōr.	ēmūs.	ēmūr.
Imperfect.	mōn-	ēbām.	ēbār.	ēbāmūs.	ēbāmūr.
Future.	mōn-	ēbō.	ēbōr.	ēbimūs.	ēbimūr.

[*Rem.* The student will learn these forms readily by observing that they differ chiefly from those of the *first* conjugation in having *ē* before the last syllable instead of *ā*. By adding the endings, as above given, to the stem *mon-*, which stands at the left hand, he will form the paradigm of *mōnērē*, to *advise*.]

(127.) The following are some of the *endings* for the *first* person in the third and fourth conjugations.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	rēg-	ō.	ōr.	īmūs.	īmūr.
Imperfect.	rēg-	ēbām.	ēbār.	ēbāmūs.	ēbāmūr.
Future.	rēg-	ām.	ār.	ēmūs.	ēmūr.

[*Rem.* Compare these with the endings of the 2d conj., and observe that,

1. In the *pres.* *e* is dropped in the *sing.*, and *ī* assumed in the *plur.*
2. The imperfect is precisely the same.
3. But the *future* is a new form.
4. By adding the endings to the stem placed at the left, you form the paradigm of *rēgērē*, to *rule*.]

(128.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	aud-	iō.	iōr.	īmūs.	īmūr.
Imperfect.	aud-	iēbām.	iēbār.	iēbāmūs.	iēbāmūr.
Future.	aud-	iām.	iār.	iēmūs.	iēmūr.

[*Rem.* Observe that the endings of the 4th conj. differ from those of the 3d simply by prefixing the letter *i*. In the 1st plur. the *i* prefixed combines with that of the endings *īmūs*, *īmūr*, and forms *īmūa* *īmūr*.]

(129.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Fierce, fērōx, (fērōc) *is* (107).

Nothing, nīhīl (neut. indecl.).

To be well, vālērē.

To arrange, dispōnērē.

Wicked, imprōbūs, & *ūm*.

Garrison, præsidiūm, *I*.

Latin, Lātinūs, & *ūm*.

Antony, Antōniūs, *I*.

II. Example.

I have nothing to do with
Antony (125, II., a).

Nīhīl est mīhī cūm Antōniō
(*i. e.*, there is nothing to me
with Antony).

III. Translate into English.

2d Conjugation.—Ēgō ēt frātēr vālēmūs (125, III.*).—Ā māgistrō dōcēbimūr.—Linguām Lātinām dōceō.—Ā pātrē mōneōr.—Ā māgistrō bōnō dōcēmūr.—Āb hostē tīmēbār.—Hostiūm adventūm nōn tīmēbō. *3d Conjugation.*—Rēgēbāmūr.—Præsidiā dispōnēbāmūs.—Ā Deō rēgimūr.—Ēgō exercitūm dūcām.—Ā filiō meō rēlinquār.—Lūpōs fērōcēs occidimūs. *4th Conjugation.*—Castellā mūniēmūs.—Āviūm cantūm audimūs.—Crās ād urbēm vēniām.—Nihil est mīhī cūm imprōbis.—Nihil est nobīs cūm hostibūs.

IV. Translate into Latin.

2d Conjugation.—I and my son are well (125, III.*).—We shall see the brave soldiers.—I am taught by good masters.—We were fearing the approach of the enemy.—I was teaching the Latin language.—We shall be feared by the enemy.—We shall be advised by our father. *3d Conjugation.*—We were led by a brave general.—I was killing three wolves.—We are ruled by a good king.—We shall arrange the garrisons.—I shall bring (dūcērē) my daughter from (ab) the city.—We shall lead the forces of the Germans. *4th Conjugation.*—We were heard by the master.—We shall sleep in the little town (89, II.).—We shall come to the town to-morrow.—I shall be heard by the girls.—We were fortifying the towns.—We have nothing to do with the foolish (129, II.).—I have nothing to do with Cæsar.

LESSON XXII.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal.—Verbs, Second Person.

(130.) THE Substantive-Personal Pronoun of the *second* person is thus declined :

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	tū, thou.	tui, of thee.	tibi, to thee.	tē, thee.	tī, thou.	tē, by.
Plur.	vōs, you.	vestri, } of vestrum, } you.	vōbis, to you.	vōs, you.	vōs, you.	vōbis, by.

(131.) The following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person of verbs of the

FIRST CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	am-	ās.	āris.	ātis.	āminī.
Imp.	am-	ābas.	ābāris.	ābātis.	ābāminī.
Fut.	am-	ābis.	ābēris.	ābitis.	ābīminī.

(132.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Yesterday, hēri. (adv.).*To wound*, vulnērārē.*To-day*, hōdiē (adv.).*To fight*, pugnārē.

II. Translate into English.

Crās mecūm cōnābīs.—Tū mē āmās, ēgō tē āmō.—Vōs vōbiscūm pugnātīs.—Tū cantās, nōs audīmūs.—In hortō ambūlābātīs.—Tū ā pātrē valdē āmārīs.—Vōs vītūpērāminī, nōs laudāmūr.—Nihil est tibi cūm Cēsārē.—Crās vōbiscūm cōnābō.—Nōs laudābīmūr, vōs vītūpērābīmīnī.—Nihil vōbīs est cūm bonis.—Hēri ambulābātīs.—Hōdiē pugnābītīs.—Laudābāminī.—Vulnērābīmīnī.—Vōcātīs.—Vōcāminī.—Āmātīs.—Ānīāminī.—Cantābātīs.—Vōcābāminī.

III. Translate into Latin.

To-day ye were supping with us (125, II., b).—Ye love us, we love you.—Ye were singing, we were hearing.—Ye have nothing to do with the king (129, II.).—Thou wast greatly loved by Cæsar.—Ye shall be praised by our master.—Ye shall be blamed by the good (82, I., R.).—Ye are called by the messenger.—Thou fightest with thyself* (125, II., b).—Ye shall sup with us to-morrow.—Thou wilt fight to-morrow.—Thou wast loving.—Thou wast loved.—Thou wilt blame.—Thou wilt be blamed.—Ye are praising.—Ye are praised.—Thou woundest.—Thou art wounded.

LESSON XXIII.

Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, continued.—Verbs, Second Person, Second Conjugation.

(133.) THE following are some of the *endings* for the *second* person, in verbs of the

* Tēcūm.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	mōn-	ēs.	ēris.	ētis.	ēmīni.
Imp.	mōn-	ēbās.	ēbāris.	ēbātis.	ēbāmīni.
Fut.	mōn-	ēbīs.	ēbēris.	ēbitis.	ēbimīni.

(134.) The *Adjective-Personal* (or *Possessive*) Pronouns of the Second Person are, *tū*s, *ā*, *ū*m, *thy*; and *vestēr*, *vestrā*, *vestrū*m, *your*.

(a) Derived from *tū*ī, | N. *tuūs*, *ā*, *ū*m, *thy*, *thine*.

G. *tuī*, *æ*, *ī*, *of thy*, &c.

(b) Derived from *vestrī*, | N. *vestēr*, *vestrā*, *vestrū*m, *your*.

G. *vestrī*, *vestræ*, *vestrī*, *of your*.

(135.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Thou art</i> , <i>ēs</i> (2d person sing. ind. pres. of <i>esse</i>).	<i>Of, concerning</i> , <i>dē</i> (prep. abl.).
<i>Ye are</i> , <i>estis</i> (2d person pl. of do.).	<i>To laugh</i> , <i>ridērē</i> .
<i>I was</i> , <i>ērām</i> (1st imperf. do.).	<i>To rejoice</i> , <i>gaudērē</i> .
<i>Cause</i> , } <i>causā</i> .	<i>Safety</i> , <i>sālūs</i> , (<i>sālūt</i>) <i>is</i> (f.).
<i>For the sake of</i> , } <i>causā</i> (abl.).	<i>Leader, guide</i> , <i>dux</i> , (<i>duc</i>) <i>is</i> (m.).
<i>To learn</i> , <i>discērē</i> .	<i>Why</i> , <i>cūr</i> (adv.).
	<i>Because, that</i> , <i>quōd</i> (conj.).

II. Examples.

(a) *Nē* is an interrogative particle used in asking questions.

It is annexed to the word to which it especially refers; *e. g.*,

(1) Do you teach the boy? | *Tū nē puērūm dōcēs?*

(2) Do you teach the boy? | *Dōcēs nē puērūm?*

(3) Do you teach the boy? | *Puērūm nē dōcēs?*

In (1) *tū* has the emphasis; in (2) *dōcēs*; and in (3) *puērūm*.

(b) Ye are warned, for the | *Vestræ sālūtis causā*
sake of your (own) safety. | *mōnēmīni*.

Rule of Position.—*Causā*, for the sake of (the abl. of *causā*, a cause); is always placed after the genitive which depends on it.

(c) I was your leader. | *Dux ēgō vestēr ērām*.

III. Translate into English.

Vidēs nē servū meūm? (135, II., 2).—*Tuæ sālūtis causā* (135, II., b) *mōnērīs*.—*Cūr ridētis?*—*Vestræ sālūtis causā mōnēmīni*.—*Gaudeō quōd tū ēt pātēr tuūs vālētis* (125, III., *).

—Vidēbāsnē milītēs?—Dē culpā tuā mōnēbāris.—Cūr rīdēbātis.—Hostiūm adventūm nōn tīmēbīs.—*Tuæ sālūtis causā mōnēbēris.—Nōs discēmūs, vōs dōcēbīmīnī.—Tīmētisnē Cæsāris adventūm?—Esnē tū beātūs?—Culpā tuā est (*the fault is thine*).—Puērī in hortō vōbiscūm ambūlābant.—Māgistēr ēgō vestēr oram (135, II., c).

IV. Translate into Latin.*

[The *emphatic words* are in italics.]

Did you *see* your master?—Do you *fear* the approach of Cæsar?—Are *you* happy?—You were warned (advised) for the sake of your own safety.—Are you and your father *well*? (125, III., *).—The fault was yours.—You shall see the enemy, but (*sēd*) shall not fear (them).—I am your friend.—I was your friend.—You teach, but we learn.—You shall teach, but we shall learn.—Why do you not (*nōn*) fear the master?—You were warned of (*d e*) your fault.—Do you *see* your slaves?—Are *you* Cæsar?—Why do you fear the master?—You shall see great cities and many men.—We shall sup with you to-morrow.—You shall be warned, for the sake of your own safety.—We rejoice that you and your daughter are well (125, III., *).

LESSON XXIV.

Verbs, Second Person, Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(136.) THE following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person in verbs of the

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	ACTIVE ENDINGS.		PASSIVE ENDINGS.	
		2d Sing.	2d Plur.	2d Sing.	2d Plur.
Pres.	reg-	īs.	ītīs.	ērīs.	īmīnī.
Imper.	reg-	ēbās.	ēbātīs.	ēbāris.	ēbāmīnī.
Fut.	reg-	ēs.	ētīs.	ērīs.	ēmīnī.

(137.) The following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person in verbs of the

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	ACTIVE ENDINGS.		PASSIVE ENDINGS.	
		2d Sing.	2d Plur.	2d Sing.	2d Plur.
Pres.	aud-	īs.	ītīs.	īris.	īmīnī.
Imp.	aud-	iēbās.	iēbātīs.	iēbāris.	iēbāmīnī.
Fut.	aud-	iēs.	iētīs.	iēris.	iēmīnī.

* When *you*, *your* occur, translate them both in sing. and plur. for the sake of practice.

(138.) *Observe,*

- (a) That the present endings of the 3d and 4th conjugations are nearly alike, the vowel (i) of the *fourth* being long (ī).
 (b) That the imperfect and future endings of the *fourth* conjugation differ from those of the third by prefixing the letter i.

EXERCISE.

(139.) *Vocabulary.**Plant, plantā, æ.**To sow, to plant, sērērē.**To find, invēnirē.**Orator, orātōr, (ōrātōr) is (m.).**Voice, vox, (vōc) is (f.).**To read, lēgērē.**Whence, undē (adv.).**Long, longē (adv.).**Badly, mālē.**To punish, pūnirē.**So, tām (adv.).**Bird, aviis, (āv) is (f.)*(140.) *Translate into English.*

3d Conjugation.—Cūr nōn scribīs.—Arbōrēs ēt plantās sērebātis.—Hōdiē ad Cæsārēm mittēris.—Cūr tām mālē scribīs?—Ad castrā rēducēmīnī.—Lēgis-nē Cīcērōnīs ōpērā?—Scribīs-nē ēpistolām ad Cæsārēm? *4th Conjugation.*—Undē vēnīs?—Cūr tām longē dormīs?—Māgistrū bōnū invēniēs.—Audīs-nē māgistrī vōcēm?—Cūr nōn vēniētis?—Ā Cæsārē audīris.—Ā māgistrō pūniēmīnī.—Ōrātōrēm audiētis.—In hortō dormiebātis.—Cantūm aviūm audītis.

(141.) *Translate into Latin.* [Refer to 135, II.]

3d Conjugation.—Are you writing a letter?—Thou wast planting a tree to-day.—Were (you) reading the works of Cicero?—Why do you read so badly?—Are you writing a letter to the messenger?—Thou wilt read Cæsar to-day.—Thou art sent to the camp.—Thou wilt be led by the ambassadors. *4th Conjugation.*—Why do you not come?—Ye shall hear the voice of Cæsar.—Thou wilt sleep in the camp.—Ye shall be heard by the master.—Thou shalt be punished.—Ye are heard.—Thou shalt hear the singing of the birds.

LESSON XXV.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal, Third Person.

(142.) THE *Substantive Pronoun* of the *third person* is thus declined :

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	—	sui, of himself, herself, itself.	sibi, to himself, &c.	sē, himself, &c.	sē, by himself, &c.
Plur.	—	sui, of themselves.	sibi, to themselves.	sē, themselves.	sē, by themselves, &c.

(143.) The *Adjective Pronoun* of the *third person* is declined like an adjective of the first class: thus,

Derived from s ū i, | N. suus, ā, ūm, *his, hers, its, his own.*
 | G. sui, æ, i, *of his, hers, its, &c.*

Rem. Observe that sui is not a regular pronoun of the third person, like the English *he, she, it*, but reflexive; e. g., puer sē laudat, *the boy praises himself*. It therefore has no *nom.* case. [The *nom.* pronouns *he, she, it*, are not often expressed in Latin; but when they *must* be, a demonstrative pronoun, generally *hic, is, or ille, is* employed.]

EXERCISE.

(144.) Vocabulary.

Hand, mānus, ūs (f.) (112, 2).
 To love (with esteem), dilig-ērē.
 To live, vīv-ērē.
 To contend, contend-ērē.
 To defend, defend-ērē.
 To burn, incend-ērē.
 Townsman, oppidānus, i.
 A Sequanian, Sēquānus, i.

Among, intēr (prep.).
 Corn, frumentū, i.
 From (prep.) a or ab.†
 A legion, lēgiō, (lēgiō) is (f.).
 To rule, command, impēr-ārē (with dat. of person).
 To send away, } dīmitt-ērē.
 dismiss, }

(145.) Examples.

- (a) Cæsar calls Divitiacus to himself. Cæsār Dīvitīacūm ad sē vocāt.
 (b) The girl writes the letter with her own hand. Puellā ēpistolām mānū suā scribīt.
 [Rem. Sē is often doubled, for the sake of emphasis.]
 (c) Men always love themselves. Hōmīnēs sempēr sēsē dīlgunt.
 (d) The good live not for themselves, but for all. Bōnī nōn sibi, sēd omnībūs vīvunt.

(146.) Translate into English.

Hostēs intēr sē contendunt.—Oppidānī sē suāquē āb hostībūs dēfendēbant.—Helvētīī oppidā suā omniā incendunt.—Cæsār trēs lēgiōnēs sēcūm hābēt.—Consul lēgātōs āb sē dīmittēt.—Sāpiens omniā suā* sēcūm portāt.—Helvētīī ēt Sēquānī ob-

* Omniā suā = *all his (property)*; the noun being understood.

† A is used before consonants only; ab before either vowels or consonants

sidēs intēr sēsē dābant.—Bōnī sēsē nōn dīlīgunt.—Helvētīī frūmentūm omnē* sēcūm portābant.—Imprōbī sībī sempēr vīvunt.—Sāpiens sībī sempēr impērāt (147).

(147.) *Rule of Syntax.*—The *Dative* is used with some verbs signifying *to command, to rule, to obey*.

(148.) *Translate into Latin.*

Good men do not praise themselves.—The townsmen were fighting with each other (*inter se*).—The wise man always carries *all* his (property) with him.—The bad† always love themselves.—The general has three legions with him.—The townsmen will carry all their corn with them.—The bad do not rule themselves (147).—The Æduans will defend themselves and their (property) from the soldiers.—Cæsar was dismissing the messenger from himself.—The Germans will burn their villages.

LESSON XXVI.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

(149.) THE *Demonstrative Pronouns* are so called because they are used to *point out* an object; *e. g., this, that, these, those.*

(150.) *Is, that* (often used for *he, she, it* (143, R.)), is thus declined; also *idēm, the very same*, compounded of *is* and *dem*.

	Singular.	Plural	Singular.	Plural
N.	is, eā, id.	īī, ēē, ēā.	idēm, eādēm, Idēm.	īīdēm, eēdēm, eādēm.
G.	ējūs.	eōrūm, eārum, eōrūm.	ējūsdēm.	eōrundēm, eā- rundēm, eō- rundēm.
D.	ēī.	īīs, or eīs.	eīdēm.	īīsdēm.
Acc.	ēūm, ēām, id.	eōs, eās, eā.	ēundēm, ean- dēm, idēm.	eōsdēm, eās- dēm, eādēm.
Abl.	eō, eā, eō.	īīs, or eīs.	eōdēm, eādēm, eōdēm.	īīsdēm.

(151.) The following forms of the verb *esse, to be*, must now be learned.

* Frūmentūm omnē = *all their corn.*

† Improbī.

TENSES.	SINGULAR.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.
Present.	sūm, <i>I am.</i>	ēs, <i>thou art.</i>	est, <i>he, she, &c., is.</i>
Imperfect.	ērām, <i>was.</i>	ērās.	ērāt.
Future.	erō, <i>shall or will be.</i>	eris.	erit.
	PLURAL.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.
Present.	sūmūs, <i>we are.</i>	estis, <i>ye are.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>
Imperfect.	erāmūs, <i>were.</i>	erātis.	erant.
Future.	erimūs.	eritis.	erunt.

EXERCISE.

(152.) Vocabulary.

To keep off, }
To prevent, } prōhibēre.

To refrain, tempērāre.

Merchant, mercātōr, (mercātōr) is (m.).

Colour, cōlōr, (cōlōr) is (m.).

And, atque (conj.).

Plato, Plātō, (Plātōn) is.

Elegant, ēlēgans, (elegant) is.

Gladly, willingly, libentēr (adv.).

Way, journey, itēr, (itiner) is (n.).

Kingdom, regnūm, l.

Flower, flōs, (flōr) is (m.).

Writer, scriptōr, (scriptōr) is (m.).

Never, nunquām (adv.).

(153.) Examples.

(a) The Helvetians contend with the Germans, and keep them off from their boundaries.

Helvētīi cūm Germānīs contendunt, eōs quē suis finībūs prōhibent.*

(b) The father calls his (own) son to him (self).

Pātēr filiūm suūm ad sē vō cāt.

(c) The father calls his daughter and her son to him (self).

Pātēr filiām suām et filiūm ejūs ad sē vōcāt.

☞ Observe carefully, that if *his, hers, its*, refers to the principal subject of the sentence, it is expressed by the *possessive* (suūs, ā, ūm); but if not, by the *genitive* (ejūs) of the demonstrative (is, eā, id).

(154.) Translate into English.

(1) Is, eā, id, used for *he, she, it* (personal).

Ilī ab injuriā tempērānt.—Is est in provinciā tuā.—Mercā tōrēs ad eōs sēpē vēniunt.—Ab iis multā (82, I., R.) poscīmūs —Belgæ cūm Œduīs contendunt, eōsque suis finībūs (153, a) prōhibent.

(2) Is, used as *demonstrative, this, that*; also, id e m, as *the same*

* *Suis finibus* is in the ablative. All verbs of *separating, depriving, &c.*, may take a noun in the ablative, with the direct object in the accusative.

In eo itinere Cæsar Crassum videt.—Dumnorix, eo tempore (118, II., c) regnum tenebat.—Non semper idem floribus (125, II., a) est color.—In ea provincia sunt quattuor legiones.

(3) Distinction between ejūs and suūs, ā, ū m.

Cicero est scriptor clarus; ejūs libros libenter legimus.—Cæsar ad se Dumnorigem atque filium ejūs vocabit.—Plato est scriptor elegans; ejūs opera libenter lego.

Dux ego vestor eram.—Es-ne tu Socrates?—Estisne beati?—Cæsar dux vestor erat.

(155.) *Translate into Latin.*

They were walking in the garden yesterday.—The king will give them (dat., 54) rewards.—They are in Gaul.—Merchants never come to them.—We were demanding rewards of (ab) them.—In that province Cæsar finds many deserters.—In that province there are three legions.—At that time (abl., 118, II., c) Cæsar was leading the army.—Horses (125, II., a) have not always the same colour.—Cæsar calls Divitiacus and his brothers to him (self).—Cæsar is an elegant writer; we read his works willingly.—I am your leader.—You shall be our leader.—Cæsar was our leader.—The Æduans contend with the Helvetians, and keep them off their boundaries.

LESSON XXVII.

Demonstrative Pronouns, continued.

(156.) THE Demonstrative hīc, hæc, hōc, *this*, points out an object which is present to the speaker, and is called demonstrative of the first person; e. g., *this book (of mine)*, hīc liber.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	hīc, hæc, hōc.	hūjūs.	huīc.	hunc, hanc, hōc.	hōc, hæc, hōc.
Plur.	hī, hæ, hæc.	hōrūm, hārūm, hōrūm.	hīs.	hōs, hās, hæc.	hīs.

Rem. Hic is used also (as was stated 143, B.) for *he, she, it*; e. g., hīc dicit, *he (this man) speaks*.

(57.) Istē, istā, istūd, *this, that*, points out an

object which is present to the *person spoken to*, and is called the demonstrative of the *second* person; *e. g.*, *that book (of yours)*, *istē liber*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	istē, istā, istū.	istiūs.	istī.	istūm, istām, istūd.	istō, istā, istō.
Plur.	isti, istae, istā.	istorūm, ārūm, orūm.	istīs.	istōs, istās, istā.	istīs.

Rem. *Istē* is often used to denote contempt; *e. g.*, *istē-ne dicīt?*
Does *that fellow* speak?

(158.) *Illē, illā, illūd*, points out an object *remote from the speaker (that, the former, opposed to hic)*, and is called the demonstrative of the *third* person. It is used often for the personal pronoun *he, she, it* (143, R.).

 It is declined throughout like *istē, istā, istūd*.

Rem. In the genitives, *istiūs, illiūs, ipsiūs*, the penult *i* is long, contrary to the general rule (24, 1) that a vowel before another is short.

(159.) *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm*, is properly an *adjunctive* pronoun, as it is *added* to other pronouns; *e. g.*,

I (and not another) *praise myself*. | *Ēgō mē ipsē laudō.*
I praise myself (and not another). | *Ēgō mē ipsūm laudō.*

EXERCISE.

(160.) Vocabulary.

Opinion, *sententiā*, *æ*.
To please, *plācērē*.
To displease, *displīcērē*.
Soul, *ānīmūs*, *ī*.
Proverb, *prōverbīūm*, *ī*.
Lazy, *ignāvūs*, *ā, ūm*.
Excellent, } *prāclārūs*, *ā, ūm*.
Celebrated, }
Reason, *rātiō*, (*rātiōn*) *īs* (*f*).

Animal, *ānīmāl*, (*ānīmāl*) *īs* (*neut.*).
Pleasing, agreeable, *grātūs*, *ā, ūm*.
Base, *turpīs*, *ē* (104).
Friend, *amicūs*, *ī*.
To boast, *prādicārē*.
To obey, *pārērē* (with *dat.*, 147).
Old, *vētus*, (*vētēr*) *īs* (108, R., 2).
Song, *carmēn*, (*carmīn*) *īs* (*n*).
Precept, *prāceptūm*, *ī*.

(161.) Examples.

(a) This *opinion* *pleases me*, | *Hæc sententiā mīhī plācēt*
that *displeases (me)*. | *illā displīcēt*.

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *pleasing, obeying, persuading, commanding, favouring, and the reverse, take the Dative case.*

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| (b) That friend of yours is an illustrious man. | Istē tuū āmicū vīr clārū est. |
| (c) The soul itself moves itself. | Ānimū ipsē sē mōvēt. |
| (d) It is base to boast of one's self. | Turpē est dē seipsō prædicārē. |

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used as the subject of a verb, and is then regarded as a noun in the neuter gender; *e. g.*, prædicārē (to boast), in (d), is nom. to est, and turpē (base) agrees with it in the neuter.

(162.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Hī puērī māgistrō pārent.—Hæ littēræ valdē mē dēlectant.—Cicēronīs librī valdē mīhī plācent: eōs libentēr lēgō.—Hōc bellū grāvē est.—Hīc puēr bōnus est, illē ignāvū.

(b) Istā tuā filiā pulchrā est.—Istūd tuū carmēn mīhī (106, II., c) grātū est.—Præclārā sunt istā tuā præceptā.—Vētūs illūd prōverbiū mīhī plācēt.

(c) Omnē ānimāl seipsū dīligīt.—Impērātōr ipsē mīltībūs (147) impērāt.—Ēgō mē ipsē nōn laudābām.—Tū teipsū laudābis.—Sāpiens sibi ipsi impērāt.

(d) Jūcundū est āmārē.

(163.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) That illustrious precept was-pleasing-to (placēbāt) Cato.—That brave general will command the soldiers.—The soldiers willingly obey this brave general.—This precept pleases me, that displeases (me).—The works of Cæsar please me very much; I read them gladly (libentēr).

(b) That horse of yours is a beautiful animal.—I keep in memory (mēmōriā teneō) that excellent precept of yours.—Those songs of yours are pleasing (grātā) to me.—That letter of yours was delighting me very much.

(c) The soul rules itself (161, c) by reason (ratiōnē, 55, a).—The poet himself praises himself (159).—Cæsar himself will command the legions (161, c).—The soldiers willingly (libentēr)

obey Cæsar himself.—Do *you* (135, II., 1) praise yourself?—Wise men themselves always rule themselves (147).

(d) It is pleasant to love (one's) friends.—It is base to boast of (one's) friends.—It is agreeable to please (one's) father.

LESSON XXVIII.

(164.) THE *Relative Pronoun* (*who, which*), *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, is thus declined :

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	qui, quæ, quod.	cujus.	cui.	quem, quàm, quod.	quæ, quâ, quô.
Plur.	qui, quæ, quæ.	quorum, quarum, quorum.	quibus.	quos, quâs, quæ.	quibus.

Rem. Quicumque, quæcumque, quodcumque (*whosoever, whichever, whatsoever*) is declined like *qui, quæ, quod*: *cumque* being simply annexed to the different cases.

(165.) The *Relative* commonly refers to some preceding word, which is therefore called the *antecedent*; *e. g.*, The *man*, *who* lives well, is happy. Here *man* is the antecedent; *who*, the relative. The sentence in which the *relative* occurs is called the *relative sentence*; the other the *principal* or *antecedent sentence*; *e. g.* (above), *the man is happy*, is the principal sentence: *who lives well*, the relative sentence.

EXERCISE.

(166.) Vocabulary.

Poor, *ëgens*, (*ëgent*) is (108).

Enough, *sâtis* (adv.).

Nearest to, *neighbour* to, *proximûs*,
ă, ūm.

To dwell, *incölêrê* (*intrans.*).

To inhabit, *incölêrê* (*trans.*).

Blood, *sanguis*, (*sanguin*) is (m.).

Also *ëtiam* (conj.).

Heart, *côr* (cord) is (n.).

To despise, *contemnêrê*.

Magnanimous, *magnânimûs*, ă, ūm.

Honest, *honourable*, *honestûs*, ă, ūm.

Fountain, *fons*, (*font*) is (m.).

Water, *ăquă*, ă.

Winter-quarters, *hibernă*, örüm (pl.)

To winter, *hîemărê*.

Arethusa, *Arêthusă*, ă.

To return, restore, *reddêrê*.

Virtue, *virtûs*, (*virtût*) is (f.).

To repel, *pröpusărê*.

To vaunt, *ostentărê*.

Fame, *fâmă*, ă.

To do, to make, *făcêrê*.

One, *ünûs*, ă, ūm.

(167.) Examples.

(a) The boy, who reads, learns. | Puêr, *qui* lëgit, discit.

<i>The girl, who reads, learns.</i>	<i>Puellā, quæ lægit, discit.</i>
<i>(b) The boy, whom we see, is handsome.</i>	<i>Puer, quē vidēmus, est pulchēr.</i>
<i>The girl, whom we see, is handsome.</i>	<i>Puellā, quā vidēmus, est pulchrā.</i>

Rule of Syntax.—The Relative Pronoun must agree with its antecedent in *gender* and *number* (as in (a)), but its *case* is fixed by the construction of the relative sentence (e. g., in (a) *quī* is nomin. to *lægit*: in (b) *quē* is acc., governed by *vidēmus*).

<i>'c) I who write.</i>	<i>Egō, quī scribō.</i>
<i>We who write.</i>	<i>Nōs, quī scribimus.</i>

Rule of Syntax.—The *verb* in the relative sentence agrees with the relative in *number*, but takes the *person* of the antecedent.

<i>(d) He is poor who has not enough.</i>	(1) <i>Ēgens est is, quī nōn sātis hābēt.</i>
	(2) <i>Is ēgens est, quī nōn sātis hābēt.</i>
	(3) <i>Quī nōn sātis hābēt, is ēgens est.</i>
	(4) <i>Quī nōn sātis hābēt, ēgens est.</i>

Rule of Position.—The relative generally stands at the beginning of its sentence, and (1) as near to its antecedent as possible. (2) *Is* and *quī* are made emphatic when *is* begins the principal sentence and *quī* the relative sentence; (3) and still more emphatic when the relative sentence stands first. (4) The antecedent is often omitted entirely.

(168.) *Translate into English.*

(a) *Proximī sunt Germānī, quī trans Rhēnūm incolunt.*—*Omnē ānīmā, quōd sanguinē hābēt, hābēt etiā cōr.*—*Cæsār, trēs lēgiōnēs, quæ in prōvinciā hiēmābant, ex hiberniis edūcīt.*—*Omniā (82, I., R.) quæ pulchrā sunt, honestā sunt.*

(b) *Fēlix est rex, quē omnēs civēs āmant.*—*In hāc insulā est fons aquæ dulcis, cui nōmē est: Arēthūsā (125, II., a).*

—Ariōvistūs obsīdēs reddīt, quōs hābēt āb Æduīs.—Galbæ sunt partēs trēs, quārū ūnām Belgæ incōlunt.

(d) (1) Beātī sunt ii, quōrū vitā virtūtē (abl., 55, a) rēgītūr.—(2) Īs fortīs est, quī injūriām prōpulsāt.—(3) Quī se ostentāt, īs stultūs dīcītūr (*is called a fool*).—(4) Quī famām bōnām contemnīt, virtūtēm contemnīt.—Fortīs et magnānīmūs est, nōn quī fācīt, sēd quī propulsāt injūrīām.

(169.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) The songs which we hear are pleasant (*grata*) to us (106, II., c).—The king who rules wisely is happy.—All animals which have blood have also hearts.—Cæsar leads across the Rhine the five legions which were wintering in the province.

(b) Happy is the teacher whom all (his) scholars love.—In that (eā) island (there) is a city whose name is (*to which the name is**, 125, II., a) Syracuse (Syrācūsæ).—In this (hāc) city there is a fountain whose name is Arethusa.—Of Britain (there) are three parts, of which (gen.) the English inhabit one.

(d) (1) Happy is he whose life is ruled by the precepts of virtue.—He is wise who diligently serves (cōlīt) the gods.—(2) They are brave who repel an injury.—(3) They who vaunt themselves are called fools.—(4) Who repels an injury, is brave and magnanimous.

LESSON XXIX.

Interrogative Pronoun.

(170.) THE *Interrogative Pronoun* is precisely like the *Relative* in form, excepting that for the nom., sing., and *masc.*, it has quīs, and for the nom. and acc., *neut.*, quīd; thus, quīs, quæ, quīd.

(171.) Quisnām, quænām, quidnām, express a more emphatic interrogation than the simple quīs, quæ, quīd, the syllable nām answering to our English “*pray* ;” *c. g.*,

Pray, what are you doing? | Quidnām agīs?

* Sunt, plural, because Syrācūsæ is plural.

(172.) In asking questions, the different cases of *quis* can be used as substantives or as adjectives, excepting that

(1) In the nom. sing. masc., *quis* is used as a substantive.

In the nom. sing. masc., *qui* is used as an adjective.

(2) In the nom. and accus., neut., *quid* is used as a substantive.

In the nom. and accus., neut., *quod* is used as an adjective.

(1) <i>Who comes?</i>	<i>Quis vēnit?</i>
<i>What man comes?</i>	<i>Qui hōmō vēnit?</i>
<i>Who is the man?</i>	<i>Quis homo est?</i>
(2) <i>What do you fear?</i>	<i>Quid tīmēs?</i>
<i>What danger do you fear?</i>	<i>Quōd pēriculūm tīmēs?</i>

(173.) The answer *yes* is given by repeating the verb which asks the question; *no*, by repeating the verb with *nōn*. *Vērō* (*certainly*), added to the verb in an affirmative answer, gives it more emphasis; *e. g.*,

<i>Are you writing?</i>	<i>Scribīs-nē?</i>
<i>I am writing.</i>	<i>Scribō.</i>
<i>Are you reading?</i>	<i>Lēgis-nē?</i>
<i>I am not reading.</i>	<i>Nōn lēgō.</i>
<i>Will you do what I ask?</i>	<i>Fāciēs-nē quæ* rōgō?</i>
<i>I will certainly do (it).</i>	<i>Fāciām vērō.</i>

EXERCISE.

(174.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Nov, nōvūs, ū, ūm.</i>	<i>Between, among, intēr (prep., acc.).</i>
<i>Novs, nōvī (neut. gen. of nōvūs, used with a neut. adj. or pronoun).</i>	<i>Beast, brute, bestiā, s.</i>
<i>Nām, interrogative particle, used when no is expected as the answer</i>	<i>An evil, mālūm, l.</i>
<i>To do, āgērē.</i>	<i>Without, sīnē (prep., abl.).</i>
<i>To be among, intēressē (inter + essē); but quid interest? = what is the difference?</i>	<i>Figure, figūrā, s.</i>
	<i>Mortal, mortālīs, s.</i>
	<i>Certainly, vērō (affirmative particle).</i>
	<i>To carry, vēhērē.</i>
	<i>Immortal, immortālīs, † s.</i>

* *Hæc, quæ*, plural, should be translated *this, what*, singular.

† Observe the force of *in* prefixed to adjectives. *Mortalis* = *mortal*, *in + mortalis* = *immortalis, immortal*.

(175.) *Examples.*(a) *What is the news?*

Quid est novī? (=What is there of new?)

(b) *Is there anything new?*

Num est quidnām novī?

(There is not, is there?)

(Num expects the answer no.)

(c) *Why do you laugh?*

Quid ridēs?

(176.) *Translate into English.*

Quis nōs vocāt?—Cujus hic liber est?—Quem vidēs?—Quid agis.—Quid interest inter hominē et bestiā?—Quam domum invēniēs sine malis?—Quid legis?—Epistolām.—Quæ amicitia est inter imprōbos?—Num Cæsārē timēs?—Nōn timeb. —Quā in urbē (125, IV., N., †) sumus?—Quis homō est?—Egō sum Cæsār.—Num animus figurā habēt?—Sunt nō hominēs mortālēs?—Sunt vērō.—Quid timēs? Cæsārē vērō.

(177.) *Translate into Latin.*

Who calls me?—Whose are those books?—What men do you see?—What are you writing?—A letter.—What book are you reading?—What is the difference between the good and the wicked?—Who is the soldier?—What is the difference between wolves and dogs?—Do you not fear the enemy?—I do not fear (them.)—What man will you find without a fault (culpā)?—In what town are we?—Whose house is this?—What city will you find without evils?—What is the difference between men and beasts?—What do you fear? You are carrying the king.—Are men immortal (num)?—They are not.

LESSON XXX.

Indefinite Pronouns.

(178.) THE *Indefinite Pronouns* denote an object in a general way, without reference to a particular individual; e. g., *any one, some one, &c.* They are,

1. Quidām, *a certain one, &c., plural, some.*2. Quivis, } *any you please.*
Quilibet }

3. *Quisquā*, *any, any one* (e. g., when it is denied that there are any).
[Neut. *quisquā* (*subst.*); *quodquā* (*adj.*). This pronoun is used chiefly in negative sentences.]

4. *Quispiā*, *somebody, some* (neut.).

5. *Alīquīs*, *some one, something* (neut.); *any* (adj.).

6. *Quisquē*, *each*, *unusquisquē*, *each one* (stronger than *quisquē*).

7. *Ecquis?* used interrogatively, (does) *any one? anything?*

☞ Observe carefully that each of the above takes *quid* in neuter nom., and acc., when used *substantively*; and *quod* when used *adjectively*.

EXERCISE.

(179.) *Vocabulary.*

The tenth, *dēcīmūs*, ā, ūm.

A javelin, *trāgūlā*, æ.

To see, to notice, *conspicērē*.

Judgment, discretion, *consiliū*, ī.

Eternity, eternitās, (*eternitāt*) *is* (f.).

Maker, artificer, *fābēr*, *fābrī* (m.).

Fifth, *quintūs*, ā, ūm.

Youth, *jūventūs*, (*jūventūt*) *is* (f.).

Fortune, *fortūnā*, æ.

Forever, *in eternū*.

Belong, *pertinērē*.

Art, *ars*, (*art*) *is* (f.).

Form, *formā*, æ.

To discover, *invēnirē*.

For, *etēnīm*, conj. (always stands first in its clause).

Cultivation, humanity, *hāmānitās*, *ātis* (f.).

Common, *commūnis*, *is*, ā.

Bond, *vinculū*, ī.

Dignity, *dignitās*, (*dignitāt*) *is* (f.).

Body, *corpūs*, (*corpōr*) *is* (n.).

(180.) *Examples.*

(a) *Something new.*

Each one of us.

A certain thing new.

Some dignity.

Alīquid novī.

Unusquisquē nostrū.

Quiddā novī.

Alīquid dignitātis.

Rule of Syntax.—The indefinite pronouns may be used *partitively*, and then govern the genitive.

(b) *A certain one of the soldiers.*

Some of the soldiers.

Quidā (sing.) ex militibūs.

Quidā (plur.) ex militibūs.

Rem. The ablat. with *ex* is used instead of the genitive, especially with *quidā*.

(181.) *Translate into English.*

Quidā ex militibūs dēcīmæ lēgiōnis veniēbāt.—*Quintō die 118, II., c) trāgūlā ā quōdām militē conspicitur.*—*Virī, in quibūs alīquid consiliī (180, a) est, magnānīmī sunt.*—*Tempūs*

est pars quædã æternitãtis.—Cuivis (125, II., a) animãli corpûs est.—Quilibet est faber fortunæ suæ.—Uñcuiquẽ* (125, II., a) nostrum (180, 120) est animûs immortalis.—Quisquẽ nostrum (180) in æternum vivet.—Animûs nõn habet formã aliquã, nec figurã.—Aliquid novĩ inveniẽs.—Etẽnim omnes artẽs, quæ ad humanitãtẽm pertinent, habent quoddã communẽ vinculum.

(182.) *Translate into Latin.*

[The pronouns of the lesson are italicized in the exercise.]

Some of the soldiers of the fifth legion are wounded (pres.).—On the fifth day (118, II., c) the enemy is noticed by a *certain* soldier of the tenth legion.—Men, in whom there is *some* dignity (180), are magnanimous.—To *each* man (= of. men) there is a soul and a body.—I will give the book to *any-one-you-please* of the scholars. *Each one* of us shall live forever.—You will discover a *certain thing new*.—Some of the soldiers are in the city.—For all the arts which belong to cultivation have a *certain* common bond.—Youth is a *certain* part of life.—Is not (estne) *any man-you-please* the maker of his own fortune?—Has the soul (*use num*) *any* form or figure?

LESSON XXXI.

Correlative Pronouns.

(183.) CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS are such as *answer* to each other; e. g., *how great? so great. How many? so many, &c.*

[This correlation is often expressed in English by adverbs or conjunctions: *such a man as: as* is the general, *so* are the troops. &c.]

(184.) The Correlative Pronouns are

Demonstrative.	Relative.	Indefinite
talis, <i>such.</i>	quãlis; <i>as, of what kind.</i>	quãiscunquẽ, <i>of whatever kind.</i>
tantũs, <i>so great, so much.</i>	quantũs, <i>as great.</i>	quantuscunquẽ, <i>however great.</i>
*tõt, <i>so many.</i>	*quõt, <i>as many.</i>	ãliquantũs, <i>somewhat great.</i>
*tõtĩdẽm, <i>just so many.</i>		*ãliquõt, <i>some.</i>
		*quotquõt, <i>however many.</i>

* Ûnus and quisquẽ are both declined in unusquisquẽ Ûnũs has *gen. ãniũs, dat. ãni.*

Rem. 1. Qualis? of what kind? quantus? how great? quot? how many? are also used interrogatively.

2. Those marked thus () are indeclinable; the rest are declined like adjectives.*

EXERCISE.

(185.) Vocabulary.

Where, ubi (adv.).

Toil, opĕră, æ.

Pleasure, vŏluptās, (vŏluptăt) is (f.).

Reward, prămiūm, l.

Gold, aurūm, l.

Money, pecūniă, æ.

Fear, tĭmŏr, (tĭmŏr) is (m.).

Or, vĕl (conj.).

Advantages, bonă (neut. adj.).

To afford, prăbĕrĕ.

To covet, expĕtĕrĕ. [is (f.).

Liberality, libĕrălitās, (libĕrălităt)

(186.) Examples.

(a) *So much toil (= of toil).*

How much pleasure? (= of pleasure?)

No reward (= nothing of reward).

Much gold (= of gold).

A pretty large piece of ground.

Tantūm opĕră.

Quantūm vŏluptătis?

Nihil prămiī.

Multūm aurī. (But, much money = magnă pecūniă, not multūm pecūniæ.)

Aliquantūm āgrī.

Rule of Syntax.—The neuters, tantūm, quantūm, āliquantūm; also, multūm, nihil, quīd, āliquīd, and others, are used as *neuter nouns*, and followed by the genitive (Synt., 695, b., R.).

Obs. Tantūm, quantūm in neut., with genitive = *so much, so many, how much, how many*; but in masc. and fem., agreeing with the noun, *so great, how great*; e. g., *how many books?* quantūm librŏrūm; *so great fear*, tantūm tĭmŏr.

(b) *As is the master, so are the scholars.*

Quālis est māgistr, tālēs sunt discipulī; or (with est and sunt omitted), quālis māgistr, tālēs discipulī

(187.) Translate into English.

Quālēs sunt dūcēs, tālēs sunt milītēs.—*Fortūnă bonă* (82, II.), *quantūcunquē sunt, incertā sunt.*—*Tantūs tĭmŏr omnēm exercitūm occupābāt.*—*Ūbi tantām virtutēm invēniēs?*—*Quantūm vŏluptătis virtūs prăbĕt!*—*Fratrī est* (125, II., a) *āliquantūm*

tūm p̄i āniā.—Virtūs nīhīl prēmīi v̄l pecūniā expētīt.—Pāter mīhī n agnām pecūniām dābīt.—Quantūm (186, *Obs.*) librōrūm hābēs ?—Quōt hominēs, tōt sententiā.

(188.) *Translate into Latin.*

As are the generals, so are the soldiers.—As is the king, so are the leaders.—As are the masters (*herī*), so are the slaves.—As are the fathers, so are the children.—So great an army is coming.—The advantages of the body, however great they may be (*sunt*), are uncertain.—Where will you find so great liberality ?—How many (186, *Obs.*) rewards does virtue afford ?—Good (men) covet no (186, *a*) reward.—Will your father *give* (135, II.) you much money ?—Has your brother much gold ?—As are the chiefs, so are the citizens.—My father has (125, II., *a*) a pretty large piece of ground.

§ 16.

NUMERALS. (XXXII.—XXXIII.)

LESSON XXXII.

Numerals.—Partial Table.

(189.) NUMERALS are divided into the four classes following, of which the first three are *adjectives*, the fourth, *adverbs*.

	CARDINALITY	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
	One, two, &c.	First, second, &c.	One a piece, one by one, one at a time, &c.	Once, twice, &c.
I.	ūnūs, ā, ūm.	primūs, ā, ūm.	singūli, ae, ā.	sēmēl.
II.	duō, ae, ō.	sēcundūs, ā, ūm.	binī, ae, ā.	bīs.
III.	trēs, ēs, triā.	tertiūs, ā, ūm.	ternī, ae, ā.	tēr.
IV.	quattuor,	quartūs, ā, ūm.	quaternī, ae, ā.	quatēr.
V.	quinquē,	quintūs, ā, ūm.	quinī, ae, ā.	quinqūies.
VI.	sex,	sextūs, ā, ūm.	senī, ae, ā.	sexies.
VII.	septēm,	septimūs, ā, ūm.	septēni, ae, ā.	septies.
VIII.	octō,	octāvūs, ā, ūm.	octōni, ae, ā.	octies.
IX.	nōvem,	nōnūs, ā, ūm.	nōvēni, ae, ā.	nōvies.
X.	dēcēm,	dēcimūs, ā, ūm.	dēni, ae, ā.	dēcies.
XI.	undēcīm,	undēcimūs, ā, ūm.	undēni, ae, ā.	undēcies.
XII.	duōdēcīm,	duōdēcimūs, ā, ūm.	duōdēni, ae, ā.	duōdēcies.

Rem. For the declension of *ūnūs* and *duō*, see 194. *Trēs* is declined like a plural adjective of *second class*, 194. The remaining cardinals are undeclined. The ordinals and distributives are declined like adjectives of the first class.

EXERCISE.

(190.) Vocabulary.

In all, altogether, omninō.

Multitude, multītūdō, (multītūdīn)

īs (f.).

Hour, hōrā, ae.

To be distant, distārē.

Millē, millīa,* (mill) iūm (pl. n.).

Year, annūs, l.

Month, mensīs, (mens) īs (m.).

Another, altēr, ā, ūm (194, R. 1.).

Thirty-six, sex et trigintā.

To levy, conscribērē.

Night-watch, vigīlīa, ae.

From, after, dē (with abl.).

To strive, to hasten, contendērē.

Italy, Itālīa, ae.

* Millē, plur. millīa = 1000. Millīa (passuūm, of paces understood) = a mile.

(191.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| (a) <i>They fight four hours.</i> | Hōrās quattuōr pugnant. |
| (b) <i>The city is distant five miles.</i> | Urbs distāt quinquē milliā. |
| (c) <i>A ditch eleven feet wide.</i> | Fossā undēcīm pēdēs lātā. |

Rule of Syntax.—The accusative answers to the questions *how long?* (whether of *time* or *space*), *how broad?* *how high?* &c.; *e. g.*, in (a) hōrās; in (b) milliā; in (c) pēdēs.

- (d) *How long?* may also be expressed by a noun in the genitive, depending on another noun; *e. g.*, a ditch *of ten feet*, fossā dēcēm pēdūm.

(192.) *Translate into English.*

Ērant omnīnō itīnērā duō.—Galliæ sunt partēs trēs, quārum unām incōlunt Belgæ, altērām Āquitānī.—Ūnūs ē multītūdīnē vulnērātūr.—Hōrās sēx pugnābant.—Urbs distāt dēcēm milliā.—Īn annō duōdēcīm mensēs sunt.—Cæsār dūās lēgionēs conscribit.—Cæsār trēs lēgionēs quæ īn Galliā hiēmābant ēdūcīt.—Cæsār trēs lēgionēs ēx hiberniis ēdūcīt.—Sunt omnīnō itīnērā quattuōr.—Cæsār dē quārtā vigiliā lēgionēs ēdūcīt.—Consul lēgionēm dēcīmām īn castrā rēdūcīt.—Cæsār cūm quinquē lēgionībūs īn Itāliām contendīt.—Ērāt omnīnō īn Galliā lēgiō ūnā.

(193.) *Translate into Latin.*

There are in all three ways.—There are of Gaul three parts, of which the Sequanians inhabit one.—There are of the city five parts.—Four of (= out of) the multitude are wounded.—The soldiers fight seven hours.—In three years are thirty-six months.—The villages are distant nine miles.—The wood is distant four miles.—The consuls will levy six legions.—Cæsar will lead out five legions from Italy.—The general was levying two legions in Gaul.—Cæsar will lead out the soldiers in the second watch.—The consul, in the third watch leads back the soldiers into the camp.—The tenth legion fights (pugnat).—There are altogether in Gaul two legions.—Cæsar brings back the fifth legion.—Cæsar brings back the fifth legion after the second watch

LESSON XXXIII.

Numerals, continued.

(194.) DECLENSION of ūnūs, duō, and trēs.

	One, Sing.		Two, Plur.		Three, Plur.
N.	ūnūs, ā, ūm.	N. V.	duō, duae, duō.		trēs, trēs, triā.
G.	ūnūs, iūs, iūs.	Gen.	duōrūm, duārum, duōrūm.		triām, triām, triām.
D.	ūnī, ī, ī.	D. Ab.	duōbus, duābūs, duōbūs.		tribūs, tribūs, tribūs.
	<i>the rest regular.</i>	Acc.	duōs and duō, duās, duō.		trēs, trēs, triā.

Rem. (1.) Like ūnūs are declined

Āliūs, ā, ūd, *another.**

Altēr, ā, ūm, *the one, the other (of two).*

Neutēr, trā, trām, *neither of the two.*

Nullūs, ā, um, *no one.*

Solus, ā, ūm, *alone.*

Tōtūs, ā, ūm, *the whole.*

Ullūs, a, ūm, *any one.*

Ūtēr, trā, trām, *which of the two.*

Ūterquē, traquē, trumque, *each of the two, both; and other compounds of ūtēr.*

(2.) Like duō is declined ambō, ō, ō, *both.*

EXERCISE.

(195.) *Vocabulary.*

What one, quōtās, ā, ūm.

Most, plērusquē, āquē, āmquē; e. g., most men, hōmīnēs plērīquē; most insects, insectā plērāquē.

Virgil, Virgiliūs, I.

More, magīs (adv.).

A beam, trabs, (trāb) is (f.).

Insect, insectūm, I.

Horace, Hōratiūs, I.

To migrate, mīgrārē.

Writer, scriptōr, (scriptōr) is (m.).

Mother, matr, (matr) is (f.).

[Refer to the column of distributives (189).]

(196.) *Examples.*

(a) *My father will give us two books apiece.*

Pātēr nobīs bīnōs lībrōs dāht.

(b) *What hour is it? The third.*

Quōtā hōrā est? Tertiā.

(c) *He will come for my sake alone.*

Meā unīūs causā (abl.) vēniēt.

(d) *Which pleases you? Neither.*

Ūtēr tūbī plācēt? Neutēr.

(e) *The beams are three feet distant (apart) from each other.*

Trabēs intēr sē distant ternōs pēdēs (191, c).

* When āliūs is repeated, it means *some, others.*

(197.) *Translate into English.*

Mātēr nōbis quāternōs librōs dābīt.—Nōbis sunt (125, II., a) ternī ēquī.—Binæ omnībūs āvībūs ālæ sunt.—Insectā plērāquē sēnōs, āliā octōnōs, pēdēs hābent.—Quōtā hōrā est? Nōnā.—Milītēs utriusquē exercītūs sunt fortēs.—Tuā ūniūs causā vēnient.—Virgiliūs atquē Horātiūs poētæ sunt prælārī; ūtēr tībī māgis plācēt? (161, a.) Virgiliūs.—Bīs īn annō milītēs vēniunt.—Septembēr est nōnūs annī mensīs.—Trābēs intēr sē distant binōs pēdēs (191, c).

(198.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Some of the words will be found in 194, R. 1.]

We have (125, II., a) four dogs apiece (196, a).—The master gives us five books at a time.—All men have (125, II., a) two eyes apiece.—Most insects have six (senos) feet; some (194*) nine, others (194*) ten, others (194*) twelve.—What o'clock (hour) is it?—The fifth.—The eighth.—The eleventh.—The twelfth.—The generals of each army are brave.—Why do you come? For your sake alone (196, c).—Cicero and Cæsar are excellent writers; which pleases you? Neither.—Which pleases you more? Cæsar.—The birds migrate twice in the year.—The soldiers will come eight times a year.—October is the tenth month of the year; November the eleventh; December the twelfth.—The beams are four feet distant from each other.—The beams are seven feet apart from each other

§ 17.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *iă*.

LESSON XXXIV.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation in iă.

(199.) SOME verbs of the third conjugation, instead of taking the simple verb-stem for the tense-stem in the tenses for incomplete action, add *i* to the verb-stem in these tenses. They form the infinitive, however, in *ěre*, like other verbs of the third.

(200.) **INFIN. ACTIVE, *căp-ěřě*, to take.**

SINGULAR.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-ă.</i>	<i>căp-is.</i>	<i>căp-ăt.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ebăm.</i>	<i>căp-i-ebăs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ebăt.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-ăm.</i>	<i>căp-i-ēs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ēt.</i>
PLURAL.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-mūs.</i>	<i>căp-i-tīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-unt.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ebămūs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ebătīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ebant.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-ēmūs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ētīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ēnt.</i>

INFIN. PASSIVE, *căp-i*, to be taken.

SINGULAR.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-ăr.</i>	<i>căp-ă-rīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-tăr.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ebăr.</i>	<i>căp-i-ebărīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ebătăr.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-ăr.</i>	<i>căp-i-ěrīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ētăr.</i>
PLURAL.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-măr.</i>	<i>căp-i-mīnī.</i>	<i>căp-i-untăr.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ebămăr.</i>	<i>căp-i-ebămīnī.</i>	<i>căp-i-ebantăr.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-ēmăr.</i>	<i>căp-i-ēmīnī.</i>	<i>căp-i-ēntăr.</i>

EXERCISE.

(201.) *Vocabulary.*

[In all cases, verbs of the class described above will be indicated in the vocabularies by the ending *iă*, after the infinitive form; e. g., *la make, făcěre (iă).*]

Pardon, favour vĕniā, m.

Excuse, excūsātiō, (excūsātiōn) is (f.).

To receive, accept, accīpĕrĕ (iō).

Way, road, itĕr, (itīnĕr) is (neut.).

To undertake, suscipĕrĕ (iō).

To make, faciĕrĕ (iō).

And, quĕ.*

Ship, nāvīs, (nāv) is (f.).

To repair, to renew, to rebuild, rĕfīcĕrĕ (iō).

Long, longūs, ā, ūm.

Wall, mūrūs, l.

Harbour, portūs, ūs (m.).

(202.) Example.

Willingly Cæsar gives pardon and receives the excuse.

Libĕntĕr Cæsār dāt vĕniām, excūsātiōnemquĕ* accīpīt

(203.) Translate into English.

Labiĕnūs multā Germānōrūm (78, II., b) oppida cāpiēbāt.—Helvētī pĕr prōvinciām nostrām itĕr faciunt.—Vulnĕrā grāviā ā militībūs accīpiuntūr.—Æduī bellū magnūm suscipiēbant.—Libĕntĕr Cæsār nuntīōs accīpīt, iisque (201, N.) vĕniām dāt.—Impĕrātōr obsidēs civitātis libĕntĕr accīpiēt.—Nuntiūm ā patrĕ crās accīpiēs.—Crassūs nāvēs longās, quæ in portū sunt, rĕfīcīt.—Consul mūrōs urbīs rĕfīcīt.

(204.) Translate into Latin.

The enemy were making (their) way through our province.—The Romans were rapidly (cĕlĕritĕr) making their way through Gaul.—We shall receive a messenger from the city to-day.—The Helvetians were undertaking a severe and great war.—The soldiers receive many and severe wounds.—We shall make (our) way through Britain.—Cæsar will willingly receive the excuse of the Æduans, and grant them (iisque) favour.—The gifts of a father are gladly (libĕntĕr) received.—The long ships are repaired by Cæsar.—The general was rebuilding the old (vĕtĕrēs) ships which were in the harbour.—We shall rebuild the old walls.

(205.) Observe the formation of the following words:

Accīpĕrĕ (to receive), = ād (to) + cāpĕrĕ (to take).

Suscipĕrĕ (to undertake), = sub (under) + cāpĕrĕ.

Rĕfīcĕrĕ (to rebuild), = rĕ + faciĕrĕ (to make again).

 In the composition of verbs with prepositions, ā frequently passes into i as in these examples.

* Ēt joins words or sentences which are considered independent and of equal importance with each other; quĕ joins a word or sentence closely to another, as an appendage to it.

DEPONENT VERBS.

LESSON XXXV.

Deponent Verbs.

(206.) DEPONENT verbs are such as have the *passive* form, but an *active* meaning; e. g., hortōr, *I exhort* (not, *I am exhorted*).

(207.) The forms of deponents in the tenses for incomplete action of the indicative mood are precisely the same as those of passive verbs (Lessons XII., XIII.); we therefore need only give the *first* persons.

(208.) DEPONENT FORMS.

INDICATIVE.			
1st conj.] hortōr, <i>I exhort.</i>	hortābār, <i>I was exhorting.</i>	hortābōr, <i>I will exhort.</i>	
2d conj.] fātēōr, <i>I confess.</i>	fātēbār, <i>I was confessing.</i>	fātēbōr, <i>I will confess.</i>	
3d conj.] sēquōr, <i>I follow.</i>	sēquēbār, <i>I was following.</i>	sēquābōr, <i>I will follow.</i>	
4th conj.] mētīōr, <i>I measure.</i>	mētībār, <i>I was measuring.</i>	mētībōr, <i>I will measure.</i>	
INFINITIVE.			
	1. hort-ārī, <i>to exhort.</i>	2. fāt-ērī, <i>to confess.</i>	3. sēqu-i, <i>to follow.</i>
			4. mēt-irī, <i>to measure.</i>

[In the vocabularies deponent verbs are always given by the *infinitive* forms. Observe that the ending -ārī shows that the verb is of the 1st conj.; -ērī, the 2d; -i, the 3d; -irī, the 4th.]

EXERCISE.

(209.) Vocabulary.

[Transitive deponents govern the accusative, unless it is otherwise mentioned in the vocabularies.]

To embrace, amplect-i.

To gain, to possess one's self of, pōt-irī (with gen. or abl.; generally gen. in Cæs.).

To endeavour, cōn-ārī.

To follow, sēqu-i.

As if, tanquam (adv.)

To strive after, pursue, persēqu-i (pēr + sēquī, *to follow through*).

Glory, glōriā, æ.

All, tōtū, a, ūm (194, R., 1).

Bravery, virtue, virtūs, (virtūt) is (f.).

Long, diū (adv.).

Sin, fault, peccatū, l.

(210.) *Example.*

The Helvetians endeavour to pass (= to make way) through our province. | *Helvētīi pēr prōvinciām nostrām itērfācērē cōnantūr.*

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used in Latin (as in English) to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by certain verbs; *e. g.*, *I wish, I can, I hasten, I endeavour, &c.*, as *fācērē* in the above example.*

(211.) *Translate into English.*

Pāter filiū et filiām amplectitūr.—*Impērātōr milītēs diū hortābātūr.*—*Dumnōrix totīūs (194, R. 1) Galliæ pōtītūr.*—*Peccātā meā fātēbōr.*—*Princīpēs totīūs Galliæ pōtīri cōnābantūr.*—*Rōmānī per Brītanniām itērfācērē cōnantūr.*—*Glōriā virtūtēm tanquām ūmbrā sēquītūr.*—*Magnōs hōmīnēs virtūtē (55) mētīmūr, nōn fortunā.*—*Milītēs sempēr glōriām persēquuntūr.*—*Milītēs dūcēm libentēr sēquēbantūr.*

(212.) *Translate into Latin.*

The father will embrace (his) sons and daughters.—The chiefs possess themselves of all the province.—Do you *confess* (135, II.) your fault?—The Helvetians were endeavouring to pass through Gaul.—Glory will follow bravery as a shadow.—We were exhorting the soldiers yesterday.—We shall gladly follow Cæsar.—They are rapidly making their way through our province.—You measure men by (their) fortune, not by (their) bravery.—The chiefs will endeavour to lead the army across the Rhine (113, II., *a*).—Generals always strive after glory.—Are you *exhorting* (135, II.) your son?—The Romans always followed glory.

* Observe carefully that a *purpose* is *never* expressed by the simple infinitive in Latin. It would not be Latin to say *discērē vēnīt, he comes to learn.*

§ 19.

ADVERBS.

LESSON XXXVI.

Adverbs.

[THIS section need not be learned by heart in the first course but the distinction of *primitive* and *derivative* should be acquired; and the section should be afterward referred to whenever examples occur.]

(213.) *Adverbs* (17) are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*.

[We give but a few here; a fuller list will be given hereafter.—See *Summary of Etymology*, 680.]

(214.) *Primitive Adverbs* :

1. *Negative*.—Nōn, *not*; haud, *not*; ne (interrog. or imper.), *not*; nē quidēm (always separated by some word), *not even*.
2. *Of Place*.—Ūbi, *where*; ibi, *there*; quō? *whither?* hūc, *hither*; illūc, *thither*; undē, *whence*; indē, *thence*, &c.
3. *Of Time*.—Nunc, *now*; tum or tunc, *then*; nūp̄r, *lately*; crās, *to-morrow*; hōdiē, *to-day*; hērī, *yesterday*, &c.
4. *Of Quality*, &c.—Admōdūm, *very*; an, *whether*; cūr, *why* (interrog.); etiām, *also*; fere, *almost*, &c.

(215.) *Derivative Adverbs* are nearly all formed from adjectives or participles by adding ē or it̄r to their stems.

1. Add ē to the stem of adjectives of the *first class*; e. g.,

Adjectives.	Adverbs.
Alt-ūs, <i>high</i> .	Alt-ē, <i>high</i> .
Lībēr, <i>free</i> .	Lībēr-ē, <i>freely</i> .
Clār-ūs <i>illustrious</i> .	Clār-ē, <i>illustriously</i> .
&c.	&c.

Rem. Bōnūs makes bēnē, *well*, and mālūs (*bad*), mālē, *badly*. All others end in ē (*long*).

2. (a) Add it̄r to the stem of adjectives of the *second and third classes*; e. g.,

Adjectives.	Adverbs.
Cēlēr, <i>swift</i> .	Celer-it̄r, <i>swiftly</i> .
Brēv-is, <i>brief</i> .	Brev-it̄r, <i>briefly</i> .

- (b) But those which end in ns do not take the connecting vowel i e. g.,

Prūdēns, *prudent*.
Sāpiēns, *wise*.

Prūden-tēr, *prudently*.
Sāpien-tēr, *wisely*.

Rem. Audāx, *bold*, makes audac-tēr, *boldly*.

3. Some are derived from *nouns* by adding tūs or tīm to the stem by means of a connecting vowel, *e. g.*, cæl-itūs, *from heaven*; fund-itūs, *from the ground, totally*; grēg-a-tīm, *by flocks, &c.*

(216.) Cases of adjectives, especially in the *neuter* gender, are often used as adverbs; *e. g.*, dulcē, *sweetly*; primūm, *first*; falsō, *falsely*, &c.

EXERCISE.

(217.) Vocabulary.

Well, bēnē, derived irregularly from
bōnūs, *good*.

Bravely, fortitēr, derived regularly
(215, 2, a) from fortis, *brave*.

Sharply, spiritedly, acritēr, derived
regularly from ācēr (acr-is), *sharp*.

Swiftly, celeritēr, derived regularly
from celer, *swift*.

Happily, beatē, derived regularly
(215, 1) from beātūs, *happy*.

Honestly, honestē, derived regularly
from honestūs, *honest*.

Almost, fērē.

Rightly, rectē, derived regularly
from rectūs, *right*.

Impiously, impiē, derived regularly
from impiūs, *impious*.

In flocks, grēgātīm.

To labour, lāborārē.

To blame, to accuse, find fault with,
incūsārē.

Socrates, Socrātēs, (Socrāt) is.

Not even, nēquidē (always separated
by one or more words).

(218.) Examples.

(a) To live honestly and
rightly is to live well and
happily.

Hōnestē et rectē vivērē est
bēnē et beatē vivērē.

Rule of Position.—The adverb is generally placed *before* the word which it qualifies.

(b) Almost all men love themselves.

Omnēs fērē hōmīnēs sēsē dīlīgunt.

Fērē is generally placed *between* the adjective and noun.

(c) He does not praise even
Socrates.

Nō Socrātēm quīdē laudāt.

(219.) Translate into English.

Hostēs nōbiscūm (125, II., b) acritēr pugnābant.—Ēquī in agris celeritēr currēbant.—Bēnē vivērē est beatē vivērē.—Cervi grēgātīm sempēr currunt.—Sempēr sapiens rectē vivit.—Diū

et acrit̃er mil̃it̃es pugnābant.—Omñes f̃er̃e h̃om̃iñes impĩs vivunt.—Omñes f̃er̃e āvēs b̃is īn annō m̃igrant.—Ñe Cicerōñem quid̃em laudāb̃it.—Ñe h̃oc quid̃em (not even with this) d̃electāb̃it̃ur.

(220.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Æduans were fighting long and bravely.—Cæsar sharply accuses the Helvetians.—Horses and stags run swiftly.—The farmers were labouring long in the fields.—Almost all men love their (own) children.—Cæsar led almost all the Germans across the Rhine (113, II., a).—I waited for you long.—The bad do not live happily.—To live happily is to live rightly.—You will not be delighted even with this.—Not even this will delight (my) father.—Not even Cæsar will be praised.—Almost all birds fly in flocks.—They do not praise even Virgil.—Almost all wise (men) live happily.—Almost all men strive-after glory.—To live prudently is to live happily.—The commander will blame the lieutenant sharply.

PREPOSITIONS. (XXXVII.—XXXVIII.)

LESSON XXXVII.

Prepositions.

[THIS section (221) need not be learned by heart in the first course, but should be constantly referred to whenever examples occur.]

(221.) The following prepositions govern the *accusative* case :

Ād, <i>to.</i>	Juxtā, <i>near to, beside.</i>
Āpūd, <i>at.</i>	Ōb, <i>on account of.</i>
Antē, <i>before (of time and place).</i>	Pēnēs, <i>in the power of.</i>
Adversūs, adversū, <i>against.</i>	Pēr, <i>through.</i>
Cis, citrā, <i>on this side.</i>	Pōnē, <i>behind.</i>
Circā and circū, <i>around, about.</i>	Post, <i>after (both of time and space).</i>
Circitēr, <i>about, towards (indefinitely of time or number).</i>	Prætēr, <i>beside.</i>
Contrā, <i>against.</i>	Prōpē, <i>near.</i>
Ergā, <i>towards.</i>	Proptēr, <i>near, on account of.</i>
Extra, <i>beyond, without.</i>	Sēcundū, <i>after, in accordance with.</i>
Infrā, <i>beneath, below (the contrary of suprà).</i>	Sāprā, <i>above.</i>
Intēr, <i>between, among.</i>	Trans, <i>on the other side.</i>
Intra, <i>within (the contrary of extra).</i>	Versūs (is put after its noun), <i>towards a place.</i>
	Ultra, <i>beyond.</i>

(222.) The following govern the *ablative* case :

Ā, āb, <i>from, by.</i>	Præ, <i>before, owing to.</i>
Clām, <i>without the knowledge of.</i>	Prō, <i>before, for.</i>
Cōrām, <i>in the presence of.</i>	Sinē, <i>without.</i>
Cū, <i>with.</i>	Tēnūs (is put after its noun), <i>as far as, up to.</i>
Dē, <i>down from, concerning.</i>	
E, ex (ē before consonants only, ē before both consonants and vowels), <i>out of, from.</i>	

The following lines contain the prepositions governing the *ablative*, and can be readily learned by heart :

Absquē, ā, āb, abs, *and dē,*
Cōrām, clām, cū, ex, *and ē,*
Tēnūs, sinē, prō, *and præ.*

(223.) The following govern the *accusative* or *ablative* :

1. Īn, (a) *with the accus.*, (1) *into, on, to (to the question whither?)* (2) *against.* (b) *With the ablative*, in, on (to the question *where?*)
2. Sūb, (a) *with the accus.*, (1) *under (to the question whither?)* (2) *about*

or towards (indefinitely of time). (b) *With the ablative*, under (to the question *where?*)

3. *Sūpēr*, (a) *with the accus.*, above, over. (b) *With the ablative*, upon, concerning.

4. *Subtēr*, under, beneath (but little used).

EXERCISE.

(224.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>The Garonne</i> (river), <i>Gārumnā</i> , æ.	<i>History</i> , <i>histōriā</i> , æ.
<i>An Aquitanian</i> , <i>Āquitānūs</i> , ī.	<i>Fable</i> , <i>fabulā</i> , æ.
<i>Aquitania</i> , <i>Aquitāniā</i> , æ.	<i>To bound</i> (limit), <i>confīnērē</i> (con+ <i>tē</i> nērē).
<i>The Leman</i> , or <i>Geneva</i> (lake), <i>Lēmānnūs</i> , ī.	<i>Part</i> or <i>side</i> , <i>pars</i> , (part) <i>is</i> (f.).
<i>Jura</i> (mountain), <i>Jūrā</i> , æ (m. 25, a).	<i>On one side</i> , <i>unā ex partē</i> .
<i>To extend</i> or <i>carry</i> , <i>perducērē</i> (pēr + <i>dūcērē</i>).	<i>The Rhone</i> (river), <i>Rhōdānūs</i> , ī.
<i>State</i> , <i>civitas</i> , (civitat) <i>is</i> (f.).	<i>To divide</i> , <i>dividērē</i> .
<i>Royal power</i> (kingdom), <i>regnūm</i> , ī.	<i>Lake</i> , <i>lacus</i> , ūs (m.), (112, R. 1)
	<i>To remain</i> , <i>mānērē</i> .

(225.) *Examples.*

- (a) *The river Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians.* | *Gallōs āb Āquitānīs Gārum nā flūmēn dividit.*

Rule of Syntax.—Two nouns expressing the same person or thing take the same case, and are said to be in *apposition* with each other; e. g., in the above example, *Gārumnā flūmēn*.

- (b) *Cæsar hastens into Gaul.* | *Cæsār in Galliām contendit.*
 (c) *There was altogether in Gaul one legion.* | *Ērāt omnīnō in Galliā lēgiō ūnā.*

(226.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsār ā lacū ād montē, mūrūm perducit.—*Apūd* Hērōdōtūm, patrē histōriæ, sunt multæ fabulæ.*—*Cæsār ā lacū Lēmānnō ād montē Jūrām, mūrūm perducit.*—*Mercātōr in urbē mānēt.*—*Puērī in dōmō sunt.*—*Princeps regnūm in civitatē oc-cūpāt.*—*Consul exercitūm in finēs Sēquānōrūm dūcit.*—*Hel-vētiī continentūr ūnā ex partē* (125, IV., N.†) *flūminē Rhēnō; altērā ex partē montē Jūrā, tertiā ex partē lacū Lēmānnō ēt flūminē Rhōdānō.*

* *Apūd* is used with the names of authors (instead of *in*, with the name of their works), e. g., *apūd Cicerōnē lēgimūs*, we read in Cicero.

(227.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar was extending walls and ditches (fossasque) from the river to the camp.—The soldiers remain in the camp.—Cæsar will seize the royal power in the state.—The river Rhine separates the Gauls from the Germans.—Cæsar hastens into Italy and levies (conscribērē) five legions.—The deserters remain in the town.—The general will lead the soldiers into Italy.—Aquitania is bounded on one side by the river Garumna; on another side by mountains; on the third side by the river Rhone.—You will find (invenies) many fine (præclārā) precepts in (apud) Cicero.—You will find many fables in Herodotus, the father of history.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Prepositions in Composition.

(228.) Most of the prepositions given in Lesson XXXVII. are used *as prefixes* in composition with verbs, and modify their signification; *e. g.*, pōnērē, *to place*; post-pōnērē, *to place after*.

(229.) The following prepositions are never used alone, but always as *prefixes* in composition:

1. Amb, *round, about* (from ambo, *both*); ambīrē (from amb+īrē, *to go round*), *to walk round, to canvass for votes*.
2. Con, *together* (a variation of cum, *with*); con-jungērē (con+jungērē), *to join together, to unite*.
3. Di or dis, *asunder* (a variation of de, *from*); dis-cēdērē (dis+cēdērē, *to give place asunder*), *to depart*.
In, with adjectives, means *not*; in-doctūs, *unlearned*; with verbs, means *in, into*; *e. g.*, ir-rumpērē (in+rumpērē), *to burst into*.
4. Re, *back, again*; re-ficērē (re+fācērē, *to make again*), *to refit*.
5. Sē, *aside*, sē-dūcērē (sē+dūcērē, *to lead astray*), *to seduce*.

EXERCISE.

(230.) *Vocabulary.**Again* (adv.), rursus.*To join together*, conjungere.*To burst in*, irrumpere.*To burst into the camp*, in castrā irrumpere.*Mediterranean*, Mēditerrāneus, a, ūm.*To separate*, sēpārare (sē+pārare).*Cohort*, cōhors, (cōhort) is (f.)*To station*, collōcāre (con+lōcāre).*To distribute*, distribuere (dis+tribuere).*Africa*, Africā, æ.*Europe*, Eurōpā, æ.*Horseman*, equēs, (equit) is (m.)(231.) *Translate into English.*

Consul rursus legionēs in hibernā rēducit.—Lēgātus quinquē cōhortēs cū exercitū conjungit.—Milites omnes in oppidū irrumpunt.—Mare Mēditerrāneū Africā ab Eurōpā sēpārat.—Belgæ sē cū Germānis conjungēbant.—Impērator exercitū in hibernis collōcāt.—Germāni equitēs in castrā (223, 1, a) irrumpere cōnantur.—Galbā exercitū in hibernis collōcāt, legionēsq̄ in civitatē distribuit.

(232.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar will lead the cohorts back again into winter-quarters.—All the Germans were bursting into the camp.—The Belgians will unite themselves with Cæsar.—The brave soldiers were trying to burst into the town.—The illustrious general was stationing the soldiers in winter-quarters.—The legions are distributed among (in, with accus.) the states.—The legions are led back into winter-quarters.—The Mediterranean Sea separates Spain (Hispaniā) from Africa.—Cæsar will join all the horsemen with the army.

§ 21.

ANALYSIS OF TENSE-FORMATIONS. (XXXIX —XLI.)

LESSON XXXIX.

Active Voice.

(233.) (a) THE student must have observed that in *all* the tenses for incomplete action in the active voice the *person-endings* are as follows:

Sing.	1st person, <i>o</i> or <i>m</i> .	2d person, <i>s</i> .	3d person, <i>t</i> .
Plur.	1st person, <i>mūs</i> .	2d person, <i>ēs</i> .	3d person, <i>nt</i> .

(b) He must have observed, also, that these endings are added to the proper *tense-stem* in each tense. We take up the tenses in order.

(234.)

PRESENT TENSE.

- (a) *Person-endings*, *o*, *s*, *t*, *mūs*, *tīs*, *nt*.
 (b) The *Tense-stem* is the simple verb-stem.
 (c) To connect the person-endings with the tense-stems, certain *connecting vowels* are used. In the present tense these are, for

- (1.) First conjugation, *a*; e. g., *ām-a-t*.
- (2.) Second “ *e*; e. g., *mōn-e-t*.
- (3.) Third “ *i*; e. g., *rēg-i-t*.
- (4.) Fourth “ *i*; e. g., *aud-i-t*.*

Rem. 1. Observe that in the 1st person of the 1st and 3d conjugations the connecting vowel does not appear; *am-o*, *reg-o* (not *am-a-o*, *reg-i-o*).

Rem. 2. In the 3d person plural, the third conjugation uses *u* instead of *i*; e. g., *reg-u-nt*; the fourth inserts *u*; e. g., *aud-i-unt*.

* *Ama*, *mone*, *audi*, are the proper *crude forms* of these verbs respectively. They are classed together, in a philosophical treatment of the language, as *one* conjugation of *pure* verbs; while those of the *third* conjugation form the conjugation of *consonant* verbs.

(235.)

TABLE.

	Tense-Stem.	Connect. Vowel.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.			
				1.	2.	3.	4.
1.	ām-	a.	o.	āmo (ama-o).	mōnē-o.	rēg-o.	audī-o.
2.	mōn-	e.	s.	āmā-s.	monē-s.	rēg-īa.	audī-a.
3.	reg-	i.	t.	āmā-t.	monē-t.	rēg-i-t.	audī-t.
			mus.	āmā-mus.	mōnē-mūs.	rēg-i-mūs.	audī-mūs.
			tis.	āmā-tis.	mōnē-tis.	rēg-i-tis.	audī-tis.
4.	aud-	i(u).	nt.	āmā-nt.	mōnē-nt.	rēg-u-nt.	audī-u-nt.

Rem. Observe that the vowels are long before the person-endings in 1st, 2d, and 4th conjugations, except where they come before *o* or *t*. In those before *o*, the general rule (24, 1) prevails; and it is also an invariable rule, in Latin, that no vowel in a final syllable can be long before *t*.

(236.)

EXERCISE.

[The pupil should hereafter analyze the tense-forms, as they occur, somewhat as follows:]

Āmās: verb-stem, am-; pres. tense-stem, ām-; connecting vowel, a; 2d pers. ending, s.

Mōnēmūs: verb-stem, mon-; pres. tense-stem, mōn-; connecting vowel, e; 1st plur. ending, mūs.

Rēgītis: verb-stem, rēg-; pres. tense-stem, rēg-; connecting vowel, i; 2d plur. ending, tis.

Audīunt: verb-stem, aud-; pres. tense-stem, aud-; connecting vowels, i and u; 3d plur. ending, nt.

In like manner, analyze

Festīnās,	hābēt,	vidētis,	convōcō,	festīnātis,
Vigilāmūs,	prōhibent,	lēgīt,	hābētis,	pugnāt,
Vocātis,	poscīmūs,	dormimūs,	mūniunt,	laudant,
Rēvocānt,	vēniunt,	audītis,	ambulāmūs,	vulnerāmūs.

LESSON XL.

*Analysis of Tense-Formations, continued.**Active.*

(237.)

IMPERFECT TENSE.

(a) Person-endings, m, s, t, mūs, tīs, nt.

(b) The tense-stem,

(1.) In 1st conj. adds āb to the verb-stem; e. g., ām-āb.

(2.) In 2d conj. " ēb " e. g., mōn-ēb.

(3.) In 3d conj. " ēb " e. g., rēg-ēb.

(4.) In 4th conj. " iēb " e. g., aud-iēb.

(c) The *connecting vowel* *a* is used to join the *tense-stems* and *person-endings*; *e. g.*, *āmāb-ā-m*.

	Tense-Stem.	Con. Vow.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.			
				1.	2.	3.	4.
1.	ām-āb-	a	m.	āmābā-m.	mōnēbā-m.	rēgēbā-m.	audīēbā-m.
2.	mōn-ēb-		s.	āmābā-s.	mōnēbā-s.	rēgēbā-s.	audīēbā-s.
3.	rēg-ēb-		t.	āmābā-t.	mōnēbā-t.	rēgēbā-t.	audīēbā-t.
4.	aud-iēb-		mus.	āmābā-mūs.	mōnēbā-mūs.	rēgēbā-mūs.	audīēbā-mūs.
			tis.	āmābā-tis.	mōnēbā-tis.	rēgēbā-tis.	audīēbā-tis.
			nt.	āmābā-nt.	mōnēbā-nt.	rēgēbā-nt.	audīēbā-nt.

FUTURE TENSE.

(238.) I. We treat the 1st and 2d conjugations first. In these,

(a) The *person-endings* are, *o*, *s*, *t*, *mūs*, *tīs*, *nt*.

(b) The *tense-stems*, precisely like the *imperf.* in the same conjugations,

(1.) In 1st conj., add *āb* to the verb-stem; *e. g.*, *ām-āb*.

(2.) In 2d conj., “ *ēb* ” *e. g.*, *mōn-ēb*.

(c) The *connecting vowel* *i* is used to join the *tense stems* and *person-endings*; *e. g.*, *āmāb-i-t*; *mōnēb-i-t*. But in the third person plural, *u* is used instead of *i*; *e. g.*, *āmāb-u-nt*.

Rem. In the 1st person the connecting vowel is dropped (as in 234, c, R. 1); thus, *āmāb-o* (not *āmāb-i-o*).

(239.)

TABLE.

	Tense-Stem.	Connecting Vowel.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.	
				1.	2.
1.	ām-āb-	i.	o.	āmāb-o.	mōnēb-o.
			s.	āmābī-s.	mōnēbī-s.
			t.	āmābī-t.	mōnēbī-t.
2.	mōn-ēb-		mus.	āmābī-mūs.	mōnēbī-mūs.
			tis.	āmābī-tis.	mōnēbī-tis.
		u.	nt.	āmābū-nt.	mōnēbū-nt.

(240.) II. The 3d and 4th conjugations present some irregularity in the future.

(a) The *person-endings* are, *m*, *s*, *t*, *mūs*, *tīs*, *nt*.

(b) The *tense-stem*,

(1) In the 3d conj., is the simple verb-stem; *e. g.*, *rēg*.

(2) In the 4th conj., it adds *i* to the verb-stem; *e. g.*, *aud-i*.

(c) The connecting vowel *e* is used to join the tense-stem and person-endings; *rĕg-ĕ-mūs*, *aud-ī-ĕ-mūs*. But in the *first* person *a* is substituted for *e* in both conjugations; *e. g.*, *rĕg-ā-m*, *aud-ī-ā-m*, not *reg-ĕ-m*, *audi-ĕ-m*.

(241.)

TABLE.

Tense-Stem.	Con'g. Vowel.	Pers. Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.	
			3.	4.
<i>rĕg-</i>	<i>a.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>rĕgā-m.</i>	<i>audīā-m.</i>
		<i>s.</i>	<i>rĕgē-s.</i>	<i>audiē-s.</i>
		<i>t.</i>	<i>rĕgē-t.</i>	<i>audiē-t.</i>
<i>audī-</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>mūs.</i>	<i>rĕgē-mūs.</i>	<i>audiē-mūs.</i>
		<i>tīs.</i>	<i>rĕgē-tīs.</i>	<i>audiē-tīs.</i>
		<i>nt.</i>	<i>rĕgē-nt.</i>	<i>audiē-nt.</i>

(242.) (a)

EXAMPLES.

Āmābātīs: *verb-stem*, *ām-*; *tense-stem*, *āmāb-*; *imperf. con. vowel*, *a*; *2d plur. ending*, *-tīs*.

Āmābītīs: *verb-stem*, *ām-*; *tense-stem*, *āmāb-*; *fut. con. vowel*, *ī*; *2d plur. ending*, *-tīs*.

Audiēmūs: *verb-stem*, *aud-*; *fut. tense-stem*, *audi-*; *connecting vowel*, *e*; *1st plur. ending*, *-mūs*.

[The pupil should keep up the habit of finding any tense-form which he may need to use, by putting together its proper parts; *e. g.* stem, ending, &c., rather than by recurring to the paradigms.]

(b) Analyze the following:

<i>Laudābām,</i>	<i>laudābō,</i>	<i>laudābītīs,</i>
<i>Dōcēbāmūs,</i>	<i>munīēbāmūs,</i>	<i>lēgām,</i>
<i>Occīdēbant,</i>	<i>dormīēbātīs,</i>	<i>scribēmūs,</i>
<i>Dormiām,</i>	<i>audiēt,</i>	<i>dōcēbunt,</i>
<i>&c.</i>	<i>&c.</i>	<i>&c.</i>

LESSON XLI.

Analysis of Tense-Formations, continued.

PASSIVE VOICE.

(243.) THE passive-endings are,

Sing. 1st person, *r*; 2d person, *rīs* or *rē*; 3d person, *tūr*.Plur. 1st person, *mūr*; 2d person, *mīni*; 3d person, *ntūr*.

(244.) These endings are affixed to the tense-stems, formed as in the active voice, and with the same con-

necting vowels. Only the following apparent irregularities are to be noticed.

(a) In the 1st pers. pres. indic. the ending *r* is added to the full present active form; *e. g.*, *āmo*, *āmo-r*; *dōceo*, *dōceo-r*. &c.

(b) In the 3d conj., 2d pers. sing., pres., *e* is used for connecting vowel instead of *i*; *e. g.*, *rēg-ē-ris*, *rēg-ē-rē*, instead of *rēg-ī-ris*, &c.

(c) In the 1st and 2d conj., future, 2d pers. sing., *e* is used for connecting vowel instead of *i*; *e. g.*, *mōneb-ē-ris*, *āmāb-ē-ris*, instead of *āmāb-ī-ris*, *mōneb-ī-ris*.

(245).

EXERCISE.

Examples.—*Dōcentūr*: verb-stem, *dōc-*; pres. tense-stem, *dōc-*; connecting vowel, *e*; 3d plur. pass. ending, *-ntūr*.

Āmābāmūr: verb-stem, *am-*; imperf. tense-stem, *āmāb-*; imperf. conn. vowel, *a*; 1st plur. pass. ending, *-mūr*.

Audientūr: verb-stem, *aud-*; fut. tense-stem, *audi-*; fut. conn. vowel, *e*; 3d plur. pass. ending, *-ntūr*.

Rēgōr: verb-stem, *rēg-*; pres. act. 1st pers., *rego-*; 1st pers. pass. ending, *-r*.

(246.) Analyze

Rēgēbāmūr,

Dōcēbīmūr,

Tīmēbāris,

Dōcēbāmīnī,

&c.

occidēmūr,

audiēmīnī,

dōcēbēris,

āmātūr,

&c.

laudentūr,

vidēbīmūr,

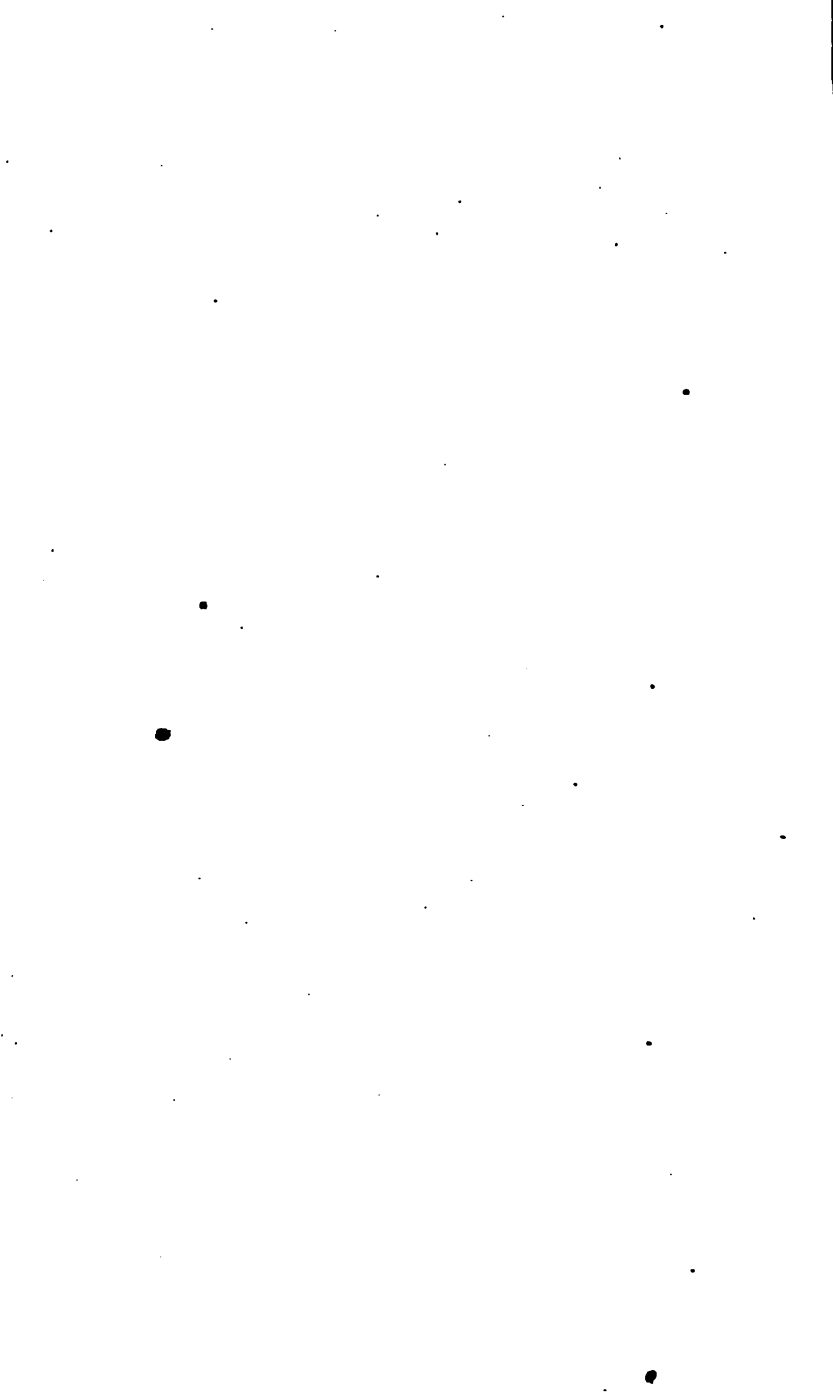
dōcēbuntūr,

rēgītūr,

&c.

PART II.

FULLER EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.



§ 1.

ADDITIONAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

LESSON XLII.

[THE student should now learn thoroughly the following rules of quantity, most of which he has seen illustrated frequently already.]

GENERAL RULES.

(246.) (1) A vowel before another is short; *e. g.*, vī-a.

(2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; *e. g.*, bēllum.

Rem. A mute followed by a *liquid* in the same syllable renders the preceding *short* vowel common in verse; *e. g.*, volū-cris. (In *prose*, the short vowel remains short.)

(3) All diphthongs and contracted syllables are long; *e. g.*, aū-rūm, cō-go (for co+ago).

SPECIAL RULES.

(1.) Final Syllables.

1. Monosyllables.

(247.) (a) Most monosyllables ending in a *vowel* are *long*; but the particles quē, vē, nē, ptē, &c., attached to other words, are *short*.

(b) Most monosyllables ending in a *consonant* are *long*; but the nouns cōr, fēl, mēl, vīr, ōs (ossis); the pronouns quīs, quīd, quōt; and the particles nēc, īn, ān, ād, sēd, with all ending in *t*, are *short*; also ēs, 2d person of sūm.

2. Dissyllables and Polysyllables.

(A) Final Vowels.

(248.) *a* final is *short* in nouns, except the abl. of the 1st declension; *long* in verbs, and in indeclinable words, except ītā, quīā, ējā.

(249.) *e* final is *short* in nouns (except 5th declension) and verbs (except imperatives); *long* in adverbs derived from adjectives of the first class, with fermē, ferē, ohē.

(250.) *i* final is *long*; but mīhī, tībī, sībī, ibī, ūbī, are *common*; nīsī, quasī, *short*.

(251.) *o* final is *common*; but *long* in dat. and abl. cases of nouns and adjs. used as adverbs (*e. g.*, fals^o, &c.); eg^o, du^o, oct^o, are *short*.

(252.) *u* final is always *long*; *e. g.*, di^u.

(B) *Final Consonants.*

(253.) All final syllables ending in a consonant (except *s*) are *short*.

Rules for s final.

(254.) Final ās, ēs, ōs, are generally *long*; *e. g.*, amās, docēs, equōs

Rem. 1. ōs is *short* (1) in nouns which have short penult in the gen., *e. g.*, milēs (milīt-is).

2. ōs is *short* in compōs, impōs.

(255.) Final īs and ūs are generally *short*; *e. g.*, reg-īs, domin-ūs.

Rem. 1. īs is *long* (1) in dat. and abl. plural of nouns; (2) in 2d person sing. of verbs of 4th conjugation; (3) compounds of vīs; *e. g.*, mavis, quamvīs, &c.

2. ūs is *long* (1) in nouns of 3d decl. which have ū long in the penult of gen.; *e. g.*, virtūs (ūtīs), palūs (ūdīs); (2) in gen. sing. and N., A., V. plur. of 4th declension.

(2.) *Derivation and Composition.*

(256.) Derivative and compound words generally retain the quantity of the primitive and simple words; *e. g.*, āmo, āmicus; pōno, impōno.

(3.) *Increase.*

[A noun is said to *increase* when it has more syllables in the gen. than in the nom. (*e. g.*, mil-ēs, mil-īt-is; here īt is the increase); a verb, when it has more syllables than the 2d pers. sing. indic. (*e. g.*, ām-as, ām-at-is; here at is the increase.)]

(257.) In the increase of *nouns*, *a* and *o* are generally *long*; *e, i, u, y, short*.

(258.) In the increase of *verbs*, *a, e, and o* are generally *long*; *i, u, short*.

(4.) *Penults.*

(259.) Every perfect tense of two syllables has the first *long* (as vīdī), except bībi, fīdī, tūli, dēdi, stēti, and scīdi.

(260.) Penults of adjectives, (1) īdus, icus, *short* (2)

In *us*, *doubtful* (often *long*); (3) *ilis* and *bilis*, derived from *verbs*, *short*; from *nouns*, *long*.

[All exceptions to the above rules that are not stated will be marked in the vocabularies.]

(261.)

EXERCISE ON QUANTITIES.

[Give the quantity of the *unmarked* syllables of the following words with the rule for each.]

1. *Final Vowels.*

Ipse, *agmine*, *die*, *rēgere*, *rēge*, *dōcēbēre*, *re*, *mōve*, *mōvēre*, *bēne* (*adv.* from *bōnūs*), *Cēsāre*, *optime* (*adv.*, from *optimūs*), *me*, *dōmīni*, *vīgilia*, *audi*, *adventu*, *ire*, *hi*, *consilio*, *constāle*, *de*, *tertia*, *vīgiliae*, *contra*, *rōga*, *mōneo*, *ita*, *fructu*, *āmo*.

2. *Final Consonants.*

Obsides, *bōnas*, *vīgiliae*, *āmat*, *mīles* (*mīlītis*), *mīlites*, *rōgāvēras*, *has*, *bōnum*, *lampas* (*lampādīs*), *pedes* (*pēditis*), *pēdites*, *illas*, *adventus* (*gen.*), *rēgis*, *sīmul*, *audis*, *linter*, *auditis*, *vīgiliae*, *cāput*, *virtus* (*virtūtis*), *dōmīnia*, *mānus*, *rēgitur*, *rēgitis*, *mānia*, *mānivēras*.

3. *Increase.*

Amatis, *militis*, *audiris*, *obsidem*, *mōnemus*, *monebatis*, *ītineris*, *rōgabas*, *mōnebamur*, *audimus*, *mōnebimini*, *vōluptatis*, *sermonis*, *murmure*, *pēdites*, *clāmōrem*, *mīlites*, *vulturem*, *āmat*, *mōnebatis*, *mōnetote*, *audite*, *lēgimus*, *pedem*, *sēgetis* (from *sēges*).

4. *Penults.*

Mālēdicus, *mīrificus*, *bēnēficus*, *facilis* (from *fācio*), *puērilis* (from *puer*), *amābilis* (from *āmo*), *servilis* (from *servus*).

§ 2.

TENSES OF VERBS FOR COMPLETED ACTION.—PARTIAL STATEMENT. (XLIIL.—XLVI.)

LESSON XLIII.

Tense Forms for Completed Action.—Indicative.

(262.) IN Part I. we made use only of those tenses of the verb which express action as *continuing* or *incomplete*, viz., the present, imperfect, and future. There are three tenses also for *completed* action, viz., perfect (*I have written*), pluperfect (*I had written*), future perfect (*I shall have written*). The stem for all these is the same.

(263.) The endings for these three tenses are,

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.	1st.	2d.	3d.
Perfect.	i.	isti.	it.	imūs.	istis.	} erunt, or erē. erant. erint.
Pluperf.	ērām.	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	ērātis.	
Fut. Perf.	ērō.	eris.	erit.	erimūs.	eritis.	

(264.) By adding these endings to the perfect-stem *fu-* of the verb *essē*, to be, we obtain the forms perfect (*I have been*), pluperfect (*I had been*), future perfect (*I shall have been*).

Tense-Stem.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect.
Fu-	i.	ērām.	ērō.
	isti.	ērās.	eris.
	it.	ērāt.	erit.
	imūs.	ērāmūs.	erimūs.
	istis.	ērātis.	eritis.
	erunt, or ere.	erant.	erint.

(265.) *Double use of the Perfect.*—It must be carefully observed that the Latin perfect has two uses, one answering to the English perfect, and the other to the English imperfect

Thus, *fui* means not only *I have been*, but *I was*. We call the former the perfect *present*; the latter the perfect *aurist*,* which expresses *momentary* action in *past time*; e. g., *Crassus* was *chief of the embassy*—*Crassus princeps lēgationis fuit*.

EXERCISE.

(266.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To be over, to preside over, to command, præssē (præ+esse, to be before).</i>	<i>Praise, laus, (laud) is (f). After, post (prep. acc.). Before, ante (prep. acc.).</i>
<i>To be wanting, de-essē (de+essē, to be from).</i>	<i>Because, quia (conj., 248). How long? quamdiū (adv.).</i>
<i>To be in, to be present at, interessē (inter+essē, to be among).</i>	<i>Afterward, postea.</i>
<i>Sick, æger, gra, grum (77, a).</i>	<i>Virtuous, prōbūs, ā, um. School, schol-a, æ, f.</i>

(267.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) <i>If we shall have been always virtuous in life, after death also we shall be happy.</i></p> <p>(b) <i>The Roman soldiers were present at many battles.</i></p> | <p><i>Sī in vitā sempēr prōbī fuērī-
mūs, etiām post mortē
beatī ērīmūs.</i></p> <p><i>Militēs Rōmānī praeliis multis
interfuērunt.</i></p> |
|---|---|

Rule of Syntax.—The compounds of *essē* with the prepositions *præ, inter, ob, pro, de*, take the *dative* case.

(268.) *Translate into English.*

Thēmistoclēs vir magnūs ēt clārūs fuit.—*Cūr hērī in scholā nōn fuistī?*—*Quia cūm patre in hortō fui.*—*Quamdiū in urbē fuistis?*—*Sex diēs (191, c).*—*Antē bellū in urbē fuerāmūs.*—*Crassūs lēgātūs (225, a) cōpiis Rōmānōrūm præfuērāt.*—*Nunquām deērit tibi laus hominū, si sempēr prōbūs fueris.*—*Ægernē (135, II., a) fuistī hērī?*—*Antē Cicerōnis atātēm oratōrēs multī ēt clārī fuerant, nēc postea defuērunt.*—*Cæsār praeliis multis interfuit.*

(269.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Recollect the double use of the perfect (*present* and *aurist*, 265).]

Divitiacus commanded (præfuit) the forces of the Æduans

* The *aurist* use of the perfect is more common in Latin than the *present*.

—If you shall have been always virtuous in life, after death also you shall be happy.—If we are always virtuous, the praise of men shall never be wanting to us.—We were not in school yesterday, because we had been in the garden with (our) father.—*Had you been* (135, II., a) in our garden?—Have you been sick?—How long have you been in the city? Four days (191, c).—The lieutenant had been in the city before the war.—Before the age of Cæsar there had been many and great generals; nor were they wanting afterward.—Cæsar and the Roman soldiers were present at many battles.

LESSON XLIV.

Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, continued.

(270.) THE tense-stem of the perfect tense is formed in most verbs as follows:

- (1) In 1st conj. by adding *āv* to the verb-stem; e. g., *ām-āv*.
- (2) In 2d conj. “ *ū* “ e. g., *mōn-ū*.
- (4) In 4th conj. “ *iv* “ e. g., *aud-iv*

[The *third* conjugation is treated in the next lesson.]

(271.) By adding the perfect-endings (263) to the tense-stems formed (as in 270), we obtain the following perfect-tense forms of *āmārē*, to love; *mōnērē*, to advise; *audirē*, to hear.*

	PRF. STEMS.	ENDINGS.	
		<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i>	
1st conj.	<i>āmāv-</i>	} <i>i, istī, it, imūs, istīs, erunt, or ērē,</i>	{ <i>have loved. have advised. have heard.</i>
2d conj.	<i>mōnū-</i>		
4th conj.	<i>audiv-</i>		

* In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, it is obvious that the perfect is made up of the *middle*-form of the verb and *fui*; e. g., *ama-fui* = *āmāvī*; *mōnē-fui* = *mōnūī*; *audi-fui* = *audivī*.

EXERCISE.

(272.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Preceptor</i> , præceptōr, (præceptōr) is (m.).	<i>Pleasant</i> , jūcundus, ā, ūm.
<i>Tribune</i> , tribūnūs, ī (m.).	<i>All night</i> , pēr tōtām noctēm.
<i>Sister</i> , sōrōr, (sōrōr) is (f.).	<i>Diligently</i> , diligentēr (215, 2, b).
<i>Disgrace</i> , ignōmīniā, æ (f.).	<i>From every side</i> , undiquē (adv.).
	<i>To excite</i> , excitārē.

(273.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>I loved the boy.</i>	Puērūm ā m ā v ī.
(b) <i>From my boyhood I have loved my mother.</i>	Ā puerō (i. e., from a boy) matrēm ā m ā v ī.

[Obs. In (a) the perfect aorist is used; in (b) the perfect present.]

(274.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsār omnēs undiquē mercatōrēs ad sē (145, a) convōcāvit.—Ā puērō fratrēm et sōrōrēm āmāvī.—Cūr per tōtām noctem vīgīlavisti?—Quiā pātēr ægēr fuit.—Mīltēs diū et ācritēr pugnavērunt.—Hōs puerōs* magistēr diligentēr docuit linguām Latinām.*—Tuā ipsiūs (159) causā (135, II., b) tē sæpē monui.—Tīmōr ignōmīniæ Germānōs ad virtutem excitāvit.—Jūcundūm āviūm (78, II., b) cantūm audīvimūs.—Dormīvistīnē?—Nōn dormīvī.—Cæsāris adventūs oppidānos terruit.

[Inflect all the verbs in this lesson through the perfect tense, and form the perfect according to (270).]

(275.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar called together all the lieutenants from every side to himself (145, a).—From my boyhood I have loved my preceptors.—The good preceptor taught me* the Greek language.—Cæsar called-together all the lieutenants and tribunes (tribunōs-quē, 202, N.) of the soldiers to himself.—The slaves have watched all night.—(Your) father has often advised you for your own sake (135, II., b).—The Gauls took-possession-of Rome.—The love of glory has always excited the Romans to bravery.—We have diligently taught the boys.—Why did you not sleep? Because my mother was sick.—They have heard the pleasant singing of the birds.—We have fortified all the

* Verbs of *teaching* take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

towers of Gaul.—The coming of Cæsar terrified the Æduans and Helvetians.—I have often walked in Cæsar's garden, on-the-other-side-of the Tiber (trans Tibērīm).

LESSON XLV.

Tenses for Completed Action, continued. — Perfect Tense, Third Conjugation.

(276.) THE perfect tense-stem of most verbs of the third conjugation is formed by adding *s* to the verb-stem; *e. g.*,

		Perfect-stem.	
rēg-ērē,	to rule,	rēg-s =	rex-
scrib-ērē,	to write,	scrib-s =	scrips-
lūd-ērē,	to play,	lūd-s =	lus-

(277.) *Rules of Euphony.*

(1) A *c*-sound before *s* forms *x*; dūc-s = dūx; rēg-s = rex.

Rem. *c*, *g*, *h*, *gu*, *qu*, are classed among *k*-sounds. *v* also (generally) before *s* forms *x*; viv-s = vix.

(2) *b* before *s* is changed into *p*; *e. g.*, scrib-s = scrips; nūb-s = nups.

(3) A *t*-sound is (generally) dropped before *s*; lūd-s = lūs; claud-s = claus.

Rem. *t* and *d* are the *t*-sounds.

(278.) By adding the perfect-endings (263) to the stems of rēg-ērē, scrib-ērē, lūd-ērē, we obtain the perfect tense-forms (*have ruled, have written, have played*).

PERFECT-STEMS.	ENDINGS.	
(rēg-s =) rex-	<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i>	{ <i>have ruled.</i> <i>have written.</i> <i>have played.</i>
(scrib-s =) scrips-	{ <i>i, istī, it, imūs, istīs, erunt, or</i> <i>ērē.</i>	
(lūd-s =) lūs-		

EXERCISE.

(279.) *Vocabulary.*

Suddenly, *sūbitō*.

To say, *dicere*.

To draw (as a sword), *stringere*.

Sword, *gladius*, *l*.

Trial, *iudiciūm*, *l*.

To lead together, *conducere*.

To divide, *dividere*.

Household, *familiā*, *m*:

Orgetorix, *Orgētōrix*, (*Orgētōrig*) *is*

A dependent, *cliens*, (*client*) *is* (*c.*).

Nature, *nātūrā*, *m*.

Stoic, *stoicus*, *l*.

(280.) *Examples.*

(a) *Did not Cæsar say these things?*

Nonne Cæsar hæc dixit?

(*Nonne* is used in asking questions when the answer *yes* is expected.)

(b) *Did Cæsar say this (i. e., is it possible that he did)?*

Num Cæsar hæc dixit?

(*Num* is used when the answer *no* is expected.)

(281.) *Translate into English.*

[Recollect double use of perfect (265).]

Cæsar *duas legiones conscripsit*; *tres ex hibernis eduxit*.—*Principes Germanorum omnes suas copias Rhenum* (113, II., a) *transduxerunt*.—*Consul gladium strinxit*.—*Nonne* (280, a) *gladios strinxistis?*—*Num imperator gladium strinxit?*—*Orgetorix ad iudiciūm omnem suam familiam et omnes clientes conduxit*.—*Cæsar exercitū in duas partes divisit*.—*Nonne epistolam ad patrem scripsisti?*—*Stoici diviserunt naturam hominis in animū et corpus*.—*Multas litteras hodie scripsimus*.

[What is the force of *ē* in *eduxit*? of *con* in *conduxit*? of *trans* in *transduxit*? Describe the formation of the perfect, and the euphonic changes, in all the verbs of this lesson.]

(282.) *Translate into Latin.*

The soldiers *suddenly* drew their swords.—Cæsar levied five legions in Italy.—Cæsar levied six legions in Italy, and led out four from (their) winter-quarters in Gaul.—The Æduans endeavour to *lead* (113, II., a) all their forces *across* the Rhine.—The general divided the army into five parts.—Did Cæsar say these (things) yesterday (280, b)?—Did you not write a letter to your brother?—Have you written a letter to the king (280, b)?—Orgetorix led-together all his household to the trial.

—Orgetorix led-together to the trial all his household and all (his) dependents.—Why have you drawn (your) sword?—Why have you not written to (your) father?—The Æduans levied many soldiers.—We have divided the nature of man into soul and body.

LESSON XLVI. .

Tenses for Completed Action, continued.—Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.

(283.) (a) The *pluperfect* tense simply adds to the perfect tense-stem the *imperfect* of *esse* (to be); viz., *ērām*, *ērās*, &c.

(b) The *future perfect* simply adds to the perfect tense-stem the *future* of *esse*; viz., *ērō*, *ērīs*, &c.; but in 3d plural it changes *u* into *i*; viz., *erint*, instead of *erunt*.

(284.) Thus, from *ām-āre*, *mōn-ērē*, *rēg-ērē* *aud-irē*, we have,

PRF.-STEM.	PLUPERFECT-ENDING.	
1. <i>āmāv-</i> 2. <i>mōnū-</i> 3. <i>rex-</i> 4. <i>audīv-</i>	<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i> } <i>ērām, ērās, ērāt, ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant</i> {	<i>had loved.</i> <i>had advised.</i> <i>had ruled.</i> <i>had heard.</i>
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
1. <i>āmāv-</i> 2. <i>mōnū-</i> 3. <i>rex-</i> 4. <i>audīv-</i>	} <i>ērō, ērīs, ērit, ērimūs, ēritīs, erint</i> {	<i>shall have loved.</i> <i>shall have advised.</i> <i>shall have ruled.</i> <i>shall have heard.</i>

EXERCISE.

(285.) *Vocabulary.*

Dēfēs, angustiae, arum (pl.).

To err, errārē.

To draw, dūcērē.

A principle, principium, i.

To attack, oppugnārē.

Near, juxtā (prep. acc.).

Already, jām (adv.).

To take by storm, expugnārē

(286.) *Translate into English.*

(a) *Pluperfect*.—Militēs diū et acritēr pugnāverant.—Pātēr filiūm saepē mōnūērāt.—Duās lēgiōnēs in Italiā conscripserāmūs.—Helvētī jām pēr angustias cōpiās suās transduxērant.—

Cæsār castellā Galliæ munivērāt ēt trēs lēgiōnēs ex hiberniis
ēduxērāt.

(b) *Future Perfect.*

Rem. The *future perfect* is sometimes used in Latin, when in English we should use the simple perfect or *future*; e. g.,

When I (shall) have written the letter, I shall come to you. | Quum ēpistolām scripsērō, ad tē
vēniām.

Quum āmicūm in hortūm duxērō, ad tē vēniām.—Haud
errāvērō, sī ā Platōnē principiūm duxērō.—Quum hostēs cas-
tellā expugnāvērint, urbē ipsām (159) oppugnābunt.—Haud
errāvērīs, sī ā Cicēronē principiā duxērīs.

(287.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) *Pluperfect.*—The general had drawn his sword.—Near
the city the soldiers had fought long and spiritedly.—Cæsar had
levied one legion in Italy, and led-out seven from (their) win-
ter-quarters in Gaul.—The Helvetians had already led their
forces across the Rhine (113, II., a), through the boundaries
of the Sequanians.—I had often advised you for your own
sake (135, II., b).

(b) *Future Perfect* (R., 286, b).—When we have written
the letters, we shall come to the city.—We shall not have err-
ed, if we shall have drawn (ducērō) our principles from Plato.
—When Cæsar shall have taken-by-storm the city, he will at-
tack the tower itself (159).

K; c :

§ 3.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION.—FULLER TREATMENT. (XLVII.—LVII)

[The third declension contains more nouns than all the others together. It also involves greater difficulties; and we therefore give it a full treatment in the following section, which should be carefully studied.]

LESSON XLVII.

(288.) THE *genitive-ending* of the third declension is *is*.

Rem. To find the *stem* of any noun of this declension, strike off *is* from the gen.; e. g., G., *nōminis* (*of a name*), stem, *nōmīn*.

(289.) ENDINGS FOR ALL THE CASES.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	M. and F.	N.	N.	M. and F.	N.
G.	<i>is</i> .	<i>is</i> .	G.	<i>ēs</i> .	<i>ēs</i> (<i>iūs</i>).
D.	<i>i</i> .	<i>i</i> .	D.	<i>ūm</i> (<i>iūm</i>).	<i>ūm</i> (<i>iūm</i>).
A.	<i>ēm</i> (<i>im</i>).	like Nom.	A.	<i>ibūs</i> .	<i>ibūs</i> .
V.	like Nom.	like Nom.	V.	<i>ēs</i> .	<i>ēs</i> (<i>iēs</i>).
A.	<i>ē</i> (<i>i</i>).	<i>ē</i> (<i>i</i>).	A.	<i>ibūs</i> .	<i>ibūs</i> .

(290.) The *nom.-ending* is not given, because of the many forms in which that case-occurs. The most common *nom.-ending* is *s*; but the stem itself is often employed as the *nom.*; and is often, again, changed. We make *six* classes, which must be carefully distinguished, viz.:

(291.) CLASSES.

- I. Nouns which add *s* to the stem in the nominative without any vowel change. (*Feminines*.)
- II. Nouns which insert a connecting vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*. (*Feminines*.)
- III. Nouns which change the stem-vowel (*i* into *e*) before adding *s*. (*Masculines*.)
- IV. Nouns which add *ē* to the stem. (*Neuters*.)

V. Nouns which present the *unchanged* stem in the nominative without adding *s*. (*Masculines*, except *-al*, *-ar*, *-ur*, which are *Neuter*.)

VI. Nouns which present the stem *changed* in the nominative without adding *s*. (*Masculines*, *Feminines*, and *Neuters*.)

(292.) [Before entering upon the paradigms, the student should learn thoroughly the following *rules of euphony*, which prevail generally in Latin nouns and verbs.]

(1) *c* or *g* before *s* unites with it to form *x*; *e. g.*, *leg-s* is written *lex*; *arc-s*=*arx*; *voc-s*=*vox*, &c.

(2) *d* or *t* before *s* is dropped; *e. g.*, *laud-s*=*laus*; *quiet-s*=*quies*; *parent-s*=*parens*.

(293.) CLASS I.—*The Nominative adds s to the Stem, without any Vowel change. (Feminines.)*

Sing.	City (f.).	Citadel (f.).	Praise (f.).	Race (nation), f.	Quiet (f.).
N. and V.	urb-s.	arx (arc-s).	laus (laud-s).	gens (gent-s).	quies.
Gen.	urb-is.	arc-is.	laud-is.	gent-is.	quies-is.
Dat.	urb-i.	arc-i.	laud-i.	gent-i.	quies-i.
Acc.	urb-ēm.	arc-ēm.	laud-ēm.	gent-ēm.	quies-ēm.
Abl.	urb-ē.	arc-ē.	laud-ē.	gent-ē.	quies-ē.
Plur.	Cities.	Citadels.	Praises.	Races (nations).	
N., A., V.	urb-ēs.	arc-ēs.	laud-ēs.	gent-ēs.	quies-ēs.
Gen.	urb-ium.	arc-ium.	laud-ium.	gent-ium.	quies-ium.
D. and A.	urb-ibus.	arc-ibus.	laud-ibus.	gent-ibus.	quies-ibus.

On this class, observe carefully that,

(294.) As to the *case-endings*, *ium* is the gen. plur. ending of those nouns whose stems end in *two* consonants; *e. g.*, *urb-s*, *urb-is*, *urb-ium*; *nox*, *noct-is*, *noct-ium*; *cōhors*, *cohort-is*, *cōhort-ium*.

(295.) As to *gender*, they are mostly feminine. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add *s* to the stem, without changing the stem-vowel, to form the nom., are *feminine*.

[*Rem. Exceptions.* The following are *masculines* :

1. dens (dent-is), <i>tooth</i> .	*bidens (bident-is), <i>hoe</i> .
mons (mont-is), <i>mountain</i> .	*torrens (torrent-is), <i>torrent</i> .
fons (font-is), <i>fountain</i> .	*tridens (trident-is), <i>trident</i> .
pons (pont-is), <i>bridge</i> .	*ōriens (ōrient-is), <i>east</i> .
rūdens (rudent-is), <i>rope</i> .	*occidens (occident-is), <i>west</i> .

* These nouns in *ens* are properly adjectives, with a masc. noun understood; *e. g.*, *oriens sol*, *torrens amnis*, &c.

2. *Grex* (grĕg) is, a *flock*; also a few nouns in *ix* and *ax*.
 3. *Pāriēs*, (pāriet) is, *wall*; *pēs* (pĕd-is), *foot*; *lāpis*, (lāpid) is, *stone*,
vās (vād-is), *surety*.]

[The rules of gender should be learned by heart; the lists of exceptions need not be, unless they are very short. All exceptions are marked in the vocabularies; and the lists should be referred to whenever cases occur.]

To Class I. belong the nouns of the following endings, of which the pupil has had frequent examples:

Libertās, *libertāt-is*, *liberty*; *dignitas*, *dignitāt-is*, *dignity*; and, in short, all nouns in *ās*, *ātis*.

Virtūs, *virtūt-is*, *virtue*; and all others in *ūs*, *ūtis*.

Pālūs, *palūd-is*, *swamp*; and others in *ūs*, *ūdīs*.

In the following exercise several of the exceptions will be found.

EXERCISE.

(296.) Vocabulary.

Highest (the top), *summus*, ā, ūm.
Middle, *mēdiūs*, ā, ūm.
To leave, *rēlinquĕrĕ* (perf-stem, rēliqu-).
To secede, *sēcēdĕrĕ* (perf-stem, sēcēss-).
To take care of, *cūrāre*.
To touch upon, to reach, *attingĕrĕ*.
To seek, to aim at, *pētĕrĕ*.
To cut down, *rescindĕrĕ*.

Romulus, *Rōmulus*, I.
Hercynian, *Hercynias*, ā, um.
Senate, *sĕnātūs*, ūs (m.).
Agrippa, *Agrippā*, æ (m.).
Where, *ubīnām*?
The common people, *plebs*, (plĕb) Ia
Patricians (of Rome), *patrēs*, (patr) ūm (pl.).
An interreign, *interregnum*, I.
Speedy, *cītās*, ā, ūm.

[The nouns which occur in the preceding lesson are not named in the vocabulary: the learner will find them, and observe their gender.]

(297.) Examples.

- (a) *On the top of the mountain.* | *In summō montē.*
 (b) *On the tops of the trees.* | *In summīs ārbōribūs.*
 (c) *In the middle of the city.* | *In mediā urbē.*
 (d) *Where in the world?* | *Ubīnām gentiūm?*

(298.) Translate into English.

Magnā pars plēbīs urbēm rēliquit, ēt in montēm (295, R. 1) *ēcessit*.—*Tūm patrēs Agrippām ad plēbēm misērunt* (401, 3, b) —*Hercyniā sylvā finēs multārūm gentiūm attingit*.—*Cassiūs, lēgātus* (225, a), *trēs cohortēs in arcēm oppidi duxit*.—*Ūbī nām gentiūm sūmūs?*—*Deūs cūrāt gentēs*.—*Āquilæ in sum*

mis montibus nificat.—Magnus (78, II., b) avium grex (295, R., 2) summam arcem petunt.—Milites pontem (295, R., 1) rescindunt.—Leges Romanorum justae fuerunt.—Summus mons (295, R., 1) ab hostibus tenetur.—Caesar ad utramque (194, R. 1) partem pontis praesidium reliquit.—Post Romuli mortem unius (194) anni interregnum fuit.—Sapientes mortem non timeant.—Mors cito veniet.

[All the nouns should be declined, the rule of gender given, and the exceptions referred to if necessary. The formations of the verbs should be carefully analyzed.]

(299.) *Translate into Latin.*

The laws were just.—The fountain was beautiful.—The Hercynian forest touches the boundaries of five nations.—The common-people left the city, and seceded to the mountain.—The doves built-their-nest in the top of the citadel (297, a).—A large flock of birds flew over the city.—The soldiers fought long on the middle of the bridge (297, c).—Then the senate sent an ambassador to the common-people.—God takes care of cities and nations.—The Belgians inhabit one part of Gaul, the Aquitanians another.—Where in the world (297, d) are we? in what city do we live?—Caesar fortified each part of the bridge.

LESSON XLVIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(300.) CLASS II.—*The Nominative inserts a Connecting-vowel (ē or ī) before adding s to the Stem. (Feminines.)*

	e inserted.	i inserted.
Singular.	Cloud (ċ).	Ship (ġ).
N. and V.	nūb-ē-s.	nāv-ī-s.
Gen.	nūb-īs.	nāv-īs.
Dat.	nūb-ī.	nāv-ī.
Acc.	nūb-ēm.	nāv-ēm or ĩm.
Abl.	nūb-ē.	nāv-ē or ĩ.
Plural.	Clouds.	Ships.
N. A. V.	nūb-ēs.	nāv-ēs.
Gen.	nūb-īūm.	nāv-īūm.
D. and Abl.	nūb-ībūs.	nāv-ībūs.

On this class, observe carefully,

(301.) As to the *case-endings*: [(1) The acc.-ending *īm* instead of *ēm* is used: 1. *sometimes* (but rarely) in the words *clavis*, *key*; *messis*, *harvest*; *navis*, *ship*: 2. *commonly* in *febris*, *fever*; *pelvis*, *basin*; *puppis*, *stern*; *restis*, *rope*; *sēcūris*, *axe*; *turris*, *tower*: 3. *always* in *amussis*, *a rule*; *sītis*, *thirst*; *tussis*, *cough*; *vis*, *force*.]

[(2) The abl.-ending *ī* instead of *ē* is used (not, however, to the exclusion of *e*) in all those words which take *īm* in the acc.; e. g., *turris*, *turrim*, *turri*: *vis*, *vim*, *vī* (always). Also in *ignis*, *fire*; *civis*, *citizen*.]

(3) The gen. plur. ending *iūm* instead of *ūm* is used in most nouns which insert *e* or *i* before adding *s* to the stem. [*Prolēs*, *canis*, *panis*, *vatēs*, *juvēnis* have *ūm*.]

(302.) *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns which insert a vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s* in the nominative are *feminines*.

[*Rem. Exceptions*:

<i>Amnis</i> (m.), <i>river</i> .	<i>fascis</i> (m.), <i>bundle</i> .	<i>panis</i> (m.), <i>bread</i> .
<i>Axīs</i> (m.), <i>axle</i> .	<i>follis</i> (m.), <i>bellows</i> .	<i>piscis</i> (m.), <i>fish</i> .
<i>Callis</i> (m.), <i>path</i> .	<i>fānis</i> (m.), <i>rope</i> .	<i>postis</i> (m.), <i>post</i> .
<i>Cānalis</i> (m.), <i>canal</i> .	<i>fustis</i> (m.), <i>club</i> .	<i>sentis</i> (m.), <i>bramble</i> .
<i>Collis</i> (m.), <i>hill</i> .	<i>ignis</i> (m.), <i>fire</i> .	<i>unguis</i> (m.), <i>finger nail</i> .
<i>Crinis</i> (m.), <i>hair</i> .	<i>mensis</i> (m.) <i>month</i> .	<i>vectis</i> (m.), <i>lever</i> .
<i>Ensis</i> (m.), <i>sword</i> .	<i>orbis</i> (m.), <i>circle</i> .	<i>vermis</i> (m.), <i>worm</i> .]

EXERCISE.

[In the vocabularies, the Roman numerals I., II., &c., placed after nouns, refer to the *class* to which they belong.]

(303.) Vocabulary.

To dread, *formidārē*.
Pilot, *gubernatōr*, is (m.).
To bring, *āgērē* (perf.-stem, ēg-).
To procure, *compārārē*.
A Carthaginian, *Carthāgīniensis*, is.
To raise, *to kindle*, *excītārē*.
Power, *pōtestās*, (*pōtestāt*) is (f., I.).
Barbarian, *barbārūs*, i.
Vehemently, *greatly*, *vēhēmentēr*
 (215, 2, b).
To build, *ædificārē*.

A fleet, *classis*, is (f., II.).
And, *ac*.
Twenty, *vīgintī* (indecl.).
Lofty, *altūs*, ā, ūm.
Thirteen, *trēdēcīm* (indecl.).
The Druids, *Druīdes*, ūm (m., pl.).
Thirst, *sītis*, (*sīt*) is (f., II.).
To relieve, *lōvārē*.
To dispute, *dispūtārē*.
To terrify, *terrārē* (perfect-stem *terrā*-).

(304.) Translate into English.

Nūbēs *sæpē* *lūnām* *obscurant*.—*Civēs* *classēm* *hostiūm* *for-*

mīdant.—Cæsār nāvēs longas ædificāvit, ēt nautās gūbernātō-rēsque (202, N.) comparāvit.—Crassūs ad oppidūm turrēs altās ēgit.—Vētērēs Romānī vim Carthāgīniensium non formī-dāverunt.—Cæsār turrēs trēdēcim excitāvit.—Milītēs ignēs magnōs in summō montē (297, a) excitāverunt.—Druides dē deōrūm immortalīūm vī ac potestātē dispūtant.—Classīs adven-tūs cīvēs terruit.—Āquā sitim (301, 1) lēvāt.—Nōvā nāvīūm figurā vēhēmentēr (215, 2, b) barbārōs terruit.

(305.) *Translate into Latin.*

Lofty towers are raised by Cæsar.—The general prepared twenty long ships.—The lieutenant brought the towers to the wall of the city.—The power of the Romans terrified the Gauls.—Wine does not relieve thirst.—The sun is often obscured by the clouds.—The approach of the fleet and the soldiers terrified the citizens.—A great fire is kindled on the top of the mountain by the Æduans.—The general stationed the ships near the wall of the city.—The clouds are black.—The coming of our fleet and the strange (n ō v a) figure of the ships terrified all the barbarians.

LESSON XLIX.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(306.) CLASS III.—*The Nominative changes the Stem-vowel (ī into ē) before adding s to the Stem.*

Vowel i changed into e.		
Singular.	Soldier (m.).	Book (m.).
N. and V.	mīlēs (milet-s).	cōdēx (codecs).
Gen.	milit-is.	cōdic-is.
Dat.	milit-i.	cōdic-i.
Acc.	milit-ēm.	cōdic-ēm.
Abl.	milit-ē.	cōdic-ē.
Plural.	Soldiers.	Books.
N. A. V.	milit-ēs.	cōdic-ēs.
Gen.	milit-ūm.	cōdic-ūm.
D. and A.	milit-ibūs.	cōdic-ibūs.

On this class, observe that,

(307.) As to the *case-endings*, they are all regular.

(308.) As to *gender*, they are masculine. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change the stem-vowel *i* into *ē* before adding *s* in the nominative are *masculine*.

Exc. *Mergēs* (f.), (*mergītis*), *a sheaf*.

EXERCISE.

(309.) *Vocabulary.*

To double, dāplicārē.

Brutus, Brūtūs, i.

Sharp, spirited, ācēr, acris, acrē
(105, R. 1).

Defender, vindex, (vindīc) is (m., III.).

Liberty, libertās, (libertāt) is (f., I.).

Foot-soldier, footman, pēdēs, (pēdīt) is (m., III.).

Embark upon, conscendērē, con-
scandere (perf.-stem, *conscend*),
(for *upon*, in with the accusative).

To depart, discendērē.

I began, cōpī. Perfect, defective.

To sustain, sustinērē (sub and tē-
nērē), perf.-stem, *sustinu*.

At his own expense, sumptū suō
(abl.).

Expense, sumptūs, ūs.

To support, ālērē (perf.-stem, *alu*).

Greatness, magnitūdō, (magnitūdīn) is (f.).

A Briton, Brītanūs, i.

Guest, hospēs, (hospit) is (m. and f., 25, a).

To injure, to maltreat, violārē.

Companion, cōmēs, (cōmīt) is (m. and f., 25, a).

Narrow, angustūs, ā, ūm.

Place, lōcūs, ī (nom. pl., *lōcī* and *lōcā*).

Conspiracy, conjuratio (nis) (f.).

(310.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsār nūmērūm obsidūm dāplicābit.—*Brūtūs ērāt ācērī libertātīs vindex.*—*Ēquītēs ēt pēdītēs īn nāvēs conscendērunt.*—*Dumnōrix cūm ēquītībūs discendērē cōpīt.*—*Dumnōrix magnūm nūmērūm equitū suō sumptū āluīt.*—*Militēs omnēs magnitūdīnēm sylvārūm tīmuērunt.*—*Brītanī antīquī hospītēs nunquām violāvērunt.*—*Cōmītēs principīs angustō īn lōcō ēquitū nostrōrūm vīm diū sustīnuērunt.*

(311.) *Translate into Latin.*

The chiefs began to go away with all the horsemen.—The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers did not sustain the attack (vim) of the enemy.—The general supported the soldiers at his own expense.—The companions of Dumnorix sustained bravely the attack of our footmen.—The Germans maltreated the ambassadors.—The companions of the lieutenant are embarking-upon the ships.—The greatness of the woods terrifies the horsemen and the footmen.—Dumnorix always maltreats (his) guests.—The messenger began to depart with all the guests.—Brutus,

the defender of liberty, made (fēcīt) a conspiracy.—The townsmen for a long time supported a large number of footmen at their own expense.—The chiefs doubled the number of horsemen.

LESSON L.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(312.) CLASS IV.—*The Nominative adds ě to the Stem.*

	Sea (n.).	Seas.	Net (n.).	Nets.
N., A., V.	mār-ĕ.	mār-ĭā.	rēt-ĕ.	rēt-ĭā.
Gen.	mār-ĭs.	mār-iŭm.	rēt-ĭs.	rēt-iŭm.
Dat., Abl.	mār-i.	mār-ibŭs.	rēt-i.	rēt-ibŭs.

On this class, observe that,

(313.) As to the *case-endings*, the abl. is always *i*, the nom. plur. *ĭā*, and the gen. plur. *iŭm*.

(314.) As to *gender*, they are all *neuter*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add *e* to the stem (instead of *s*) in the nom. are *neuter*.

EXERCISE.

(315.) *Vocabulary.*

By sea and land, terrā mārīque, *abl.*
(not mārī et terrā).

To wash, alluĕre (ad+luĕre).

To use, ūti (dep. — governs *abl.*).

To be accustomed, consuescere (*perfect-stem*, consuĕv).

Navigation, navigatiō, (navigation)
ĭs (f.).

Vast, vastŭs, ā, ūm.

Open, āpertŭs, ā, ūm.

Ocean, oceānus, ī.

The Venetians, Vĕnĕtī, orum (pl.).

Broad, latus, ā, ūm.

But, autĕm (not so strongly adversative as sĕd, and always placed after one or more words of the sentence).

Other, different, ālius (194, R. 1)

Bed, cubilĕ, (cūbīl) ĭs (IV.).

Splendid, splendīdŭs, ā, ūm.

A dock-yard, nāvālĕ, (nāval) ĭs (IV.);

To commit, to join (as battle), committĕrĕ (perf.-stem, commīs)

In the mean time, intĕrim (adv.).

Huntsman, vĕnātor (ĭs), m.

Far, longĕ (adv.).

(316.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>(a) <i>Fr</i> <i>Marseilles</i> is washed on three sides by the sea.</p> <p>(b) <i>In our sea</i> (i. e., the <i>Mediterranean</i>) we were accustomed to use long ships.</p> | <p><i>Massilia</i> enim tribus ex partibus mārī (abl., 93, II., b, R.) allūitūr.</p> <p><i>Nostrō mārī</i> (55) longīs nāvibus utī consuēvimūs.</p> |
|--|---|

Rule of Syntax.—The deponent verb *utī*, to use, governs the ablative; e. g., *navibus*, in (b).

(317.) *Translate into English.*

Longē aliā nāvigātiō est in angustō mārī atquē in vastō atquē āpertō oceaṇō.—*Longē fuērunt nāvēs quibus* (abl., 316, b) *nostro mārī* (55) *utī* (infin.) *consuēvimus.*—*Venētī autem lātis navibus utī consueverunt.*—*Mihī* (125, II., a) *cubilē est terrā.*—*Rōmānōrūm cubiliā magnā fuerunt et splendidā.*—*Imperātōr quinquē nāves ex navālī edūxit et praelium commisit.*—*Turris erat proximā portui* (106, II., c) *navālībūsque.*—*Cæsār, intērim, omnēs nāvēs quæ erant in navālībūs incendit.*—*Venātōr retē diligentēr pārābāt.*—*Venātōres retiā cervīs* (54) *pārābant.*

(318.) *Translate into Latin.*

The farmers were preparing nets for the (54) doves.—*Corinth* is washed on two sides by the sea.—The ships which (316, b) the Venetians were accustomed to use in our sea were long.—In the vast and open ocean we use broad ships.—Navigation is far different (*longē aliā*) in a narrow river and in the open sea.—I had (125, II., a) a high tree (for my) bed.—*Cæsar* was pursuing Pompey by sea and land.—The tower was very near to the dockyard.—The general, in the mean time, was rebuilding all the old ships in the port and dockyards.

LESSON LI.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(319.) CLASS V.—*The Nominative presents the Stem unchanged.*

1. *Masculine Forms.*

Singular.	Honour (m.).	Consul (m.).	Goose (m.).	Brother (m.).
N. and V.	hönör.	consül.	ansër.	frätör.
Gen.	hönör-ís.	consül-ís.	ansër-ís.	frätör-ís.
Dat.	hönör-i.	consül-i.	ansër-i.	frätör-i.
Acc.	hönör-ëm.	consül-ëm.	ansër-ëm.	frätör-ëm.
Abl.	hönör-ë.	consül-ë.	ansër-ë.	frätör-ë.
Plural.	Honours.	Consuls.	Geese.	Brothers.
N., A., V.	hönör-ës.	consül-ës.	ansër-ës.	frätör-ës.
Gen.	hönör-üm.	consül-üm.	ansër-üm.	frätör-üm.
D. and Abl.	hönör-ibüs.	consül-ibüs.	ansër-ibüs.	frätör-ibüs.

On these, observe,

(320.) As to *case-endings*, they nearly all take the *regular* endings throughout; but those whose stem ends in *ter* or *ber* drop the *e* in all cases but the *nom.*; *e. g.*, frätör, frätöris; imbör (*a shower*) imbris.

Rem. Imbör, lintör, ventör, take *ium* for *gen. pl.* ending.

(321.) As to *gender*,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the *nom.* (except those whose stems end in *al*, *ar*, *ur*, *ör*) are *masculine*.

[Exception (1.) In *or*: arbör, öris (*tree*), is *feminine*; and ädör, öris (*pure wheat*), æquör, öris (*sea*), marmör, öris (*marble*), are *neut.* (Obs., masculines have *ö* (long) in the stem; neuters *o* (short)). The ending *ul* generally belongs to names of male beings (*e. g.*, consul): if applied to females, it may be *feminine* also (*e. g.*, exul, a female exile).

Exception (2.) *ör*: linter (*boat*) is *masc.* or *fem.*: the following are *neuter*: cädäver (*corpse*), äber (*teat*), ver (*the spring*), verber (*lash*) also, all names of *plants* in *er*: *e. g.*, piper (*pepper*), zingiber (*ginger*), &c.]

EXERCISE.

(322.) *Vocabulary*

Noise, clämör (öris, V., 1).

Cassius, Cassius, I.

Yoke, jügüm, I.

Archer, sägittariüs, I.

Slinger, funditor (öris, V., 1).

Succour, subsidiüm, I.

Rain, imbör (Is, 320).

Continuance, continüatiö, (continüation) Is (f.).

Skin, tent made of skins, pellis, (pell) is (f. II.).

Desert, dësertüm, I.

Shepherd, pastör (öris, V., 1).

Hunter, venätör (öris, V., 1).

(323.) *Translate into English.*

Impērātor ad se mercātōres undīque convōcavit.—Mīlītēs omnes māgno cum clāmōre in oppīdum irrupērunt.—Helvētīi Cassium consūlem occidunt, exercitumque ejus (153, c) sub jūgum* mittunt.—Cēsār sagittāriōs et fundītores subsidiō† (dat.) oppīdānis† (dat.) mīsit.—Mīlītēs continuātiōne imbrīum (320, R.) sub pellībūs cōtīnentur.—Incōlāe desertōrum sunt pastōres, venatōres, et mercātōres.—Divitiāe mercātōrum sunt incertāe.—Cēsār omnem ēquitātum fundītores saggittāriosque pontem (113 II., a) transduxit et ad hostes contendit.

(324.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Britons slew the general, and sent all the soldiers under the yoke.—The archers and slingers killed the chief.—By the continuance of the rains, the merchants are kept in the town.—The townsmen burst into the tents (pelles) with a great noise.—The archers and the slingers hasten to the town.—The consul Cassius led all the slingers over the bridge.—The Britons killed the scouts (exploratores), and sent the archers and slingers under the yoke.—The scouts hasten to the consul.—The general sent twenty soldiers for a succour† (dat.) to the merchants.†—The inhabitants of the town are merchants.—The riches of merchants, however great (184) they are, are uncertain.—The soldiers slew all the inhabitants of the desert.—The illustrious consuls led all the footmen over the bridge (113, II., a).

* A conquered army was made to march under a sort of yoke or gallows as a mark of disgrace.

† *Rule of Syntax.—Double Dative.* Two datives, one of the person, the other of the thing, may be used with *esse*, and with verbs of *giving coming, sending, &c.*

LESSON LII.

Nouns.—Third Declension. continued.(325.) CLASS V.—*The Nominative presents the Stem unchanged.*

2. Neuter Forms.

Singular.	Animal (n.).	Spur (n.).	Lightning (n.).	Marble (n.).
N., A., V.	ānīmāl.	calcār.	fulgūr.	marmōr.
Gen.	ānīmāl-īs.	calcār-īs.	fulgūr-īs.	marmōr-īs.
Dat.	ānīmāl-i.	calcār-i.	fulgūr-i.	marmōr-i.
Abl.	ānīmāl-i.	calcār-i.	fulgūr-ē.	marmōr-ē.
Plural.	Animals.	Spurs.	Lightnings.	Marbles.
N., A., V.	ānīmāl-iā.	calcār-iā.	fulgūr-ā.	marmōr-ā.
Gen.	ānīmāl-iūm.	calcār-iūm.	fulgūr-um.	marmōr-ūm.
D. and Abl.	ānīmāl-ībūs.	calcār-ībūs.	fulgūr-ībūs.	marmōr-ībūs.

On these, observe,

(326.) (a) As to *case-endings*, those in al, ar, make abl. i. nom. plur. iā, gen. plur. iūm.(b) As to *gender*, they are *neuter*. Hence,*Rule of Gender*.—Nouns which present in the nom. the unchanged stem in al, ar, ūr, and ōr (short), are *neuter*.Exceptions in al: Sal (*salt*) is *masc.* and *neut.* in the sing., and *masc.* sālēs, in plur. Lar, lārīs (*household god*), *masc.*Exceptions in ur: Fūr (*thief*), fūrūr (*bran*), turtur (*turtle-dove*), vultur (*vulture*), are *masc.*Exceptions in ōr. (Recollect that ōr, ōrīs (*with o long*), is a *masc* ending (321); and that ārbōr, ōrīs (*tree*), is *fem.*)*Rem.* Ōs, ossīs (*bone*), is *neut.*

EXERCISE.

(327.) *Vocabulary.**Level, plain*, planūs, ā, ūm.*A plain, the sea*, æquōr, īs (V., 2), (derived from æquūs, *plain*: see below, 328).*Revenue, tax*, vectigāl, (vectigāl) īs (V., 2).*To create*, creārē.*Hatred, odium*, ōdiūm, ī.*Many, very many*, complūrēs, ā or iā (gen. ūm or iūm), used only in plural.*Class, gēnūs, (gēnēr)* īs. *neut.**Temple, templum*, ī.*To place*, pōnērē.*Abode, dōmiciliūm*, ī.*To goad, concitārē.**Frugality, parsimōniā*, æ.*Indeed, quidēm* (adv.).*Placid, plācidūs, ā, ūm.**A marble temple, a temple of marble.*
templūm de marmōrē.*Sharp, ācūtūs, ā, ūm.**Glare, splendōr, (splendōr)* īs (V., 1)*To farm, rēdīmēre (rēdēm-).*

(328.) *Example.*

<i>The sea is level, from which also the poets call it æquor (the sea).</i>	<i>Mārē plānūm est; ex quō etiām æquor illū d poētæ vōcant.</i>
---	---

☞ Here the antecedent of quo is the sentence mārē plānūm est

(329.) *Translate into English.*

Magnūm hōc fuit vectigāl, sēd magnūm creāvit ōdiūm.—
Dumnōrix, complūrēs annōs (191, a, Rule) omniā Æduōrum
vectigālīā rēdēmērāt.—Complūrā (or complūriā) sunt gēnē-
rā animāliūm.—Templūm de marmōrē in fōrō pōnām.
Crassūs dōmūm magnām de marmōrē splēdīdō ædificāvit.
—Fulgūrā mīltēs vēhēmētēr terruērunt.—Terrā est dōm
īciliūm hōmīnūm ēt animāliūm.—Mīltēs subitō ēquōs cal-
cārībūs (abl., 55, a) concītārē cōpērunt.—Calcāria ācūtā
sunt.

(330.) *Translate into Latin.*

Glory is a great spur to brave men.—The horses fear the
sharp spurs.—The glare of the lightnings terrified the horses.
—Almost (fere, 218, b) all animals are useful to men.—These
were great revenues indeed, but they created great hatreds.—
The seas were level and placid.—Frugality is a great revenue.
—We shall place a temple of splendid marble in the midst (in
mediō fōrō, 297, c) of the forum.—The poets call (mārē) the
sea æquor, because (quīā) it is level.—The woods are the
abode of many animals.—Pompey for many years had farmed
the revenues of Asia.—The cavalry (ēquītēs) began to put
spurs to their horses (= to goad the horses with spurs).

LESSON LIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(331.) CLASS VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

1. *Masculine Forms.*

	(a) n of the Stem dropped.	(b) r of the Stem changed to s.		(c) Verbalis in io (all fem.).
Singular.	Speech (m.).	Dust (m.).	Flower (m.).	Reason (f.).
N. and V.	sermō.	pulvis.	flōs.	rātiō.
Gen.	sermōn-īs.	pulvēr-īs.	flōr-īs.	rātiōn-īs.
Dat.	sermōn-i.	pulvēr-i.	flōr-i.	rātiōn-i.
Acc.	sermōn-ēm.	pulvēr-ēm.	flōr-ēm.	rātiōn-ēm.
Abl.	sermōn-ē.	pulvēr-ē.	flōr-ē.	rātiōn-ē.
Plural.	Speeches.	Flowers.		Reasons.
N., A., V.	sermōn-ēs.	pulvēr-ēs.	flōr-ēs.	rātiōn-ēs.
Gen.	sermōn-ūm.	pulvēr-ūm.	flōr-ūm.	rātiōn-ūm.
D. & Abl.	sermōn-ibūs.	pulvēr-ibūs.	flōr-ibūs.	rātiōn-ibūs.

On this class, observe,

(332.) As to *case-endings*: 1. Final n of the stem is *generally* dropped in Latin nouns in the nominative. (In sanguis, sanguin-īs (blood), it is changed into s.)

2. Final r of the stem is *often* changed into s, as in pulvis, flōs, mōs, &c.

(333.) *Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which simply drop n of the stem in the nom. are *masculine* (except *abstract* nouns in io).

Special Rem.—*Abstract* nouns in io (ōnis) are *feminine*; e. g., ratio, reason; ultio, revenge. (They are a very large class, formed by adding io to the supine-stem of verbs.)

(334.) *Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which change ōr of the stem into īs, ōr into ōs, are *masculine*; e. g., pulvis (pulvēr), flōs (flōr).

EXERCISE.

(335.) *Vocabulary.*

Manner, custom, mōs, (mōr) īs (VI., 1, ō).

Robber, latro, (latrōn) īs (VI., 1, a).

Pirate, prædō, (prædōn) īs (VI., 1, a).

Centurion, centuriō, (centuriōn) īs (VI., 1, a):

Lion, leō, (leōn) īs (VI., 1, a).

Speech, language, sermō, (sermōn) īs (VI., 1, a).

Surrender, deditiō, (deditiōn) īs (VI., 1, c).

Rebellion, rēbelliō, (rēbelliōn) īs (VI., 1, c).

The Sacred Way, Viā Sacra.

Speech (in the abstract), or *an oration*, *oratiō*, (*oratiō*) is (VI., 1, c).
Dust, *pulvis*, (*pulvēr*) is (VI., 1, b).
Egyptian, *Ægyptiūs*, I.
Sweet, pleasant, *suāvis*, is, ā.
To wander, *errāre*.
To employ, *ūtī* (with *abl.*, 316, b).
To finish, *conficere* (10).
The rest, the remaining, *rēliquūs*, ā, ūm.

To slay, *trucidāre*.
Nurse, *nūtrix*, (*nutric*) is (I.).
Devoid of, expert, (*expert*) is (107).
To draw, *trāhēre* (*trax*; 277, 1).
Eloquent, *dīsertūs*, ā, ūm.
Adorned, *ornātūs*, ā, ūm.
To go, *irē*.
By chance, *fortē* (*adv.*).
As, *sicūt*.
Kind, *blandūs*, ā, ūm.

(336.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| (a) <i>After the manner of robbers.</i> | <i>Mōrē latrōnūm.</i> |
| (b) <i>After his (her or their) own manner.</i> | <i>Mōrē suō.</i> |
| (c) <i>Devoid of reason.</i> | <i>Rātiōnīs expers.</i> |

Rule of Syntax.—Adjectives signifying *abounding, want, privation, &c.*, govern the genitive (sometimes *abl.*).

- (d) We say, *a cloud of dust*; the Latin says, *a power of dust*—*vis pulvērīs*.

(337.) *Translate into English.*

1. (*Masculines, Class VI., 1, n dropped.*)—*Centuriōnēs militūm Labiēnūm libentē sequēbantur.*—*Lēgātūs sermōnem longūm conficit.*—*Multi Ædui Cæsāris sermoni* (*dat.*, 267, b) *interfuērunt.*—*Impērātōr rēliquōs latrōnēs prædōnēsque trucidāvit.*—*Africā nutrix est leōnūm fērocīum.*

2. (*Verbal Nouns in ion, all Feminine.*)—*Helvētī lēgātōs dē (concerning) dēditiōne ad Cæsārē miserunt.*—*Barbārī rēbelliōnēm turpēm fecērunt.*—*Legātūs, orātiōnē acri* (*abl.*, 55, a), *barbārōs ad dēditiōnēm traxit.*—*Orātiō disertā ēt ornātā omnībūs* (161, a) *plācēt.*—*Fēræ sunt rātiōnīs et orātiōnīs expertes.*

3. (*Nouns changing ēr of the Stem into is, or into os; all Masculines.*)—*Pulvis et umbrā sūmūs.*—*Militēs, eodēm temporē* (118, II., c) *magnā vim pulvērīs vidēbant.*—*Ībām fortē viā sacrā* (*abl.*, 55, a) *sicūt meūs est mōs.*—*Ægyptī, mōrē prædōnūm* (336, a), *nāvēs incendere* (*infin.*, 210) *consueverunt.*—*Suāvēs tui mōrēs mihi* (161, a) *valdē plācent.*—*Prædōnēs, mōrē suō, oppidā incendere cœperunt.*

(338.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. (*Masculines, Class VI., 1, n dropped.*)—Cæsar employs kind language* (abl., 316, b), and draws the barbarians to a surrender.—Many of the Helvetians heard the severe speech (78, II., b) of Cæsar.—The bands of robbers and pirates wander by sea and land.—The general slew all the wicked pirates.—Is (135, II., a) Africa the nurse of lions?—Is Europe (num, 280, b) the nurse of fierce lions?

2. (*Verbals in io, all Feminine.*)—Cæsar drew-out from (their) winter-quarters the four legions which he had levied (conscriptis) in Italy.—The eloquent oration pleased all.—The barbarians made a base rebellion after (their) surrender.—Lions are devoid of reason and speech.

3. (*Nouns changing ōr of the Stem into īs, ōr into ōs; Masculines.*)—The flowers are beautiful.—The customs of the Germans were good.—Death turns (vertit) all things into dust.—At the same time (118, II., b), a great cloud of dust (336, d) was seen by the soldiers.—I was sleeping in the garden, as is my custom.—The Æduans, after the manner of pirates, slew the ambassadors.

LESSON LIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(339.) CLASS VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

2. *Feminine Forms.*

n of the Stem dropped, and i changed into ō.		
Singular.	Image (f.).	Hail (f.).
N. and V.	īmāgō.	grandō.
Gen.	īmāgin-īs.	grandin-īs.
Dat.	īmāgin-ī.	grandin-i.
Acc.	īmāgin-ēm.	grandin-ēm.
Abl.	īmāgin-ē.	grandin-ē.
Plural.	Images.	Hail.
N., A., V.	īmāgin-ēs.	grandin-ēs.
Gen.	īmāgin-ūm.	grandin-ūm.
D. and Abl.	īmāgin-ībūs.	grandin-ībūs.

* Sermo.

On these, observe,

(340.) *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns which drop *n*, and change *i* into *o* in the nom., are *feminine*.

Exceptions. *O-dō* (*order*), *cardō* (*hinge*), *turbō* (*whirlwind*), are *masculine*. *Nēmō* (*nobody*), *margō* (*margin*), are *common* (*Homo, man*, is *masc.* by the general rule, 25, a.)

Rem. *Cārō* (*flesh*) makes *gen. carnīs*, *dat. carnī*, &c., contracted from *carīnīs*, *carīnī*, &c.

EXERCISE.

(341.) *Vocabulary*.

Sleep, *somnūs*, *l*

Same, *idēm*, *eādēm*, *Idēm* (150).

Multitude, *multitūdō*, (*multitūdīn*) *Is* (VI., 2).

To set forth, *expōnērē*.

Swallow, *hīrandō*, (*hīrandīn*) *Is* (VI., 2).

Harbinger, *prænuntiā*, *as*.

Spring, *vēr*, *is* (321, exc. 2).

Resemblance, *similitūdō*, (*similitūdīn*) *Is* (VI., 2).*

To preserve, *keep*, *servārē*.

To call (*name*), *appellārē*.

Council, *conciliūm*, *i*

Lily, *liliūm*, *i*

Virgin, *virgō*, (*virgīn*) *Is* (VI., 2).

Prayer, *prex*, *nom. not used*, (*prēc*) *Is* (I).

To celebrate, *to extol*, *cēlebrārē*.

Origin, *origō*, (*origīn*) *Is* (VI., 2).

To collect, *cōgērē*, *cōn+āgērē* (*perfectum*, *coēg*).

Order, *rank*, *ordō*, (*ordīn*) *Is* (VI., 2) (*m.*).

Whirlwind, *turbō*, (*turbīn*) *Is* (VI., 2, 340, exc.).

Safe, *salvūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

(342.) *Translate into English*.

1. *Somnūs imāgō mortis est*.—*Lēgātī eādēm quæ Cæsār dixerāt multitūdīnī expōnunt*.—*Hīrandīnēs prænuntiæ vērīs sunt*.—*Gallī oppidūm ex similitūdīnē flōris Liliūm appellābant*.—*Consul mātrūm virgīnum-que prēcībūs excītātur*.—*Poētæ cēlebrant Rōmūlūm, ōrigīnē genus*.

2. *Prīncīpes Æduōrūm magnām multitūdīnē hōmīnūm ex agrīs cōgērunt*.—*Miltēs ordinēs nōn servant*.—*Cæsār centūrīōnēs primōrūm ordinūm ad conciliūm convōcat*.—*Cicērō in magnīs turbīnībūs nāvēm reipublicæ (351, 3) gūbernāvit, et salvām in portā collōcāvit*.

(343.) *Translate into Latin*.

1. *Speech (sermō) is the image of the mind*.—*Sleep is often the harbinger of death*.—*The soldiers feared the force of the*

* *Similitūdō flōris* = *resemblance to a flower*.

nail.—The centurions were setting-forth the same (things) which the general had commanded.—The brave soldiers are moved by the prayers of the mothers and the virgins.

2. The consuls collect a great multitude of men from the towns.—Cæsar dismisses from (ab) the council the centurions of the first ranks.—The archers and the slingers did not keep their ranks.—Cæsar calls (vöcārē) to the council the centurions of all the ranks.—The brave consul in the great whirlwinds will govern the ship of state (351, 3).—Cæsar will place the ship of state safe in the port.

LESSON LV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(344.) CLASS VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

3. Neuter Forms.

Singular.	(a) Vowel changed.		(b) Vowel and Cons. changed.		(c) Cons. changed.
	Song (n.).	Strength (n.).	Work (n.).	Body (n.).	Law (n.).
N., A., V.	carmen.	röbūr.	öpūs.	corpūs.	jūs.
Gen.	carmin-īs.	röbör-īs.	öpēr-īs.	corpör-īs.	jür-īs.
Dat.	carmin-ī.	röbör-ī.	öpēr-ī.	corpör-ī.	jür-ī.
Abl.	carmin-ē.	röbör-ē.	öpēr-ē.	corpör-ē.	jür-ē.
Plural.	Songs.		Works.	Bodies.	Laws.
N., A., V.	carmin-ä.	röbör-ä.	öpēr-ä.	corpör-ä.	jür-ä.
Gen.	carmin-üm.	röbör-üm.	öpēr-üm.	corpör-üm.	jür-üm.
D., Abl.	carmin-ībūs.	röbör-ībūs.	öpēr-ībūs.	corpör-ībūs.	jür-ībūs.

On this class, observe,

(345.) As to *gender*, they are all *neuter*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which, in the nominative, change the stems *in* into *ən*, *ör* into *ür*, and *ēr*, *ör*, or *ür* into *us*, are *neuter*.

Exceptions. (1) In *ən*: only *pectən*, *pectinīs* (masc.), *a comb*.

(2) *ör* into *ür*: none.

(3) *ēr* into *ūs*: none.

(4) *ör* into *ūs*: only *lēpūs*, *lēpörīs* (masc.), *a hare*.

(5) *ür* into *us*: *mūs*, *murīs* (masc.), *a mouse*; *tellus*, *āris* (fem.), *a earth*.

(346.) Under this head may be classed the following nouns of rare endings :

1. *Poëma*, *ătis* (*neuter*), *a poem*. Nouns of this form are derived from the Greek, and are all neuters. They prefer the ending *is* to *ibus* in the dat. and abl. plur.

2. *Hălăc* (*neuter*), *hălăcīs*, *brine*, and *lăc* (*neuter*), *lactīs*, *milk*, are the only Latin nouns ending in *c* in the nom.

3. *Căpăt*, *capītīs*, *head*, is the only Latin noun ending in *t* in the nom. It is neuter.

EXERCISE.

(347.) Vocabulary.

Arrogance, *arrōgantiă*, *æ*.

Crime, *crimēn*, (*crimīn*) *is* (VI., 3, a).

To want (lack), *to be free from*, *cărere* (with abl.).

Folly, *stultitiă*.

Wonderful, *mīrificūs*, *ă*, *ŭm* (*mirus* + *facio*).

Naked, *nūdūs*, *ă*, *ŭm*.

Strong, *văldūs*, *ă*, *ŭm*.

The whole affair, *omnīs rēs*.

To delay, *tardăre*.

Gift, *mănă*s, (*munēr*) *is* (VI., 3, b).

Quickly, *cîtă* (*adv.*).

Hare, *lepūs*, (*lepōr*) *is* (m., 345, 4).

Milk, *lăc*, (*lact*) *is* (n., 346, 2).

Flesh, *cărb*, (*carn*) *is* (f., 340, R.).

Young man, *jūvenīs*, *is* (m.): gen pl., *ŭm*.

Danube, *Dănūbiūs*, *i* (m.).

Jugurtha, *Jugurthă*, *æ*.

If, *sī* (*conj.*).

(348.) Examples.

(a) *To condemn to death.*

Căpītīs (or *căpītē*) *condem nărē* (= *to condemn of the head*).

Rule of Syntax.—With verbs of condemning, the punishment (if capital) is put in the gen. or abl.

(b) *To be free from a crime.*

Crimīnē cărere (= *to want crime*).

Rule of Syntax.—The ablative case is used with verbs (and adjectives) of *abounding* and *wanting*.

(349.) Translate into English.

Socrătēs arrōgantiă et stultitiă crimīnē cărēbăt.—*Rhēnūs et Rhōdănūs magnă sunt flumină.*—*Magnă et mīrifică sunt omniă Dei ōpēră.*—*Gallī sempēr nūdō corpōrē (synt., 716, 2) pugnăbant.*—*Corpōră Germănōrūm văldă et mīrifică fuērunt.*—*Magnitūdō ōpērūm omnēm rēm tardăbat.*—*Sī mănēră*

tardās, nih l das ; bis dāt, quī citō dat.—Vēnātōr lēpōrēs tīmīdos in sylvis persēquitūr.—Athēniensēs Socratēm cāpītē condemnārunt.*—Cūr tālēm vīrūm cāpītis condemnāstis?—Britannī lactē et carnē vivunt.

(350.) *Translate into Latin.*

The bodies of the young men were strong.—The man (vir) was free from the crime of folly.—The Danube and the Rhine are great rivers.—Do the Gauls (num, 280, b) fight with naked body?—The works of Cicero are excellent: I read them (e a) with pleasure (libentēr).—The Romans condemned Jugurtha to death (348, a).—Did the Athenians (280, b) condemn Socrates to death?—The captives were condemned (imperf. pass.) to death.—The timid hare was wandering in the woods and fields.—Is-it-possible-that (280, b) the Britons live (on) (abl.) milk and flesh?—Your pleasant songs (161, b) delighted (delectāre) me.

LESSON LVI.

Irregular Nouns.

(351.) We give here the declension of a few irregular nouns.

1. Jūpītēr.

Nom.	Jūpītēr.
Gen.	Jōvis.
Dat.	Jōvī.
Acc.	Jōvēm.
Abl.	Jōvē.

* The perf. and plup. tenses are often thus contracted: amāvērāt for amāvērāt; vigīlavērāt for vigīlavērāt.

2. Bōs, *an ox or cow*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Bōs.	Bōvēs.
Gen.	Bōvis.	Boūm.
Dat.	Bōvī.	Bōbūs or Būbūs
Acc.	Bōvēm.	Bōvēs.
Voc.	Bōs.	Bōvēs.
Abl.	Bōvē.	Bōbūs or būbūs.

[In double nouns, each noun is inflected; e. g.,]

3 Rēspublīcā (rēs+publīcā), *a republic, state*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Rēspublīcā.	Respublīcæ.
Gen.	Reipublīcæ.	Rērumpublīcārūm.
Dat.	Reipublīcæ.	Rēbuspublīcīs.
Acc.	Rempublīcām.	Respublīcās.
Voc.	Respublīcā.	Respublīcæ.
Abl.	Rēpublīcā.	Rēbuspublīcīs.

4. Jusjūrāndūm (jūs+jūrāndūm), *an oath*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Jusjūrāndūm.	Jūrajūrāndā.
Gen.	Jūrisjūrāndī.	_____
Dat.	Jūrījūrāndō.	_____
Acc.	Jusjūrāndūm.	Jūrajūrāndā.
Abl.	Jūrējūrāndō.	_____

Rem. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are not used.

EXERCISE.

(352.) *Vocabulary.*

Faith, promise, fidēs, ei.
To bind, obstringērē, (ōb+stringērē)
 (perf.-stem, obstrinx).
To take care of, cūrārē.
Folly, stultitiā, æ.
To lose, amittērē, (ā+mittērē) (perf.-
 stem, amis).
To intrust, committērē, (con+mit-
 tērē) commis (with dat.).
Especially, maximē (adv.).
To worship, cōlērē (perf.-stem, cō-
 lā-).

Apis, Āpis, is (m.).
Sacred, sanctūs, ū, ūm.
Formerly, olim.
Guardian, custōs, (custōd) is (m
 and f.).
Juno, Jūnō, (Jūnōn) is (f.).
Husband or wife, conjux, (conjūg)
 is (m. and f.).
Nation, nātiō, (nātiōn) is (f.).
An Egyptian, Ægyptiūs, ī.
But especially, maximē autēm.
Minerva, Minervā, æ. .

(353.) *Translate into English.*

Principēs intēr sē fidēm et jusjūrāndūm dābant.—Ariovistūs civitātēm jūrejūrāndō (55) ēt obsidībūs obstrinxīt.—Āpūd Rōmānōs, consūlēs rempublicām cūrāvērunt.—Multae nātiōnēs pēr stultitiām respublicās suās āmisērunt.—Vētērēs maximē Jōvēm cōluērunt.—Ægyptiī Āpīm, sanctūm bōvēm (225, a), ōlīm cōluērunt.—Jūpītēr est hūjūs urbis custōs.—Jūnō ērāt Jōvis conjux.—Civēs irām Jōvis timent.—Cornuā boŭm sunt magnā.

(354.) *Translate into Latin.*

The robbers will give an oath among themselves.—Cæsar binds all the Germans by a promise and an oath.—Cæsar bound the chiefs of the state by an oath and by hostages.—The senate intrusts (committit) the whole republic to Cicero.—The consuls will take care of our republic.—The ancients worshipped many gods, but especially Jupiter.—We have lost the republic by (per) our own folly.—Jupiter is the guardian of our house.—Apis, the sacred ox, is the guardian of this city.—Minerva was the daughter of Jupiter.—Good men do not fear the anger of Jupiter.

(355.)

LESSON LVII.

*Summary of Rules of Gender from the Nominative Formation.****I. MASCULINES either**

Add *s*, and change the stem-vowel before it; *e. g.*,
gurgēs, *gurgit-is*, *whirlpool*; *mīlē*s, *mīlit-is*, *sol-*
dier; *cōdex*, *cōdic-is*, *book*. }

2. Present the stem *er*, *ul*, or, without adding *s*; *e. g.*,
ansēr, *ansēr-is*, *goose*; *consul*, *consul-is*, *consul*;
hōnōr, *honōr-is*, *honour*.

3. Drop *n* without adding *s*; *e. g.*, *sermo*, *sermōn-is*,
speech; *carbo*, *carbōn-is*, *coal*.

4. Change *ēr* of the stem into *is*, *ōr* into *ōs*; *e. g.*,
cīnis, *cinēr-is*, *ashes*; *pulvīs*, *pulvēr-is*, *dust*;
flōs, *flōr-is*, *flower*. }

II. FEMININES either

1. Add *s* without changing the stem-vowel; *e. g.*, *urb-s*,
urb-is, *city*; *nox* (*noct-s*), *noct-is*, *night*; *vox*
(vōc-s), *vōc-is*, *voice*; *quies*, *quiēt-is*, *quiet*.

2. Insert a vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*; *e. g.*, *nūb-e-s*,
nub-is, *cloud*; *nāv-ī-s*, *nav-is*, *ship*.

3. Drop *n*, and change *ī* into *o*; *e. g.*, *īmāgo*, *īmāgīn-is*,
image; *grando*, *grandīn-is*, *hail*.

III. NEUTERS either

1. Add *e* to the stem; *e. g.*, *māre*, *mār-is*, *the sea*.

2. Present the unchanged stem *al*, *ar*, *ur*, *ōr*; *e. g.*, *ānī-*
māl, *animāl-is*, *animal*; *calcār*, *calcār-is*, *spur*;
fulgūr, *fulgūr-is*, *lightning*; *æquōr*, *æquōr-is*, *sea*.

3. Change *īn* of the stem into *ēn*, *ōr* into *ūr*, and *ēr*, *ōr*,
or ūr into *us*; *e. g.*, *carmēn*, *carmīn-is*, *song*; *ēbūr*,
ēbōr-is, *ivory*; *ōpūs*, *ōpēr-is*, *work*; *corpūs*, *cor-*
pōr-is, *body*; *crūs*, *crūr-is*, *leg*.

* Abundant illustrations of these rules have been given. The student should now learn them thoroughly by heart, and apply them in the subsequent lessons.

Exceptions.

I. 1. Only *mergēs*, *mergītis* (f.), *sheaf*.

I. 2. { *er*, *feminine*: *linter*, *boat*.
er, *neuter*: *čādāvēr*, *ūbēr*, *vērbēr*, *vēr*, *tūbēr*, *spin-
thēr*, with all the names of plants in *ēr*.
ör, *feminine*: *arbör*, *tree*.
ör, *neuter*: *cör*, *ādör*, *æquör*, *marmör*.

Rem. The *neuters* have *ö* (*short*) in the stem; the *mas-
culines*, *o* (*long*).

I. 3. { The *abstract nouns* in *io* are all *feminine*; e. g., *rätio*
(f.), *ratiōnis*, *reason*.

I. 4. *ōs*, *ōris* (n.), *mouth*.

II. 1. { *Masculines*. Viz., *fons*, *mons*, *pons*, *dens* and its
compounds; with *rudens*, *torrens*, *occidens*.
ōriens.

Grex, *Greek nouns* in *ax*, and a few in *ix*; *lā-
pis*, *vās*, *pāriēs*, *pēs*.*

II. 2. { *Masculines*. *Latin nouns* ending in *nīs*; e. g., *ignīs*
(m.), *fire*; with

Piscīs, *orbīs*, *callīs*, and *canālīs*;

Unguīs, *caulīs*, *axis*, and *annālīs*;

Fascīs, *sentīs*, *fustīs*, *collīs*, *ensīs*;

Vectīs, *vermīs*, *postīs*; *foliīs*, *mensīs*.

II. 3. { *Masculines*. *Ordo*, *cardo*, *homo*, *turbo*.
Common. *Nēmo*, *margo*.

III. 1. *None*.

III. 2. { *Sāl*, *masculine* and *neuter* in singular; *masculine* in
plural. *Lār*, *lāris*, *masculine*.

Fūr, *furfūr*, *turtūr*, *vultūr*, *masculine*.

III. 3. { *Masculine*: changing *īn* into *ēn*, only *pectēn*, *comb*;
changing *ör* into *ūs*, only *lēpūs*, *hare*; chang-
ing *ūr* into *us*, only *mūs*, *mouse*. *Feminine*:
tellūs, *earth*.

* There are also a few *Greek words* that are *masculine*. *As*, *assis*,
coin, is *masculine*; *vās*, *vāsīs*, *vase*, is *neuter*.

§ 4.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. (LVIII.—LX.)

(356.) ADJECTIVES are inflected both in English and Latin to express *degrees* of quality; *e. g.*,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative
<i>Brave,</i>	<i>braver,</i>	<i>bravest.</i>
<i>Fort-is,</i>	<i>fort-iōr,</i>	<i>fort-issimūs.</i>

LESSON LVIII.

The Comparative Degree.

(357.) The *comparative* has the ending *iōr* for the *masculine*, and *iūs* for *neuter*. These endings are added directly to the *stem* of the adjective; *e. g.*,

	Masculine.	
<i>Brave, fort-is;</i>	<i>braver, fort-iōr;</i>	<i>fort-iūs.</i>
<i>Hard, dūr-us;</i>	<i>harder, dūr-iōr;</i>	<i>dūr-iūs.</i>
<i>Beautiful, pulch-er }</i>	<i>more beautiful, pulchr-iōr;</i>	<i>pulchr-iūs.</i>
<i>(stem, pulchr-); }</i>		

Rem. If the stem ends in a *vowel*, the comparative is formed by the use of *māgis*, *more*, instead of the ending; *e. g.*,

<i>pious, pi-us;</i>	<i>more pious, māgis piūs.</i>
<i>fit, idōne-us;</i>	<i>more fit, māgis idōneūs.</i>

(358.) DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N. and V.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Gen.	<i>dūr-iōr.</i>	<i>dūr-iūs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrēs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrē.</i>
Dat.	<i>dūr-iōrīs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrīs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrūm.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrūm.</i>
Acc.	<i>dūr-iōrī.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrī.</i>	<i>dūr-iōribūs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōribūs.</i>
Abl.	<i>dūr-iōrēm.</i>	<i>dūr-iūs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrēs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrē.</i>
	<i>dūr-iōrē.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrē.</i>	<i>dūr-iōribūs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōribūs.</i>

Rem. In the later writers, *i* is used for abl. sing. ending frequently instead of *ē*.

. EXERCISE.

(359.) *Vocabulary.*

Like, similar to, similis (takes *dat.*, sometimes *gen.*, 106, II., c).

Amiable, amābilis, is, &.

Eloquent, eloquens.

Excellent, præstans.

Ignorance, ignōrātiō, (ignoration) is.

Knowledge, scientia, æ.

Silver, argentum, l.

Vile, paltry, vilis, is, &.

Justice, justitiā, æ.

Dear, precious, cārūs, & ūm.

Few, paucī, æ, & (used only in pl.).

Indeed, quidem (adv.; always stands next after the word to which it refers).

Swift, celer (105, R. 1).

Than, quā (conj.).

To seek, querere.

Antonine, Antoninus, l.

Future, futurūs, & ūm.

(360.) *Examples.*

(a) *A pirate is more like a wild beast than a man.*

Prædo fëræ (106, II., b) est similior quam hōmīni (dat.).

(b) *Nothing is more amiable than virtue.*

Nihil est amābilius quam virtūs, or

(c) Nihil est virtutē amābilius.

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The conjunction *quam* (*than*) is frequently omitted, and then the noun with the comparative must be put in the *ablative* case.

Cicero was more eloquent than Cæsar.

Cicero fuit Cæsāre elōquentior.

(361.) *Translate into English.*

Nihil est virtute præstantius.—Virtus est præstantior quam robur (344).—Ignoratio malorum utilior est quam scientia.—Aurum gravius est argento.—Argentum vilius est auro, virtutibus aurum.—Lupi ferociōres sunt quam canes.—Tullus Hostilius ferocior erat Romulo.—Justitiam querimus; rem (app., with justitiam, 225, a) auro cariorē.—Paucis (dat. gov. by carior, 106, II., b) carior fides est, quam pecunia.—Mihi (dat.) amicus fuit me ipso carior.—Omnēs suōs (i. e., his friends) caros habet (*he holds*); me (acc.) quidem se ipso cariorē.—Nemo Romanorum (*parative gen.*) eloquentior fuit Cicerone.

(362.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. *With quam.*—The horse is swifter than the dog.—Ignor-

rance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them).—Lions are fiercer than wolves.—Antonine was more pious (357, R.) than Cæsar.—The son was more amiable than the father.—A robber is more like a wolf (dat., 106, II., b) than a man.

2. *Without quam* (with *ablative*).—Justice is a thing more precious than gold.—Gold is more paltry than virtue.—Nothing is more amiable than virtue.—To Crassus his friends were dearer than himself.—He (*had*) held all his own (*friends*) dear, but Cicero even dearer than himself.—What (170) is heavier than water? Gold.—What is more excellent than strength? Virtue.

LESSON LIX.

Superlative Degree.

(363.) THE *superlative* ending is *issimūs*, which is added to the stem of the adjective.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Deer</i> , cār-us ;	<i>dearer</i> , cār-ior ;	<i>dearest</i> , cār-issimūs.
<i>Brave</i> , fort-is ;	<i>braver</i> , fort-ior ;	<i>bravest</i> , fort-issimūs.
<i>Happy</i> , fēlix (fēlic-s) ;	<i>more happy</i> , fēlic-ior ;	<i>most happy</i> , fēlic-issimūs.

(364.) But adjectives whose stems end in *er* add the ending *rīmūs*.

<i>Unhappy</i> , miser ;	<i>most unhappy</i> , miser-rīmūs.
<i>Swift</i> , celer ;	<i>swiftest</i> , celer-rīmūs.
<i>Beautiful</i> , pulcher ;	<i>most beautiful</i> , pulcher-rīmūs.

(365.) Several adjectives whose stems end in *l* add *imūs*.

<i>Easy</i> , facil-is ;	<i>easiest</i> , facil-limūs.
--------------------------	-------------------------------

EXERCISE.

(366.) *Vocabulary.*

Cyrus, Cŷrūs, I.

Hannibal, Hannibāl, (Hannibāl) Is.

Difficult, difficilis (dī-fācilis).

Moderation, mōdūs, I.

Darius, Dārus, I.

To preserve moderation, mōdum hā
bērē (= *to have moderation*).

Carthage, Carthāgo, (Carthāgō) Is

Metal, mētallum, I.

To stain, mactārē.

(367.) *Examples.*

- (a) *Socrates was very wise.* | *Sōcrates sāpientissimus fuit.*

A high degree of quality (*very good, very wise, &c.*) is expressed in Latin by the *superlative*.

- (b) *Of all these, the Belgians are the bravest.* | *Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ.*

Rule of Syntax.—The genitive plural is used with the superlative degree: the *most learned of the Romans*; *doctissimūs Romanōrum* (partitive gen., synt., 697).

- (c) *Among the Helvetians the noblest was Orgetorix.* | *Āpud Helvētios nobīlissimus fuit Orgetōrix.*

(368.) *Translate into English.*

Urbs Syracusæ (app., 225, *d*) *Græcārum urbium est pulcherrimā.*—*Præstantissimī Persārum rēges fuērunt Cyrus et Darius.*—*Pompeius magnam bellī glōriam mortē* (55, *a*) *turpissimā mǎculāvit.*—*Hannibal fortissimūs erat omnium Carthāgīniensium.*—*Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ.*—*Cicēro eloquentissimus fuit Romānōrum.*—*Difficillimum est mōdum hāberē* (161, *d*).—*Āpud Æduos nobīlissimus et fortissimus fuit Divitiācus.*

(369.) *Translate into Latin.*

Plato was very wise (367, *a*).—Plato was the wisest of all the Greeks (367, *b*).—The city Rome was the most beautiful of all the Roman cities.—Of all these, the Britons are the bravest.—The most excellent leaders of the Romans were Cæsar and Pompey.—Carthage was a very beautiful city.—Of all things, the most difficult is to preserve moderation.—Of all (men), the most happy (*beatus*) is the wise (*man*).—The hardest of all metals is iron.—Among the Greeks Themistocles was the noblest.—Cæsar led the bravest soldiers across the very broad river.

LESSON LX.

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives.

(370.) SEVERAL adjectives are quite *irregular* in their comparison. The following are the most important.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>good</i> , <i>bōnūs</i> .	<i>better</i> , <i>méliör</i> .	<i>best</i> , <i>optimūs</i> .
<i>bad</i> , <i>mālūs</i> .	<i>worse</i> , <i>pējor</i> .	<i>worst</i> , <i>peſsimūs</i> .
<i>great</i> , <i>māgnūs</i> .	<i>greater</i> , <i>mājör</i> .	<i>greatest</i> , <i>maximūs</i> .
<i>much</i> , <i>multūs</i> .	<i>more</i> , { <i>plūs</i> (n. sing.). <i>plürēs</i> , & (pl.).	<i>most</i> , { <i>plürimūs</i> .
<i>small</i> , <i>parvūs</i> .	<i>less</i> , <i>minör</i> .	<i>very many</i> , { <i>plürimūs</i> .
<i>old</i> , <i>sēnex</i> .	<i>older</i> , <i>sēniör</i> .	<i>least</i> , <i>minimūs</i> .
<i>young</i> , <i>jūvenis</i> .	<i>younger</i> , <i>jūniör</i> .	<i>wanting</i> .
<i>outward</i> , <i>extērus</i> .	<i>more outward</i> , <i>extērior</i> .	<i>wanting</i> .
<i>below</i> , <i>infērus</i> .	<i>lower</i> , <i>infērior</i> .	<i>outermost</i> , <i>extrēmūs</i> .
		<i>lowest</i> , <i>infimūs</i> , or <i>imūs</i> .
<i>above</i> , <i>süpērūs</i> .	<i>higher</i> , <i>süpēriör</i> .	<i>highest</i> , <i>süpřēmūs</i> , or <i>summūs</i> .
<i>hind</i> , <i>postērūs</i> .	<i>hinder</i> , <i>postēriör</i> .	<i>hindmost</i> , <i>postrēmūs</i> .

(371.) Several adjectives have no positive, but form the *comparative* and *superlative* from a preposition, adverb, or obsolete word.

	Comparative.	Superlative.
(<i>on this side</i> , <i>citra</i> .)	<i>nearer</i> , <i>citēriör</i> .	<i>nearest</i> , <i>citřimūs</i> .
(<i>within</i> , <i>intra</i> .)	<i>inner</i> , <i>intēriör</i> .	<i>inmost</i> , <i>intimūs</i> .
(<i>beyond</i> , <i>ultra</i> .)	<i>farther</i> , <i>ultēriör</i> .	<i>farthest</i> , { <i>ultimūs</i> .
		<i>last</i> , { <i>ultimūs</i> .
(<i>near</i> , <i>prōpe</i> .)	<i>nearer</i> , <i>prōpiör</i> .	<i>nearest</i> , { <i>proximūs</i> .
		<i>next</i> , { <i>proximūs</i> .
(<i>bad</i> , <i>deter</i> .)	<i>worse</i> , <i>dētēriör</i> .	<i>worst</i> , <i>dētērrimūs</i> .
	<i>former</i> , <i>priör</i> .	<i>first</i> , <i>prřimūs</i> .

Rem. 1. *Divēs*, *rich*; *richer*, *ditior*, *divřtiör*; *richest*, *ditřissimūs*, *divřtřissimūs*. (Cicero uses the longer form, Cæsar the shorter.)

2. Compound adjectives in *dicus*, *ficus*, *vōlus*, add *entior* for the comp., and *entřissimūs* for the superl.; e. g., *bēnē-vōlus* (*benevolent*), *bēnēvōl-entior*, *bēnēvōl-entřissimūs*.

EXERCISE.

(372.) *Vocabulary.*

Disgraceful, *unworthy*, *indignūs*, &
ūm (in+*dignus*).

Infamy, *disgraceful crime*, *flāgi-
třium*, *i*.

Wisdom, *sāpřentiā*, &.

The Suevians, *Suēvi*, *örum*.

Warlike, *bellicōsūs*, & *ūm*.

Condition, *conditřio*, (*conditřio*) *is*.

America, *Amērřica*, &.

Emperor, *impērātör*, *öris* (355, I., 2).

(373.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) <i>It is disgraceful to be conquered by a superior; more disgraceful (to be conquered) by one inferior and lower.</i> | <i>Indignum est a sup̄iore vincī; indignius ab inf̄iore ore atque hūmiliore.</i> |
|---|--|

[Here the infin. pass. *vincī* is used as a neut. noun, nom. to *est*, and *indignum* agrees with it in the predicate.]

- | | |
|--|--|
| (b) <i>What is better for man than wisdom?</i> | <i>Quid est hōmīni mēliūs s̄ sapientiā (360, c)?</i> |
|--|--|

[Here *hōmīni* is in the dat. (advantage or disadvantage, 106, II, b).]

(374.) *Translate into English.*

Nihil est mēlius quam (360, b) s̄ sapientiā. — Hiberniā mīnor est quam Britanniā. — Nihil est p̄jūs flāgitio. — Hostēs celerit̄ lōcā (309) sup̄iōra occūpābant. — Maximā pars Aquitaniæ obsidēs ad Cēsārem misit. — Suevōrum gens est longē maximā et bellicosissimā Germānōrum omnium (367, b). — Ariovistus agrum Sēquānum, quī optimus erat tōtius Galliæ occūpavit. — Infimā est conditio et fortunā servōrum. — Primus et maximus rēgum Romanōrum fuit Rōmulus.

(375.) *Translate into Latin.*

It is disgraceful to be conquered by a junior, more disgraceful by a senior. — What is better than virtue? what worse than vice? — What is better for man than honour? Wisdom. — Europe is less than Asia; Asia than America. — The bravest of the Belgians were seizing the higher grounds (lōcā). — The greatest part of Gaul made (fecit) a surrender. — The first and greatest of the Roman emperors was Cēsar. — The poor are often more benevolent (371, R. 2) than (quam) the rich. — The worst (men) are often more-happy than (quam) the best. — Among the Helvetians (by) far the richest and noblest was Orgetorix.

§ 5.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

(376.) ADVERBS *derived from adjectives* admit of comparison. The *comp.* is the *neuter* form of the comparative of the adjective: the *superlative* substitutes ē for u s.

<i>Learnedly,</i>	<i>more learnedly,</i>	<i>most learnedly,</i>
doct-ē;	doct-i ũ s;	doct-i s s i m ē.
<i>oyfully,</i>	<i>more joyfully,</i>	<i>most joyfully,</i>
læt-ē;	læt-i ũ s;	læt-i s s i m ē.
<i>Happily,</i>	<i>more happily,</i>	<i>most happily,</i>
fēlic-ī t ē r;	fēlic-ī ũ s;	fēlic-i s s i m ē.
<i>Well, bēnē;</i>	<i>better, mēliūs;</i>	<i>best, optimē.</i>

[No separate exercise upon these is necessary.]

§ 6.

SUPINE.

(377.) THE *Supine* presents the action of the verb under the form of a noun in two cases, the *accusative* and *ablative*. The *former supine* ends in ūm, the *latter* in ū; which endings are added to the *supine-stem* of the verb.

LESSON LXI.

Supines.

(378.) THE SUPINE-STEM is formed by adding to the verb-stem,

- (1) In 1st conj., ... āt; *e. g.*, ām-āt-.
- (2) In 2d conj., ... īt; *e. g.*, mōn-īt-.
- (3) In 3d conj., ... t; *e. g.*, reg-t = rect
- (4) In 4th conj., ... it; *e. g.*, aud-īt-.

[*Rem.* Many supines, however, use different connecting vowels, or take s (and not t) before um and u. For this reason, therefore, all supine-stems will be given in the following vocabularies. Where no supine-stem is given, it is to be understood that the verb has no supine.]

(379.) The supine in ūm is a verbal noun of the accusative case, and is put after verbs of motion to express the *design* of that motion; *e. g.*,

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(a) <i>Ambassadors come to Cæsar to ask assistance.</i></p> <p>(b) <i>To go to sleep (to sleeping).</i></p> | | <p>Lēgātī ād Cæsārēm vēniunt
rōgātūm* auxiliūm.</p> <p>Irē dormitūm.</p> |
|--|--|--|

(380.) The supine in ū is a verbal noun of the ablative case, and is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, &c.

* Rōgātūm = accus. answering to the question *whither*

- | | |
|---|---------------------|
| (a) <i>It is (a thing) easy to do</i>
(or, to be done). | Est faciġle factũ.* |
| (b) <i>It is (a thing) wonderful</i>
to tell (or, to be told). | Est mirābīle dictũ. |

(381.) The following are nearly all the supines in u which are in use: dictũ, auditũ, cognitũ, factũ, inventũ, mēmōrātũ.

EXERCISE.

(382.) Vocabulary.

<i>To ask, demand, postulārē</i> (postulāt).	<i>To besiege, oppugnārē</i> (oppugnāt).
<i>To congratulate, grātulārī</i> (grātulāt), <i>dep.</i>	<i>Band, band of men, mēnūs, ūs.</i>
<i>To come together, convēnirē</i> (convēnirē, convēn-, convent-).	<i>Wonderful, mirābīlis, ē</i> (104).
<i>To complain, querōr</i> (quest).	<i>Very easy, perfaciġlis, ē</i> (104).
<i>Custom, consuetūdō, (consuetūdīn) īs</i> (f., 355, II., 3).	<i>To do, faciēre</i> (fact).
<i>To collect corn, frumentārī</i> (frumentat).	<i>To say, tell, dicēre</i> (dict).
<i>A Treviran, Trēvir ī</i> (65).	<i>Best, optimūs, ē, ūm</i> (370).
	<i>To find, invēnirē</i> (invēnirē, invent).
	<i>To happen, accidēre.</i>
	<i>To endure, tolerārē</i> (tolerāt).
	<i>Senate, sēnātūs, ūs.</i>

(383.) Example.

<i>Divitiacus came to Rome</i> <i>to ask assistance.</i>	<i>Divitiācūs Rōmām vēnīt</i> <i>auxiliūm postulātūm.</i>
---	--

Rule of Syntax.—The accusative is used with the names of towns and small islands, to answer to the question *whither*; e. g., in (a) Rōmām.

(384.) Translate into English.

1. *Supine in ūm.*—Principēs civitātis ad Cēsārem grātulātūm convēnerunt.—Trēvirī maguā mēnū (55, a) castrā oppugnātūm vēnerunt.—Lēgātī ab Aeduīs vēnerunt, questūm.—Cēsār ex consuetūdīnē ūnām lēgiōnēm miisit frumentātūm.—Lēgātī Rōmām ad sēnātūm vēnerunt auxiliūm postulātūm.

2. *Supine in ū.*—Est perfaciġle factũ.—Est iucundū auditũ.—Quedā (178, 1) sunt turpiā dictũ.—Quod optimū est factũ, faciām.—Virtūs difficiġlis est inventũ.—Multā accidunt durā tolerātũ.

* Factũ = ablative of respect, wherein.

(385.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Words in Italic to be rendered by supines.]

1. *Supine in um.*—The consuls, according to (ex) custom, sent a large band *to collect corn*.—All the chiefs of the Æduans were coming to Rome *to ask* assistance.—All the ambassadors, according to custom,* came-together to Cæsar *to congratulate* (him).—The soldiers of the tenth legion came to the general *to complain*.—The Germans came (in) a large band *to attack* the town.

2. *Supine in u.*—It is (a thing) wonderful *to be heard*.—What (quod) is base *to be said*, I will not say.—What is difficult *to be done*, I will do.—A true (verus) friend is difficult *to be found*.—Some-things are very easy *to be done*.

* *According to custom* = ex consuetudine.

§ 7.

TENSES OF VERBS FOR COMPLETED ACTION.—PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT.—FULLER STATEMENT. (LXII.—LXIX.)

(386.) It has been stated (262) that the *tense-stem* of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses is the same. In Lessons XLIV., XLV. we gave *one* mode of forming this tense-stem for each conjugation. There are several other modes, which we now proceed to state, taking up the conjugations separately. To make the tables complete, we shall repeat the *first* method at the head of each.

LESSON LXII.

Forms of Perfect-stem.—First Conjugation.

(387.) THERE are *four* ways of forming the perfect-stem in the *first conjugation*.

- I. By adding *äv* to the verb-stem ; äm-ärë, äm-äv
- II. “ *ü* sön-ärë, sön-ü
- III. *reduplicating* the first con-* } d-ärë, dëd-
 sonant with ë ; }
- IV. *lengthening the stem-vowel ;* jüv-ärë, jüv

On this table, observe that *Class*

- I. contains *most* of the verbs of the first conjugation.
- II. contains *eleven* simple verbs (of which a list may be found, 664).
- III. contains but *two* simple verbs, viz., *därë, to give, and stärë, to stand.*
- IV. contains but *two* simple verbs, viz., *jüvärë, to assist, and lëvärë to wash.*

(388.) To form the *perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect* of a

* To *reduplicate* a consonant is to *prefix* it to a stem with some connecting-vowel ; thus, *mord-*, reduplicate with *o*, *momord* ; *st-äre*, reduplicate with *e*, *stët-* ; but the *second s* is dropped, *stët-*.

verb of any of the above classes, simply add the endings of those tenses respectively to the perfect-stem ; thus :

Infinitive.	Perfect-stem.	Perfect tense.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect.
		ī	ērām.	ērō.
<i>To forbid</i> , vēt-ārē, vētū-		istī.	ērās.	ērīs.
<i>To give</i> , d-ārē, dēd-		īt.	ērāt.	ērīt.
<i>To help</i> , jūv-ārē, jūv-		īmūs.	ērāmūs.	ērīmūs.
		istīs.	ērātīs.	ērītīs.
		ērunt, or ēre.	ērant.	ērint.

EXERCISE.

(389.) [P] Hereafter, in all the vocabularies, the perfect and supine stems of verbs will be given in parentheses, immediately after the *infinitive*. When no perfect or supine stem is given, it will be understood that those forms of the verb are wanting ; and where *two* are given, that the verb uses both. Thus : *to help*, jūvārē (jūv-, jūt-) ; *to glitter*, micārē (micā-) ; *to fold*, plicārē (plicav-, plicū-, plicat-, plicīt-). In these examples micārē has no supine ; plicārē has *two* perfect and *two* supine forms.]

(390.) Vocabulary.

To demand (command), impērāre (āv-, at-).

To give, dāre (dēd-, dāt-, 387, III.).

Hunger, fāmēs (īa), (300).

To tame, dōmāre (dōmū-, dōmīt-, 387, II.).

To shine, or flash forth, ēmicāre (ēmicā-, ē+micāre, 387, II.).

To surround, circumstāre (stīt- and stēt-).

The sand, dry ground, āridum, ī (neut. of āridus, dry).

An attack, impētūs, ūs (110).

To assist, adjūvārē (jūv-, jūt-, ad+ juvāre).

Door, fōrīs, (fōr) īs (300).

To creak, crēpārē (crēpū-, crēpīt-).

To chide, reprove, incrēpare (in+ crēpārē, crēpū-, crēpīt-).

A little while, paullispēr (adv.).

To withstand, rēsistērē (restīt-, rē+stāre).

To halt, constārē (constīt-, con+ stāre).

As soon as, sīmūlatque (adv.).

To slay, kill, interficēre (interfēc-, interfec-).

To make, faciēre, iō (fēc-, fact-, 199).

(391.) Examples.

(1) Stāre = *to stand* ; con-stāre, *to stand together, to halt* ; circum-stāre, *to stand-around, to surround*.

(The compounds of stāre, with prepositions of *one* syllable, have stīt- for perfect-stem ; those with *two*, stēt-.)

(2) *To resist or withstand* | Alicui rēsistēre.
any one.

Partial Rule of Syntax.—Many verbs compounded with prepositions govern the dative.

- (3) *To put any one to flight.* | *Alīquem in fūgam dāre*
 (= *to give unto flight*).
 (4) *To make an attack.* | *Impētum faciēre.*

[The Latin words in the following exercises which illustrate the lessons are spaced.]

(392.) *Translate into English.*

Oppidāni, obsīdes quos Cēsār impērāv-ērāt, dēd-ērunt.—Vēnātōres fāmē (abl., 55, a) lūpos dōmu-ērunt.—Ex monte subitō (adv.) flammā ēmicu-ērunt.—Impērātor oppidānos frumentō (55) adjūv-it.—Num crēpu-ērunt fōrēs?—Cēsār vēhēmenter (215, 2, b) milītēs incrēpu-it.—Hostes nostrīs paullisper restit-ērunt.—Hostes milītibus (391, 2) circumstēt-ērunt, multosque interfēc-ērunt.—Nōstrī in hostes impētum fēc-ērunt, atque eōs (391, 3) in fūgam dēd-ērunt.—Nōstrī sīmulatque in ārīdō constīt-ērunt, in hostes impētum fēc-ērunt atque eōs in fūgam dēd-ērunt.

(393.) *Translate into Latin.*

The flame shone-forth.—From (ex) the top-of the mountain (297, a) the flame suddenly shone-forth.—The huntsman had tamed the wolf.—The townsmen had given the hostages.—The Belgians gave all the hostages that (*rel. pron.*) Cēsār had demanded.—The general had reproved the lieutenant and (que) the soldiers.—Our (men) were-withstanding the enemy (dat.).—Our (men) bravely withstood the enemy, and (que) killed many.—The Belgians surrounded our (*men*) (dat., 391, 2), and killed many.—The Romans often put the Belgians to flight.—Our men halted upon (in) the dry-ground.—As-soon-as our men halted upon dry-ground, they bravely withstood the enemy (391, 2).—Our men put-to-flight the enemy whom (dat., 391, 2) they had bravely withstood.

LESSON LXIII.

Perfect-stem.—Second Conjugation.

(394.) THE perfect-stem in *second conjugation* is formed in *five* ways.

- I. By adding *ŭ* to the verb-stem; mōn-ērē, mōn-ŭ-.
 II. " ēv " dēl-ērē, dēl-ēv-.
 III. " s " măn-ērē, man-s-.
 IV. reduplicating the first con- } mōrd-ērē, mō-mōrd-
 sonant and vowel; }
 V. lengthening the stem-vowel; vīd-ērē, vīd-.

(395.) On this table, observe that *Class*

- I. contains *most* of the verbs of the second conjugation.*
 II. contains only *flērē, to weep*; *nērē, to spin*; *dēlērē, to destroy*, with the compounds of the obsolete words *plērē, to fill*; *ōlērē,† to grow*; *suērē,† to be accustomed*. [For a list, see 665, II.]
 III. contains *many* verbs, of which a list may be found (665, III.). The rules of euphony must be applied here.
 (a) *b* before *s* sometimes passes into *s*.
 To command, Infinitive. Perfect. Supine.
 jub-ēre, jub-si = jussī, jussūm (jub-sum).
 (b) *t*-sound before *s* dropped.
 To laugh, Infinitive. Perfect. Supine.
 rid-ēre, rid-si = risī, risūm (rid-sum).
 (c) *c*-sound + *s* = *x*. Any *c*-sound before *t* = *c*.
 To increase, Infinitive. Perfect. Supine.
 aug-ēre, aug-si = aux-i, auctūm (aug-tum).
 (d) *c*-sound after *l* or *r* dropped before *s*.
 To glitter, Infinitive. Perfect. Supine.
 fulg-ēre, ful-si (ful(g)s-i), ful-sum (ful(g)sum).
 IV. contains *four* simple verbs. See list (665, IV.).
 To bite, champ, Infinitive. Perfect. Supine.
 mord-ēre, mō-mord-i, morsūm (mord-sum).
 To vow, promise, Infinitive. Perfect. Supine.
 spond-ēre, spō-pond-i, sponsūm (spond-sum).
 [The compounds of these verbs drop the reduplication; e.g.,
 To answer, respondēre, respond-i, responsum (respond-sum).]
 V. contains *eight* simple verbs, for which see list (665, V.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To favour</i> , fāv-ērē,	fāv-ēre,	fāv-si,	fautum.
<i>To move</i> , mōv-ērē,	mōv-ēre,	mōv-si,	mōtum.

EXERCISE.

[Refer to 386 and 389.]

(396.) Vocabulary.

<i>Carthage</i> , Carthāgo, (Carthāgīn) Is (339).	<i>To fill up, complete</i> (complēv-, complēt-, 395, II.) [con-+plēre].
<i>To destroy</i> , dēlērē (dēlēv-, dēlēt-, 395, II.).	<i>Good will, voluntās</i> , (voluntat) is (293).

* Many examples of this class have already occurred.

† Some of these have *sco* in present indicative: *adole sco, consuesco*

To remain, măněre (mans-, mans-, 394, III.).

To come, vėnĭre (vėn-, vent-).

A slayer, interfectōr, ōrls (319).

To see, vidēre (vid-, vis-, 395, V.).

To open, āpėrĭre (apėrĭ-, apert-).

Gate, portā, æ.

To flee, fĭgėre (io), (fĭg-, fugĭt-).

Bit, bridle, frænūm, I (plur. i and æ).

Saguntum, Sāguntum, I.

Hill, collis, is (m., 302, R.).

Scipio } Scipio, nis.
(surnamed) }

Africanus, } Africānūs, I.

Numantia, Nūmantia, æ.

A defence, fortification, mānitio (nis)
(f., 333, R.).

Even up to, as far as, usquē (adv.).

Great, ingens, (ingent) is (107).

Standard, signūm, I.

Tooth, dens, (dent) is, (m., 295, R.).

(397.) *Example.*

On the very day of his arrival.

Eōdem quovėnėrat diē
(= the very day on which
day he had come).

(398.) *Translate into English.*

Hannĭbal Sāguntum dēlēvit, Scĭpio Carthāgĭnem.—Scĭpio Africānus urbes duas pōtentissĭmas, Carthāgĭnem ēt Nūmantiam dēlēvit.—Cēsār hās mūnĭtiones dilġgentėr auxit.—Gallĭ partem collis, usquē ād mūrūm oppĭdĭ, castrĭs (55, a) complėvērant.—Adventūs lėgātĭ summā spė et vōluntātē urbēm complėvit.—Diū barbārĭ in fidē mansėrant.—Ītā complėres diēs (191, a) mansėrant castrā.—Cēsār eōdem diē (118, II., c) in Āduōs castrā mōvit.—Imperātor, eōdem quō vėnėrat diē (397) castrā mōvit.—Brūtus et Cassius, interfectōres (225, a) Cēsāris, bellum ingens mōvērunt.*—Lėgĭōnes, sĭmulatquē nostrā signā vĭderunt, portās āpėruērunt.—Equus frėnōs mōmordĭt.—Spōpondistĭnē prō amicō? Spōpondĭ.

(399.) *Translate into Latin.*

Scipio destroyed Carthage, a most powerful city.—God has filled the world with all blessings (bona, neut.):—Socrates never laughed.—The forces of the Gauls had filled the whole (omnem) place, even-up to the wall of the town.—The Gauls had filled-up the higher (superior) part of the hill with (their) very-crowded (densissimus) camp.—The coming of Cæsar filled the army with the highest hope and good-will. For many years the barbarians had remained in friendship and

* In the sense of excited, stirred up.

fidelity (fideque).—Cæsar moved (his) camp into the (territory of the) Æduans on the very day of his arrival.—The enemy saw our soldiers, and fled.—The horses were champing the bits.—The wolf bit the dog with his teeth (55, a).

LESSON LXIV.

Perfect-stems.—Third Conjugation.

(400.) THE perfect-stem in the *third conjugation* is formed in *six* ways.

- I. By adding *s* to the verb-stem; scrib-erë, scrip-s.
- II. " ü " cöl-ërë, cöl-ü-.
- III. " v, or iv " pët-ërë, pet-iv-.
- IV. reduplication; curr-ërë, cūcurr-
- V. lengthening the stem-vowel; fūg-ërë, fūg-.
- VI. taking the simple verb-stem; volv-ërë, volv-.

We shall take up these separately, treating in this lesson only the first.

(401.) CLASS I.—*Perfect-stem formed by adding s to the Verb-stem.*

Most verbs of the third conjugation come under this class. It has already been illustrated, but we here give a fuller account of the rules of euphony, in connexion with the various stem-endings.

1. b before s or t passes into p.

Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To write, scrib-ërë,	scrips-i (scrib-s-i),	scriptum (scrib-tum).
To marry, nūb-ërë,	nups-i (nub-s-i),	nuptum (nub-tum).

2. A c-sound +s = x (c, g, h, v, gu, qu are classed with c-sounds. If a stem ends in ct, the t is dropped, and the c unites with s to form x). Any c-sound before t = c.

Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To lead, dūc-ërë,	dux-i (duc-s-i),	duc-tum.
To cover, tēg-ërë,	tex-i (teg-s-i),	tec-tum (teg-tum).
To draw, trāh-ërë,	trax-i (trah-s-i),	trac-tum (trah-tum).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To live,</i>	viv-ērē,	vix-i (viv-s-i),	vic-tum (viv-tum).
<i>To quench, extingui-ērē,</i>		extinx-i (extingu-s-i),	{ extinc-tum (extingu-tum).
<i>To boil,</i>	cōqu-ērē,	cox-i (coqu-s-i),	coc-tum (coqu-tum).

We class here also,

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To flow,</i>	flu-ērē (fluv-),	flux-i (fluv-s-i),	flux-um (fluv-sum).
<i>To build,</i>	stru-ērē (struc-),	strux-i (struc-s-i),	struc-tum.

3. d or t before s either (a) is dropped, or (b) passes into s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
(a) <i>To divide,</i>	divid-ērē,	divis-i (divid-s-i),	divi-sum (divid-sum).
(b) <i>To yield, go,</i>	cēd-ērē,	cēss-i (ced-s-i),	ces-sum (ced-sum).
<i>To send,</i>	mitt-ērē,	mīs-i (mit-s-i),	mis-sum (mit-sum).

4. (a) m or r before s sometimes passes into s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To press,</i>	prēm-ērē,	press-i (prem-s-i),	pres-sum (prem-sum).
<i>To bear,</i>	gēr-ērē,	gess-i (ger-s-i),	ges-tum (ger-tum).

(b.) But if m be retained, it assumes p before it.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To take,</i>	sūm-ērē,	sum-ps-i (sum-s-i),	sump-tum (sum-tum).

5. If the stem ends in rg, the g is dropped before s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To scatter, sow,</i>	sparg-ērē,	spars-i (sparg-s-i),	spar-sum.

EXERCISE.

(402.) Vocabulary.

<i>To bind, surround,</i> cingere (cinx-, cinct-, 401, 2).	<i>Rampart,</i> vallum, i.
<i>To draw up,</i> instruere (instrux-, instruct-, 401, 2).	<i>Triple, triplex, (triplic) is (107).</i>
<i>To shut,</i> claudere (claus-, claus-, 401, 3, a).	<i>Janus, Janus, i.</i>
<i>To retreat,</i> recedere (re+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).	<i>Numa, Numā, æ.</i>
<i>To approach,</i> accedere (ad+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).	<i>Veteran, veterānus, æ, ūm.</i>
<i>To grant, concede (con+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).</i>	<i>In three divisions, tripartitō (adv.).</i>
<i>To bear, carry on, gere (401, 4, a).</i>	<i>Suddenly, repente (adv.).</i>
<i>To spend, consumere (con+sumere, sumps-, sumpt-, 401, 4, b).</i>	<i>By-night, noctū (adv.).</i>
	<i>There, ibi (adv.).</i>
	<i>Dragon, draco, (dracōn) is (333).</i>
	<i>Arms, armā, ōrum (used only in plural).</i>
	<i>Neighbouring, finitimus, æ, ūm.</i>
	<i>State, civitas, (civitat) is (293).</i>

(403.) Examples.

(a) <i>In all directions.</i>	<i>In omnes partes.</i>
(b) <i>Upon an expedition.</i>	<i>In expeditiōnem.</i>

(404.) *Translate into English.*

In tuā epistolā nihil mīhi scripsisti de tuis rebus.—Barbāri vallō et fossā (55, a) hibernā cinxērunt.—Cæsār triplicem āciem instruxit lēgiōnum vētērānārū.—Rōmāni templum Jāni his post Numæ regnum clausērunt.—Impērātor exercitum in duas partes dīvisit.—Cæsār tripartitō milites ēquitesque in expēditionem mīsīt.—Prīncipes rēpentē ex oppidō cum cōpiis rēcessērunt.—Milites noctū usquē ad castrā accessērunt.—Cæsār obsidibus (54) libertātem concessit.—Germāni cum Helvētiis bellum gesserunt.—Māgnū et grāvē ōnūs armōrum milītēs pressit.—Explorātor ad castrā hostium accessit, atque ibi māgnam partem diēi consumpsit.—Cadmus dentēs drācōnis sparsit.

(405.) *Translate into Latin.*

The ambassador wrote nothing concerning his own affairs.—The scout approached even-up to the walls of the town.—The lieutenant sent-away messengers in all directions.—Cæsar sent-away the horsemen in three divisions into the neighbouring states.—Cadmus slew (interfēcit) the dragon and sowed his (ejus) teeth.—Cæsar drew up the veteran legions in (abl.) a triple line.—The soldiers spent a great part of the day in the camp.—The enemy approached the town by-night.—The townsmen shut the gates.—The Helvetians retreated by night with all (their) forces.—Cæsar sent-away the scouts in three divisions upon an expedition.—The general sent-away the messengers by night in all directions.—The soldiers approached even-up-to the rampart, and there spent a great part of the day

LESSON LXV.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.

(406.) CLASS II.—*Perfect-stem adds ū to the Verb-stem.*

(a) *Without change of the verb-stem (see list, 666, II., a),*

e. g.,

To nourish, maintain,

al-ērē,

āl-ū-i,

al-tum.

To honour, cultivate,

cōl-ērē,

cōl-ū-i,

cul-tum

(b) *With change of verb-stem* (666, II., b).

<i>To place,</i>	pōn-ērē,	pōs-ū-i,*	pōs-i-tum.
<i>To beget,</i>	gign-ērē,	gēn-ū-i,	gēn-i-tum.

CLASS III.—*Perfect-stem adds v or iv to the Verb-stem.*

(a) *Adds v (and lengthens stem-vowel, if short).* (List, 666, III., a.)

[These generally drop n, r, or sc,† or change the order of the letters. They must be carefully observed, as they occur in the vocabularies.]

<i>To despise,</i>	spērn-ērē,	spērēv-i,	spērē-tum (spērn-tum).
<i>To be accustomed,</i>	suesc-ērē,	suēv-i,	suē-tum.

(b) *Adds iv* (list, 666, III., b).

<i>To seek, strive after,</i>	pēt-ērē,	pēt-iv-i,	pēt-i-tum.
-------------------------------	----------	-----------	------------

EXERCISE.

(407.) *Vocabulary.*

Spaniard, Hispanūs, i.
Command, jussūs, ūs.
Against, contrā (prep., acc.).
People, pōpulus, i.
Immediately, statim.
Avienus, Āviēnūs, i.
To instigate, stir up, instigāre (āv-, āt-).
To place in, to put into, impōnērē (in+pōnērē, 406, b).
To remove, rēmōvērē (rēmōv-, rēmōt-, re+mōvēre).
To arrange, distribute, dispōnērē (dis+pōnērē, 406, b).
To relate, commēmōrārē (āv-, āt-, con+mēmōrārē).

Property, fāmīlia, es.
To cross over, transirē (trans+irē, iv-, it-).
To decree, determine, dēcernērē (dēcrēv-, decrēt-, de+cernērē).
To discourse, dissērērē (dissērn-, dissert-, dis+sērērē).
To plunder, diripērē (ripu-, rept-di+rāpēre)‡.
A beast of burden, jumentum, i.
Sacred rites, sacrā, orum (n., pl.).
Instead of, prō (prep., abl.).
Advice, counsel, consiliūm, i.
On account of, ob (prep., acc.).
To despise, spērnēre (406, III., a).
Winter, hiems, (hiēm) is (293).

(408.) *Examples.*

(a) *By the command of Cæsar.* | Jussū (abl., 55, a) Cæsāris.

* Pōnō=pōsīno; pōsuī=pos-iv-i.

† In these verbs the n or sc does not properly belong to the root, but is employed simply to *strengthen* the present indicative and infinitive; *to know*, nō-ere, strengthened nosc-ere, &c.

‡ Observe that the compounds of rāpērē, fācērē, cāpērē, with *prepositions*, change a into i in the infinitive; diripērē, conficērē, accipērē.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| (b) <i>To place on shipboard.</i> | In nāvēs impōnērē (<i>put into ships</i>). |
| (c) <i>With (near) the army.</i> | Ād exercītum. |
| <i>On the borders of the Æduans.</i> | Ad fines Æduōrum. |

Ād is often used by Cæsar in the sense of *near* or *with* (i. e., *along with*).

(409.) *Translate into English.*

Hispani, jussū Cæsāris, eos exercītūs quōs (165) contrā pōpūlum Rōmānum multos jam annos (191, a) āluērānt, stātīm dīmīsērunt.—Aviēnē (voc.), quōd (*because*) in Itāliā milites pōpūli Rōmāni contrā rempūblicam instīgāstī (349, N.); et, prō militibus, tuam fāmīliam in nāvēs impōsuistī; ōb eas res, āb exercītū meō te rēmōveo.—Cæsār lēgiones quas in Itāliā, hibernōrum causā (135, II., b), disposūērat, ad se rēvōcāvit.—Cūr consīlium meum sprēvistī?—Cæsār, his de causīs quas commēmōrāvī, Rhēnum transire dēcrēvērat.—Multī sālūtem sībī (dat.) in fugā pētīvērunt (*or* petiērunt, 349, N.).—Cæsār tōtam hiēmēm (191, a) ipse ad exercitum (408, c) mānere dēcrēvit.—Cæsār duās lēgiones ad fines Æduōrum pōsuit.

(410.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Spaniards had maintained an army (for) many years (191, a).—Orgetorix maintained, at-his-own-expense (sumptū suō), a large number of soldiers.—Cæsar placed the camp on-the-borders-of (408, c) the Sequanians.—Socrates discoursed concerning (de) the immortality of the soul.—The pirates plundered many towns.—Cæsar distributed three legions in Italy, for-the-sake-of winter-quarters.—Thou-hast-despised my counsels; thou-hast-instigated the soldiers against the republic; thou hast put beasts-of-burden instead of soldiers into the ships: on-account-of these things, I remove thee from my army.—The Romans honoured most-religiously (maximā religione) the sacred-rites of Jupiter.—Cæsar, for (de) these reasons, had determined to cross the Rhine.—Many soldiers sought safety for themselves (by) flight.—The inhabitants sought peace from (a) the Romans.

LESSON LXVI.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.(411.) CLASS IV.—*Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant.*

[Some of these present *vowel-changes*, which must be carefully observed. (a) When the first vowel is i or u, the first consonant is reduplicated with that vowel; (b) in other verbs, with ē. (c) The compounds of *dārē*, *to give*, with i.]

(a) First vowel i, o, or u.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To learn,</i>	disc-ērē,	dī-dīc-i (<i>s dropped</i>),	(no supine).
<i>To demand,</i>	posc-ere,	pō-posc-i,	(no supine).
<i>To beat,</i>	tund-ērē,	tū-tūd-i,	tū-sum (tud-sum).

(b) Other verbs reduplicate with e (note vowel-changes in stems).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To fall,</i>	cād-ērē,	cē-cīd-i (<i>i short</i>),	cā-sum (cad-sum).
<i>To drive, repel,</i>	pell-ērē,	pē-pūl-i,	pul-sum.
<i>To fell, kill,</i>	cād-ērē,	cē-cīd-i (<i>i long</i>),	cās-um.

(c) Compounds of *dārē*.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To add,</i>	ad-dērē,	ad-dīd-i,	ad-dī-tum.
<i>To lose,</i>	per-dērē,	per-dīd-i,	per-dī-tum.

EXERCISE.

(412.) *Vocabulary.*

The whole, ūnīversus, ā, ūm.

Duty, service, mūnus, (mūnēr) is (345).

Walls, mæniā, ūm (pl., neut.).

Coming together, conflict, congressūs, ūs.

Seventy, septuaginta (indecl.).

To touch, tangērē (tētīg-, tact-, 411, b).

To spare, parcērē (pēperc-, parcīt-, para-; governs *dative*).

To surround, cingere (401, 2).

Nobody, nēmo, (nemīn) is (m and f, 25, a).

Woman, mūlier, is (f, 25, a).

Child, infant, infans, (infant) is (c, 25, a).

Thirty, trīginta.

Eighty, octōginta.

Immense, immensus, ā, ūm.

Sum-of-money, pēcūnia, ā.

To add, addere (411, c).

(413.) *Examples.*

(1) *To demand peace of*
Cæsar.

(a) Cæsārēm pācēm poscērē; or (b) pācēm a Cæsārē poscērē.

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *demanding* (*a*) govern two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; but (*b*) the *person* may be put in the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *āb*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (2) <i>About twenty.</i> | Circiter viginti. |
| (3) <i>To give one's self wholly up.</i> | Tōtum sē dārē (= <i>to give one's self whole up</i>). |
| (4) <i>The leader spared women.</i> | Dux mulieribus pēpercit. |

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *sparing* govern the dative.

 Observe, the perfect of *cādērē, to fall*, is *cēcidī*; of *cādērē, to fell or kill*, *cēcidī*.

(414.) *Translate into English.*

Lēgāti ad Cæsarem vērērunt, eumque pācem (413, 1, *a*) pōpōscērunt.—Hōc ā mē (413, 1, *b*) mūnus ūnīversā prōvinciā pōpōscit.—Pueri linguam Latinam didicērant.—Ā Grēcīs Galli urbes mēnībus cingērē didicērunt.—Nostri, in primō congressū, circiter septuaginta cēciderunt; in hīs Quintus Fulgīnius.—Arbōr vētus cēcīdīt, quam (165) ferrō (55, *a*) nēmo cēcīdit.—Lēgātus, sīmūlac prōvinciam tētigit, inertīæ (dat.) tōtum se dēdit.—Postquam Cæsār vēnit, obsīdes, armā, servos pōpōscit.—Mīlites nōn muliērībus, nōn infantībus, pēpercerunt.—Cæsār lēgiōnībus cohortēs circiter trīginta addīdit.—Mors nullī (194, R. 1) homīnum (*partit. gen.*) pēpercit (413, 4).

(415.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Æduans demanded peace of Cæsar (413, 1, *b*).—The whole province demanded peace of the Romans (413, 1, *a*).—Of-our-men (*nostri*, nom., pl.) about eighty fell; among them, Labienus.—Have *you* (135, II., *a*) learned the Latin language?—The farmer felled very-many (*plurimas*) trees in the wood.—As soon as the lieutenant touched the province, he plundered many towns.—The general demanded seventy hostages, and an immense sum of money.—The old trees fell.—This service the general demanded of me.—The leader spared all the temples of the gods; but the soldiers spared not (*nōn*) women nor (*nōn*) children.—Cæsar added to the foot-soldiers about twenty cohorts.—Cæsar added to the foot-soldiers thirty horse-soldiers.

LESSON LXVII.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.

(416.) CLASS V.—*Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel of the Verb.*

(a) *Without vowel-change.*

<i>To read, gather,</i>	<i>lĕg-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>lĕg-I,</i>	<i>lec-tum.</i>
<i>To conquer,</i>	<i>vinc-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>vic-I,</i>	<i>vic-tum.</i>

(b) *With vowel-change.*

<i>To drive,</i>	<i>ag-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>ĕg-I,</i>	<i>ac-tum.</i>
<i>To break,</i>	<i>frang-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>frĕg-I,</i>	<i>frac-tum.</i>

(c) *io verbs (199).*

<i>To fly,</i>	<i>fĕg-iĭ,</i>	<i>fĕg-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>fĕg-I,</i>	<i>fĕg-I-tum.</i>
<i>To take,</i>	<i>cĕp-iĭ,</i>	<i>cĕp-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>cĕp-I,</i>	<i>cap-tum.</i>
<i>To cast,</i>	<i>jĕc-iĭ,</i>	<i>jĕc-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>jĕc-I,</i>	<i>jac-tum.</i>
<i>To dig,</i>	<i>fĕd-iĭ,</i>	<i>fĕd-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>fĕd-I,</i>	<i>fos-sum.</i>
<i>To make, do,</i>	<i>fĕc-iĭ,</i>	<i>fĕc-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>fĕc-I,</i>	<i>fac-tum.</i>

EXERCISE.

(417.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Remains, remnant, rĕliquiæ, ĩrum</i> (pl.) (57, R.).	<i>To hurl, conjĕcĕrĕ</i> (jĕc-, ject-, con- jĕcĕrĕ).
<i>To collect, collĕgĕrĕ</i> (lĕg-, lect-, con- lĕgĕrĕ).	<i>To undertake, suscipĕrĕ</i> (cĕp-, cept-, sub+cĕpĕrĕ).
<i>To receive, take back, rĕcipĕrĕ</i> (cĕp-, cept-, rĕ+cĕpĕrĕ).	<i>To finish, conficĕrĕ</i> (fĕc-, fect-, con- facĕrĕ).
<i>Headlong, præceps, (præcipit) is</i> (adj., 107).	<i>To begin, incipĕrĕ</i> (incĕp-, incept- in+cĕpĕrĕ).
<i>To receive, accipĕre</i> (cĕp-, cept-, ad- cĕpĕre).	<i>Safe, tĕtus, ā, ũm.</i>
<i>To bring-together, to compel, cĕgĕrĕ</i> (coĕg-, coact-, con+cĕgĕrĕ).	<i>Cappadocia, Cappădŏcia, æ.</i>
<i>To break through, perfringĕrĕ</i> (frĕg-, fract-, per+frangĕrĕ).	<i>A district, pĕgus, ĩ.</i>
<i>Dart, javelin, tĕlum, ĩ.</i>	<i>Egypt, Ēgyptus, ĩ (f.).</i>
	<i>Easily, facĭlĕ (adv.).</i>
	<i>Trial, jŭdĭcium, ĩ.</i>
	<i>Family of slaves, fĕmĭlĭa, æ.</i>

(418.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>To betake one's self back.</i>	<i>Sĕ rĕcipĕrĕ</i>
<i>He went back to his house.</i>	<i>Sĕ dŏmũm rĕcĕpĭt.</i>
(b) <i>Within the memory of our</i>	<i>Patrum nostrŏrum mĕ-</i>
<i>fathers.</i>	<i>mŏriæ (abl., 55, a).</i>

(c) *Lucius Cassius, the consul.* | *L. Cassius, consul.*

The (*prænomen*) first name is rarely written out. *L.* stands for *Lucius* *T* for *Titus*, &c. *Consul* is in apposition (225, a) with *L. Cassius*.

(d) *In mid-summer.* | *Mēdiā æstātē* (118, II. c).

(419.) *Translate into English.*

Servus meus orationes et historias et carmina legit.—Legatus reliquias exercitus colligit, itineribusque tūtis per Cappadociam se in Asiam recepit.—Nostrī acriter impetum fecerunt atque precipites hostes egerunt.—Labienus, cum his copiis quas a Cæsare acceperat, ad fines Æduorum contendit.—Pompeius magnam ex Asia et Ægypto classem coegerat.—Milites facile (adv.) hostium aciem perfrēgerunt atque in eos impetum fecerunt.—Hic pagus unus, patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem (418, c) interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum (323, N.) miserat.—Hostes subito tela in nostros conjecerunt.—Pompeius bellum verō (in the spring, 118, II., c) suscepit, mediā æstātē confecit.

(420.) *Translate into Latin.*

The general had collected (*cōgēre*) great forces.—Pompey brought-together a great army from Asia and Egypt.—Have you read the books of Cicero?—The general collected the remnant of his army, and betook himself into Gaul.—Our (men) drove the enemy headlong, and slew many.—Labienus had received four legions from Cæsar.—Labienus, with the legions which he had received from Cæsar, hastened to the confines of the Æduans.—Orgetorix brought-together to the trial all his family-of-slaves from every side.—The enemy brought-together all (their) ships into one place.—The Romans easily broke-through the line-of-battle of the Æduans.—Cæsar finished the great war in-mid-summer (418, d) which he had begun in-the-spring (118, II., c).

LESSON LXVIII.

Perfect-stem. — Third Conjugation, concluded.

(421.) CLASS VI.—*Perfect-stem = simple Verb-stem.*

(a) Stems ending in u or v (list, 666, VI., a).

<i>To sharpen,</i>	accū-ērē,	accū-i,	accū-tum.
<i>To roll,</i>	volv-ērē,	volv-i,	volv-tum.

(b) *Consonant-stems* (list, 666, VI., b).

<i>To turn,</i>	vert-ērē,	vert-i,	vert-sum.
-----------------	-----------	---------	-----------

(c) Compounds of *cando* and *fendo* (*obs.*) belong here

g.,

<i>To burn,</i>	incend-ērē,	incend-i,	incen-sum.
<i>To defend, ward off,</i>	dēfend-ērē,	dēfend-i,	dēfen-sum.

EXERCISE.

(422.) *Vocabulary.*

The back, tergum, i.

To flow together, confluere (conflux-, conflux-, con+fluere, 401, 2).

Discipline, disciplinā, æ.

Austerity, severity, sēvēritas, (severitat) is (293).

To dissolve, dissolvēre (solv-, solūt-, dis+solvēre).

To return, rēvertēre (rēvert-, revers-, rē+vertēre).

To appoint, to station, to determine, constituere (stītu-, stītāt-, con+stītuere).

To divide, to distribute, distribuere (bū-, būt-, dis+tribuere).

Desirous, covetous, cupidus, a, ūm (governs *genitive*).

To know, learn, cognoscere (cognōv-, cognīt-, con+noscere).

To turn, vertere (421, b).

(423.) *Examples.*

(a) *The general appointed a day for the council.*

Impērātor diem concīliō (dat.) constituit.

(b) *What (number of) long ships he had.*

Quidquid nāvium (180) longārum habēbat.

(c) *To divide or distribute among.*

Distribuere (with acc. of thing, and dat. of person).

(424.) *Translate into English.*

Hostes tergā vertērunt.—Divitiæ (57, R.) quæ ad Rōmam confluxērunt, mōrum disciplinam sēvēritātemque dissolvērunt.—Cæsar diem cum lēgātis constituit.—Dies, quam Cæsar constituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum

(150) *rēvertērunt*.—*Mīlites sēse* (145, c) *fortīter* (215, 2) *dēfendērunt*.—*Hostes cōpias suas in tres partes distribu-erant*.—*Cæsar, quidquid nāvium longārum hābēbat, lēgātis præfectisque* (423, c) *distribuit*.—*Prōcellæ fluctūs vastos ad littorā volvērant*.—*Cæsar exercitum flūmen* (113, II., a) *transducere constituit*.—*Cæsar Dumnōrigem Æduum sē-cum* (125, II., b) *dūcere constituit, quod (conj.) eum cupī-dum impērii* (synt., 698, b, 1) *cognōvērat*.—*Æduī ex itinere dōmum* (113, III., R.) *revertērunt*.

(425.) *Translate into Latin.*

The soldiers defended the city very bravely (376).—The general stationed the foot-soldiers near (ad, 408, c) the wall of the town.—On-the-next-day (118, II., c) Cæsar stationed all the horse-soldiers in-front-of (p r o) the camp.—The chiefs of the states returned to Cæsar.—The day which Cæsar had appointed for the council came, and the chiefs of the states returned to him.—Our (men) turned their backs.—The riches of the Romans had dissolved (their) discipline and austerity of manners.—What money (423, b) he had he distributed among (423, c) the lieutenants and soldiers.—The Æduans divided their forces into two parts.—The tempests rolled vast waves to the stars.—The general determined to take (ducere) the lieutenant with him.—The seas were rolling great waves to the shores.

LESSON LXIX.

Perfect-stem.—Fourth Conjugation.

(426.) THE perfect-stem in the fourth conjugation is formed in five ways.

- | | | | |
|------|--|------------------|-----------------|
| I. | By adding <i>iv</i> to verb-stem ; | <i>aud-irē,</i> | <i>aud-iv-.</i> |
| II. | “ <i>ū</i> “ | <i>āpēr-irē,</i> | <i>āpēr-ū-.</i> |
| III. | “ <i>s</i> “ | <i>sēp-irē,</i> | <i>sēp-s-.</i> |
| IV. | <i>lengthening stem-vowel ; vēn-irē, vēn-.</i> | | |
| V. | <i>taking simple verb-stem ; compēr-irē, compēr-</i> | | |

(427.) On this table, observe that *Class*

I. contains *most* of the verbs of the fourth conjugation.

[Numerous examples have already occurred. Any peculiar *supines* are given in the vocabularies.]

II. contains *four* simple verbs (see list, 667, II.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To open, uncover,</i>	āpēr-irē,	āpēr-ū-i,	āper-tum.
<i>To leap,</i>	sāl-irē,	sāl-ū-i,	sal-tum.

III. contains *nine* simple verbs (see list, 667, III.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To bind,</i>	vinc-irē,	vinx-i (vinc-s-i),	vinc-tum.
<i>To think,</i>	sent-irē.	sens-i (sent-s-i),	{ sen-sum (sent-sum).

IV. contains but *one* verb.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To come,</i>	vēn-irē,	vēn-i,	ven-tum.

V. contains *two* verbs.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To ascertain, find,</i>	compēr-irē,	compēr-i,	comper-tum.
<i>To discover,</i>	rēpēr-irē,	rēpēr-i,	rēper-tum.

EXERCISE.

(428.) *Vocabulary.*

To leap down, dēsīlīre (dēsīlū- and dēsili-, dēsult-, dē+sālīre).

To come near, to approach, apprō-pinquāre (ād+prōpinquāre, av-, at-), with *dat.*

To agree, consentire (con+sentire, 427, III.).

To disagree, dissentire (dis+sentire, 427, III.).

To come to, reach, arrive at, pervē-nire (pēr+vēnīre, 427, IV.).

To come together, assemble, conve-nire (cōn+venīre, 427, IV.).

To find, invēnīre (in+vēnīre, 427, IV.).

Thither, to that place, eō (*adv.*).

To open, āperīre (427, II.).

When, quān.

Youth, juventūs, (juventūt) is (f.).

To lay waste, pōpūlārī, dep. (pōpū-lāt-).

After that, postquam (adv.).

Example.

(a) *In a battle of cavalry.* | Ēquestrī præliō.

Rule of Syntax.—The ablative is used to express the *manner* of an action, especially with an adjective.

(429.) *Translate into English.*

Milites ex nāvibus dēsīlīerunt et hostibus (391. 2) apprō-pinquarunt (349, N.).—Oppidāni portas āpēruērunt, et se, atque oppidum Cæsāri dēdērunt.—Hostes inter se dissensērunt.—Omnes cīves ūnā mentē (abl., 428, a) consensērunt.

runt.—*Helvëtiî jam per angustias cōpias suas transduxērunt, et in Æduorum fines pervēnērunt, eōrumque agros pōpūlabantur.*—*Cæsar cum Lābiēno Nūmantiam (713) pervēnit, ibique consūles invēnit.*—*Quum milītes eō convēnērunt, nāves ūnum in lōcum coegērunt.*—*Eō postquam Cæsar pervēnit, obsīdes et arma pōposcit.*

(430.) *Translate into Latin.*

After-that the townsmen saw the standards, they opened the gates, and gave themselves (up) to Cæsar.—The Germans, in the cavalry battle (428, a), leaped-down from (their) horses.—The general led the army through the straits, and on the seventh day arrived at the boundaries of the Germans.—The townsmen leaped-down from the wall.—All the soldiers agreed (with) one mind and voice (v o x).—When Cæsar arrived-at the town, the townsmen opened the gates.—When the general reached Numantia, he called together the citizens.—When the horsemen reached the town, the townsmen opened the gates.—The lieutenant led-back the soldiers to the town, and there found the general.

§ 8.

FORMS OF TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION, PASSIVE.

LESSON LXX.

Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action.—Indicative Passive.

(431.) THE tenses for completed action, passive (*perfect, pluperfect, future perfect*), are compounded of the perfect participle passive and of the tenses of the verb *esse, to be*: thus, *āmātūs sum, I have been loved; āmātūs es, thou hast been loved, &c.*

(432.) (a) The perfect participle of any verb is the form of which the *supine* is the accusative, and is inflected (like an adjective of three terminations) with the endings *ūs, ā, ūm*; thus:

Supines.	Perf Part.	
Āmāt-ūm,	āmāt-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>loved.</i>
Mōnīt-ūm,	mōnīt-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>advised.</i>
Rect-ūm.	rect-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>ruled.</i>
Audīt-ūm,	audīt-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>heard.</i>

(b) The perfect participle, then, of any verb, is formed by adding the inflection-endings *ūs, ā, ūm* to the supine-stem.

(433.)

PARADIGM.

PERFECT PASSIVE.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular. sūm, <i>I have been loved.</i> ēs, <i>thou hast been loved.</i> est, <i>he, she, it, has been loved.</i>
	Plural. sūmūs, <i>we have been loved.</i> estis, <i>ye or you have been loved.</i> sunt, <i>they have been loved.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular. ērām, <i>I had been loved.</i> ērās, <i>thou hadst been loved.</i> ērāt, <i>he, she, it, had been loved.</i>
	Plural. ērāmūs, <i>we had been loved.</i> ērātis, <i>ye or you had been loved.</i> ērant, <i>they had been loved.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular. ēro, <i>I shall have been loved.</i> ēris, <i>thou wilt have been loved.</i> ērit, <i>he, she, it, will have been loved.</i>
	Plural. ērimūs, <i>we shall have been loved.</i> ēritis, <i>you will have been loved.</i> ērant, <i>they will have been loved.</i>

(434.) Vocabulary.

To rout, to defeat, pellere (pēpūl-, puls-, 411, b).	Beginning, Inītiūm, i.
To divulge, enuntiāre (ē+nuntiāre, āv-, āt-).	Casticus, Casticus, i.
Sure, certain, certus, a, um.	Conference, collōquium, i.
To drive back, rēpellere (rēpūl-, repuls-, rē+pellere).	To hold, obtinēre (obtinu-, cōtent- ob+tēnere).
Private information, indicium, i.	Departure, discessūs, ūs.
	Nobility, nobilitās, (nobilitat) is cf. 293).

(435.) Examples.

(a) To inform any one.	Ālīquēm certiōrēm fācēre (=to make any one more certain).
(b) Cæsar was informed.	Cæsār certiōr factus est (=Cæsar was made more certain).
(c) All Gaul is divided into three parts.	Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs.

The perfect passive participle is sometimes used with *est* as an adjective, and is then to be rendered as a *present tense*; e. g., in (c), *est divisa* = *is divided*.

(436.) *Translate into English.*

Miles vulnerātus est.—Bella gesta erant.—Exercitus Cassii ab Helvitiis pulsus erat, et sub iugum missus erat.—Ea res Helvitiis (54) per indicium enuntiata est.—Helvetii de Cæsaris adventu certiores facti sunt.—Ubi de Cæsaris adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum miserunt.—Barbari telis (93, II., b, R.) et munitione repulsi sunt.—Initium fugæ a Dumnorige et ejus equitibus factum est.—Legati a Divitiaco, Æduo (225, a) ad Cæsarem missi erant.—Pater Castici regnum in Sequanis multos annos (191, *Rule*) obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus (80, a) appellatus erat.—Dies colloquio (54) constitutus est, ex eo die quintus.

(437.) *Translate into Latin.*

The centurions of the first ranks were wounded on the same day (118, II., c).—Cæsar was informed (435, a) of (de) the approach of the enemy.—The general had been informed of the departure (*discessus*) of the Germans.—The beginning of the flight had been made by the soldiers of the tenth legion.—The tenth legion had been defeated by the Germans, and had been sent under the yoke.—The conspiracy of the nobility was divulged to the Helvetians through private-information.—The war had been carried-on (for) many years (191, *Rule*).—The enemy were driven-back by the darts of the soldiers.—Ambassadors were sent by Cassius the consul (225, a) to the chiefs.—The Æduans were called friends (80, a) by the senate of the Roman people.—The townsmen were wounded by the darts of the soldiers.—The horsemen of the enemy were driven-back by the darts of the soldiers.—A day had been appointed for the conference.

§ 9.

PARTICIPLES. (LXXI.—LXXV.)

(438.) THE *Participle* presents the idea of the verb under the form of an adjective : (a) the *rising* sun ; (b) I saw the boy *writing* a letter. Sometimes, as in (a), its use is wholly adjective ; again, as in (b), it governs the case of its verb. There are two *active* participles in Latin, the participle of the *present* and the participle of the *future* ; two *passive*, the *perfect* and the *verbal* in *dus*.

LESSON LXXI.

Present Participle Active.

(439.) (a) THE endings of the present participle active for the four conjugations are,

1.	2.	3.	4.
-ans,	-ens,	ens,	-iens.

(b) By adding these endings to the stems respectively of the verbs *ā m-āre*, *mō n-ēre*, *rē g-ērē*, *aud-īrē*, we obtain the present participle active :

<i>Loving,</i>	<i>advising,</i>	<i>ruling,</i>	<i>hearing.</i>
Ā m-ans,	mō n-ens,	rē g-ens,	aud-iens.

(440.) The present participle is declined like an adjective of the third class (108).

Singular.		Plural.
N. V. Āmans.		N. V. Āmantēs, āmantiā.
Gen. Āmantīs.		Gen. Āmantiūm.
Dat. Āmanti, &c.		Dat. Āmantiūs, &c.

Rem. The abl. sing. ending is *i* when the part. is used strictly as an adj. ; e. g., in *florētī rosā*, in a *blooming* rose.

(a) Observe carefully that the Latin present participle active expresses *incomplete* or *continued* action; the language has no *active* participle to express *complete* action. We cannot translate the English *having loved* by any Latin active participle.

(b) But *deponent* verbs (206) have both participles, the *present* and the *perfect*; *exhorting*, hort-ans; *having exhorted*, hort-ātus.

EXERCISE.

(441.) Vocabulary.

To rise, ōriri (dep., ort-).

To desire, cūpērē (īd-, iv-, it-, 406, III., b).

Labour, toil, lābōr, (lābōr) īs (m., 319).

Watching, watchfulness, vīgīlantiā, æ.

Especially, præsertīm (adv.).

To depart, discēdērē (dis+cēdere, 401, 3, b).

To weep, flērē (flēv-, flēt-, 395, II.).

To look upon or at, intueri (dep.).

All, the whole, cunctus, ā, ūm.

To worship, adore, adorāre.

Eye, oculus, l.

A Persian, Persā, æ.

To doubt, dūbitārē (av-, at-).

To set out, prōficisci (dep., prōfect-).

To sit, sēdērē (sēd-, sess-, 394, V.).

Firmament, heaven, cælum, i.

To shine, micāre (389, , 389).

The sun, sōl, (sōl) īs (m., 319).

Full, plēnūs, ā, ūm (with gen.).

To be wanting, de-essē (with dat.).

Star, stellā, æ.

To set (e. g., as the heavenly bodies), occidērē (occid-, occās-, ob+cādērē).

To throw before, prōjicērē (jēc-, ject-, pro+jācēre).

(442.) (a) Recollect that, to form pres. part. act., you add to the stem ans in 1st conj.; e. g., am-ans: ens in 2d and 3d conj.; e. g., mōn-ens, dīc-ens: i-ens in 4th conj.; e. g., aud-i-ens. Also, add i-ens in the īd verbs (199) of 3d conj.; e. g., cūp-io, cūp-i-ens; fac-io, fac-i-ens.

(b) In *deponent* verbs, the same rules apply: hort-ārī, hort-āns ōr-ārī, ōr-i-ens; intu-ērī, intu-ens, &c. The perf. act. part. in deponents adds -ūs, ā, ūm to the supine-stem: hort-ārī, hortat-ūs, &c.

(c) The participle is used to *abridge* discourse.

(1) He heard me when I { He heard me saying that.
said that= { Mē īd dīcentēm audīvīt.

(2) God, who governs all { God, governing all things.
things= { Deūs, omniā gūbernāns.

(3) To him that desires= { (The man) desiring.
Cāpiēnti.

- (d) He threw himself at Cæsar's feet, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He threw himself before Cæsar, at} \\ \text{his feet.} \end{array} \right.$
 (Sē Cæsari ad pēdēs prōjēcit.)

(e) Can enim, vero, or autem stand first in a clause or sentence? (No.)

(443.) *Translate into English.*

Mē id dicentem audivistine?—Persæ sōlem orientem (442, c) adorant.—Lābiēnus, suos (*his men*) hortātus, cūpientibus signum dat.—Nōn enim lābor aut vigilantia, cūpienti præsertim aliquid (178, 5), Cassio deorat (267, b).—Cæsar ab hibernis in Itāliam discēdens, lēgātos convocat.—Mūlieres flentes sēse Cæsari (442, d) ad pēdēs prōjēcērunt.—Nēmo, cunctam intūens terram, dē divīnā prōvidentiā dubitābit.—Cæsar, in Itāliam prōficiscens, lēgātos omnes ad sē revocāvit.—Divitiācus, flens, ā Cæsare hęc (*these things*) pētēbat.—Cicēro Cātōnem vidit in hortō sedentem.—Quantā (184, R. 1) est sapiētia Deī, omniā gubernantis?

(444.) *Translate into Latin.*

[The words which illustrate the lesson are in *Italic*.]

The firmament is full of *shining* (438, a) stars.—No one, *when he looks at* (=looking, 442, c, 1) the firmament and stars, will doubt respecting (d e) the wisdom of God.—Did they hear me (135, II., a) *when I said* (=saying) that (id)?—The barbarians were-worshipping the *setting* sun.—Labienus, *having exhorted* (440, b) his men, made an attack upon the enemy (in hostes).—Cæsar willingly gave the signal to the soldiers *when they desired it* (=desiring).—To *him that desires* (=desiring) anything, no labour will-be-wanting (267, b).—Cæsar, *departing* from winter-quarters, gives rewards to the soldiers.—The eye, not *seeing* itself (sē, acc.), sees other-things (aliā).—The Æduans, *weeping*, threw themselves at the feet of Cæsar (442, d).—I saw my brother *sitting* in the garden yesterday.—How-great is the power of God, *who governs* (=governing) the world?

LESSON LXXII.

Participle Future Active.

(445.) THE ending of the future participle active is *urūs*, which, added to the *supine-stem*, forms the participle ; e. g.,

About to love, or one who will love, amāt-urūs.

About to advise, or one who will advise, mōnit-urūs.

(446.) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The different tenses of *esse* (*to be*), joined with the participle future active, form what is called the *periphrastic conjugation*.

Pres.	{	amātūrūs sūm, <i>I will love, am about to love, intend to love.</i>		
		amātūrūs es, <i>thou,</i>	&c.,	&c.
		So through all the persons.		
Past.	{	amātūrūs ērām, <i>I was about to love, intended to love, &c.</i>		
		amātūrūs erās, <i>thou,</i>	&c.,	&c.
		So through all the persons.		
Fut.	{	amātūrūs ero, <i>I shall be about to love, shall be on the point of loving, &c.</i>		
		amātūrūs eris, <i>thou,</i>	&c.,	&c.
		So through all the persons.		

EXERCISE.

(447.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To call upon, invocāre (in+vocāre, āv., āt-).</i>	<i>Alone, sōlus, ā, ūm (194, 1).</i>
<i>To collect into a flock, congregāre (āv., āt-).</i>	<i>To cross over, trāŭcere (trājēc-, trā-ject-, trans+jācere).†</i>
<i>Foreign, āliēnus, ā, ūm.</i>	<i>Ammon, a surname of Jupiter, Ham-mōn, Is.</i>
<i>To procure, comparāre (āv., āt-, con+parāre).</i>	<i>To behold, spectāre (āv., āt-).</i>
<i>To last, dūrāre (dūrāv., dūrāt-).*</i>	<i>To proceed, perŕere (perrex-, perfect-).</i>
<i>To implore, implōrare (in+plorāre, āv., āt-).</i>	<i>To consult, consŭlre (consŭlu-, consult-).</i>

(448.) *Example.*

<i>The Athenians sent ambassadors to consult the oracle.</i>	<i>Athēniensēs lēgātos misērunt, ōrācŭlum consultūrōs.</i>
--	--

* Dūrāre, transitive, = *to harden* ; intrans., = *to become hard, i. e., to last.*

† Transjĕcere, transit., = *to convey over* ; intrans., = *to cross over.*

Rule of Syntax.—The future active participle is used after a verb of motion to express the *design* of that motion.

(449.) *Translate into English.*

1. *Ävës, in äliönas terras migrätüræ, congregantur.*—*Cæsar, in Galliam præfectûrus, centuriönes convocat.*—*Germänï, bellum gestûri, Deös invocäverunt.*—*Sapiens bönä (neut. pl.) compärat semper dūrätürä.*

2. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*—*Cæsar dë quartä vīgiliä casträ mōtûrus est.*—*Scripturus sum.*—*Dumnōrix impērium^{*} suæ civitātis obtentûrus erat.*—*Impērator, cum solē decimā lēgiōne præfectûrus erat.*—*Ædui auxiliū ā pōpulo Rōmano implōrätûri sunt.*—*Germänï bellum gestûri erant.*

3. *Future Participle used to express a purpose* (448).—*Scīpio in Africam trājēcit, Carthāginem dēlētûrus.*—*Ingens hōm-inum multitūdō in urbem congrēgātur, lūdos spectātürä.*—*Alexander in Asiam contendit, regnum Persārū occūpātûrus.*—*Alexander ad Jōvem Hammōnem pergit, consul tûrus dë ōrigine suā.*

(450.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. The soldiers, *when-about-to-set-out* for (in) Spain, called-upon the gods.—Many (men) have procured possessions (*bönä*) *which-will-not-last* (=not about-to-last).—The general, *when-about-to-cross* the river, *sends-away* the horse-soldiers.—*Cæsar, intruding-to-send* a messenger, calls together the centurions.

2. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*—*Dumnorix was about-to-seize-upon* the royal-power.—The general is *about-to-set-out* from the camp with five legions.—The *Æduans* are *about-to-carry-on* a fierce war.—The hostages were *intending-to-implore* aid from the general.

3. *Future Participle to express a purpose.*—The *Æduans* sent ambassadors *to-implore* help from *Cæsar*.—The enemy crossed the river *in-order-to-besiege* the town.—The men flock (*congregor*) *from-every-side* to the town, *to-behold* the games.

LESSON LXXIII.

Perfect Participle Passive.

(451.) (a) THE perfect passive participle is formed (as stated 432, b) by adding the adjective-endings ūs, ā, ūm to the supine-stem; e. g.,

Inf.	Supine-stem.	Perf. Part.	
āmārē,	amāt-,	āmāt-ūs, ā, ūm,	loved, or having been loved.
vincērē,	vict-,	vict-ūs, ā, ūm,	{ conquered, or having been conquered.

(b) It is declined throughout like an adjective of the *first class* (76), and must agree with the substantive in *gender, number, and case*; e. g., puer laudātūs, puellā laudātā.

(c) The deponent verbs use the perfect participle form *actively*; e. g., hortātus, *having exhorted*.

EXERCISE.

(452.) *Vocabulary.*

Sudden, repentinūs, ā, ūm.
To alarm, perturbārē (āv-, āt-).
To seize, snatch up, arripērē (arrip-
 io, arripū-, arrept-, ad-+rēpērē).
Auxiliaries, auxiliā, ōrum.*
To put to flight, discomfit, fūgārē.
To drive on or together, compellērē
 (comptūl-, compuls-, con-+pellērē).
To induce, addūcēre (dux-, duct-,
 ad-+dūcērē).
Influence, auctoritas, (auctoritāt) is.
To prevail upon, permōvērē (mōv-,
 mōt-, per-+mōvērē, i. e., to move
 thoroughly).

A wagon, carrūs, i.
To buy up, coēmērē (ēm-, empt-,
 con-+ēmērē).
Aristides, Aristides (Aristid) is.
Pharsalus, Pharsalus, i (f., 25, a).
To depart out of, excēdērē (excess-
 excess-, ex-+cēdērē).
Rhetoric, rhētoricā, æ.
To expel, expellēre (expūl-, ex-
 puls-).
To stimulate, indūcērē (dux-, duct-).
Strong-desire, cūpīditas, (tāt) f
 (293).

(453.) *Examples.*

(a) *At Corinth.*

At Rome.

At Carthage.

At Athens.

Corinthī.

Rōmæ.

Carthāgīnē.

Athēnīs.

Rule of Syntax.—The place *where* is put in the *ablative*

* Auxilium in sing. = aid, assistance; in plur. = auxiliary troops.

if the name be of the *third* declension or plural number; otherwise in the *genitive*.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| (b) <i>From Rome.</i> | R o m ā. |
| <i>From Carthage.</i> | C a r t h ā g i n ē. |

Rule of Syntax.—The place *whence* is put in the *ablative*.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| (c) <i>To Rome.</i> | R ō m ā m. |
| <i>To Athens.</i> | A t h ē n ā s. |

Rule of Syntax.—The place *whither* is put in the *accusative* if it be a town or small island.

Rem. With the names of countries or large islands, the prep. *in* or *ad* is employed: *to Italy*, in *Itāliam*; *to Egypt*, ad *Ægyptum*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (d) <i>The soldiers, having been defeated, took to flight.</i>
(<i>Lat.</i> The soldiers, <i>defeated</i> , threw themselves into flight.) | Milītēs, pulsī, in fūgam sē conjēcērunt. |
| (e) <i>The chief, when he was expelled from his country, fled to Rome.</i> | Princeps, patriā expulsūs, Rōmam fūgit. |
| (f) <i>As large a number as possible.</i> | Quam maximus nūmērus. |
| (g) <i>A sudden occurrence.</i> | Rēpentinā rēs. |

(454.) *Translate into English.*

Nostrī (*our men*), rēpentinā rē (55, a) perturbātī, armā arripiunt.—Auxiliā perturbātā, in fūgam sē conjēcērunt.—Milītes hostes fūgātōs in flūmen compulērunt.—Helvētii, hīs rēbus adductī, lēgātōs ad Cēsārem dē dēditionē mittunt.—Gallī, hīs rēbus adductī, et auctōritatē Orgetorigis permōtī, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numērum coēmērunt.—Princīpēs, adventū Romanōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Cēsārem dē dēditionē mittunt.—Aristides, patriā expulsūs, Lācēdæmōnem fūgit.—Diōnysius, Sýracūsīs expulsūs, Cōrinthī pūeros dōcēbat.—Princīpes, oppidō expulsī, Rōmam (453, c) vērērunt.—Lēgātus, rēpentina rē perturbātus, centūriōnes convocat.

(455.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Helvetians, prevailed upon by the influence of Cæsar, led (their) army across the Rhine.—The chiefs, induced by

these considerations (= things), give hostages and an immense sum-of-money to the lieutenant.—Pompey, *when he had been defeated* (= defeated, 453, d) at Pharsalus, fled to Alexandria—Jugurtha, *when he was expelled from Africa*, came to Rome—The soldiers, *alarmed* by the sudden occurrence (453, g). take to flight (453, d).—For (enim) Pompey, *although he had been defeated* (= defeated) (in) no (nullō) battle, departed-out-of Italy.—Our (men) drove on the *alarmed* and *discomfited* enemy into the River Rhine.—The Helvetians, *induced* by these considerations (= things), bought-up as large a number as possible (453, f) of horses and beasts-of-burden.—The orator, *having-been-expelled-from* Athens, taught rhetoric at Carthage (453, a, R.).—The general, *induced* by these considerations, gave great rewards to the soldiers.—Orgetorix, *stimulated* by a strong-desire of royal-power, made a conspiracy of the nobility.

LESSON LXXIV.

Participles.—Ablative Absolute.

[THE ablative absolute is a very important part of Latin construction, and should be thoroughly learned.]

(456.) The participle is used in the *ablative with a noun*, when it is independent of the subject and object of the sentence.

(a) <i>When Tarquin was reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy.</i>	Pythāgōras, Tarquīnio regnante, in Itāliam vēnit.
---	---

Here *Tarquin* is independent of *Pythagoras*, the subject of the sentence.

(457.) The want of a perfect active participle in Latin is frequently supplied by the *ablative absolute* with a passive participle.

(b) <i>Labienus, having taken possession of the mountain, was waiting for our men.</i>	Lābiēnus, montē occūpatō, nostrōs expectābat.
--	---

Here it would be impossible to say *Labiēnus, occupatus mentem*, as *occupatus* is passive, not active.

(458.) A noun may be put in the ablative absolute with another noun *without* a participle.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) <i>In the prætorship of Cæsar.</i>
(b) <i>In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.</i> | Cæsāre prætorē (= Cæsar being prætor).
M. Messālā et M. Pisōnē consūlibus (= Messala and Piso being consuls). |
|---|--|

[This construction is used mostly to designate the *time* of an event.]

EXERCISE.

 (459.) *Vocabulary.*

To avail, *vālērē* (vālū-).

Tiberius, *Tībērius* (ī).

To die, *mōriri* and *mōri* (mortū), *dep.*

A pleading, *dictio*, (dictiōn) *is* (333).

Catiline, *Cātilinā*, æ.

Christ, *Christūs*, ī.

To finish, *perficere* (per+facere, perfēc-, perfect-); also, *conficere* (fēc-, fect-).

To reign, *regnāre* (āv-, at-).

Night, *nox*, (noct) *is* (294).

Territories, *fines* (pl. of *finis*, 300).

 (460.) *Translate into English.*

Nihil præceptā vālent, nisi adjuvante nātūrā (456, a).—*Deō jūvante, facilis est labor.*—*Tībērio regnante, Christus mortuus est.*—*Concilio dīmisso, principes ad Cæsarem revertērunt.*—*Diē constitūtā causæ dictionis, Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum millia decem, undique coegit.*—*Cæsar, opere perfecto, præsidia disposuit.*—*Cæsar, hostibus pulsīs* (457, b) *in finēs Æduorum pervēnit.*—*Cæsar, duobus bellis confectis, in hibernā exercitum duxit.*—*Bellō confectō, principēs civitātum ad Cæsārem, grātulātum* (379), *convēnērunt.*—*Cātilinā, Cicerōnē consūlē* (458), *conjūratiōnem fēcit.*—*Nātūrā dūcē, nunquam errabimūs.*—*Orgetorix, Marcō Messālā et Marcō Pisōnē consūlibus, conjūratiōnem nobilitātis fēcit.*

 (461.) *Translate into Latin.*

Our precepts will avail, *when nature assists* (= *nature assisting*).—*When the sun rises* (= *the sun rising*), the night flees.—*When the council was dismissed* (= *the council being dismissed*), the chiefs began to beseech Cæsar.—*When the council was dismissed*, Cæsar called the lieutenants to himself.

Cæsar, when the work was finished (= the work being finished), fortified the towers.—*Cæsar, having defeated Pompey* (= Pompey being defeated), returned to Rome.—*Cæsar, having finished the war*, led-back his army into the territories of the *Æduans*.—*In the consulship of Cicero*, Catiline was expelled from Rome.—*When God assists* (= God assisting), it is not difficult to labour.—*With God for our guide* (= God leader), we shall never err.

LESSON LXXV.

Ablative Absolute, continued.

EXERCISE.

(462.) *Vocabulary.*

To abstain from, abstinēre (abstīnū, abstent-, abs+stēnērē), with abl.

A plan, purpose, consilium, i (not concilium).

To harass, lacerate (iv-, it-, 406, III., b).

From higher ground, ē locō sup̄eriōrē.

A dart, pilum, i.

Phalanx, phalanx, (phalang) is (293).

To hinder, prohibere (hibū, hibēt-, pro+hībēre).

Cnæus Pompey, Cnæus Pompēiūs.

Of one's own accord, ultrō (adv.).

To change, commūtāre (av-, at-)

To be born, nasci (nātus), dep.

Senate-house, cūria, æ.

Augustus, Augustus, i.

(463.) *Translate into English.*

Lābiēnus, montē occīpāto, nostrōs expectābat, praeliōque abstīnēbat.—Barbārī, consilio commūtātō, nostrōs lacerare cōpērunt.—Milites, ē locō sup̄eriōre pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfregērunt (416, b).—Cognitō Cæsāris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātos ad eum mittit.—Cnēō Pompeiō et Marcō Crassō consūlibus, Germanī flūmen Rhenum transivērunt.—Nullo hoste prohibente, Crassus legiōnem in Helvētiōs perduxit, ibique hiemāvit.—His rebus cognitīs, imp̄rātor ipsē ad exercitum contendit.—Hāc audītā pugnā, magna pars Aquitaniæ obsides ultrō misit.—Belgæ, omnibus vicīs oppidisque incensis, ad castrā Cæsāris contendērunt.—Augustō regnante, Christus nātus est

(464.) *Translate into Latin.*

The barbarians, *having changed their plan* (= plan being changed), made an attack upon our men.—The soldiers, *having-broken-through the phalanx*, began to harass the enemy.—The Belgians, *having heard of this battle*, sent ambassadors to Cæsar.—The soldiers, *having taken-possession-of the mountain*, easily put the enemy to flight (391, 3).—Cicero, *when he knew of the conspiracy*, went to the Senate-house.—*As no enemy hindered* (= no enemy hindering), the lieutenant led the army across the Rhine.—*When this battle was heard (of)*, the Belgians, of-their-own-accord, sent hostages and ambassadors to Cæsar.—*In the consulship of Cicero and Antony*, Augustus was born.

§ 10.

INFINITIVE.—(LXXVI.—LXXIX.)

LESSON LXXVI.

Infinitive Forms.

(465.) THE infinitive expresses action as complete or incomplete, but without reference to person or time; *e. g.*,

ACTIVE.

Action *Incomplete*, { to love, or to be loving, loving,
 (Inf. Pres. Act.) { ām-āre.
 Action *Completed*, { to have loved,
 (Inf. Perf. Act.) { āmāv-issē.

PASSIVE.

Action *Incomplete*, { to be loved,
 (Inf. Pres. Pass.) { ām-ārī.
 Action *Completed*, { to have been loved,
 (Inf. Perf. Pass.) { āmātūs, ā, ūm, esse or fuisse.

[*Rem.* The names *present* and *perfect* do not distinguish properly the two forms of the infinitive, but, as they are in universal use, we have to adopt them. The student must remember that the *present* expresses action incomplete, and the *perfect* action complete; but that the *time* of the action must depend upon the verb with which the infinitive is connected in the sentence.]

(466.)

FORMS OF THE INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
1. ām-ārē.	ām-ārī.	āmāv-	āmātūs, ā, ūm,
2. mōn-ērē.	mōn-ērī.	mōnū-	mōnītūs, ā, ūm,
3. rēg-ērē.	rēg-i.	rex-	rectūs, ā, ūm,
4. aud-irē.	aud-irī.	audiv-	audītūs, ā, ūm,
		issē.	essē (or fuisse).

Rem. Observe that *perf. inf. act.* simply adds the ending -issē to the *perf. stem* of the verb; and *perf. inf. pass.* is formed by the *perf. pass. part.* of the verb, combined with *essē* (sometimes *fuisse*).

EXERCISE.

(467.) *Vocabulary.**To lay waste*, vastāre (āv-, at-).*Ought*, debēre (dēbu-, dēbit-).*To be vacant*, vācāre (intransit.).*I am able*, possum; *I was able*, pōtai.*Peace*, pax, (pāc) is (293).*A very few*, perpauci, æ, a.*Evil deed*, malēficium, i.*To break through*, perrumpere (per rāp-, perrupt-).(468.) *Examples.*(a) *I wish to learn.**The enemy began to cross the river.*

Cūpio discere.

Hostes flūmen transire cōperunt.

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used, as in English, to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by many words.

☞ Such words are, *to wish, to be able, ought, to be accustomed, to hasten, to determine*, &c.; also, the adjectives *dignus, indignus, audax*, &c.

(b) *The Helvetians intend.*(c) *Sometimes by day, oftener by night.*(d) *To keep-off-from the road.*(e) *In sight of.*

Helvētiis est in ānimō (= it is in mind to the Helvetians).

Nonnunquā interdiū, sæpius noctū.

Itinērē prōhibere (153, a).

In conspectū.

(469.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar in Galliā hiēmāre constituit.—Ædui se suaque ab Helvētiis dēfendere non pōtuerunt.—Agri vastāri non debent.—Hostes per mūnitiones perrumpere cōnāti sunt.

—Agri Suēvorum vācāre dicuntur.—Milites incōlas expellere non potuerunt.—Multitudo puērorum mūliērumque fūgere coepit.—Helvētīi maximum nūmērū jūmentōrum et carrōrum cōmēre constituerunt.—Germāni cōpias suas Rhēnum transducere cōnāti sunt.—Helvētīi cum proximis civitatibus pācem et amicitiam confirmāre constituerunt.

(470.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Place the infinitive before the verb on which it depends.]

Our towns ought not to-be-taken-by-storm.—In sight of our army, the fields ought not to be laid-waste.—The enemy endeavoured sometimes-during-the-day, oftener by-night, to burst-

through the fortifications.—The Æduans were not able to expel the enemy from (their) territories (153, a). On one side,* the lands are said to be vacant.—The boys and the women began to fly-in-every-direction (passim, adv).—The Helvetians intend to make (their) way through our province.—A very few are able to keep-off the Helvetians from the road.—The Helvetians ought to cross-over without any (ullo) evil-deed.—The remaining multitude of boys and women began to fly in-every-direction.

LESSON LXXVII.

Accusative with Infinitive.

(471.) VERBS signifying *to know, to see, to feel, to think, to say*, with some others, have frequently a sentence depending on them, the subject of which is in the *accusative*, and the verb in the *infinitive*.

<i>He saw that war was preparing on all sides.</i>		Undique bellum pārārī vīdēbat.
--	--	--------------------------------

Here bellum, the subject, is accusative before the infinitive parari, after the verb videbat, he saw.

(472.) Many dependent sentences which are introduced in English by the conjunction *that*, are expressed in Latin by the *accusative* and *infinitive*. To translate such sentences into Latin, observe the following method :

1. Omit the word *that*.
2. Change the nominative following *that* into the Latin accusative.
3. Change the English verb into the Latin infinitive.

The messenger says <i>that the horsemen are hurling darts.</i>		Nuntius dicit, ēquītes telā conjicere.
--	--	--

(473.) If the predicate of the sentence containing the accusative and infinitive be an adjective, it must agree with the accusative subject in gender, number, and case.

* Una ex partē.

He knows <i>that Cicero is eloquent.</i>	Scit Cicerōnem esse eloquentem.
I perceive <i>that the water is cold.</i>	Sentio aquam frigidam esse.

EXERCISE.

(474.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To think</i> , existimāre (av-, at-).	<i>To favour</i> , favēre (fav-, faut-, 395, V.), (governs <i>dat.</i>).
<i>To encamp</i> , considēre (consēd-, consess-, con+sidēre).	<i>While</i> , dūm (adv.).
<i>To know</i> , scire (sciv-, scit-).	<i>To lose</i> , amittēre (a+mittere, 401, 3, b).
<i>Stone</i> , lāpis, (lāpid) is (m.).	
<i>Nearer</i> , prōpius (adv., 376).	

(475.) *Examples.*

(a) The messenger <i>says that the horsemen are hurling darts.</i>	Nuntius dicit equites telā conjicere.
(b) The messenger <i>said that the horsemen were hurling darts.</i>	Nuntius dixit equites telā conjicere.
(c) The messenger <i>said that the horsemen had hurled darts.</i>	Nuntius dixit equites telā conjecisse.
(d) <i>Word is brought to Cæsar.</i>	Cæsari nuntiātum est (=it is told to Cæsar).
(e) <i>To have about himself.</i>	Circumsē habere.

(476.) *Translate into English.*

Helvētii existimant, Rōmānos discēdere.—Explōrātōr dixit, hostes consēdisse.—Cæsar scit, Dumnōrigem favēre Helvētiis.—Helvētii dīcunt, se omnem sēnātum amīsisse.—Cæsari nuntiātum est, milītes magnitudinem sylvārum timēre.—Nuntius dixit, equites telā conjicere.—Galba certior factus est, Gallos omnes discessisse.—Explōrātōres dicunt, oppīdum ab hostibus tēneri.—Dum hæc in collōquio gēruntur, Cæsari nuntiātum est, equites Ariovisti prōpius accēdere, et lāpides telaque in nostros conjicere.

[Be careful, in translating the following English into Latin, to write first the leading sentence, and after it the accusative and the infinitive, observing the rules in (472), and following the order of words in the examples given above.]

(477.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar knows that *this (thing) is true* (473).—The scouts say that *the horsemen of Ariovistus are approaching* (475, a).—The ambassadors said that *the Helvetians had lost* all their cavalry and all their senate.—Word was brought to Cæsar that *the horsemen of Ariovistus were hurling stones* against (In, with accus.) our (men).—Word-was-brought to Cæsar that *Ariovistus had-departed* from the camp.—Cæsar was informed by the scouts that *the enemy had encamped* under (s ū b, with abl.) the mountain.—The lieutenant says that *the mountain is held* by the enemy.—The general thinks that *our plans are told* to the enemy.—Word was brought to the general that *all the Gauls had departed* by night.—The chiefs say that *Divitiacus* always has a great number of horse-soldiers about himself.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Accusative with Infinitive.—Perfect Infinitive Passive.

(478.) It has been stated (466, R.) that the perfect infinitive passive is formed by the perfect participle passive, combined with *esse* (sometimes *fuisse*).

When the accusative is used with this infinitive, the participle must agree with the accusative in *gender, number, and case*; e. g.,

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) <i>The messenger says that the Æduans have been conquered.</i> | Nuntius dicit, Æduos victos esse. |
| (b) <i>Ariovistus said that all the forces had been routed in one battle.</i> | Ariovistus dixit, omnes cōpias ūno prælio fūsas esse. |
| (c) <i>The horsemen brought-back-word that the town had been taken-by-storm.</i> | Equites rēnuntiāverunt, oppidum expugnātum esse. |

 Observe that in (a) the part. *victos* agrees with the accus. *Æduos*; in (b), *fūsas* with *cōpias*; in (c), *expugnātum* with *oppidum*.

EXERCISE.

(479.) *Vocabulary.**To find-out, rēpērire* (427, V.).*To frighten completely, perterrere*
(perterru-, perterrīt-, per + ter-
rere).*Tributary, stipendiārius*, ā, ūm.*To bring back word, rēnuntiāre* (av-,
āt-).*To rout, fundere* (fūd-, fūs-, 416, a).*To overcome, sup̄erare* (āv-, āt-).*Bond, chain, vinculum*, l.*To hold in memory, to remember,*
*mēmōriā tēnere.**To put (or cast) in chains, in vincū-*
la cōjicere.(480.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar rēpēriēbat īnītiū fūgæ a Dumnōrige factū esse.
—Imp̄rātor dixit, ēquitātū esse perterrītū.—Cæsar
mēmōriā tēnēbat, L. Cassium consulem occisū esse ab
Helvetiis.—Ariōvistus dicit, Æduos sibi (54), stipendiārios
esse factos.—Cæsar certior factus est, lēgātōs in vincula
conjectos esse.—Ēquitēs rēnuntiāvērunt, castra esse
mūnita.—Dixit bella gesta esse.—Rēpēriēbat etiā Cæ-
sar, īnītiū fūgæ a Dumnōrige atque ejus ēquitibus factū
esse; eorumque fūgā (55, a) rēliqūm ēquitātū perter-
ritū esse.—Ariōvistus dixit omnes Gallorum cōpias ūno
a sē prælio (55, a), fūsas ac sup̄eratas esse.

(481.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar found-out that the cavalry had been completely-fright-
ened by the flight of Dumnorix.—The Æduans say that they
(sē) have been routed by the Germans.—Cæsar remembered
(= held in memory) that the consul's army had been defeated
by the Helvetians.—Cæsar remembered that the consul had
been slain, and his (ejus) army sent under the yoke (323, N.).
—Cæsar was informed by the chiefs that hostages had been
given.—The lieutenant said that the ambassador had been cast
into chains.—Ariovistus said that all the forces had been over-
come by himself.—Ariovistus said that the Gauls had been
overcome by himself in one battle.—The Æduans say that they
(sē) have been made tributary to Ariovistus (dat.).

LESSON LXXIX.

Infinitive Future Active and Passive.

(482.) By the combination of the *future participle active* with *essē* (or *fuissē*), an *infinitive future active* is formed; *e. g.*,

āmātūrūs, ā, ūm, *essē*, *to be about to love, to intend loving.*

āmātūrūs, ā, ūm, *fūissē*, { *to have been about to love, to have intended loving.*

(483.) Finally, by combining the *supine* with the verb *īrī*,* we form the *infinitive future passive*; *e. g.*,

āmātūm *īrī*, *to be about to be loved.*

doctūm *īrī*, *to be about to be taught.*

Rem. 1. This form, being derived from the *supine*, is applied alike to nouns of all genders and of both numbers.

2. As there is no *future infinitive* in English, we must translate the Latin *future infinitive* by a periphrasis, as above.

EXERCISE.

(484.) *Vocabulary.*

To persuade, persuādere (per+sua-dere, suās-, suās-); governs *dat.*

To refrain, tempērare (āv-, āt-, followed by āb with *abl.*).

To neglect, nēgligere (nēglex-, nēglect-, nēc+lēgere).

To compel, cōgere (cōg-, coact-, cōn+āgere).

To restore, reddere (reddid-, reddīt-, rē+dāre, 411, c).

Unfriendly, inimicus, ā, ūm (in+amicus).

To demand-back, rēpētēre (rēpētiv-, rēpētīt-, rē+pētēre).

To refuse, rēcūsare (āv-, āt-).

(484, a.) *Example.*

The general said that he would come with the tenth legion alone.

Impērātor dixit sē cūm solā dēcīmā lēgione ventūrum.

Rem. The *essē* in the future infinitive is frequently omitted; *e. g.*, in the above, *ventūrum*.

* *īrī* is the infinitive passive form of the verb *īrē*, *to go*. It is not in use, except in combination as above.

(485.) *Translate into English.*

Future Infinitive Active.

Dumnōrix existimat sē regnum obtentūrum esse.—
 Helvētīi existimābant sē finitīmis (*dat.*) persuāsūros.—
 Cēsār existimābat, finitīmos tempēratūros ab injuriā.—
 Cēsār dicit, se Æduorum injūrias non neglectūrum.—
 Helvētīi existimabant, sē Æduos vī (301) coactūros.
 —Ariōvistus dixit, Æduis (54) sē obsīdes redditūrum
 esse.—Cēsār dicit sē, proximā noctē (118, II., c), de quartā
 vigiliā, castrā mōtūrum.—Impērātor, hōmīnes inimicō ānimō
 (428, a) tempēratūros ab injuriā et mālēficio, non existī-
 mabat.

(486.) *Translate into Latin.*

Future Infinitive Active.

Cæsar said that he would move his camp.—Dumnorix thought
 that he would hold the military-command of his own state.—
 The general says that he is about to demand back the host-
 ages.—The Æduans say that they are about to implore assist-
 ance from (a) the Roman people.—Dumnorix assures (them)
 that he is about to seize the royal power with his own (suō)
 army.—Ariovistus said that he would not restore the hostages.
 —Cæsar did not think that the allies would refrain from injury
 —Cæsar thought that he would compel the Germans by force.
 —Ariovistus said that he would refuse the friendship of the
 Roman people.

§ 11.

THE GERUND.

LESSON LXXX.

(487.) (a) The *gerund* expresses the action of the verb under the form of a noun of the second declension, in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative* cases (ī, ō, ū m, ō).

(b) The *gerund-stem* is formed by adding to the verb-stem,

In the 1st conjugation,	-and;	e. g.,	ām-and-.
" 2d "	-end;	e. g.,	mōn-end-.
" 3d "	-end;	e. g.,	rēg-end-.
" 4th "	-iend;*	e. g.,	aud-iend-.

(c) The gerund of any case is formed by annexing the case-ending to the gerund-stem; e. g., *gen.*, āmand-ī; *dat.*, āmand-ō; *acc.*, āmand-um; *abl.*, āmand-ō.

(488.) As the infinitive is used as a verbal noun in the *nominative* and *accusative* cases, so the *gerund* is used in the remaining cases; e. g.,

Nom.	Scribērē,	<i>writing.</i>
Gen.	Scribendī,	<i>of writing.</i>
Dat.	Scribendō,	<i>to or for writing.</i>
Acc.	{ Scribērē, Scribendūm, }	<i>writing.</i>
Abl.	Scribendō,	<i>with writing.</i>

(489.) The rules for the use of the cases of nouns apply also to the cases of the infinitive and gerund; e. g.,

Nom.	<i>Writing is useful,</i>	scribēre est ūtile.
Gen.	<i>The art of writing is useful,</i>	{ ars scribendi est ūtilis.

* Also in the *io* verbs (199); e. g., cāp-io, cāp-iendī.

Dat.	<i>Paper is useful for writing,</i>	{ charta scribendō est utilis.
Acc.	{ <i>I learn writing,</i> <i>I learn during writing,</i>	{ scribēre disco. inter scribendum disco.
Abl.	<i>We learn by writing,</i>	scribendō discimus.

Rem. With a preposition, the *accusative gerund* must be used, and not the infinitive ; ad (inter, ob) scribendum, not ad (inter, ob) scribēre.

(490.) The gerund governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived ; *e. g.*,

<i>The art of training boys is difficult.</i>		Ars puerōs edūcandi difficilis est.
---	--	--

EXERCISE.

(491.) Vocabulary.

To make war, bellare (av-, at-).
To plunder, to obtain-booty, prædari
 (prædat-), dep.
Wearied, defessus, æ, um.
Sufficiently, sātis (adv.).
To think, cogitare.
Opportunity, time for, spātium, i.

To deliberate, deliberare (av-, at-).
To take, sūmere (sumps-, sumpt-).
Agriculture, agricultūra, æ.
Desire, stūdium, i.
Life, age, ætas, (ætat) is (293).
Mind, mens, (ment) is (355, II., 1.)

(492.) Examples.

(a) <i>Time was given for</i> (= opportunity was given of) <i>taking-up arms.</i>		Spātium armā cāpiendi dātum est.
(b) <i>For the sake of collect- ing-corn.</i>		Frūmentandi causā (ab- lat.).

(493.) Translate into English.

Spes prædandi hōmīnes ab agricultūrā revōcābat.—Spa-
tium defessis ex pugnā excedendi nōn dātum est.—Brève
tempus ætātis sātis est longum ad bonē beātēque vivendum.
—Hōminis mens discendō alitur.—Pars equitātis, præ-
dandi causā, missa est.—Nox finem oppugnandi fēcit.—
Magna pars equitātis, frūmentandi causā, missa erat.—
Cognōverat enim Cæsar, magnam partem equitātis, prædandi
frūmentandique causā, trans Rhēnum missam fuisse (471).

—Impērātor diem ad dēlibērandum sūmit. —Impērātor dixit, sē diem ad dēlibērandum sumptūrum (484, a). —Spes prædandī, stūdiūquē bellandī incōlas ab āgricul-tūrā et lābōre rēvocābat. —Dōcendō dōcēmur.

(494.) *Translate into Latin.*

The desire of *plundering* and *making-war* has recalled the farmers from (their) fields. —Time for (492, a) *hurling* the darts was not given to the soldiers. —Time for (of) *fighting* was not given to the horsemen. —The horsemen were sent into the territories of the Æduans for the sake of *collecting-corn*. —The mind of man is nourished by *thinking*. —Time for *depart-ing-out-of* the town was not given to the wearied citizens. —The citizens ask time for (of) *deliberating*. —Wisdom is the art of *living* well. —Cæsar recalled the tenth legion into Gaul, for-the-sake-of *wintering*. —We learn by *teaching*. —Opportunity of *attacking* the town was not given to the soldiers, though they desired it (= desiring it).

§ 12.

THE GERUNDIVE, OR VERBAL ADJECTIVE IN DŪS, DĀ, DŪM.

(495.) (a) THE gerundive expresses the action of the verb (generally with the additional idea of *necessity* or *continuance*) under the form of an adjective of the *first class* (76).

(b) The gerundive-stem is precisely the same as the gerund-stem. The cases are formed by adding the endings of the adjective; *e. g.*,

N. āmand-ūs, ā, ūm.

G. āmand-i, æ, i, &c.,

and so through all cases and both numbers.

LESSON LXXXI.

The Gerundive used instead of the Gerund.

(496.) THE gerundive is used (to express continued action) as a verbal adjective, *agreeing* with the noun, instead of the gerund *governing* the noun; *e. g.*,

Gen. *Of writing a letter.*

Scribendæ epistolæ, instead of scribendi epistolam.

Dat. *To or for writing letters.*

Scribendis epistolis, instead of scribendo epistolas.

Acc. *To write a letter.*

Ad scribendam epistolam, instead of ad scribendum epistolam.

Abl. *By writing a letter.*

Scribendā epistolā, instead of scribendo epistolam.

Rem. The gerundive *must* be used for the *dative* or *accusative* of the gerund when it has an active government. It *may* be used for it in any other case, unless the object of the gerund is a neuter adjective or pronoun; e. g., *of learning the true* = *vēra discendi*, not *verorum discendorum*; *of hearing this*, *hoc audiendi*, not *hujus audiendi*.

EXERCISE.

(497.) *Vocabulary.*

To choose, *dēligere* (*dēlēg*-, *dēlect*-, *dē*+*lēgere*).

To pursue, *consecūti* (*consecūt*), *dep.*

To fail, to be insufficient, *dēficere* (*dēfēc*-, *dēfect*-, *dē*+*fācere*).

To form a design, *consilium cāpere* (*io*).

Space-of-two-years, *biennium*, *i.*

To reckon, *decem, dūcere* (*dux*-, *duct*-).

To discern, *cernere* (406, Cl. III., a).

Care, *cūra*, *æ*.

To apply, *adhibere* (*adhībē*-, *adhīb*-).

Negligent, *negligens*, (*negligent*) *is* (107).

(498.) *Examples.*

(a) *The Helvetians reckoned that the space-of-two-years was enough for themselves.*

Helvētii biennium sibi sātis esse duxerunt.

(b) *The space of three-days.*

Trīdūi spātium.

(c) *The house was given to the robbers to plunder.*

Dōmus latrōnibus dirīpiendā dātā est.

The farmer gave his house to the robbers to plunder.

Āgricolā dōmum latrōnibus dirīpiendam dedit.

After verbs of *giving*, *going*, *sending*, *receiving*, and the like, the gerundive expresses a *purpose* or *object*.

(d) *For completing (= finishing) these things.*

Ād eas res conficiendās.

(499.) *Translate into English.*

Urbs ā dūce mīlitibus dirīpienda dātā est.—Urbem dux mīlitibus dirīpiendam dedit.—Subitō Galli consilium belli gērendi cēperunt.—Sūbitō Galli lēgiōnis oppugnandæ consilium cēperant.—Ad eas res conficiendas Orgētorix dēligitur.—Helvētii, ad eas res conficiendas, biennium sibi sātis esse duxerunt.—Crassus lēgātos tribunosque militum in finitīmas civitatēs frūmentī pētendī causā dirēxit.—Plātō Rōmam (453, c) ad cognoscendas Numæ lēge. contendit.—In vōluptāte spernendā virtūs maximē cernīta.

in ōquis pārāndis, adhībent cūram, sed in āmicis dēligēdis neglīgētes sūt.—Milites, ad urbem expugnandam, trīdūi spātium sibi sātis esse duxērunt.

(500.) *Translate into Latin.*

For completing these things (498, *d*) Cæsar gave to the Gauls the space of three days.—The Æduans had suddenly formed the design of besieging the town.—Crassus is chosen for carrying-on the war (498, *d*).—Pythagoras went to Sparta (453, *c*) to learn (498, *ē*) the laws of Lycurgus.—Cæsar reckoned that the space of two years was enough for himself, for overcoming the Gauls and finishing the war.—The general sent all the cavalry across the Rhine, for the sake of seeking corn.—Ariovistus hastened (contendēre), with all his forces, to attack the town (498, *ē*).—The Britons sent ambassadors to Cæsar, in-order-(ad)-to-see (498, *ē*) peace.

LESSON LXXXII.

The Gerundive used to express Necessity, &c.

THE GERUNDIVE AS SUBJECT.

(501.) (a) The gerundive in the nominative neuter (dūm) is used with esse to express necessity or duty. If the person be expressed, it must be put in the dative.

One must write.

Scribendū est.

I must write.

Scribendū est mīhi.

ē Here the gerundive is the subject of the sentence (the duty of writing is to me).

(b) This neuter nominative may be combined with all the senses of esse; *e. g.*,

Scribendū est mīhi, *I must write.*

Scribendū erat mīhi, *I had to write.*

Scribendū erit, *I must write hereafter.*

&c.,

&c.

- (c) This neuter nominative may govern the case of its verb ;
e. g.*

We must help the citizens.

Civibus (dat.) subveniendum
est.

One must use reason.

Ratione utendum est.

THE GERUNDIVE AS PREDICATE.

(502.) The gerundive is also used with *esse*, in all cases and genders, as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun, to express necessity or worthiness ; e. g., *I am to be loved*, amandus sum ; *thou art to be loved*, amandus es, &c. The person, if specified, is put in the dative.

I must love Tullia (= Tullia is to be loved by me.)

Tullia mihi amanda est.

All things had to be done by Cæsar (= Cæsar had to do all things).

Omnia Cæsari erant agenda.

☛ Here the gerundive is the predicate.

EXERCISE.

(503.) Vocabulary.

Flag, vexillum, l.

To send for, arcessere (arcessiv., arcessit-).

To set-up, proponere (pro+ponere, posui., posui., 406, b).

To understand, perceive, intelligere (intellex-, intellect-).

To go-forward, procedere (pro+cedere, 401, 3, b).

To determine, statuere (statiui., statui-).

A little too far, paulo longius (adv.).

In vain, frustra.

To think, putare (av-, at-).

More widely, latius (adv., 376).

(504.) Examples.

(a) *Cæsar causes a bridge to be made (= takes care that a bridge should be made).*

Cæsar pontem faciendum
(esse) curat.

I must hear.

Mihi audiendum.

Est is often omitted with the gerundive, as in (a).

(b) *The centurions thought that nothing should be done rashly.*

Centuriones nihil temere
agendum (esse) existimabant.

* The accusative is hardly ever used after the neut. gerundive.

(505.) *Translate into English.*(1.) *Gerundive in the nominative neuter (dũm).*

Militibus de navibus erat desiliendum. — Militibus simul et de navibus (erat) desiliendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum.

(2.) *Gerundive as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun.*

Cæsari omnia uno tempore (118, II., c) erant agenda, vexillum proponendum; revocandi milites; qui paulo longius processerant arcessendi; acies instruenda; milites hortandi; signum dandum. — Prohibenda est ira. — Bellum nobis est suscipiendum. — Cæsar sibi latius distribuendum exercitum putat. — Imperator dicit, jam sibi legatos audiendos. — Cæsar ubi intellexit frustram tantum laborem sumi (471), statuit expectandam classem. — Cæsar pontem faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit.

(506.) *Translate into Latin.*(1.) *Gerundive in nominative, neuter (dũm).*

We must leap-down from the ships. — We must read. — You must hear. — You must fight for liberty (pro libertate). — All must hear; we must read. — With whom (quibuscum) must I fight? — We must leap down from the walls and fight with the horsemen.

(2.) *Gerundive as a verbal adjective.*

I must do all things at once (= all things must be done by me at one time). — You must give the signal. — We had to set up the flag. — Cæsar must send ambassadors. — The soldiers must fortify the camp. — The general must encourage the soldiers. — The Helvetians cause bridges to be made over the river. — Cæsar thought that the army must be led-over. — Cæsar thought that the army must be divided by him (sibi), and distributed more-widely. — The general says that he must wait-for the fleet. — Divitiacus says that this-thing (hoc) must be done by all the Gauls.

§ 13.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

LESSON LXXXIII.

507.) THE imperative mood expresses the action of the verb as a *command, wish, entreaty, &c.*; e. g., *Love thou! Hear thy parents.*

(508.) FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE.				
	2d Sing.	3d Sing.	2d Plur.	3d Plur.
ăm-	ă or ătō.	ătō.	ătē or ătētē.	ătō.
môn-	ē or ētō.	ētō.	ētē or ētētē.	ētō.
rēg-	ē or ȳtō.	ȳtō.	itē or ȳtētē.	ȳtō.
aud-	ī or ȳtō.	ȳtō.	itē or ȳtētē.	ȳtō.
PASSIVE.				
ăm-	ăre or ătōr.	ătōr.	ămăni or ămînōr.	antōr.
môn-	ērē or ătōr.	ătōr.	ămîni or ămînōr.	entōr.
rēg-	ērē or ȳtōr.	ȳtōr.	imîni or imînōr.	untōr.
aud-	irē or ȳtōr.	ȳtōr.	imîni or imînōr.	iuntōr.

10
10
Rem. 1. Observe that the 2d pers. sing. act. can be obtained from any verb by striking off rē from the infinitive; e. g., inf., ămăre; imper., ămă; and that the 2d pers. sing. pass. is the infinitive form precisely.

2. The longer forms of the 2d person are used especially in reference to future time; e. g., in laws, statutes, and the like.

3. The 10 verbs of 3d conj. take the imperative endings of the 4th in the 3d pers. plur.: thus, cāpiunto, let them take; cāpiuntor, let them be taken. Făcio has 2d pers. sing. făc.

EXERCISE.

(509.) Vocabulary.

[Deponents take, of course, the passive endings.]

Enmity, înmicită, ă.

To despise, contemnere (con+tem-
nere, tempa-, tempt-).

Fleeing, fugax, (fugac) Is (107).

To pursue, follow, persēqui (persē-
cūt-), dep.

Association, fellowship societas (atīa,
293).

<i>Frail, perishable, cādācūs, ā, ūm</i>	<i>Show, spēciēs, spēciei (117).</i>
<i>(from cādrē, to fall).</i>	<i>To trust, crēdēre (crēdīd-, crēdīt-,</i>
<i>To shun, avoid, vitārē (āv-, at-).</i>	<i>411, c); governs dat.</i>
<i>Judge, iudex, (iūdic) īs (306).</i>	<i>Admire, admirārī (at-), dep.</i>
<i>To revere, vērērārī (vērērāt-), dep.</i>	

(510.) *Examples.*

<i>(a) Do not hear.</i>	<i>Nē audī.</i>
<i>Do not trust appearance</i>	<i>Nē crēdē cōlōrī.</i>
<i>(colour).</i>	

Rule.—With imperatives, *nē* must be used for *not*.
(*Nōn* would be very bad Latin.)

<i>(b) Let the judge neither give</i>	<i>Judex prēmia nē dātō nēvō</i>
<i>nor take rewards.</i>	<i>capīto.</i>

Neither — nor = nē — nēvō.

<i>(c) Instead of parents =</i>	<i>Parentum locō (abl.)</i>
---------------------------------	-----------------------------

(511.) *Translate into English.*

Puerī (voc.), pārentēs ā mātē.—*Magistrī puerōs linguām Lātīnām dōcento.*—*Magnā vīs est in virtūtibus; ēās (150) excitā, sī fortē dormiunt.*—*Abstīnētōtē omnī injūriā (abl.) atque inimicitīis.*—*Impērā irā (147).*—*Nē persēquere omnia, quæ spēciem gloriæ hābent.*—*Hæc omnia, quæ hābent spēciem gloriæ contemnē: brevīā, fūgaciā, cādūcā existīmā.*—*Nē crēdītē omnibus.*—*Judīces prēmium nē cāpiunto, nēvō danto.*—*Vītā sōciētātem imprōbōrum.*—*Vērērārē Deum, vērērārē pārentes, et quōs pārentum locō (55, a) tibi (54) nātūrā dēdit.*—*Pueri præceptōres, ā quibus doctī sunt, ā manto et vērērāntōr.*

(512.) *Translate into Latin.*

Boys, revere (your) parents.—*Let the master teach the boys the Greek language.*—*Do not rouse-up (your) vices: rouse-up (your) virtues, if perchance they sleep.*—*Abstain ye from (abl.) all vices and enmities.*—*My son, rule (your) anger (dat., 147).*—*Do not admire all things which have the show of glory.*—*Do not ye fear death.*—*Do not trust to the show of glory.*—*Love those whom Nature has given to you in place of parents.*—*Do not seek the association of the wicked.*—*Neither take (cāpēre) nor give a reward.*—*Hear the wise and good*

§ 14.

SENTENCES.

[THE student should now be made to understand something of sentences. The following simple statements can readily be understood.]

(513.) (a) The sentence, "*the messenger fled*," is a *simple* sentence, as it contains but one subject and predicate.

(b) The sentence, "*the messenger, who saw me, fled*," is a *compound* sentence, as it contains *more* than one subject and predicate.

(c) In the last example, "*the messenger fled*" is called the **PRINCIPAL SENTENCE**; and "*who saw me*," the **SUBORDINATE** sentence.

(514.) The following are some of the classes of subordinate sentences :

(a) *The accusative with the infinitive* ; e. g., *Nuntius dixit, equites tela coniecerē* (The messenger said *that the* horsemen were hurling darts). Here *equites tela coniecerē* (*that the horsemen were hurling darts*) is the *subordinate* sentence ; *nuntius dixit*, the *principal* sentence.

(b) *Conjunctive sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by a conjunction or adverb of time ; e. g., *Cæsar, when he had crossed the river, drew up his army*. Here, *Cæsar drew up his army* is the *principal* sentence ; *when he had crossed the river*, the *subordinate* sentence.

(c) *Relative sentences* ; e. g., *Nuntius, qui missus est, dixit* (The messenger, who was sent, said). Here *nuntius dixit* is the *principal* sentence ; *qui missus est*, the *relative subordinate* sentence.

(d) *Interrogative sentences* (i. e.), such as are introduced by an interrogative word ; e. g., *Tell me what you are doing?* Here *what you are doing* is a *subordinate interrogative* sentence.

CONJUNCTIONS

LESSON CONTINUED

Comparison of Conjunctions

(515.) **Comparative** conjunctions connect two sentences together. They are:

And	Et
Neither nor	Nec, necque
So	Itaque, igitur, ergo, propterea
	Quia

Exercises

(516.) Variations

Only when, not only when	Sed quando, sed cum
As soon as	Quaeso
Forasmuch as	Quia
Not only when, but also	Non solum quando, sed etiam
To have a word equally	Verbum
And so	Et ita
To give larger or smaller	Magis, minus
length, day	Longius, brevius
Once and again, several	Saepe, iterum, iterum
times	Iterum
Since, as far as	Quia, quatenus
A word like a	Verbum, sicut

(517.) Examples

(a) *Darius equipped a fleet* *and placed her at Salamis*
Artaphernes.

(b) *Et* connects independent words and sentences, not joining word or sentence to another rather as an apposition. *Etiam* joins

* *Proutem* is inflected like *sum*, but *proutem* is *proutem* (not *proutem*, *proutem*)
 e.g., *proutem esse*, *proutem est*, *proutem erat*, *proutem erit*

joins *Datim* and *Artäphernem*; and *quē* joins the sentence "*placed over it*," &c., as an appendage to the *equipment* of the fleet.

- (b) *Fierce and barbarous men were coming into the province, and were hastening into Italy.* | *Hōmīnes fēri āc barbāri in prōvinciam vēniēbant atquē in Italiam contendēbant.*

(b) *Āc* is used before *consonants*, but not before *vowels* or *h*. *Atquē* may be used before either *vowels* or *consonants*.

- (c) *Cæsar both had indulged and was greatly confident in the tenth legion.* | *Dēcimæ lēgiōnī Cæsar ēt indulsērat ēt confidēbat maxīmē.*

(c) *Ēt* followed by *another ēt* means *both—and*.

- (d) (1) *Again and again.* | *Ētiām atquē ētiām.*
 (2) *And again.* | *Ēt ētiām.*
 (3) *Not only—but also.* | *Nōn sōlūm—sēd ētiām.*

(518.) *Translate into English.*

Orgētōrix ad iudicium omnēm suām familiam coegit, et omnes clientēs obarātōs quē eodēm (*adv.*) conduxit.—*Carthāgo* et *Cōrīnthūs* atquē *Numantia*, opulentissimæ quondām et vālidissimæ civitātes, delētæ sunt ā Rōmānis.—*Cæsār* finem prōpērandi (489) fācit, pontem quē ad flūmēn *Rhēnum* pōnit.—*Discipūli* et audiunt et āmant præceptōrēs.—*Rōmāni* nōn sōlūm itīnērū causā (135, II., R.) sēd ētiām possēssiōnīs, culminā montium occupāverunt.—*Nōn sōlūm* virēs (*plural of vis*) sēd ētiām telā nostris (*dat.*) deficiēbant.—*Hīs* rēbus *Dunmōrix* et suam rēm familiārem auxerat et facultātes ad largiendū magnās compārāverat.—*Hostes* et ē lōcō supēriore in nostros telā conjiciēbant et nonnulli intēr carrōs rōtas quē trāgūlās subjiciēbant, nostros quē vulnerābant.—*Contēpnuntūr* ii quī nēc sibi nēc alteri (194, R. 1) prōsunt.—*Nēc* meliōr vir fuit *Scipione* (360, c) quisquām, nēc clāriōr.—*Æduī* nēquē obsides rēpētīverunt nēquē auxiliū implōrāverunt.—*Sāpiētēm* nēquē paupertās nēquē mors nēquē vinculā terrent.—*Nīmius* somnūs nēquē corpōri nēquē ānīmō (*dat.*, 516) prodest.—*Rōgo* tē, et oro; etiam atquē etiam tē rōgo.—*Æduī* sēmēl atquē itērū cūm *Germānis* contendērant.—*Mīlites* ex castris ērūpērunt (ērumpere) atquē omnem spēm sālūtis in virtūtē pōsuērunt.

LESSON LXXXV.

Disjunctive and Adversative Conjunctions.

(519.) I. THE disjunctive conjunctions (meaning *or*) are *aut*, *vël*, *vě*, and *sivě* or *seu*.

Rem. 1. *Aut* indicates a real difference of object; *e. g.*,

Here, soldiers, we must conquer or die! | *Hic vincendū aut moriendū, milites!*

When *aut* is used, but *one* of the conditions can be fulfilled, as in the above example.

Rem. 2. *Vël* (derived from *vellē*) means *if you wish*, or *rather*. (Hence it is used for *even*.)

The nobles can either corrupt or correct the morals of the state (i. e., they can do whichever they please). | *Viri nobiles vël corrumpere morē civitatis, vël corrigere possunt.*

Rem. 3. *Vě* is always affixed to another word; *duō*, *trēsve* = *two or three*.

Rem. 4. These conjunctions are frequently repeated.

<i>Either—or,</i>	{	<i>aut—aut.</i>
		<i>vël—vël.</i>
		<i>sivě—sivě.</i>
<i>Whether—or,</i>		<i>seu—seu.</i>

(520.) II. The adversative conjunctions express opposition (*but*).

The most important are,

Āt, *atquī*, *autēm*, *cāterūm*, *sēd*, *vērūm* (*but*).

Tāmēn (*however*); *vērō* (*truly*).

EXERCISE.

(521.) *Vocabulary.*

To run up, *accurrere* (*accurr-* and *accūcurr-*, *accurs-*, *ad+currere*).

Very rich, *perdivēs*, (*divit*) *is* (*per+divēs*), 107.

Chance, *cāsūs*, *ūs*. *By chance*, *cāsū* (*abl.*).

Goodness, *bōnītās* (*ātīs*).

To pay up, *persolvere* (*solv-*, *sōlūt-*).

To suffer full punishment, *pōnās persolvere*.

Handsome, *formōsūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Eloquent, *fācundūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Ulysses, *Ulysses*, (*Ulyss*) *ia*.

To possess, possidēre (possēd-, poss-).
 Weeping, flētūs, ūs.

Effect, effectūs, ūs.

Sorrow, sadness, tristitiā, m.

Generally, plerumquē (adv.).

Joy, gaudiū, l.

Daily, quōtidiānūs, ā, ūm.

A living being, animans, (animant)
 is (107).

Motion, mōtūs, ūs.

Various, diversus, ā, ūm.

To swim, natārē (av-, āt-).

Sometimes, interdum.

(522.) Examples.

(a) Those are to be esteemed
 brave, not who do, but who
 ward off injury.

(b) Gyges was seen by no-
 body, but he himself saw
 all things.

Fortēs sunt hābendī, nōn quī
 faciunt, sēd quī prōpulsant
 injuriām.

Gygēs ā nullō vidēbātur, ipse
 autēm omniā vidēbāt.

(a) Sēd indicates a strong opposition; it always stands first in its clause, as in (a).

(b) Autēm expresses a weaker opposition than sēd. Autēm and vērō never stand first in a sentence, but always after one or more words.

(523.) Translate into English.

Nostrī cōlōritēr accurrērunt; āt Germāni fortīter impētum glādiōrum excēpērunt.—Āmīci rēgis duō trēs vē (519, R. 3) perdivites sunt.—Sivē cāsū (55, a) sivē consiliō deōrum immortalium, pōnās persolvērunt.—Nonnulli, sivē felicitāte (abl.) quādām, sivē bonitāte nātūræ, rectām vitæ sēcūti sunt viām.—Fortēs ēt magnānīmī sunt hābendī, nōn quī faciunt sēd quī prōpulsant injuriām.—Nōn formōsus erat, sēd erat facundus Ulyssēs.—Āvārus nōn possidēt divitiās (57, R.) sēd divitiās possident eūm.—Flētūs plerumquē est effectūs tristitiæ; interdum vērō etiam (even) gaudiū.—Helvēti fere quōtidiānis praeliis (55, a) cūm Germānis contendunt, quum aut suis finibus eōs prōhibent, aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.—Ānimantium mōtūs diversus est; vėl ambulānt et currunt, vėl volānt, vėl natant.—Corpūs mōritūr (dcp.), vērūm animūs nunquam mōriētūr.—Milites nostrī fortēs fuērunt, sēd āvāri

§ 16.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—(LXXXVI.—XCIL)

(524.) THE subjunctive mood expresses affirmation *doubtfully, indefinitely, or as conceived by the mind*; e. g., *I may write; I might write; I might have written; if I should write; if I had written.*

Rem.—The subjunctive has no future tense-form.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Subjunctive Present.

(525.) Forms of *ess ě (to be)* in subjunctive present.

Pres.	<i>sĭm,</i> <i>I may be.</i>	<i>sĭs,</i> <i>thou may be.</i>	<i>sĭt,</i> <i>he, she, it may be.</i>	<i>sĭmŭs,</i> <i>we may be.</i>	<i>sĭtis,</i> <i>ye may be.</i>	<i>sĭnt,</i> <i>they may be.</i>

(526.) Forms of regular verbs.

(a) The subjunctive present adds the person-endings
m, s, t, mus, tis, nt, for the *active*, and

r, ris or re, ĩur, mur, mini, ntur, for the *passive*,
to the verb-stem by means of the following connecting vowels, viz.,

		Active.	Passive.
1st conj.,	e; e. g.,	ĕm-ĕ-m,	am-ĕ-r.
2d conj.,	ĕa; e. g.,	mŏn-ĕa-m,	mŏn-ĕa-r.
3d conj.,	a; e. g.,	rĕg-ĕ-m,	rĕg-ĕ-r.
4th conj.,	ĭa; e. g.,	aud-ĭa-m,	aud-ĭa-r.

(b) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

ACTIVE.— <i>I may love, advise, rule, hear.</i>						
Stem.	Singular.			Plural.		
ĕm-	ĕm.	ĕs.	ĕt.	ĕmŭs.	ĕtis.	ĕnt.
mŏn-	ĕām.	ĕās.	ĕāt.	ĕamŭs.	ĕātis.	ĕant.
rĕg-	ĕm.	ĕs.	ĕt.	ĕmŭs.	ĕtis.	ĕnt.
aud-	ĭām.	ĭās.	ĭāt.	ĭamŭs.	ĭatis.	ĭant.
PASSIVE.— <i>I may be loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
Stem.	Singular.			Plural.		
ĕm-	ĕr.	ĕris or ĕrĕ.	ĕtŭr.	ĕmŭr.	ĕmĭnĭ.	ĕntŭr.
mŏn-	ĕār.	ĕāris or ārĕ.	ĕātŭr.	ĕāmŭr.	ĕāmĭnĭ.	ĕāntŭr.
rĕg-	ār.	āris or ārĕ.	ātŭr.	amŭr.	amĭnĭ.	antŭr.
aud-	ĭār.	ĭāris or ārĕ.	ĭātŭr.	ĭamŭr.	ĭamĭnĭ.	ĭantŭr.

EXERCISE.

(527.) Vocabulary.

Value, prētiūm, ī.
To obey, pārērē (pārū-); governs *dat.*
To despair, dēspērāre (āv-, āt-).
Otherwise, ālitēr (*adv.*).
To hinder, impēdire (iv-, it-).
Carefully, stūdiōsē (*adv.*).
To exercise, exercēre (exercū-, exercēt-).
To grieve, dōlēre (dōlā-, dōlit-).
Would that, ūtinam (*conj.*).
To fear, mētūre (mētū-).
Incredible, incrēdibilis, e (104).
Mind (*talent*), ingēnium, ī.

To be ignorant, ignōrāre (āv-, āt-).
To deny, nēgāre (āv-, āt-).
To know, noscērē (nōv-, nōt-).
To afford, prābēre (prābū-, prābūt-).
To make one's self a judge, sē iudicēm prābērē.
To apply, to employ, adhibērē (ū-, it-).
Cautious, cautūs, ā, ūm.
Rashly, tēmērē (*adv.*).
Ever, unquām (*adv.*).
Truly, obviously, prorsūs (*adv.*).
Finally, dēniquē (*adv.*).

(528.) Examples.

[The principal use of the subjunctive in Latin is in dependent sentences; but in this lesson we show its uses in *principal* sentences, in which it occurs only when something is said without *definiteness* or *certainty*.]

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) 1. <i>No sane man can doubt about the value of virtue.</i>
 2. <i>May I be safe!</i>
 3. <i>I hope you are well</i> (= may you be safe).
 4. <i>May I not be safe, if I write otherwise than I think.</i>
 5. <i>I hope my father is alive</i> (= would that my father may be alive).
 6. <i>I wish he would come.</i></p> | <p>Nemo s̄anus dē virtūtis prētiō dūbitēt.
 Sīm salvūs!
 Salvūs sis!
 Nē sīm salvūs, sī ālitēr scribo ac sentio.
 Ūtinam pater vivat.
 Ūtinam veniāt.</p> |
|---|---|

(a) The subjunctive present is used for the English *potential*, *may*, *can*, &c., and also to express a *wish*, when the thing wished is *possible*. A *negative* wish is expressed by *nē* prefixed, as in (4).

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>(b) 1. <i>Let us believe.</i>
 2. <i>Let us obey virtue.</i>
 3. <i>Do not despair.</i></p> | <p>Crēdāmūs.
 Virtūtī pāreāmus.
 Nē dēspēres.</p> |
|--|---|

(b) The subjunctive present is used, instead of the imperative, to soften a command. *Nē* is used for prohibition.

(c) <i>Who would not love virtue?</i>	<i>Quis virtutem nōn amet?</i>
<i>What can I do?</i>	<i>Quid faciam?</i>
<i>Who is ignorant?</i>	<i>Quis ignoret?</i>
<i>Who can doubt?</i>	<i>Quis dubitet?</i>

(c) The subjunctive present is used in *direct* questions when any doubt is implied. (In English, we generally use *can*, *will*, *would*, &c., in such questions.)

(529.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Use of subjunctive as *potential*, or to express a *wish* (the latter indicated by !).

Tempus veniat. — Salvus sis! amice. — Faveat fortuna! — Utinam hoc verum sit! — Diu vivas! — Nemo bonus de Providentia Dei dubitet. — Moriār, si aliter scribo assentio. — Utinam nemo te impediat! — Utinam domum meam veris amicis (55, a) impleam!

(b) Use of subjunctive as *imperative*.

Se quisque studiosē exerceat. — Naturam, optimam ducem, sequamur, eique pareamus. — Amemus patriam, pareamus senatui, consulamus bonis. — Suum quisque noscat ingenium, acremque se et bonorum et vitiorum suorum iudicem praebeat. — Ne ametis improbos. — Prudentiam adhibeamus. — Cautiorem adhibeamus prudentiam. — In rebus gravioribus cautiorem adhibeamus prudentiam, sed nec in levioribus temere unquam agamus. — Ne doleas.

(c) Use of subjunctive in *direct questions*.

Quis hoc credat? — Quis fabulas istas credat? — Quis improbos ac stultos diligat? — Quis eum diligat quem metuit? — Quis credat illud quod prorsus incredibile est? — Quis de virtutis pretio dubitet? — Quid faciamus? — Quis neget omnes levēs, omnes avaros, omnes denique improbos esse servos?

(530.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) No wise (man) can doubt concerning the benevolence of God. — My friends, I hope you are well (= may you be safe).

—I hope that (*utinam*) the commander is alive (= may live).—
I hope our friends may come!—May these things be true!—
May the citizens be wise.

(b) Let us not believe this.—Do not believe these fables.—
Let us exercise ourselves diligently.—Let us love our friends,
let us obey our parents, let us worship God.—Know your (own)
mind.—Let the soldiers take possession of the mountain.—Let
us not love the wicked.

(c) Who can say this?—Who can love a fool?—Who would
obey a wicked king?—What good (man) can doubt concerning
the value of virtue?—Who can deny that all avaricious men
are slaves?

LESSON LXXXVII.

Subjunctive Perfect.

(531.) Form of *esse* (*to be*) in subjunctive perfect.

<i>fuërim,</i> <i>I may have</i> <i>been.</i>	<i>fuëris,</i> <i>thou mayest</i> <i>have been.</i>	<i>fuërit,</i> <i>he, she, it</i> <i>may have</i> <i>been.</i>	<i>fuërimüs,</i> <i>we may have</i> <i>been.</i>	<i>fuëritis,</i> <i>ye may have</i> <i>been.</i>	<i>fuërint,</i> <i>they may</i> <i>have been.</i>
---	---	---	--	--	---

(532.) Forms of regular verbs.

1. The subjunctive perfect active adds the endings

ërim, ëris, ërit, ërimüs, ëritis, ërint,

to the indic. perf. stem of the verb; *e. g., ämäv-ërim, &c.*

2. The subjunctive perfect passive is formed by combining
the perfect participle with the subjunctive present of *esse*:
e. g., ämätüs sïm, &c.

[ Deponents, of course, are formed like passives.]

3. PARADIGM, SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT.

ACTIVE.— <i>I may have loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
<i>ämäv- mönü- rex- audiv-</i>	<i>ërim.</i>	<i>ëris.</i>	<i>ërit.</i>	<i>ërimüs.</i>	<i>ëritis.</i>	<i>ërint.</i>
PASSIVE.— <i>I may have been loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
Sing. { <i>ämätüs, ä, üm, mönitüs, ä, üm, rectüs, ä, üm, auditüs, ä, üm,</i>	{ <i>sïm. sis. sît.</i>		Plur. { <i>ämätî, æ, ä, mönitî, æ, ä, rectî, æ, ä, auditî, æ, ä,</i>	{ <i>sïmüs. sîtis. sint.</i>		

EXERCISE.

(533.) *Vocabulary.**Health, valetūdō, (valetudin) is (339).**So, thus, itā (adv.)**Kindness, pardon, vēniā, æ.**To take captive, cāpērē (io, cēp-, capt, 199).**Patience pātientia, æ.**To slay, cut to pieces, cādērē (ocid-, cæs-, 413, ).**It makes no difference, it matters not, nīhīl rēfert.*

 Form the subjunctive perfect active and passive of the following verbs :

*Absūm, to be absent (no passive).**Prōsūm, to profit (do.).**Dēsūm, to be wanting (do.).**Vōcērē, to call.**Confirmārē, to assert.**Dicērē, to say (dix-, dict-).**Tradērē, to assert, deliver (tradid-, tradit-).**Laudārē, to praise.**Vidērē, to see.**Invēnīre, to find (invēn-, invent-).**Scribērē, to write.**Fācērē (io-, fēc-, fact-), to do.**Lōquī (lōcūt-), to speak (dep.).**Lōsērē (censū-, cens-), to think.**Opprīmērē (press-, press-), to repress, crush.**Constituēre (stittū-, stitāt-), to place.**Oppugnārē, to assault.**Rēvōcārē, to recall, restore.*(534.) *Examples.*(a) *Do not do it.*| *Nē fēcērīs.*

(a) The subjunctive perfect (as well as the present) may be used in prohibitions, with *nē*, or *nīhīl*, instead of the imperative.

(b) *By your leave I would say.*| *Pācē tuā dixērīm; or, Vēniā tuā dixērīm.**Epicurus may have said.*| *Dixērīt Epicūrus.**Perchance some one may say.*| *Forsītān āliquis dixērīt.*

(b) The subjunctive perfect may be used with or without an adverb, to express a *supposed case* (that may be true).

(c) *I think I can assert this.*| *Hōc confirmāvērīm.**You will scarcely find a man of any nation.*| *Vix ullius gentis hōmīnem invēnērīs.*

(c) The subjunctive perfect (as well as present) is used to *soften an assertion*. (Such phrases as, *Probably I might, I think I can, I would, perhaps, &c.*, can be expressed in Latin by one word in the perfect subjunctive, as above.)

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| (d) (1) <i>Why do you laugh?</i> | Cūr rīdēs? |
| (2) Tell me <i>why you laugh.</i> | Dīc* mīhi cūr rīdeās. |
| (1) <i>Where have you been?</i> | Ūbī fuisti? |
| (2) I do not know <i>where you have been.</i> | Nescio ūbi fuēris? |

The sentences marked (1) are *direct* interrogative sentences, and take the indicative mood; those marked (2) are *indirect* (or *subordinate*) interrogative sentences, and take the subjunctive. Hence,

(e) *Rule of Syntax.*—The subjunctive mood is used in all indirect interrogative sentences.

Rem. Such sentences are introduced by the interrogative pronouns *quis, qui, quantus, qualis, uter, &c.*, or the adverbs *ubi, unde, quando, quo, cur, num, utrum, an, &c.*

(535.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Quōd dubitas, nē feceris.—Id nē dixeris.—Nihil in commōdō (*to the injury*) vāletudinis tuā feceris.—Cūm improbis ac stultis nē locutus sis.

(b) Fāciat hoc aliquis.—Fecerit hoc aliquis.—Dixerit Epicūrus, Deum esse nullum.—Forsitan eūm amāveris.—Forsitan itā censueris.—Puerū magistri monuerint.—Urbem hostes oppugnauerint.

(c) Frāter (*voc.*), bonā tuā vniā dixerim, meā sententiā meliōr est.—Pātientiam laudāverim boum (351, 2) atque equōrum.—Ingēniā studiāque oppresseris facilius (376) quā revocāveris.

(d) Nescio cūr rideās.—Dic, cūr ad mē nōn venēris.—Helvētīi ibi erunt, ubi eōs Cāsar constitūerit.—Magnō cūm periculō (89, II.) id fecit.—Intelligit, quantō cūm periculō id fecerit.—Multī in praelio cāsī sunt.—Multī in praelio captī sunt.—Ūbi (*when*) victoriā amissā est (*is lost*) nihil refert, quōt in praelio cāsī aut in fugā captī sint.—Dic mīhi ubi fuēris.

(536.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) *Do not love the wicked.—Do not hear the foolish.*

* The imperative of dicere is dic, not dicā.

(b) Some philosophers *may-have-denied* the soul to be immortal.—*Perhaps-you-have-advised* the young-man.

(c) *I think-I-can-advice* the young man.—*You may easily repress* the minds of young men.—*You cannot easily recall* the industry (studium) of men.

(d) The mind itself *knows-not what* (quālis) *the mind is*.—Tell me *where you were*.—*I-do-not-know why you did not come* to me.—Tell (me), *were you* (fuerisne) in school yesterday?—It makes no difference *how many are taken-captive*.—The boy will remain (erit) there, *where the master may appoint* him.—I will tell you *what I have seen*.—I will tell you *what I have heard*.—Tell me *what you have done*.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect. — Conditional Conjunctions and Sentences.

(537.) THE subjunctive imperfect simply adds the person-endings,

m, s, t, mus, tis, nt, for the *active*,

r, ris (re), tur, mur, mini, ntur, for the *passive*,

to the *present infinitive* form of the verb. Thus,

Inf. Pres.	Imperf. Subj. Act.	Imperf. Subj. Pass.
esse, to be.	essem, I might be.	
āmārē, to love.	āmāre-m.	āmāre-r.
rēgērē, to rule.	rēgēre-m.	rēgēre-r.

(538.) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT.

1. Essēm.—I might, could, would, or should be.					
essēm.	essēs.	essēt.	essēmūs.	essētīs.	essēt.
2. ACTIVE.—I might, could, would, &c., love, advise, rule, hear.					
āmār- mōnēr- rēgēr- audīr- }	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.
					ēt.
3. PASSIVE.—I might, could, would, &c., be loved, advised, ruled, heard.					
āmār- mōnēr- rēgēr- audīr- }	ēr.	ērīs or ērē.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.
					ētūr.

Rem.—The vowel *e* of the ending is *long*, except where it comes before *m* or *t* final, when it is short of necessity.

(539.) (a) The subjunctive pluperfect *active* simply adds the person-endings,

m, s, t, mus, tis, nt,

to the *past infinitive* form of the verb. Thus,

Past Infinitive.	Pluperfect Subjunctive.
<i>fuissē, to have been.</i>	<i>fuissēm, I might have been.</i>
<i>āmāvissē, to have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvissēm, I might have loved.</i>

(b) The subjunctive pluperfect *passive* is formed by combining the perfect participle with the subjunctive imperfect of *essē*;

E. g., *āmātūs essēm* (sometimes with the subjunctive pluperfect of *essē*; *e. g.*, *āmātūs fuissēm, &c.*).

(c) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT.

1. <i>I might, could, would, should have been, &c.</i>						
<i>fuissēm.</i>		<i>fuissēs.</i>	<i>fuissēt.</i>	<i>fuissēmūs.</i>	<i>fuissētīs.</i>	<i>fuissēnt.</i>
2. ACTIVE.— <i>I might, could, &c., have loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
<i>āmāv- mōnū- rex- audiv-</i>	<i>issēm.</i>	<i>issēs.</i>	<i>issēt.</i>	<i>issēmūs.</i>	<i>issētīs.</i>	<i>issēnt.</i>
3. PASSIVE.— <i>I might, could, &c., have been loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
Sing. { <i>āmātūs, ā, ūm,</i> <i>mōnītūs, ā, ūm,</i> <i>rectus, ā, ūm,</i> <i>audītūs, ā, ūm,</i>	{ <i>essēm.</i> <i>essēs.</i> <i>essēt.</i>			Plur. { <i>āmātī, ē, ā,</i> <i>mōnītī, ē, ā,</i> <i>rectī, ē, ā,</i> <i>audītī, ē, ā,</i>	{ <i>essēmūs.</i> <i>essētīs.</i> <i>essēnt.</i>	

Conditional Conjunctions and Sentences.

(540.) (a) The conditional conjunctions are *sī, if*; *sīn, but if*; *nī sī, or nī, if not, unless*.

(b) A conditional sentence is one which is introduced by a conditional conjunction; *e. g.*, *if men were good, they would be happy*.

Rem. The sentence introduced by *if* is called the *conditional sentence*; the other, the *consequent sentence*: *if men were good is the conditional*; *they would be happy, the consequent*.

EXERCISE.

(541.) Vocabulary.

To diminish, *minuere* (*minū-, mī-nūt-*).

To cross over, *transire* (*irreg.*).

The world, *orbis terrarum*.

To subdue, *sūbīgērē* (*subēg, sūbact-, sūb+āgērē*).

Longer, *diutius* (*adv., compar.*).

I wish that, *utinam* (*conj.*).

(542.) Examples and Rules.

(a) Would that my father | *Ūtinam pāter vīvērēt!*
were alive!

I wish he could come! | *Ūtinam venīrēt!*

 In these examples (which refer to *present time*), the thing wished is supposed to be impossible (the wish is *vain*).

I wish he had lived! | *Ūtinam vixisset!*

I wish he had come! | *Ūtinam venisset!*

 In these examples (which refer to *past time*), the thing wished is supposed to be impossible (the wish is *vain*).

(a) *Rule of Syntax*.—The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used to express an *impossible supposition*, or a *vain wish*; the *imperfect*, with reference to *present* or *future time*; the *pluperfect*, with reference to *past time*.

(b) Conditional Sentences.

(1) If he has (any) money, | *Sī pēcūniam hābet, dāt.*
he gives (it).

Here the man is supposed to *have* money; the condition expressed by "*if*" is therefore *real*.

(2) If he has (any) money, | *Sī pēcūniam hābeat,*
he will give (it). | *dābit.*

Here the condition is *possible*, if not *real*. The man *may have* money.

(3) If he had any money, he | *Sī pēcūniam hāberet,*
would give it. | *dāret.*

Here the man is supposed to have *no* money: the condition is *unreal*. (Observe that it refers to *present* or *future time*.)

(4) If he had had any money, | *Sī pēcūniam hābuisset,*
he would have given it. | *dēdisset.*

 Here the man is supposed not to *have had* any money; the condition is therefore *unreal* (referring to *past time*). Hence,

(b) *Rule of Syntax*.—In conditional sentences (1), a *real*

condition is expressed by the indicative; (2) a *possible* condition by the present or perfect subjunctive; (3) an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in present time by the imperfect subjunctive; and (4) an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in past time by the *pluperfect subjunctive*.

Rem. 1. In cases (3) and (4), the subjunctive must be used in the *consequent* as well as in the *conditional* sentence.

2. It follows that the perfect or pluperfect indicative can *never* be used with *si*. *If he had come* = *si venisset*, not *si venerat*.

(543.) *Translate into English.*

Ūtinam salvus essēs.—Si hōc dīcis, erras.—Si hōc dīcas, erres.—Si hōc dīcēres, errāres.—Si hōc dīxisses, errāvisses.—Si venisses ad exercitum, ab impēratōre vīsus esses.—Frāter mīhi narrābat quīd amīcus tuus fēcissēt (534, d).—Mēmōriā mīnuītur, nīsi eām exercēās.—Si Helvētīi flūmen transirē cōnentur, Cēsar eōs prōhibēbit.—Si Helvētīi flūmen transire cōnārentur, Cēsar eōs prōhiberet.—Si Helvētīi flūmen transire cōnātī essent, Cēsar eōs prōhibuissēt.—Si obsīdes ab Helvētīīs Cēsārī (54) dentur, cūm iīs pācem faciēt.—Si obsīdes ab Helvētīīs Cēsari dārentur cūm iīs pācem faciēret.—Si obsīdes ab Helvētīīs Cēsārī dātī essent, cūm iīs pācem fēcisset.—Nōn supērārēmur, cīvēs (voc.) si nostrī fortēs essent.—Nōn supērātī essēmūs, cīvēs, si fortiōres milītes nobīs (dat., 125, II., a) fuissent.—Alexander tōtūm fērē orbēm terrārum sūbēgit.—Alexander, si diūtius vixisset, tōtūm orbēm terrārum sūbēgisset.

(544.) *Translate into Latin.*

I wish my father had lived longer.—I wish you had come.—Would-that the soldiers had been braver.—If you-would-read this book (542, b, 2), I would give (it) to you.—I wish the general had led the army across the Rhine.—If you had any thing (quīd), you would willingly give (it).—If they had had the money, they would willingly have given it.—If-you-had-loved the boy, you-would-have advised him.—If you-love the boy, you-will-advise him.—If the soldiers would come to the army, they-would-be-praised by the general.—If the Germans had-led (their) army across the Rhine, Cēsar would-have-made an attack upon (in) them.—If we-are brave, we shall not be overcome

LESSON LXXXIX.

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Purpose. — Ut and Nē.

(545.) THE subjunctive forms of the verb *possē*, *to be able*, are the following :

[Observe that *possē* is compounded of *pōt-*, the stem of *pōtīs*, *able*, and *essē*; thus, *pōt-essē*, contracted, *possē*. So all similar forms are contracted, and the *t* changed into *s* before *s*.]

<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	(<i>Pōtīs sīm = pot-sīm = possīm.</i>)
pōs- sīm.	sis. sīt. sīmūs. sītīs. sīnt.
<i>Subj. Imperf.</i>	(<i>Pōtīs essem = potessem = possem.</i>)
pōs- sēm.	sēs. sēt. sēmūs. sētīs. sēnt.
<i>Subj. Perf.</i>	(<i>Pōtīs fuerim = pot-fuerim = potuerim.</i>)
pōtā- ērim.	ēris. ērit. ērimūs. ēritīs. ērint.
<i>Subj. Plup.</i>	(<i>Pōtīs fuissem = pot-fuissem = potuissem.</i>)
pōtū- issēm.	issēs. issēt. issēmūs. issētīs. issent.

(546.) The final conjunctions (*i. e.*, such as denote a *purpose*, *aim*, or *result*) are *ūt* (or *ūtī*), *nē*, *quīn*, *quō*, *quōmīnūs*.

Ūt, or *ūtī*, *that, so that, in order that.*

Nē, *that not, so that not, lest.*

Quīn, *but that.*

Quō, *in order that, to the end that.*

Quōmīnūs, *that (after verbs of hindering).*

EXERCISE.

(547.) *Vocabulary.*

To eat, *ēdērē* (601).

A Rauracian, *Raurācūs*, *ī*.

A Tulingian, *Tulingūs*, *ī*.

To burn up, *exūrērē* (*exuss-*, *exust-*).

Together, *unā* (*adv.*).

Basely, *turpiter* (215, 2).

To surround, *circumvērē* (*vēr-*, *vent-*).

To resist, *rēsistērē* (*restīt-*, *restīt-*).

To fix, hence *to decide*, *stātūrē* (*stātū-*, *stātū-*).

To decide on something quite severe, *aliquid grāviūs stātūrē*.

To enjoin, *præcipēre* (*io*, *præcep-*, *cept-*), *præ+cāpērē*).

To join battle, *præliūm committēre*.
End, *finis*, *īs* (*m.*, 355, *Ex. II.*, 2).

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Purpose, End, or Object.

(548.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) I beseech you that you
do this ;

or,

I beseech you to do this.

Tē obsēcro, ūt hōc fācias.

The general commanded *that the soldiers should keep their stations ;*

OT.

The general commanded the soldiers *to keep their stations.*

Dux impēravit, ūt milītes
stātiōnēs suās servārent

(b) I beseech you *that you do not do this* ;

 σ_{τ}

I beseech you *not to do this.*

Tē obsēcro nē hōc fācias.

The general commanded that
the soldiers should not
desert their stations :

or.

The general commanded the
soldiers not to desert their
stations.

Dux impēravīť nē mīlites
stātiōnes suās dēsēr
ērent.

(a) These examples show that a *purpose* or *aim* may be expressed in English by *that*, *in order that*, or (especially after verbs of *asking* and *commanding*) by the infinitive. In Latin, such sentences are expressed by *ut*, with the *subjunctive*.*

(b) An object to be *provided against* is introduced in English by *that not*, *in order that not*, or by *not*, with the infinitive. In Latin, such sentences are always expressed by *nē*, with the subjunctive.

(549.) *Translate into English.*

1. $\check{U}t$.

Ēdimus ūt vīvā mus, nōn vīvimus ūt ēdā mus.—Vēnio ūt discā m.—Vēnī ūt discō rem.—Orgētōrix persuādēt Casticō (*dat.*) ūt regnum occūpet.—In eō itinēre, persnāsīt Casticō, cūjus pāter regnum in cīvītāte suā multōs annōs (191, *a*) obtīnuērat, ūt regnum in cīvītāte suā occūpāret.—Orgētōrix persuādet Dumnorīgi ūt idēm (150) cōnētur.—Orgētōrix persuāsīt Dumnorīgi ūt idēm cōnārētur.—Helvētīi persuādēt Raurācis, ūtī cūm iis proficiscantur.—Helvētīi persuādēt Raurācis ēt Tulingis, ūtī, oppīdis suis vicisque

* *Jubere* takes accusative with infinitive.

exustis (457), unā cū iis proficiscantur.—Cæsar castellā commūnit, ūt Helvētios prōhibēre possit.—Cæsar castella communivit ūt Helvētios prōhibēre posset.—Cæsar rōgat Divitiācum ūt finem ōrandi fāciat.—Cæsar rōgāvit Divitiācum ūt finem ōrandi fācēret.—Helvētiis (147) Cæsar impērat ūti perfūgās rēdūcant.—Helvētiis Cæsar impērāvit ūti perfūgās rēdūcērent.

2. Nē.

Tē obsēcrāvi nē hōc fācēres.—Pāter filium obsēcrat nē quīd turpiter fācēret.—Milites, nē āb hoste circumvēnīrentur, audāciūs (376) resistēre āc fortiūs pugnāre cōpērunt.—Divitiācus Cæsārem obsēcrat, nē quīd grāviūs in frātre stātuat.—Divitiācus, multis cū lācrymīs (89, II.) Cæsārem obsēcrāre cōpit, nē quīd grāviūs in frātre stātueret.—Præceptum est (perf. pres., *it has been enjoined to or upon*) Labiēnō, nē prælium committat, nisi Cæsāris cōpiæ visæ sint (542, b, 2).—Præceptum erat Labiēnō, nē prælium committeret, nisi Cæsāris cōpiæ visæ essent.

[Recollect that a *purpose* or *aim* is often expressed in English by the *infinitive*; but in Latin *never*—always by *ut* with the subjunctive for a *positive* aim, by *ne* with the subjunctive for a *negative* aim.]

(550.) Translate into Latin.

The general commands the lieutenant (147) *not to do* (= *that he may not do*) this.—The general exhorted the soldiers *to make* (= *that they should make*) the attack sharply.—The father beseeches his daughter *to make* an end of praying.—Some-men (quidam) live *to eat*, not eat *to live*.—He comes *to see* the general.—He came *to see* the general.—The Helvetians persuade the Tulingians *to set out* together with them.—The captive beseeches the general *not to decide-on* any-thing at-all-severe against (in) him (sē).—Cæsar commands the Gauls (147) *to bring back* (= *that they should bring back*) the deserters.—The Romans, *that they might not be surrounded* by the Gauls, began to fight more bravely.—The commander enjoins-it-upon the lieutenant *not to join battle*.—The commander enjoined it upon the lieutenant *not to join battle*.

LESSON XC.

Succession of Tenses.—Ūt expressing a Result.

(551.) (1.) We cannot say in English, "*He comes, that he might see the general;*" or, "*He came, that he may see the general;*" but we must say, "*He comes, that he may see the general,*" and, "*He came, that he might see the general.*" It is obvious that this tense of the verb in the subordinate sentence depends upon that of the principal sentence; and this dependence is called *the succession of tenses*.

2. The tenses of the Latin verb are divided into *primary* and *historical*.

	Present.	Future.	Pres. Perf.
(a) <i>Primary,</i>	{ <i>āmāť,</i> <i>he loves.</i>	{ <i>āmābĭť,</i> <i>he will love.</i>	{ <i>āmāvĭť,</i> <i>he has loved.</i>
	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.	Perf. Aorist.
(b) <i>Historical,</i>	{ <i>āmābāt,</i> <i>he was loving.</i>	{ <i>āmāvērāt,</i> <i>he had loved.</i>	{ <i>āmāvĭť,</i> <i>he loved.</i>

3. The *Rule* for the succession of tenses then is: If there be a *primary* tense in the principal sentence, there must be a *primary* tense in the subordinate sentence; if a *historical* tense in the principal, a *historical* tense in the subordinate.

[The examples in the preceding lesson illustrate this rule, and those in the present lesson will farther confirm it.]

EXERCISE.

(552.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To strive, contend,</i> nĭť (nĭs- and nix-), <i>dep.</i>	<i>To cut or tear down,</i> scindĕrĕ (scĭd-, sciss-).
<i>Despair,</i> despĕrātĭo, (desperation) ĭs (333, R.).	<i>To begin,</i> incĭpĕrĕ (incĕp-, incept-, in+cĭpĕrĕ).
<i>To run together,</i> concurrĕre (concurr- and concŭcurr-, concurs-).	<i>To afford means or facilities,</i> dārĕ facultatem.
<i>Storm,</i> tempestās, (tempestāt) ĭs (293).	<i>Deceit,</i> dōlŭs, ĭ.
<i>To rise (as a storm),</i> coorĭrĭ (coort-, con+orĭrĭ).	<i>Rather,</i> mĕgĭs.
<i>Palisade (rampart of stakes)</i> val-lŭm, ĭ.	<i>Integrity,</i> prōbĭtās, (prōbĭtāt) ĭs (293).
	<i>Course,</i> cursŭs, ŭs.
	<i>Change</i> commŭtatio (ōnĭs, 333, R.).

*Subordinate Sentences expressing a Result***(553.) Examples and Rules.**

So great is the power of integrity, that we esteem it even in an enemy.

The Helvetians have been so taught by (= have so learned from) their fathers, that they contend (or, as to contend) rather with valour than deceit.

Tantā vīs prōbitātis est, ut eām vël in hostē diligāmus.

Helvëtiī itā ā pātribus suis didicērunt, ut māgis virtūte quām dōlō nītantur.

(a) These examples show that a *result* (especially after the words *such, so, so great, &c.*) is expressed in English by *that* with the indicative, or, *as to* with the infinitive; in Latin, by *ut* with the subjunctive.

(b) *Rule of Syntax.*—*Ūt*, signifying *that*, and introducing a *result*, governs the subjunctive.

Rem. *Ūt*, expressing a *result*, generally follows the correlative words *talīs, tantus* (*such, so great*); *adēo, sic, itā* (*so*); and verbs signifying *to accomplish, to bring to pass, &c.*

(554.) Translate into English.

Impērātor perficit, ut ī Sēquāni dēnt obsidēs.—*Dumnorix perficit, ut ī Sēquāni dēnt obsidēs, nē itānērē* (153, a) *Helvëtiōs prohibeant* (548, b).—*Imperātor tantā vī* (55, a) *oppidum oppugnat, ut desperatio ānimos oppidānōrum occupet* (551, 3).—*Impērātōr tantā vī oppidum oppugnāvit ut desperatio ānimos oppidānōrum occupāret.*—*Tantus timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut omnium ānimos perturbāret.*—*Tantā tempestas sūbitō coortā est* (*perf. aor.*) *ut nāvēs cursum tēnērē nōn possent.*—*Impērātor tantam sibi* (54) *jām in Galliā auctoritātem compārāverat, ut undique ad eum lēgatiōnes concurrērent* (551, 3).—*Galli vallum scindunt.*—*Galli vallum scindere et fossam complere incipiunt.*—*Galli sic nostrōs contemnunt, ut vallum scindere et fossam complere incipiant.*—*Oppidum naturā* (55, a) *loci sic muniēbātur, ut magnam ad dūcendum* (496) *bellum dārēt facultatem.*—*Auxiliōrum adventū* (55) *magnā rērum commutatio facta est.*

214 QUO, QUIN, QUOMINUS, WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.

—Hōrum adventū tantā rērum commutatio factā est, ūt nostrī fortius pugnārent atque hostēs rēpellērent.

(555.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Recollect that *as to* with the English infinitive must be translated by *ut* with subjunctive.]

The commander brought-it-to pass that the Sequanians gave hostages.—The Sequanians gave hostages that they would not prohibit the Helvetians from (their) journey (153, a).—So great-a fear suddenly seizes the whole army, that it alarms the minds of all.—So great a tempest suddenly arises, that the ships can not hold their course.—The commander procures for himself so great authority in Italy, that even the senators run-together to him.—The Helvetians begin to cut-down the bridge.—The Helvetians so despised our men, that they began to cut down the bridge.—By the approach of the Æduans, so great a change was made that the Helvetians began to fight more bravely.—The Helvetians had so learned from their fathers, as to contend rather with valour than deceit.

LESSON XCI.

Periphrastic Conjugation, Subjunctive.—Use of quō, quin, quōminūs, with the Subjunctive.

(556.) THE want of a future subjunctive is supplied to some extent by the periphrastic conjugation, formed by combining the participles in *rūs* and *dūs* with the subjunctive tenses of *essē*, to be.

ACTIVE.		
Pres.	āmātūrūs sīm,	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
Imperf.	āmātūrūs essēm,	<i>I might be about to love.</i>
Perf.	āmātūrūs fuērīm,	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
Pluperf.	āmātūrūs fuissēm,	<i>I might have been about to love.</i>
PASSIVE.		
Pres.	āmandūs sīm,	<i>I may be to be loved (one must love me).</i>
Imperf.	āmandūs essēm,	<i>I might be to be loved.</i>
Perf.	āmandūs fuērīm,	<i>I may have been to be loved.</i>
Pluperf.	āmandūs fuissēm,	<i>I might have been to be loved.</i>
EASE (to be).		
Pres.	fūtūrūs sīm,	<i>I may be about to be.</i>
Imperf.	fūtūrūs essēm,	<i>I might be about to be.</i>

EXERCISE.

(557.) *Vocabulary.*

To hold back, restrain, rētīnĕrĕ (rĕ-
tīnū, rĕtent, rĕ-tĕnĕre).

To stand in the way, prevent, ob-
stārĕ (obstīt, obstāt, ob-stāre).

To sustain, sustinĕre (tīnū, tent,
sub-tĕnĕrĕ).

Novelty, nŏvitas, (nŏvitat) is (293).

To decree, consciscĕrĕ (consciv-, con-
scit-).

To commit suicide, sibi mortem con-
sciscĕrĕ (= to decree death to
one's self).

Cowardice, ignāvia, a.

To take away from, ōripĕrĕ (ō-
ōripu-, ōrept-); governs acc. and
abl.

To train, educate, ōdĕcarĕ (av, at-).

To deceive, fallĕrĕ (fāfell-, fals-).

It was Cæsar's fault, Pĕr Cæsā-
rem stĕtit (= it stood through Cæs-
sar).

To finish, perficĕre (perfĕc-, per-
fect-).

Suspicion, suspicio, ōnis (333, B.).

(558.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) Cæsar erects forts, that
he may the more easily
keep off the Helvetians.

Cæsar castellā commūnit, quō
fācilius Helvētios prŏhib-
ĕre possit.

(a) Q uō is used to express a purpose (instead of ū t), espe-
cially when a comparative enters the sentence.

Cæsar castellā commūnit ū t possit (that he may, &c.).

Cæsar castellā commūnit quō fācilius possit (that he may more
easily, &c.).

(b) (1) There is no one but
thinks;

or,

There is no one who does
not think.

(2) There is no one so
brave as not to be con-
founded.

(3) It is not doubtful but
that the soldiers will
fight bravely.

(4) I did not doubt that
the soldiers would fight
bravely.

(5) They could not be
restrained from hurl-
ing darts (= but that
they should hurl darts).

Nĕmo est quīn pŭtet.

Nĕmo est tam fortis quīn
perturbĕtur.

Nŏn dŭbium est quīn mīlites
fortitĕr pugnātŭri sint.

Nŏn dŭbitābam quīn mīlites
fortitĕr pugnātŭri es-
sent.

Nŏn pŏtĕrant rĕtīnĕri quīn
tĕlā conjicĕrent.

(b) *Quin* is used in the sense of "*but*," or "*as not*," after negative sentences; and in the sense of "*that not*," and "*that*," after non dubito, non dubium est, &c.; in the sense of "*from*" (= *but that*) after verbs of restraining, &c.

(c) (1) *What stands in the way of Julius being happy (= what stands in the way in order that Julius may not be happy) ?* Quid obstat quominus Julius sit beatus?

(2) *Nothing hinders him from doing this* (=nothing impedes, in order that he may not). Nihil impedit, quominus hoc faciat.

(c) Quōmīnūs is used (in preference to nē) after verbs of *hindering, preventing, standing in the way of, &c.* (It can generally be rendered into English by *of*, or *from*, with a participle, as above.)

(559.) *Translate into English.*

(a) **Q u ō** (= *in order that*, used instead of ū t, with comparatives).

Cæsar milites hortatus est ut fortiores essent.—Cæsar milites hortatus est quod fortiores essent.—Eo opere perfectio (456) Cæsar presidia disponit, castellam communit, quod facilius, si Helvetii transire conentur (542, b, 2) prohibere possit.—Scripsi, ut auctoritatem habberem.—Scripsi quod in suadendo (488) plus auctoritatis (186, a) habberem.—Auxilium rogant, ut hostium copias sustineant.—Subsidium rogant, quod facilius hostium copias sustineant.

(b) **Q u ī n** (= *but that*).

Nemo est tam fortis quin rei novitate (55, a) perturbetur. — Orestorix mortuus est, neque abest suspicio quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit. — Helvetii non dubitant quin Romani Eduis (abl., verb of depriving) libertatem erepturi sint. — Non dubium est quin cives, ubi (when) patria in periculo futura sit (534, e), fortiter pugnaturi sint. — Non dubito quin puerum bene educaturus sis. — Turpe est falli. — Turpius est fallere. — Non dubium est quin turpius sit fallere quam falli. — Germani retinere non poterant quin in nostros tela conicerent.

(c) *Quōmīnūs* (= *in order that not*).

Pēr Lābiēnum stātit quōmīnus Rōmānī oppīdum occupārent.—*Nostrōrum ignāviā obstābat quōmīnus hostēs sūperārentur.*—*Nōn mē impediēs quōmīnus id faciā.*—*Sēnēctūs nōn impēdit quōmīnus littērārū stūdiā tōneāmus.*

(560.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Remember the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(a) *Quō.*

Cæsar, having finished the work (= the work being finished), exhorted the soldiers to be of a braver spirit (fortiorē ānimō).—*I ask your assistance, that I may do this the more easily.*

(b) *Quīn.*

There is no one who does not think that the wise are always happy.—*It is not doubtful that Cæsar will cross the Rhine.*—*I do not doubt that my father will come.*—*I was not doubting that you had educated the boys well.*

(c) *Quōmīnūs.*

Nothing hinders me from being happy.—*It was the fault of the commander that the soldiers did not fight bravely.*—*The cowardice of the commander stood in the way of our taking possession of the town.*

LESSON XCII.

Use of Quūm, with the Subjunctive.

(561.) THE conjunction *quūm* (sometimes written *cum*) has two uses: (1) to denote *time* simply (*when, while*); (2) to denote a *cause, or reason (since)*. The former is called *quūm temporal*, the latter *quūm causal*.

EXERCISE.

(562.) *Vocabulary.*

To contemplate, contemplārī (āt-, dep.

To perceive, ānimadvertērē (vert-, vers-, *animum*+*ad*+*vertere*).

To delay tardārē (av-, āt-).

To get sight of, conspīcērē (spex-, spect-).

Incessant, continuous, continens, (nent) īs (107).

Of right, justly, fūrē (abl. of *jūs*).

<i>To order, iuberē, does not take ut with subj., but acc. with inf.; he ordered them to await = iussit eos expectārē.</i>	<i>Destruction, interitūs, ūs. To make-haste, mātūrāre (av., at-) To announce, nuntiārē (av., at-). To meet, convēnīre (vēm-, vent-).</i>
--	---

(563.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) <i>When we contemplate the firmament, we wonder at the greatness of God.</i>	Quum cælum contemplāmur, Deī magnitudinem admirāmur.
--	--

(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum, when used *simply* to express the time (especially with the primary tenses), is followed by the indicative.

(b) <i>Cæsar, when he had conquered (= having conquered) Pompey, crossed over into Asia.</i>	Cæsar, quum Pompeium vīcisset, in Asiā trājecit.
--	--

(b) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum *temporal* is followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, if the events described *depend* on each other, and especially when the aorist perfect is used in the principal sentence.

[In the above example, the verb *trajecit*, of the principal sentence, is in the aorist perfect. In all such cases, the subordinate sentence with *quum* can be rendered by the English *participle*, as in the example above, and in the two following.]

<i>The prætor, having come (= when he had come) into the forum, perceived.</i>	Prætor, quum in fōrum vēnisset, animadvertit(perf.).
--	--

<i>The commander, having got sight of the enemy, ordered.</i>	Impērātor, quum hostēs conspexisset, iussit.
---	--

(c) <i>Since these things are so. Since they cannot defend themselves.</i>	Quæ quum itā sint. Quum se defendere nōn possint.
--	--

<i>Although the soldiers were retarded by rains, yet they overcame all (obstacles).</i>	Mīlites, quum imbribus tardarentur, tamen omniā superāvērunt.
---	---

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum *causal* (signifying *since*, or *although*) is always followed by the subjunctive.

(564.) *Translate into English.*1. *Quum temporal*, with subjunctive (563, b).

Cæsar, quum id nuntiātum esset, mātūravīt āb urbe prōficiēci.—Quum lēgio dēcimā constītisset, omnēs hostēs ād eūm lōcum contendērunt.—Quum lēgātus ad oppīdum accessisset, puēri mūliērēsquē pācem āb Rōmānis pētīvērunt.—Quum Cæsar ād oppidum accessisset, oppidāni pācem āb eō pētīerunt.—Quum imperātor signum dēdisset, milītes īn hostes impētum fēcērunt.—Cæsar, quum Gallōs vicisset, īn Itāliam contendit (*perf.*).—Quum lēgāti Cæsarēm īn ītinerē convēnissent, eōs suum adventum expectāre jussit.

2. *Quum causal* (*since, or although*), with subjunctive (563, c).

Milītes, quum frīgōrē ēt imbrībūs tardārentur, tāmen continentī labōrē (55, a) omnia supērāverunt.—Cicēro jūrē patēr patriæ dictus est, quum urbēm ab intērītū servasset.*—Æduī, quum sē suāque ab Helvētiīs dēfendēre nōn possint, lēgātōs ād Cæsārem mittunt, rōgātum (379) auxilium.—Quum omnes hōmīnes mortāles sint, etiā tū mōriēris.

(565.) *Translate into Latin.*1. *Quum temporal*, with subjunctive (563, b).

The ambassadors *having asked* (= *when the ambassadors had asked*) peace of Cæsar, he ordered them to await his coming.—Cæsar *having ordered them* (= *when Cæsar had ordered them*) to await his coming, (they) obeyed.—The lieutenant, *when that was* (= *had been*) *announced*, returned to the citadel.—The fifth legion *having halted*, the enemy made an attack upon them.—The prætor, *having come* into the forum, saw the captives.—The boy, *having approached* the wood, heard a voice.

2. *Quum causal*, with subjunctive (563, c).

Since these things are so, let us believe (528, b, 1).—Nations, *when they cannot defend* themselves, ask assistance.—The scout, *though he was delayed* by the cold, came to the camp.—*Since* Cæsar took-away (ārīpēre) liberty from the Æduans, they rightly feared.

* Contracted from servavisset.

LESSON XCIII.

Use of the Subjunctive in Relative Sentences.

(566.) THE relative pronoun often takes the place of a conjunction in introducing a sentence, and is therefore followed by the subjunctive. The following examples illustrate some of these uses.

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) You err <i>because</i> you think = | You err <i>who</i> think. |
| (b) They sent men <i>to seek</i> for peace = | They sent men <i>who should seek</i> for peace. |
| (c) I am not such a man <i>as to be</i> delighted with vices = | I am not <i>he who can be</i> delighted with vices. |

EXERCISE.

(567.) *Vocabulary.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>A herald, a proclaimer, præco, (præcōn) is (333).</i> | <i>To be present, ædesse (ad+esse).</i> |
| <i>A Nervian, Nervius, i.</i> | <i>To bear, ferrē (irreg.).</i> |
| <i>It pleased, placuit (with dat.).</i> | <i>Fortunate, fortunatus, æ, Æm.</i> |
| <i>At length, demum.</i> | <i>A youth, ædōlescens, (cent) is (m. and f., 25, a).</i> |
| <i>Affection, affectio, (tiōn) is (333, R.).</i> | <i>Innocence, innocentia, æ.</i> |
| <i>To hurt, nocēre (with dat.).</i> | <i>Fit for, idōneus, æ, Æm (with dat.).</i> |

(568.) *Examples and Rule.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) <i>Hannibal did wrong in wintering (= because he wintered) at Capua.</i> | <i>Mālē fecit Hannibal, qui Capuæ hiemāvērit (= who wintered at Capua).</i> |
|--|---|

Here *qui* introduces the ground or cause of the judgment that *Hannibal erred*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (b) <i>They send ambassadors to say (= who may say).</i> | <i>Lēgātos mittunt, qui dicant.</i> |
| <i>They sent ambassadors to say (= who might say).</i> | <i>Lēgātos misērunt, qui dicērent.</i> |

Here *qui* (= *ut* *ii*) introduces a purpose.

- | | |
|---|---|
| (c) <i>You are not the man to be ignorant.</i> | <i>Nōn is es, qui nesciās (= you are not he who can be ignorant).</i> |
| <i>He ordered all (those) who could bear arms to be present</i> | <i>Omnēs (eos understood) qui armā ferre possent, ædesse jussit.</i> |

In these examples, *qui* introduces a nearer definition of the demonstrative, which is expressed or implied.

(*d*) *Rule of Syntax*.—The subjunctive is used in a relative sentence to express a *ground*, a *purpose*, or to give a nearer definition of a demonstrative expressed or implied.

Rem. 1. *Talis, tam, tantus, ita, &c.*, may be these demonstratives, as well as *is, eā, id*.

2. The relative *to express a purpose* is very common, especially in Cæsar, and should be thoroughly studied and practised.

(569.) *Translate into English.*

[Remember the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(*a*) *Qui, ground, cause, or reason.*

Errās quī censeās Deum esse injustum. — Fortūnātūs fuit Alexander, quī virtūtis suæ Hōmērum præcōnem (225, *a*) invēnērīt. — O fortūnātē ādōlescens, quī tuæ virtūtis Hōmērum præcōnem invēnēris. — Nervī incūsāverunt reliquos Belgās quī sē pōpulo Rōmānō (54) dēdidissent.

(*b*) *Qui, purpose.*

Eripiunt aliīs (153, *a*) quōd aliīs (54) largiantūr. — Lēgātos ād Rōmānos mīsērunt, quī pētērent pācem. — Cæsar ēquitātum præmittit, qui* vīdeant quās in partēs hostes itēr fāciant (534, *d*). — Impērātor mīsīt explorātōres, quī cognoscērent quālis esset (534, *d*) nātūrā montis. — Cæsar cōpiās suās in proximum collem subduxit, ēquitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impētum, mīsīt. — Ariōvistus omnes cōpiās, quæ nostros perterrērēt, et mūnitiōne (153, *a*) prōhibērent, mīsīt. — Plācuit Cæsārī ūt ād Ariōvistum lēgātos mittēret (548, *a*). — Plācuit Cæsārī ūt ād Ariōvistum lēgātos mittēret, quī āb eō postulārent, ūt āliquem locum collōquīō (54) dicēret (548, *a*). — Tūm dēmum Ariōvistus partēm suārū cōpiārū quæ castrā oppugnārent mīsīt.

(*c*) *Qui, defining a demonstrative (express or implied).*

Impērātor omnes cīves quī armā ferrē possent ādesse iussit. — Lēgātus pōposcit (411, *a*) obsīdes, arma, servos, quī ād Helvetios perfūgissent. — Milītes eā quæ impērārentur

* *Equitatum (cavalry)* being a noun of multitude, the relative *qui* may be in the plural.

ribenter fecerunt.—Nōn tālis sūm qui te fallam.—Innocentiā est affectio tālis ānīmi, quæ nōceat nēmīnī (54).

(570.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) Cæsar did badly *in-crossing* (*who crossed*, perf. subj.) the Rhine.—They err *who think* that the soul is not immortal.—The father censured his son *for setting-out** (= *who had set out*, plup. subj.) from the city.

(b) Cæsar sends forward scouts, *to choose* (= *who may choose*) a place fit for the camp.—Cæsar sent ambassadors to Ariovistus *to demand* (= *who should demand*).—The general brings back his forces to the hill, and sends forward the cavalry *to sustain* (= *who may sustain*) the attack.

* *Proficiscor.*

§ 17.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. (XCIV.)

LESSON XCIV.

Oratio Obliqua (Oblique Narration).

(571.) IN relating the words of another, we may either, (1) represent him as speaking in the first person, and give his words precisely as they were uttered; *e. g.*, "He said, '*I will come*,'" or, (2) we may state what he said in a narrative form; *e. g.*, "He said *that he would come*." The former is called *Oratio recta* (*direct narration*); the latter, *Oratio obliqua* (*oblique narration*).

☞ The example above given shows that the moods must be different in the two modes of narration.

(572.) The sentences introduced in the *oratio obliqua* are either *principal* or *subordinate*; *e. g.*,

Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the *Æduans*, *if they paid the tribute yearly*.

In this example, the sentence in spaced printing is the principal sentence; the sentence in *italic* the subordinate sentence.

EXERCISE.

(573.) *Vocabulary.*

To bring upon, to wage, *inferre* (*illat*), *irreg*.

Tribute, *stipendium*, *i*.

Yearly, *quōtannis* (used as *adv.*).

To pay, *pendere* (*pēpend*, *pens*).

To show, point out, *ostendere* (*ostend*, *ostens*, and *ostent*).

To excel, *præstare* (*præstit*, *prætit*, and *præstat*).

Because, *propterea quōd*.

To get, to gain for another, *conciliare* (*av*, *at*).

To get possession of, *pōtiri*, (*pōtit*) *dep.* (governs *gen.* or *abl.*).

Very easy, *perfacilis*, *e* (with *dat.*).

Affirm, *confirmare* (*av*, *at*).

☞ The *Helvetians* intend, *Helvētīs est in animo* (= it is in mind to the *Helvetians*).

(574.) *Examples and Rules.*

- (a) Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the Æduans. | Ariovistus dixit, sē Æduis bellum nōn illātūrum esse.

(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—In principal sentences in oratio obliqua, the accusative with the infinitive is used.

Rem. When they express a command or wish, the subj. is used.

- (b) Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the Æduans, if they paid the tribute yearly. | Ariovistus dixit, sē Æduis bellum nōn esse illātūrum, si stipendium quotannis penderent.

(b) In subordinate sentences in oratio obliqua, the subjunctive is always used (e. g., penderent).

- (c) The lieutenant denied that he had crossed the Rhine. | Lēgātus negāvit sē Rhēnum transissē.*

He denies that he can give. | Negat sē posse dāre.

(575.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar dixit sē, postquam hostēs fūsi essent, castra munitūrum essē.—De dēcimā lēgione Cæsar nōn dūbītābat.—Cæsar dixit, sē de dēcimā lēgione nōn dūbītāre.—Cæsar dixit, sē cū sōlā dēcimā lēgione esse itūrum.† —Cæsar dixit sē cum sōlā dēcimā lēgione, de quā nōn dūbītāret, esse itūrum.—Impērātor dixit, maxīmas nātiōnes pulsas sup̄erātasque esse.—Helvētiis (54) perfācile erat tōtiūs Gallīæ imp̄riō (abl.) pōtiri.—Dumnōrix ostendit, Helvētiis perfācile esse, quum virtutē (55, a) omnibus (dat.) præstārent, tōtiūs Gallīæ imp̄riō pōtiri.—Dumnōrix ipse Casticō (54) regnum conciliātūrus erat.—Dumnōrix confirmat sē Casticō regnūm conciliātūrum esse.—Helvētiis est in ānimō iter p̄r prōvinciam fācere; aliud iter hāhent nullum.—Sibi esse in ānimō (573, B), dicunt Helvētiī, sinē ullō mālēficio iter p̄r prōvinciam fācere, p̄pt̄erea quōd aliud iter hābeant nullum.—Impērātor nōn pōtest iter Helvētiis (54) p̄r prōvinciam dāre.—Impērātor

* Past infin. of transirē.

† Fut. infin. of irē, to go.

nēgat s ē, mōrē ēt exemplō pōpūli Rōmāni, posse īter Hel-
vētiīs pār prōvinciam dāre.

(576.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar said *that he, after Pompey was conquered, would cross-over into Asia.*—Cæsar had full confidence in (= *did not doubt concerning*) the fourth legion.—Cæsar said *that he would attack the town with the fourth legion alone, in which he had full confidence.*—Cicero said *that the greatest cities had been attacked.*—The lieutenant affirms *that he will lead the army across the Rhine, if the enemy attempt to hinder (them) (prohibere).*—The Helvetians say *that they intend (573, 574) to seek peace of Cæsar.*

§ 18.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. (XCV.—XCVI.)

LESSON XCV.

Impersonals.—Pudet, Piget, Tædet, &c.

(577.) IMPERSONAL verbs are those which have no subject, and take the pronoun *it* before them in English; *e. g.*, *pluit, it rains.*

(578.) (a). Some impersonals are *never used* in the personal form; *e. g.*, *pigēt, it grieves, &c.*; (b) others are simply the third person of personal verbs: *e. g.*, *plācēt, it pleases* (*plāceō, I please*). (c) Again, the third person singular of many intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive: *curritūr, they run* (*it is run*); *I am envied, invidētur mihi*; *nunciātū est, it was told.*

(579.) (a) The following impersonals (which express certain feelings) take the *accusative* of the person and *genitive* of the cause of the feeling.

Pigēt, piguit,	<i>it grieves.</i>
Pūdēt, pūduit,	<i>it shames,</i>
	<i>one is ashamed.</i>
Pœnitēt, pœnituit,	<i>it repents.</i>
Tædēt, pertæsū est,	<i>it wearies, disgusts.</i>
Misērēt,	<i>one pities.</i>

Your folly grieves me.

Mē pigēt stultitiæ tuæ (= *it grieves me of your folly*).

(b) Sometimes the cause or object of the feeling is expressed by the *infinitive*, or a *sentence* with *quōd*.

I am not ashamed of having done this.

Nōn pūdēt mē hōc fēcissē (= *it does not shame me to have done this*).

I repent of offending you.

Pœnitet mē quōd tē offendī (= *it repents me that I have offended you*).

EXERCISE.

(580.) *Vocabulary.**Indolent*, ignāv-us, ā, ūm.*Folly*, ineptiā, ārum (57, R.).*To sin*, peccārē (av-, at-).*Business*, nēgōtiūm, i.*Undertaken*, susceptūs, ā, ūm (part. of suscipere).*To confess*, fātēri (fassa-), dep.*Because, since*, quōniām (conj.).*Almost*, pænē (adv.).*Some day*, aliquandō (adv.).*Innocent*, innōcens, (innocent) is*Lot, sors*, (sort) is (293). [(107).(581.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Ignāvum pœnitēbit aliquando ignāviæ.—Nōn pœnitet mē hūjus consilii.—Tuī* mē misēret.—Eōs ineptiarum pœnitēbat.—Pœnitēbat mē peccāti.—Misēret tē aliōrum, tuī* nēc misēret, nēc pūdet.—Nōs misēret cālāmitātis tuæ.—Nunquam Cæsārem suscepti negotiī pertæsum est.—Mē civitātis mōrum pīget, tædetque.

(b) Illum pœnitet quōd mē offendērit.—Socrāten nōn pūduit fātēri se multas rēs nescire.—Tē id pūdui facēre.—Nōn pœnitet mē vixisse, quoniām nōn frustra vixi.—Quē m pœnitet peccasse, pæne est innōcens.

(582.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) Thou wilt repent of thy folly.—He will be ashamed of his indolence.—We shall be ashamed of thee.—We pitied them.—He was ashamed of us.—We shall never repent of our industry.—The boy will some-day be ashamed of his indolence.—Thou wilt some-day repent of thy folly.—We are weary of life.—He was ashamed of the citizens.—I am ashamed of you and your ignorance.—Many are grieved (at) their lot (*gen.*) (= It grieves many of their lot).—I am not only grieved at, but also (sed etiam) ashamed of, my folly (= It not only grieves, but also shames me of my folly).

(b) I repent of having-sinned.—I am ashamed of doing this.—A wise man is not ashamed to confess that he is ignorant of many things.—I am weary of living (*vivere*).—I repent of having lived in-vain.—The boy repents of having offended (*quod, with perf. subj.*) the master.—The young man is ashamed of having lived in-vain.—The general repented of having moved (*inf.*) the camp.—The Helvetians repented of having crossed (*inf.*) the river.—The barbarians repented of having approached (*inf.*) the rampart (use *ad* before the accusative).

* *Gen. of tā.*

LESSON XCVI.

Impersonal Verbs, continued.(583.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Ought, it behooves, oportet, ōbat, uit, &c. (with acc. and inf.).</i>	<i>It is agreeable, libet, or libet (with dat.).</i>
<i>It is becoming, decet (with acc. and inf.).</i>	<i>It is allowed, lawful (one must), licet (licuit and licitum est), dat.</i>
<i>It pleases, placet, placuit, &c. (with dat.).</i>	<i>It happens, contingit (dat.). Accidit (used rather of evil accidents).</i>
<i>It is of importance, it interests, interest (with gen.).</i>	<i>It is expedient, expedit (dat.).</i>
<i>It concerns, it matters, refert (with gen.).</i>	<i>With my permission, mea voluntate (abl., 55, a).</i>

(584.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) <i>Boys ought to be diligent.</i>	Pueros oportet diligentes esse (= it behooves boys to be diligent).
---------------------------------------	---

<i>It becomes a young man to be modest.</i>	Decet verecundum esse adolescentem.
---	-------------------------------------

(a) *Oportet* and *decet* are followed by the accusative and infinitive.

[ *Oportet* is also followed by the subjunctive.]

(b) (1) <i>It pleased the majority to defend the camp.</i>	Majori parti placuit castra defendere.
(2) <i>Cæsar determined (=it pleased Cæsar) to send ambassadors to Ariovistus.</i>	Placuit Cæsari ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret.

(b) *Placet* (expressing a *purpose*) may be followed by the dative, with (1) the infinitive, or (2) the subjunctive with *ut*.

(c) <i>I may go (=it is allowed to me to go).</i>	Mihi ire licet.
<i>You may go.</i>	Tibi ire licet.
<i>I might have gone (=it was allowed to me to go).</i>	Mihi ire licuit.
<i>I may be idle.</i>	Mihi otiosō esse licet.
<i>I do not choose (=it is not agreeable to me).</i>	Nōn libet mihi.

(c) *Licet, libet*, and, in short, all impersonals which admit *to* or *for* after them in English, are followed by the dative.

(d) *It concerns all* (=it is | *Intērest omnium.*
the interest of all).

It concerns me.

Meā intērest.

It is your concern.

Tuā rēfert.

It is my business.

Meā rēfert.

(d) *Intērest* governs the genitive; but when a *personal pronoun* is to be used, the *possessive ablative* (*meā, tuā, &c.*) is used instead of the genitive (*mei, tui, &c.*). *Rēfert* is rarely used except with these ablative forms.

(585.) *Translate into English.*

Omnium intērest vērā (accus. pl.) dicere.—*Intērest meā rectē facere.*—*Nōn libet mīhi prāliū committēre.*—*Cāsāri nōn plācuit prāliū committēre.*—*Intērest meā hōc (accus.) scribēre.*—*Lēgātus pētēbat, ut sibi discēdēre licēret.*—*Expēdit reipublicæ (dat., 584, c.).*—*Tibi licet id facere.*—*Meā vōluntātē tibi id facere licet.*—*Helvētīi rōgant ut (548, a) Cāsaris vōluntātē id facere liceat.*—*Cāsārem oportet ad Ariovistum vērēre.*—*Ariovistus dixit; Cāsārem oportere (574, a) ad sē vērēre.*—*Plācuit Cāsāri ut dēcīmam lēgiōnem mittēret.*—*Āmicitiā immortalēm esse oportet.*—*Mīhi negligenti esse nōn licet.*—*Nōbīs vērēre licuit.*—*Libērōrum (65, R.) intērest pārentēs vivēre et salvōs esse.*—*Tibi ignāvō esse nōn licet.*—*Peccāre nēmīni licet.*—*Dēcet tē esse diligētem.*

(586.) *Translate into Latin.*

Boys ought to be modest (584, a).—You ought to do this.—You ought to have done this (*oportuit, with pres. inf., facerē*).—It becomes us to follow nature.—It becomes a young man to love his parents.—The general determined (= *it pleased the general*) to make the attack.—The Helvetians determined to send ambassadors to Cæsar.—You may do this (584, c).—You may not do this.—I do not choose (= *it is not agreeable to me*) to ride-on-horseback.—I do not choose to come to the city.—It is every-body's interest (= *it interests all*) to do rightly (584, d).—It is my business to keep (my) word (*fides*).—You are not allowed to come.—We ought to praise the brave

§ 19.

IRREGULAR VERBS. (XCVII.—CII.)

LESSON XCVII.

Pos-sūm, Pos-sē, Pōt-uī, to be able, (can).

(587.) *Pos-sūm* is compounded of *pōt-is*, *able*, and the verb *sūm*. The *t* before *s* is changed to *s*; *e. g.*, *pōt-sūm*, *pos-sūm*; *pōt-sunt*, *pos-sunt*.

INDICATIVE.						
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>pos-sūm.</i>	<i>pōt-ēs.</i>	<i>pōt-est.</i>	<i>pos-sūmūs.</i>	<i>pōt-estis.</i>	<i>pos-sunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> , <i>pōt-ērām</i> ; <i>Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uī</i> ; <i>Plup.</i> , <i>pōt-uērām</i> ; <i>Fut.</i> , <i>pōt-ērō</i> ; <i>Fut. Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uērō</i> : <i>all regular.</i>						
SUBJUNCTIVE.						
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>pos-sim.</i>	<i>pos-sis.</i>	<i>pos-sit.</i>	<i>pos-simūs.</i>	<i>pos-sitis.</i>	<i>pos-sint.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>pos-sēm.</i>	<i>pos-sēs.</i>	<i>pos-sēt.</i>	<i>pos-sēmūs.</i>	<i>pos-sētis.</i>	<i>pos-sent.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uērīm</i> ; <i>Plup.</i> , <i>pōt-uissēm</i> : <i>regular.</i>						
<i>Infīn. Pres.</i> , <i>pos-sē</i> ; <i>Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uissē</i> ; <i>Part.</i> , <i>pōt-ens</i> (used only as an adjective).						

EXERCISE.

(588.) Vocabulary.

Laughter, *risūs*, *us*, *m*.

To sow, *sērerē* (*sēv-*, *sāt-*).

Good deed, act of kindness, *bēnēficiūm*, *i*.

Reap, *mētērē* (*messū-*, *mess-*).

To do good to, to benefit, *prōdessē* (*prōfū-*, *prōt-sūm*); governs *dat*.

Hang over, *impēdērē*.

To render, *reddere* (*reddid-*, *reddid-*).

Influence, *grātiā*, *æ*.

Fraud, *fraus*, (*fraud*) *Is* (293).

Restrain, *rētīnere* (*rētīnu-*, *rētent-rētēnere*).

With equanimity, *æquō animō* (*abl*) = *with equable mind*.

(589.) Examples.

(a) *To be very powerful.*

Plūrimūm posse (= *to be very much able*).

(b) *Of the whole of Gaul, the Helvetians are the most powerful.*

Tōtīus Galliæ plūrimūm Helvētīi possunt.

(c) *A very few can keep off* (many). | Perpauci prōhibēre possunt

(d) *In the rest of Gaul.* | In reliquā Galliā.

[What is the rule for the Succession of Tenses? 551, 3.]

[What case do the compounds of *sum* (*prosum, desum, &c.*) govern 267, b.]

(590.) *Translate into English.*

Beātus esse sine virtūte nemo pōtest.—Per risum multum pōtēris cognoscere stultum.—Sere (*imperative*) bēnēficia, ut possis (548, a) mētēre fructum.—Viri bōni sūmus, si (iūs) prōsūmus, quibus possūmus.—Semper ita vivāmus (528, b) ut ratiōnem reddere possimus (553, b).—Mons altissimus impendit ut facile perpaucī prōhibēre possint (553, b).—Mons altissimus impendēbat ut facile perpauci prōhibēre possent.—Sine agricultūra hōmīnes vivere nōn possunt.—Nostri hostes consēqui nōn pōtuērunt, quōd equites insulam cāpere nōn pōtuērunt.—Divitiācus plūrimum dōmi (*at home*) atque in reliquā Galliā pōtērat (589, a).—Fraus est accipere quōd nōn pōtēris reddere.—Nōn est dūbium quān tōtius Galliæ plūrimum Helvētiī possint (558, b).—Germāni rētineri nōn pōtērant quān in nostros tela conjicerent (558, b, 5).—Cāsar pōtest iter Helvētiīs (54) dāre.—Cāsar nēgat sē posse iter Helvētiīs dāre.—Cāsar nēgat sē, mōre et exemplō (55, a) pōpuli Rōmāni, posse iter ulli (194, R.) per prōvinciam dāre.

(591.) *Translate into Latin.*

Men cannot be happy without virtue.—Without arts we cannot live.—Let us always so live (528, b) that (553, b) we may be able to die with equanimity.—Let us sow good-deeds, that we may be able to reap fruit.—The chief was very powerful, not only (nōn solūm) at home, but also (sēd etiam) in the rest of Gaul.—Cāsar denies that (574, c) he is able to give a passage to the ambassadors through the province.—Cāsar finds out (rēpērit) that the chief is very powerful (*accus. with inf.*).—Cāsar finds out that the chief is very powerful, not only at home, but also among the neighbouring states.—The enemy cannot be restrained from (quin) hurling darts against our soldiers.

LESSON XCVIII.

Vellē, to be willing.—Nollē, to be unwilling.—Mallē, to be more willing, to prefer.

(592.) Nōlo = nōn vōlo; mālo = māgis vōlo.

(a) INDICATIVE.						
Pres. {	vōlō.	vis.	vult.	vōlūmūs.	vultīs.	vōlunt.
	nōlō.	nonvis.	nonvult.	nōlūmūs.	nonvultīs.	nōlunt.
	mālō.	māvis.	māvult.	mālūmūs.	māvultīs.	mālunt.

Rem. The following tenses are regular: *Imperf.*, vōlēbām, nōlēbām, malēbām; *Perf.*, vōluī, nōluī, māluī; *Fut.*, vōlām, nōlām, malām; *Fut. Perf.*, vōluērō, nōluērō, māluērō.

(b) SUBJUNCTIVE.									
Pres.	{	vēl- nōl- māl-	}	īm.	īs.	īt.	īmūs.	ītīs.	int.
Imperf.	{	vell- noll- mall-	}	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.

Rem. 1. Regular are, *Perf.*, vōluērīm, nōluērīm, māluērīm; *Pluperf.*, vōluissēm, nōluissēm, māluissēm.

2. *Imperative*, nōli, nōlitō; nōlite, nōlitōtē, nōluntō. (*Imperative of vōlō and mālō wanting.*)

3. *Participles*, vōl-ens, nōl-ens.

4. *Infinitives*: *Pres.*, vellē, nollē, mallē; *Past*, vōluissē, nōluissē, māluissē.

EXERCISE.

(593.) Vocabulary.

To be empty, unoccupied, vēcārē
(āv-, āt-), *intrans.*

Neighbour, fīnlīmūs, ā, ūm (with
dat.).

Attentive, attentūs, ā, ūm.

Attentively, attentē (*adv.*).

Grant, concession, concessūs, ūs.

Content, contentūs, ā, ūm (with
abl.).

To seem, vīdērī (*pass. of vīdērē*).

To return, to come back, rēverti
(*revers-*), *dep.*

Old man, sēnex, (sen) īs (108, R. 1).

On the Ides of April, ād Idūs Aprī
īis (the 13th of April).

April, Aprīlīs, īs, m. (25, a).

Docile, dōcīlīs, ē (104).

(594.) Examples.

(a) *If they wish anything.* | Sī quīd vēlint.

(a) The verbs *velle, nolle, malle*, as transitive verbs, govern the accusative.

(b) *He is willing to hear.* | Vult audire.

(b) The verbs *vellë, nollë, mallë*, take the infinitive after them, as the complementary object (210).

(c) *Cæsar is not willing that that country should remain unoccupied.* | Nōn vult Cæsar eūm lōcum vācārë.

(c) The verbs *vellë, nollë, mallë*, admit the accusative with the infinitive after them.

[What is the rule for *principal* sentences in oratio obliqua? (574, a.) For *subordinate* sentences? (574, b).]

(595.) *Translate into English.*

Ego nōn eādem vōlo, sēnex (225, a) quæ vōlui ādōlescens.
—Sī vīs āmāri, āmā (*imperative*).—Nōn vult Cæsar eum lōcum vācārë.—Nōluit Cæsar eum lōcum, unde Helvētīi discessērāt, vācārë; nē Germāni finitīmī Gallīæ (54) essent (548, b).—Bōni hōmīnes, mīsēri quam imprōbi esse, mālunt.—Fēre libenter hōmīnes id quōd vōlunt, crēdunt.—Idem velle ēt idēm nolle, eā* firmā āmicitīā est.—Dōcīlis est quī attentē vult audire.—Quēm docīlem vōlīs fācēre, sīmūl attentum fāciās oportet (584, a, [F]).—Nīsī Cæsar Rōmānis (147) solūs impērārē vōluissēt (542, b), ā Brutō ēt Cassio nōn interfectus esset.—Ariovistus dixit sē regnum malle (574, a) Cæsarīs concessū (55, a) quān̄ Æduōrum bēnēficio hābēre.—Mālūmus, cūm virtūte, paucis (55, a) contentī essē, quām sīne virtūte multā hābēre.—Aristidēs bōnūs esse mālēbat quam vīdērī.—Hābet iracundiā hōc malī (186, a, R.); nōn vult rēgī.—Cæsar legātīs respondet (574, a) diēm sē ād dēliberandum (489) sumptūrum (esse); sī quīd vōlint (542, b, 2) ād Idūs Aprīlis revertantur (574, b).—Tāmēn Cæsar, ūt spātium intercēdērē possēt (548, a) dum milītēs convēnīrent, lēgātīs respondīt, diēm sē ād dēliberandum sumptūrum; sī quīd vellent, ād Idūs Aprīlis rēvertērentur.—Cæsar āb Helvētīis discedēre nōlēbat.—Omniā ērunt fācīliā sī vōlēis (542, b).—Ariovistus respondēt; sī quīd Cæsar a sē vōlit, illum ād se vēnīre oportēre.—Ariovistus respondit, sī quīd Cæsar a sē vōlet, illum ād sē vēnīre oportēre.

* Eā is in apposition with the clause *idem velle et idem nolle*.

LESSON XCIX.

Fero, Ferre, Tuli, Latum, to bear, bring.

(596.) (a) PARADIGM OF IRREGULAR FORMS.

INDICATIVE.						
<i>Pres. Act.</i>	fērō.	fers.	fert.	fērimūs.	fertis.	fērant.
<i>Pres. Pass.</i>	fērōr.	ferriſ.	fertūr.	fērimūr.	fērimīnī.	fērantūr.
INFINITIVE.						
<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pres., ferrē, to bear.</i>		<i>Perf., tūlissē, to have borne.</i>		<i>Fut., lātārus essē.</i>	
<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Pres., ferri, to be borne.</i>		<i>Perf., lātūs essē, to have been borne.</i>		<i>Fut., fērendum essē.</i>	
SUBJUNCTIVE.						
<i>Imperf. Act.</i>	ferr-	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētis.
<i>Imperf. Pass.</i>	fer-	ēr.	ēris (ē).	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.
ent.					entūr.	
IMPERATIVE.						
Singular.			Plural.			
<i>Active.</i>	2. fēr, ferto.		3. ferto.		2. fertē, fertōtē.	
<i>Passive.</i>	2. ferrē, fertōr.		3. fertōr.		2. fērimīnī.	
					3. fērantō.	
					3. fērantōr.	

(b) The remaining tenses are formed regularly from fēr-, the present stem; tūl-, the perfect stem; and lāt-, the supine stem.

1. From fēr-,

Imperfect active and passive, fērēbam, fērēbār.

Future active and passive, fēram, es; fērār, ērīs.

Participle active and passive, fērens, fērendūs. *Gerund*, fērendī, &c.

2. From tūl-,

Indicative perfect, tūlī; *pluperfect*, tūlērām; *future perfect*, tūlērō.

Subjunctive perfect, tūlērīm; *pluperfect*, tūlissēm.

3. From lāt-,

Participle passive, lātūs: hence all the passive forms, lātūs sūm, ērām, ēro, sīm, essem, &c.; lātūrus sum, sim, &c.

(c) The compounds are inflected in the same way; e. g., inferre, to bring against; intūli, illātūm;* infēro, infers, infert, &c.

(d) Tollo, tollērē, to raise, to take away, forms its perfect and supine from tūli, lātūm, viz., sustūli, sublātūm.

* in+lātum=illātūm, n being changed into l before l.

EXERCISE.

(597.) *Vocabulary.**Frequent*, crēbēr, brā, brum (77, a).*Rumour*, rāmōr, (rāmōr) is (319).*To bring to, bring*, afferrē (attūl-, allāt-, ad+ferre).*To bring together*, conferrē (contūl-, collāt-, con+ferre); *to betake one's self*, sē conferrē.*Poor, helpless*, inops, (inōp) is (in+ops), *adj.*, 107.*To prefer*, præferrē (tūl-, lāt-, præ+ferre); *governs acc. and dat.**Mean, sordid*, sordidūs, ā, ūm.*To bring against*, inferrē (tūl-, lāt-), *governs acc. and dat.**To make war upon one*, bellūm ālicui inferrē.*Especially*, præsertim.*Giant*, gīgas, (gīgant) is, m. (N. on p. 133).*To conspire, plot*, conjūrāre (āv-, āt-).*Impediment*, impēdimentum, ī.*Baggage*, impēdimentā, ōrum (*pl.*).*Whatever*, quicquid (n. of quisquis).(598.) *Examples.*

- (a) *It is the part,*
It is the duty,
It is the mark,
It is the characteristic,
of a wise man.

Est sapiētis (= it is of a wise man).

- (b) *The poets say.*
They say.

Poetæ fērunt.
Fērunt.

Ferunt is used for *they say*, and followed by the accusative with the infinitive.

(599.) *Translate into English.*

Eās rēs Cæsar grāviter fert.—Cæsar dicit, eās rēs sē grāviter ferrē.—Sāpiens bonā suā sēcūm (125, II., b) fert.—Terrā circā sōlem itā fertur ūt circā eām sīmul lūnā fēratur.—Crebrī rūmōres ād Cæsārem affērēbantur, omnēs Belgās contrā pōpūlum Rōmānum conjūrāre, obsīdes que inter nē dāre.—Helvētiī nostrōrum impētūs (*acc. pl.*) sustinēre nōn possunt.—Diūtius quā Helvētiī nostrōrum impētūs sustinēre nōn possent (563, b) altērī sē īn montem rēcēperunt, altērī ād impēdimentā ēt carrōs sē contūlērunt.—Helvētiī īn ūnum lōcum impēdimentā contūlērunt.—Fertē miserō (54) atque īnopī (54) auxiliūm.—Est sāpiētis (598, a) īnjūrias æquō animō ferre.—Est bonī (598, a), mīseris atque īnōpibus auxiliūm ferre.—Quid quæque (178, 6) nox aut diēs fērat, incertum

est.—Pēcūniam praeferre amicitiae sordidum est.—Amicitiam praeferre pēcūniāe honestum est.—Ariovistus pōpūlō Rōmānō bellum intūlit. Cæsari nunciātum est (578, c) Ariovistum pōpūlō Rōmānō bellum intūlisse.—Æquō animō fērāmus quicquid nobis accidat.—Fērenda est fortunā, præsertim quæ abest ā culpā.—Improbī ad vōluptātem fēruntur.—Poētā fērunť (598, b), gīgantēs bellum diis (62, R. 3) intūlisse.—Demetrius, quum patriā pulsus esset (563, b) ad Ptōlēmæum rēgem sē contūlit.—Catilinæ sōciī armā contrā patriām fērēbant.—Dōmōs suās Helvētiī reliquērunť, ut tōtī (194, R. 1) Galliæ bellum inferrent (548, a).

LESSON C.

Fieri, to become, to be done, to happen.—Edere, or Esse, to eat.

1. Fieri.

(600.) Fieri forms the passive of fācērē, to make, to do. The tenses are formed regularly with the endings of the 4th conjugation, except the infinitive and the imperfect subjunctive.

(INDICATIVE.)			
Pres.,	fi-o, fi-s, fi-t, &c.	Imperf.,	fiēbām, bās, &c.
Fut.,	fiām, fiēs, &c.	Perf.,	factūs sum, ē, est, &c.
Pluperf.,	factūs ērām, ērās, &c.	Fut. Perf.,	factūs ēro, ēris, &c.
(SUBJUNCTIVE.)			
Pres.,	fiām, fiās, &c.	Imperf.,	fiērēm, fiērēs, &c.
(INFINITIVE.)			
Pres.,	fiērī ;	Perf.,	factūs, ā, ūm, esse ;
		Fut.,	factum irī, or futurūm esse, or fōrē.
(PARTICIPLES.)			
Pres. wanting ;	Perf.,	factūs ;	Fut., fāciendūs.

Rem. Observe that in all the forms of this verb except fieri and fierēm, rēs, &c., the i is long, contrary to the general rule that a vowel before another is short.

2. Ēdērē (essē).

(601.) Ēdērē (or essē) to eat, forms all the tenses regularly with the endings of the third conjugation ; but it has, in

addition, a few forms similar to those of *essē*, *to be*, which are shown in the following table :

INDIC. Pres.	{	edo.	ēdis or ēs.	edit or est.	ēdimūs.	editis or estis.	edunt.
		ēdērēm or essēm.	ēdērēs or essēs.	ēdērēt or essēt.	ēdērēmūs or essēmūs.	ēdērētis or essētis.	ēdērent or essent.
SUBJ. Imperf.	{						
IMPERATIVE.	{	ēdē or ēs.	ēdīto or esto.	ēditē or este.	editōtē or estōtē.	ēdunto.	

Rem. *ēs*, from *esse*, *to be*, is short; from *esse*, *to eat*, it is long (*ēs*).

EXERCISE.

(602.) Vocabulary.

To wander, *vāgārī* (*dep.*).

Fewness, *small number*, *paucitās*, (*paucitāt*) *is* (293).

To be born, *nasci* (*nāt.*), *dep.*

To admonish, *admōnērē* (*ad+ mō- nērē*, *mōnū*, *mōnīt.*).

Among, *apud* (*prep.*, *acc.*).

According to, *secundū* (*prep.*, *acc.*).

Less, *minus* (*adv.*).

Sickness, *sēgritudo*, (*sēgritūdīn*) *is* (340).

To eat up, *corrode*, *exēdere* (*ex+ ēdērē*).

Fate, *fātū*, *I.*

Perpetual, *perpētūū*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Poor, *paupēr*, (*paupēr*) *is* (107).

To drink, *bibēre* (*bīb.*, *bībīt.*).

(603.) Examples.

(a) *It happens* (*it is brought to pass*) *that they wander less widely.*

*Fī*t, *ūt* *minus* *latē* *vāgen- tur.*

Ut with subjunctive, expressing a *consequence*, frequently follows *fī*t.

(b) *He was informed* (= *he was made more certain*).

Certior factus est (*may be followed by acc. with infin.*).

(c) *Cicero was made consul.*

Cicēro consul factus est.

The verb *fieri* admits a *predicate-nominative* after it.

(d) *Nothing could be done.*

Nihil fieri *pōtērat.*

[Repeat the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(604.) Translate into English.

*His rēbus fī*t, *ut* *Helvētī* *minus* *latē* *vāgentur* (603, a).—*His rēbus fīe*bat, *ut* *Helvētī* *minus* *latē* *vāgārentur.*—*His rēbus fī*t *ut* *Helvētī* *minus* *fācīle* *finītū*mis *bellum* *infernē* *pos-* *sint.*—*Dē* *Cāsāris* *adventū* *Ædū* *certiōres* *facti* *sunt.*—*Cæ-*

sar, litteris (55, a) Labiēnī certior fī ē bat, omnes Belgas con-
trā pōpūlum Rōmānum conjūrārē, obsīdesque inter sē dāre.—
Impērātor dixit, id fī ē rī posse.—Nostrōrum propter paucitā-
tem nīhil fī ē rī pōtērat.—Labiēnus praelium commisit, ut un-
dīque unō tempōrē (118, II., c) in hostes impētūs fī ē rēt.—
Nemo fīt cāsū (55, a) bōnūs.—Poētā nascitur, nōn fīt.—Si
fatō (55, a) omniā fiunt (542, b, 1), nihil nos admōnēre pōtest
ut cautiōres fī ā mus.—Contrā vim sīne vī nīhil fī ē rī pōtest.
—Diligentiā (55, a) omniā fiunt fāciliā (603, c).—Āpud vētē-
rēs Rōmānos, ex āgricōlis interdum fī ē bant consūlēs; ita
Cincinnatiūs consul (603, c) factus est.—Omniā quā se-
cundūm nātūrām fiunt, hābendā sunt (502) in bōnīs.*—
Saepe quī ex paupēribus divītes fiunt, divitiis (*abl.*, 316, b)
ūtī nesciunt.—Vivīmus ut ē d ā mus; nōn ē d ī mus ut vī-
vāmūs.—Ē d ē re oportet ut vivāmus, nōn vivēre ut ē d ā mus.
—E s s ē (601) oportet ut vivās, nōn vivēre ut ē d ā s.—Perpētūā
curā ānīmum āvārī ex est.—Bibē, ē s.—Bibīte, est ē—
Āgrītūdo ānīmum ex est.

LESSON CI.

Ire, to go.—*Quire, to be able (can).*—*Nequire, to be unable (cannot).*

(605.) *Eō, irē, ivī, itūm, to go*, mostly follows the 4th con-
jugation; but is irregular in the present tense, gerund, and su-
pine, as appears by the following

PARADIGM.

TENSES.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	ēō, is, it, imūs, itīs, eunt.	ēām, ēās, ēāt, ēāmūs, ēātīs, ēant.		
<i>Imperf.</i>	ibām, ibās, ibat, &c.	irēm, irēs, irēt, &c.		
<i>Fut.</i>	ibō, ibīs, &c. . . . ibunt.	itūrūs, sīm, sis, sīt, &c.		
<i>Perf.</i>	ivī or iī, ivistī, ivīt or iit, &c.	ivērīm, ivērīs, ivērīt, &c.		
<i>Pluperf.</i>	ivērām, ivērās, &c.	ivissēm, ivissēs, ivissēt, &c.		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	ivērō, ivērīs, &c.			
IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	SUPINE.	PARTICIPLE.	GERUND.
ī, itō, itō.	<i>Pres.</i> , irē.	itūm.	<i>Pres.</i> , iens (euntīs).	eundī.
itē, itōtē.	<i>Perf.</i> , ivissē or issē.	itā.	<i>Fut.</i> , itūrūs, ā, ūm.	eundō, &c.
euntō.	<i>Fut.</i> , itūrūm essē.		<i>Verbal</i> , eundūs, ā, ūm.	

* *Habendā sunt in bōnīs* = *should be reckoned among blessings.*

Rem. 1. In the same manner the compounds are formed ; e. g., *exirĕ*, *abirĕ*, &c. ; but they generally drop the *v* in the perfect-stem ; thus, *ĕb-i*, *ab-istĭ*, *ab-iit*, *abissĕ*, *abissĕm*, &c.

2. Some of the compounds obtain a *transitive* force, and then take a passive form like other transitive verbs ; e. g., *præterirĕ*, *to pass by* ; *prætĕreor*, *I am passed by*, &c.

(606.) *Queo*, *I can*, *I am able* ; *nĕqueo*, *I cannot*, *I am unable*, are conjugated like *eo*, *I go* ; but they rarely occur except in the present tense.

EXERCISE.

(607.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To go out</i> , <i>exirĕ</i> (<i>ex</i> + <i>irĕ</i>). <i>Takes</i>	<i>By what route?</i> <i>quĕ itinerĕ</i> (<i>abl.</i>
<i>abl.</i> , <i>with or without prep. dĕ</i> .	<i>55, a</i>).
<i>To return</i> , <i>rĕdirĕ</i> (<i>re</i> + <i>irĕ</i> ; <i>d</i> inserted for euphony).	<i>To perish</i> , <i>pĕrirĕ</i> (<i>pĕr</i> + <i>irĕ</i>).
<i>To undergo</i> , <i>sŭbirĕ</i> (<i>sub</i> + <i>irĕ</i>) ; governs <i>accus</i> .	<i>Manfully</i> , <i>virilĭtĕr</i> (215, 2).
<i>A return</i> , <i>returning</i> , <i>rĕditio</i> , (<i>rĕdĭtĭo</i>) <i>is</i> (333, R.).	<i>Tell me</i> , <i>dic</i> (<i>imperat. of dicĕrĕ</i>).
<i>Ready</i> , <i>prepared</i> , <i>pĕrātŭs</i> , <i>ĕ</i> , <i>ŭm</i> (<i>part. of pĕrārĕ</i>).	<i>Whether—or</i> , <i>utrum—ĕn</i> .
<i>To pass over</i> , <i>transirĕ</i> (<i>trans</i> + <i>irĕ</i>).	<i>Taken away</i> , <i>sublatŭs</i> , <i>ĕ</i> , <i>ŭm</i> (<i>part. pass. of tollĕrĕ</i>) (596, d).
<i>Before</i> , <i>præ</i> , <i>adv.</i> (<i>or prep. with abl.</i>).	<i>Of Zurich</i> , <i>Tigurinŭs</i> , <i>ĕ</i> , <i>ŭm</i> .
<i>Of Cannæ</i> , <i>Cannensis</i> , <i>ĕ</i> (104).	<i>To suffer</i> , <i>allow</i> , <i>pĕtĭ</i> (<i>pass.</i>), <i>dep.</i>
<i>Whither</i> , <i>quĕ</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>To fight</i> , <i>dĕcertāre</i> (<i>av.</i> , <i>ĕt.</i>).
	<i>To be sick</i> , <i>ęgrĕtāre</i> (<i>av.</i> , <i>ĕt.</i>).
	<i>Light</i> , <i>lux</i> , (<i>lŭc</i>) <i>is</i> (293).

 Recollect, *they went* = *ivĕrunt* or *iĕrunt*.

he departed = *ĕbiit*, rather than *ĕbĭvit* ; and so of other compounds.

[Give the Rule for *ŭt* (*purpose*), 548, a].

(608.) *Translate into English.*

Helvĕtĭi dĕ finĭbus ſuis exeunt.—*Orgĕtorix Helvĕtĭis (dat.) persuadet, ut dĕ finĭbus ſuis exeant*.—*Orgĕtorix Helvĕtĭis persuasit, ut dĕ finĭbus ſuis cum omnĭbus copiis (property) exĭrent*.—*Dĕmum* (113, III., R.) *rĕdeunt*.—*Omnĭa pĕriculā ſubeunt*.—*Helvĕtĭi, dĕmum reditĭonis ſpĕ ſublātā* (456), *pĕratiĕres ad omnĭa pĕriculā ſubeundā* (496) *ĕrant*.—*Cæsar in Āſiam transiit*.—*Pompeius in Āſiam transiĕrat*.—*Dĕmĕ (abl.) exirĕ poſſunt*.—*Ērant omnĭnĕ itĭnĕra duĕ, quĭbus itĭnĕribus dĕmĕ exire poſſent*.—*Æduĭ per finĕs ſuos Helvĕtĭos irĕ pĕtiuntur*.—*Pāgĕs Tigurinŭs dĕmĕ exi*

erat.—Hic pāgus ūnus, quum dōmō exisset, L. Cassium, consulem, interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jūgum miserat.—Helvētī in eām partem ibunt, ubi Cæsar constituerit.—Quo itinere (55, a) hostēs ierunt?—Eodē itinere, quō hostes ierant, Cæsar ad eōs contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit.—Ibam fortē Viā Sacrā (55, a) sicut meus est mōs.—I præ, ego sequar.—Ex pugna Cannensi admodum pauci Rōmāni domum redierunt.—I, quō te fortunā vocet (534, d).—Quicquid transiit temporis (186, a, *Rule*) perit.—Quidam ferrō (55, a) decertare acerrimē possunt, ægrōtārē virilitēr nōn queunt.—Sine lucē cōlōrēs esse nequeunt.—Pompeius perit.—Dic utrum queās an nequeās mēcum irē.—Risus interdū ita repentē erumpit, ut eām cūpientes (442, c) tēnērē nequeamus (553, b, R.).

§ 20.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

LESSON CII.

Aio, Inquam, Novi, Memini, Cæpi, Odi.

(609.) *Aið*, *I say, say yes, affirm*, is used in very few tenses.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	aio.	ais.	ait.	—	—	aiunt.
<i>Ind. Imperf.</i>	aiëbām.	-bas.	-bāt.	-bāmūs.	batīs.	bant.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	—	aiās.	aiāt.	—	—	aiant.
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	aiens (aientis) used only as <i>adject.</i>					

(610.) *Inquām*, *I say*, is used *between* the words of a quotation.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	inquam.	inquis.	inquit.	inquimus.	inquiant.
<i>Ind. Imperf.</i>	—	—	inquirebāt or inquirebat.	—	inquirebant.
<i>Ind. Fut.</i>	—	inquireēs.	inquiet.	—	—
<i>Ind. Perf.</i>	—	inquisti.	inquit.	—	—
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	inquiam.	as.	at.	atīs.	ant.

(611.) *Nōvī*, *I know*; *mēmīnī*, *I remember*; *cæpī*, *I have begun*, *I began*; *ōdī*, *I hate*, are perfect forms with present meanings. All the tenses made on the perfect stem exist, regularly formed.

INFINITIVE.			
nōvissē, to know.	mēmīnissē, to remember.	cæpissē, to have begun.	ōdissē, to hate.
INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.			
nōv-	{ i, isti, it, &c.	Ind. Pres.,	<i>I know.</i>
memin-	{ ēram, ēras, ērāt, &c.	Ind. Past,	<i>I remembered.</i>
cæp-	{ ērō, ēris, ērit, &c.	Ind. Fut.,	<i>I shall begin.</i>
od-	{ ērim, ēris, ērit, &c.	Subj. Pres.,	<i>I may know.</i>
	{ issēm, issēs, issēt, &c.	Subj. Past,	<i>I might hate.</i>
IMPERATIVE, mēmentō, mēmentōtē (the others wanting).			

☞ Recollect, *nōvī* = *I know* (not *I have known*); *nōveram*, *I knew* (not *I had known*), &c.; and so of the others. But *cæpī*, *nōvī*, &c. may be used as *perf. pres.*, = *I have known, I have begun*, &c.

EXERCISE.

(612.) *Vocabulary.*

To fall back, to give way, pēdem
rēferrē (= to draw back the foot).
Young, raw, inexperienced, tiro, (tī-
rōn) is (107).
Surly, fērōcūlūs, ā, ūm.
Lucius Varius, L. Varius, l.
Forgetful, immēmor, (immēmor) is
(107); governs genit.
Calmly, quietly, tranquillitēr (tran-
quill-us, 215, 2, a).

Cruelty, sœvitiā, æ.
Demonax, Demōnax, (act) is (a phī-
losopher of Hadrian's time).
To philosophize, phīlōsōphārī (dep.).
In no way, by no means, nullō mōdō
(abl.).
Conscious, conscius, ā, ūm (with dat.
of person, gen. of thing).
Livy, Līvius, l.

(613.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>(a) <i>He exhorts them to re-</i>
 <i>member.</i></p> <p>(b) <i>Aristides, when asked</i>
 <i>what was just, replied,</i>
 <i>"Not to covet what belongs</i>
 <i>to others."</i></p> | <p><i>Hortātūr eōs ut mēmīnē-</i>
 <i>rint.</i></p> <p><i>Aristīdes interrōgātus quīd</i>
 <i>justum esset? "Āliēnā,"</i>
 <i>inquīt, "nōn concupiscēre"</i>
 <i>(= "Not to covet," said he,</i>
 <i>"what," &c.).</i></p> |
|---|--|

 *Inquam* is used in quoting the very *words* of another (*oratio recta*), and is always placed *among* the words quoted (as "*said he*" in English). *Ait* is used generally in quoting the *sense*, not the exact words of another (*oratio obliqua*).

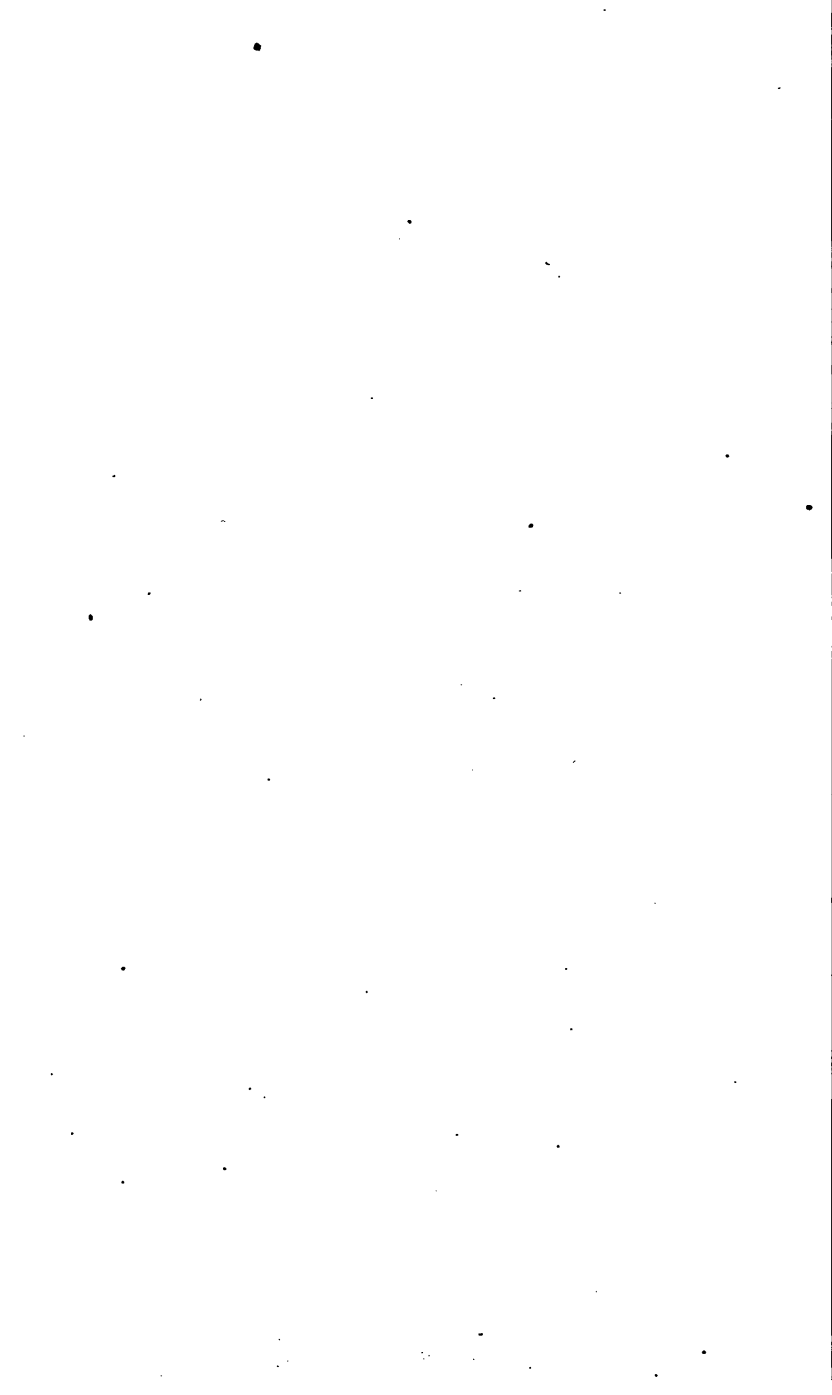
- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>(c) <i>He began to build the</i>
 <i>city.</i></p> <p><i>The city began to be built.</i></p> | <p><i>Urbēm ædificāre cœpit.</i></p> <p><i>Urbs ædificārī cœptā est.</i></p> |
|---|--|

 If a *passive* infinitive is used with the word *begin*, you must employ the passive form, *cœptus sum*, instead of *cœpi*; *cœptus eram*, instead of *cœperam*, &c.

(614.) *Translate into English.*

Mīlites, vulnēribus dēfessī, pēdem rēferre cœperunt.—
"Quīd tū," inquīt Labiēnus, "mīles tīro (voc.) tam fērōcū-
lus ēs?" Tum mīles: "Nōn sum," inquīt, "tīro, Labiēnē,
sēd dē dēcimā lēgiōnē vētērānus."—Helvētīi nostrōs lācessēre
cœperunt.—Hostēs, quī in montem sēsē rēcēperant, prælīum
rēintegrāre cœperunt.—Cæsar dīcit (574, a), īd fierī possē,
sī Æduī fīnitimōrum āgros pōpulārī cœperint (574, b).—

Milites in mūrum lāpīdes jācēre cœpērunt.—Undīque in mūrum lāpīdes jācī (613, c, ) cœptī sunt.—Dux militēs hortātur ut vētēris gloriæ mēmīnerint.—Lēgatī dixerunt sē portūs (*accus. pl.*) insūlasque nōviessē.—Multī tē ōdērunt, sī tē solum āmās.—Germānī sūperbiam L. Varii ēt sāvītiam ōdissē cœpērant.—Omnēs immēmōrem bēnēficiū ōdērunt.—Tullus Hostilius, ut Livius ait, fērōcior ētiam Rōmūlō (360, c) fuit.—Sōcrātēs interrōgātus quīnām hōmīnes tranquilīter vivērent (534, e)? “Quī,” inquīt, “nullius turpītūdīnis sibi conscīi sunt.”—Demōnax interrōgātus, quando cœpisset (534, e) phīlōsōphārī? “Tum,” inquīt, “cum cognoscēre meipsum (159) cœpī.”—Hannībal Rōmānos sic ōdērat, ut in grātiam cum illis rēdire nullō mōdō (55, a) posset (553, b, R.).—Is mīser est, quem omnēs bōni ōdērunt.—Nōvīmus Aristīdis justītiā, nōvīmus Sōcrātis sāpientiam.—Nōn āmābīmus bōnōs mōres, sī nōn ōdērīmus mālōs.



PART III.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

§ 1. LETTERS, QUANTITY, &c.

- (615.) 1. THE letters are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*.
2. Six are *vowels*, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y* : the remaining nineteen are *consonants*.
3. The consonants are divided into

- (a) *Liquids*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r* ;
- (b) *Spirants*, *h*, *s*, *j* ;
- (c) *Mutes* ; the remaining consonants, among which there are
 - (1) *c-sounds*, *c*, *g* (*ch*) ; *q* ;
 - (2) *p-sounds*, *b*, *p* (*ph*) ;
 - (3) *t-sounds*, *d*, *t* (*th*) ;
 - (4) Double consonants, *x*, *z*.

4. The diphthongs are, *au*, *eu*, *ae*, *oe* (rare, *ei*, *oi*, *ui*).

(616.) GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- (1) A vowel before another is *short* ; e. g., *vīa*.
- (2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position* ; e. g., *amānt*.

[As a mute followed by a liquid causes some exceptions to this rule, we shall mark the quantity, in that case, *doubtful* ; thus, *āgri*.]

- (3) All diphthongs are *long* ; e. g., *mens æ*, *āu-rum*.
- (4) Contracted syllables are *long* ; e. g., *cōgo* (*coago*).

§ 2. NOUN.

(617.) 1. The *noun* is the name of any object (person or thing). Nouns are *proper* (13, a), *common* (13, b), or *abstract* (13, c).

2. There are *three* genders, *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter* : *two* numbers, *singular* and *plural* : *six* cases, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, and *ablative* : and *five* declensions.

3. GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

Males, rivers, winds, and mountains most we find
 With *months* and *nations* **MASCULINE** declined ;
 But *females, cities, countries, trees* we name,
 As **FEMININE** ; most *islands, too, the same*.
COMMON are such as *both* the genders take,
 And **NEUTER** all words undeclined we make.

[There are many exceptions from these rules, which must be learned by observation.]

First Declension.—(Genitive-ending æ.)

(618.)

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ā.	æ.	æ.	ām.	ā.
Plur.	æ.	ārūm.	īs.	ās.	īs.

Rem. 1. *Quantity*.—Final syllables all long but ā, nom. and voc.; ām, acc.; and ūm, gen. plur.

2. *Gender*.—Nouns of first declension are *feminine*, except names of male beings, &c.

Second Declension.—(Genitive-ending ī.)

(619.) **MASCULINE** nouns of second declension have nominative-ending ūs ; neuter nouns, ūm.

(a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ūs.	ī.	ō.	ūm.	ē.	ō.
Plur.	ī.	ōrūm.	īs.	ōs.	ī.	īs.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	N., A., V.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
Sing.	ūm.	ī.	ō.
Plur.	ā.	ōrūm.	īs.

Fourth Declension.—(Genitive-ending ūs.)(621.) **MASCULINE** nominative-ending ūs ; *neuter* nominative-ending ū.

(a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ūs.	ūs.	ūi.	ūm.	ū.
Plur.	ūs.	ūūm.	ībūs.	ūs.	ībūs.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	Nom., Acc., Voc.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
Sing.	ū.	ūs, or ū.	ū.
Plur.	ūū.	ūūm.	ībūs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Ūs long, except in nom. sing., and dat. and abl. plur.; ū and i long always.

2. *Genders.*—Only the following nouns are feminine:

Ācūs, mănūs, trībūs,
Dōmūs, porticūs, and Īdūs.

3. *Peculiar Case-ending.*—The following take ūbūs in dat. and abl. plur., instead of ībūs:

Arcūs, ācūs, portūs, vēdū,
Ficus, lācūs, artūs,
Spēcūs, quercūs, also pēcū,
Trībūs too, and partūs.

4. Dōmūs, *house*, is thus declined:

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	dom-ūs.	{ -ūs. -ī.	-ūi.	-ūm.	-ū.
Plur.	dom-ūs.	{ -ūūm. -ōrūm.	-ībūs.	{ -ūs. -ūs (rarely).	-ībūs.

Obs. The genitive dōmī is used only in the sense of *at home*, *at my house*.

Fifth Declension.—(Genitive-ending eī.)

(622.) **THERE** are but few nouns of this declension: all feminine except *dīēs*, *day*, and *merīdīēs*, *midday*; and even *dīēs* is feminine in singular when it means a *fixed day*.

(623.)

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ēs.	ēī.	ēī.	ēm.	ē.
Plur.	ēs.	ērūm.	ēbūs.	ēs.	ēbūs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—The e in eī is *long* when a vowel stands before it, as dī-ē-ī; *short* when a consonant, as fid-ē-ī.

2. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are wanting in all nouns of this declension except *rēs*, *dīēs*, *spēcīēs*.

§ 3. ADJECTIVE

(624.) THE *adjective* expresses a quality or property belonging to an object; *e. g.*, *good, small, white, &c.* In Latin, adjectives are divided into three classes, according to their endings.

1. CLASS I. (us, a, um).

(625.) These take the *feminine*-ending of first declension of nouns; *masculine* and *neuter* endings of the second.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
N.	Masc. ūs.	Fem. ā.	Neut. ūm.	N.	Masc. ī.	Fem. ae.	Neut. ā.
G.	ī.	ae.	ī.	G.	ōrūm.	ārūm.	ōrūm.
D.	ō.	ae.	ō.	D.	īs.	īs.	īs.
A.	ūm.	ām.	ūm.	A.	ōs.	ās.	ā.
V.	ē.	ā.	ūm.	V.	ī.	ae.	ā.
A.	ō.	ā.	ō.	A.	īs.	īs.	īs.

(2.) *Stems in er.*—Adjectives whose stem ends in *er* reject *ūs* and *ē* in nom. and voc.

(a) Most of them also drop *ē* of the nom. in the other cases; *e. g.* *beautiful, pulchēr.*

Nom.	Pulchēr,	pulchrā,	pulchrūm.
Gen.	Pulchrī,	pulchræ,	pulchrī, &c.

(b) But *aspēr, lācēr, libēr, mīser, prospēr, tēnēr*, retain the *ē*; *e. g.*

Nom.	Mīser,	mīsērā	mīsērūm.
Gen.	Mīsērī,	mīsēræ,	mīsērī, &c.

(3.) *Peculiar Case-endings.*—Some adjectives, numerals, and adjective pronouns have gen., iūs, and dat., ī; *e. g.*, *unūs, unīūs, unī*. [They are *unūs, tōtūs, solūs, nullūs, ullūs, aliūs, altēr, utēr, neutēr, āterquē.*]

2. CLASS II. (Two Endings).

(626.) Adjectives of the *second class* have *īs* in the nominative singular for masculine and feminine ending, and *ē* for neuter.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
N., V.	Masc. īs.	Fem. īs.	Neut. ē.	N., V.	Masc. ēs.	Fem. ēs.	Neut. īā.
G.	īs.	īs.	īs.	G.	īūm.	īūm.	īūm.
D.	ī.	ī.	ī.	D.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs.
Acc.	ēm.	ēm.	ē.	Acc.	ēs.	ēs.	īā.
Abl.	ī.	ī.	ī.	Abl.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs.

(2.) Some adjectives of this class take *ēr* for the ending of the nom. sing. masc. instead of *īs*; *e. g.*, *acēr, ācrīs, ācrē.*

- (3.) The ablative has *ē* instead of *i* in *juvénis*, *youth*; *edīlis*, *edile*. The genitive plural has *ūm* instead of *iūm* in *cēlēr* *swift*.

3. CLASS III. (One Ending).

- (627.) (1.) Adjectives of the *third class* have but *one* ending in the nominative for all three genders; e. g., *happy*, *fēlix* (m., f., n.); *bold*, *audax* (m., f., n.). Participles in *ns* fall under this class.
- (2.) The case-endings are those of nouns of third declension (see paradigm, 108). They have *abl. i* generally, but *ē* in *pauper*, *senex*, and a few others (108, R. 1); neut. plur., *iā*; gen. plur., *iām*. *Vētūs* has nom. plur., *vētēr-ā*, gen. plur., *vētēr-ūm*.

For participles, *abl., ē* }
 " adjectives, *abl., i* } is more common.

4. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

- (628.) *Comparative*-ending, *iōr*; *superlative*, *issimūs*.

Brave, fort-*is*, fort-*iōr*, fort-*issimūs*.
Hard, dār-*ūs*, dār-*iōr*, dār-*issimūs*.

Rem. The *comparative* is declined (after third declension of nouns) thus :

Nom. Dār-*iōr*, dār-*iōr*, dār-*ūs*.
 Gen. Dār-*iōr-is*, dār-*iōr-is*, dār-*iōr-is*, &c. (See 358.)

- (629.) Adjectives whose stems end in *r* have *rimūs* for *superlative*-ending (instead of *issimūs*); e. g.,

Mis-*ēr*, mis-*ēr-iōr*, mis-*ēr-rimūs*.
 Pulch-*ēr*, pulch-*ēr-iōr*, pulch-*ēr-rimūs*.

- (630.) Several adjectives whose stem ends in *l* have *limūs* for *superlative*-ending; e. g.,

Fācīl-*is*, fācīl-*iōr*, fācīl-*limūs*.

They are

Sīmīlīs, dissīmīlīs, and fācīlīs;
 Hāmīlīs, difficīlīs, and grācīlīs.

5. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

- (631.) *Irregulars*.

<i>Good.</i>	bōnūs.	mēliōr.	optimūs.
<i>Bad.</i>	mālūs.	pējōr.	pessimūs.
<i>Great.</i>	magnūs.	mājōr.	maximūs.
<i>Much.</i>	multūs.	{ plūs (n. sing.).	plūrimūs.
<i>Small.</i>	parvūs.	{ plūrēs, ā (pl.).	
<i>Old.</i>	senex.	mīnōr.	mīnimūs.
<i>Young.</i>	juvénis.	seniōr.	(wanting.)
<i>Outward.</i>	extēriūs.	jūniōr.	(wanting.)
		exteriōr.	extrēmūs.
<i>Below.</i>	infērūs.	infēriōr.	{ infimūs.
			{ imūs.
<i>Above.</i>	sūpērūs.	sūperiōr.	{ suprēmūs.
			{ summūs.
<i>Hind.</i>	postērūs.	postēriōr.	postremūs.

(632.) *Defectives.*—[Comparative and Superlative formed from a Preposition, Adverb, or Obsolete Word.]

(on this side, citra.)	nearer, cîterîor.	nearest, cîmîmîs.
(within, intra.)	inner, înterîor.	inmost, întîmîs.
(beyond, ultra.)	further, ultîrior.	{ furthest, } ultîmîs.
		{ last, }
(near, prîpe.)	nearer, prîpiîor.	{ nearest, } proxîmîs.
		{ next, }
(bad, deter.)	worse, dêteriîor.	worst, dêterrîmîs.
	former, priîor.	first, primîs.
	swifter, ôciîor.	swiftest, ôcissîmîs.

Rem. 1. Rich, dīves; richer, { dītiōr, dīvītiōr; richest, { dītissīmūs. dīvītissīmūs.

[*Cæsar* uses the shorter form.]

2. Compound adjectives in *dīcūs*, *fīcūs*, *vōlūs*, add *entiōr* for the comparative and *entissimūs* for the superlative; e. g.,

Bēnēvol-ūs, bēnēvol-entiōr, bēnēvol-entissīmūs.

3. Adjectives whose stem ends in a *vowel* prefix to the *positive* *māgis*, *more*, for the *comparative*, and *maximē*, *most*, for the *superlative*.

Pious, pīus, māģis pīus, maxīmē pīus.

 $\dot{Y}$

§ 4. NUMERALS.

(633.) NUMERALS are divided into the following classes, of which the first three are adjectives, the fourth adverbs.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
<i>One, two, &c.</i>	<i>First, second, &c.</i>	<i>One by one, &c.</i>	<i>Once, twice, &c.</i>
1 Unū.	Primū.	Singulī.	Sēmēl.
2 Duō.	Sēcundū.	Binī.	Bis.
3 Trēs.	Tertiū.	Ternī.	Tēr.
4 Quattuor.	Quartū.	Quāternī.	Quātēr.
5 Quinquē.	Quintū.	Quinī.	Quinquies.
6 Sex.	Sextū.	Sēnī.	Sēxties.
7 Septēm.	Septimū.	Septēnī.	Sēpties.
8 Octō.	Octāvū.	Octōnī.	Octies.
9 Nōvem.	Nōnū.	Novēnī.	Nōvies.
10 Dēcēm.	Dēcimū.	Dēnī.	Dēcies.
11 Undēcim.	Undēcimū.	Undēnī.	Undēcies.
12 Duōdēcim.	Duōdēcimū.	Duōdēnī.	Duōdēcies.
13 Trēdēcim. (Im.	Tertiū.	Ternī.	Trēdēcies.
14 Quattuordēc.	Quartū.	Quāternī.	Quātūrdēcies.
15 Quindēcim.	Quintū.	Quinī.	Quindēcies.
16 Sexdēcim.	Sextū.	Sēnī.	Sēdēcies.
17 Septendēcim.	Septimū.	Septēnī.	Dēcies & sēpties.
18 Octodēcim.	Octāvū.	Octōnī.	Duōdēvicies.
19 Nōvendēcim.	Nōnū.	Novēnī.	Undevicies.
20 Viginī.	Vicēsīmū.	Vicēnī.	Vicies.
30 Triginī.	Tricēsīmū.	Tricēnī.	Tricies.
40 Quādrāginī.	Quādrāgēsīmū.	Quādrāgēnī.	Quādrāgies.
50 Quinquāginī.	Quinquāgēsīmū.	Quinquāgēnī.	Quinquāgies.
60 Sexāginī.	Sexāgēsīmū.	Sēxāgēnī.	Sēxāgies.
70 Septuāginī.	Septuāgēsīmū.	Sēptuāgēnī.	Sēptuāgies.
80 Octōginī.	Octōgēsīmū.	Octōgēnī.	Octōgies.
90 Nōnāginī.	Nōnāgēsīmū.	Nōnāgēnī.	Nōnāgies.
100 Centum.	Centēsīmū.	Cēntēnī.	Cēnties.
200 Ducentī.	Dūcentēsīmū.	Dūcentēnī.	Dūcenties.
300 Trecentī.	Trēcēntēsīmū.	Trēcēntēnī.	Trēcēnties.
400 Quādringentī.	Quādringentēsīmū.	Quādringentēnī.	Quādringēnties.
500 Quingentī.	Quingentēsīmū.	Quingentēnī.	Quingēnties.
600 Sexcentī.	Sexcentēsīmū.	Sēxcentēnī.	Sēxcenties.
700 Septingentī.	Septingentēsīmū.	Sēptingentēnī.	Sēptingēnties.
800 Octingentī.	Octingentēsīmū.	Octingentēnī.	Octingēnties.
900 Noningentī.	Nongentēsīmū.	Nōngentēnī.	Nōngēnties.
1000 Millē.	Millēsīmū.	Millēnī.	Millies.

For the declension of unus, duo, and tres, see 194.

Ducentī, and all the compounds of centī, are declined like the plural of bonus.

Millia, thousands, the plural of mille, is declined like a neuter noun of the third declension.

Ordinal numbers are declined like bonus.

Distributives, like the plural of bonus.

All the rest are undeclinable.

In the combination of cardinal numbers, from twenty to one hundred, the smaller with et, or the larger without et, precedes; as quattuor et viginti, or viginti quattuor. Above one hundred the larger number precedes, with or without et; as centum et unus, or centum unus.

§ 5. PRONOUN.

(634.) THE *pronoun* is a substitute for the noun; e. g., *he, she, it, may* be substitutes for *man, woman, book*.

1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(625.) (a) *Substantive Personal Pronouns* are so called because used as substantives, not as adjectives.

SINGULAR.					PLURAL.			
	N.	G.	D.	Acc., Abl.		N., A.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
<i>I.</i>	эгö.	мёй.	миһй.	мё.	<i>We.</i>	но́с.	но́стрүм, or но́стри.	но́бйс.
<i>Thou.</i>	тү.	түй.	тиһй.	тё.	<i>You.</i>	вös.	вө́стрүм, or вө́стри.	вöбйс.
<i>Him, } her, it. }</i>	—	сүй.	сиһй.	сё.	<i>Them.</i>	(same as sing.)		

(b) *Adjective Personal, or Possessive* (derived from the above).

<i>Mine.</i>	мёүс, ä, үм (voc., мй).	<i>Ours.</i>	но́тёр, но́тра, но́стрүм.
<i>Thine.</i>	түйс, ä, үм.	<i>Yours.</i>	вө́тёр, вө́тра, вө́стрүм.
<i>His, hers, its.</i>	сүйс, ä, үм.	<i>Theirs.</i>	сүйс, суә, сүйүм.

2. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(636.) The *demonstrative pronouns* are so called because they serve to point out an object; e. g., *this, that, these, those, &c.*

(1.) *Is, ää, id, this, that (he, she, it)*, often antecedent of *qui*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	Is, ää, id. ejäs.		äi.	äüm, ääm, id.	äö, ää, äö.
Plur.	ii, ää, ää.	äörüm, äärüm, äörüm.	iiis, or äiis.	äös, ääs, ää.	iiis, or äiis.

(2.) *Idäm, äädäm, idäm, the very same*, compounded of *is* and *däm*. Declined like *is* with *däm* added; thus, *ejusdäm, eidäm, eundäm* (not *eumdem*), &c.

(3.) *Hic, häc, hóc, this*, points out an object present to the *speaker*, and is called the *demonstrative* of the *first person*. (It is also used for *he, she, it*.)

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	hic, häc, hóc.	häjüs.	huic.	hunc, hanc, hóc.	hóc, häc, hóc.
Plur.	hi, hæ, häc.	hörüm, härüm, rüm.	hö-his.	hös, häs, häc.	his.

(4.) *Istë, istä, istüd, this, that*, points out an object present to the person *spoken to*, and is called the *demonstrative* of *second person*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	istē, istā, istūd.	istūs.	istī.	istūm, istām, istūd.	istō, istā, istō.
Plur.	istī, istē, istā.	istōrūm, istārūm, istōrūm.	istīs.	istōs, istās, istā.	istīs, istīs, istīs.

☞ *Iste* is often used to express contempt.

- (5) *Illē, illā, illūd*, points out an object remote from the *speaker* (*that, the former*, opposed to *hic*), and is called *demonstrative* of *third person*. (It is often used for *he, she, it*.)

☞ Declined throughout like *istē, istā, istūd*.

- (6) *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm, self*, is added to other pronouns, *mē, tē, sē*, &c., and expresses *myself, thyself, himself*, &c., accordingly.

☞ Declined like *istē*, except that neuter is *ipsūm* (not *ipsūd*).

3. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(637.) The *relative pronoun* (*who, which, what*) is so called because it commonly refers to some other word called the antecedent.

- (1) *Qui, quē, quōd, who, which, what*.

Sing.	quī, quē, quōd.	cujūs.	cui.	quēm, quām, quōd.	quō, quā, quō.
Plur.	quī, quē, quē.	quōrūm, quārūm, quōrūm.	quībūs.	quōs, quās, quē.	quībūs.

- (2) *Quīcunque, quēcunque, quōdcunque* (*whoever, whichever, whatever*), declined like *quī, quē, quōd*, with *cunque* added.

- (3) *Quisquis* (*whoever, whatever*), used *without* a substantive. The following cases only occur, and of these only *quisquis* and *quicquid* commonly.

	Nom.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	quisquis (m., f.). quicquid (n.).		quemquē (m., f.). quidquid (n.).	quōquō, quāquā, quōquō.
Plur.	quīquī (m., f.).	quībūsquībūs.		

4. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

(638.) The *interrogative pronouns* (*who? which? what?*) are used in asking questions.

- (1) *Quīs, quē, quīd* (*who? which? what?*), is declined precisely like the *relative* *quī*, except that in *nom. sing. masc.* it has *quīs*, and in *nom. and acc. sing. neut.*, *quīd*. [*Qui, quē, quōd*, is also used interrogatively, as an *adjective* (172).]
- (2) *Quisnām, quēnām, quīdnām*, is more *emphatic* than *quīs*. (*Pray, what are you doing? quīdnām agīs?*) It is declined like *quīs, quē, quīd*.

5. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(639.) The *indefinite pronouns* denote an object in a general way, without reference to a particular individual (*any one, some one, &c.*).

(..) Quidām, quædām, { quoddām, used as an adjective, } a certain (one); plur., some. Declined like quī; but takes n generally before d instead of m; e. g.,

Quendām, quorundām (not quemdam, quorumdam).

(2.) Quivis, } (any you please). Declined like quī. In neut., Quilibet, } quod used as adjective, quid as substantive.

(3.) Quisquam (any, any one; e. g., when it is denied that there are any). Neut., quicquam or quidquam. Declined otherwise like quī. [This pronoun is used chiefly in negative sentences.]

(4.) Quispiām, quæpiām, { quodpiām, used as adj., } somebody, quidpiām, used as subst., } some.

(5.) Aliquis, aliquā, { aliquod, as adj., } some one, something. aliquid, as subst., }

(6.) Quisquē, quæquē, { quodquē, as adj., } each. quidquē, as subst., }

Unusquisquē, -quæquē, { -quodquē, as adj., } each one. -quidquē, as subst., } (stronger than quisquē). Genitive, uniuscujusquē, &c., both unūs and quis being declined.

(7.) Ecquis? Used interrogatively (does); any one, anything.

Ecquis, ecquæ, or ecquē, { ecquod, as adj., } neut. plural, ecquid, as subst., } ecquā.

 Ecquis expects the answer none.

6. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(640.) *Correlative pronouns* are such as answer to each other; e. g. how great? so great; as many, so many, &c.

(1.) The following are declined

(a) Like adjectives of Class I (625):

Tantūs, so great, so much; quantuscunquē, however great
Quantūs, as great; aliquantūs, somewhat great.

(b) Like adjectives of Class II (626):

Talīs, such.
Qualīs, as, of what kind.
Qualiscunque, of whatever kind.

(2.) The following are indeclinable:

Tōt, so many; aliquōt, some.
Tōtidēm, just so many; quotquōt, however many.
Quōt, as many.

§ 6. VERBS.

(641.) THE *verb* declares something of a person or thing: the eagle *flies*; the queen *loves* her daughter.

1. CLASSES OF VERBS.

(642.) Verbs are *active*, *passive*, or *deponent*.

- (1.) *Active* verbs express *action*: (a) either *transitively*, requiring an object; e. g., the queen *loves* (*whom?*) her daughter; or (b) *intransitively*, not requiring an object; the eagle *flies*.
- (2.) *Passive* verbs express the *receiving* or *suffering* of an action, *I am loved*; *I was punished*.

Obviously *intransitive* verbs have no passive form. We cannot say, *I am danced*, *I am slept*.

- (3.) *Deponent* verbs have the *passive* form, but an *active* signification.

2. PARTS OF THE VERB.

(643.) The verb is divided into,

- (a) The *indefinite* verb, including certain parts which do not refer to a definite person or time.
- (b) The *finite* verb, including the parts which always do so refer.

Indefinite Verb.

(644.) (a) The *indefinite* verb includes,

- (1.) The *infinitive*, which expresses the action of the verb without relation to a definite person, and partakes also of the nature of a noun; e. g., *to learn*; *to love* is pleasant.
- (2.) The *participle*, which expresses the action of the verb under the form of an adjective; *loving*, *blooming*.
- (3.) The *gerund*, which expresses the action of the verb under the form of the noun, in all cases but the nominative, and supplies oblique cases to the infinitive.
- (4.) The *gerundive*, which expresses the action of the verb as *necessary* or *continued*, under the form of an adjective, in all cases and genders.
- (5.) The *supine*, which also expresses the action of the verb in the form of two cases (acc. and abl.) of the noun.

Finite Verb.

(645.) (b) The *finite* verb includes those parts which express the

- (1.) Different varieties of affirmation, viz., the *moods*.
- (2.) Different times at which the action of the verb takes place, viz., the *tenses*.
- (3.) Different relations of the verb to persons or things, viz., the *numbers* and *persons*.

(1.) *The Moods.*

(646.) The verb expresses *affirmation*; the *moods* of the verb are used to vary the character of the affirmation.

- (1.) By the *indicative*, affirmation of a *fact* is expressed; e. g. *I write, I did not write.*
- (2.) By the *subjunctive*, affirmation is expressed *doubtfully, contingently, or indefinitely*; e. g., *I may write, if I should write, perhaps some (may) think.*
- (3.) By the *imperative*, affirmation is expressed as an *injunction* or *request*; e. g., *write.*

(2.) *The Tenses.*

(647.) Time may be past, present, or future, and the verb has therefore *three tenses* to express these. But action may be represented as *going on* or as *completed*, either in past, present, or future time, and therefore two forms are required for each, making *six* in all.

	Present.	Past.	Future.
Action going on, or imperfect.	<i>I love, or am loving.</i>	<i>I was loving.</i> (Imperfect.)	<i>I shall love, or be loving.</i> (Future.)
Action completed, or perfect.	<i>I have loved.</i> (Perfect.)	<i>I had loved.</i> (Pluperfect.)	<i>I shall have loved.</i> (Future Perfect.)

Rem. 1. The Latin uses its *perfect* form in two ways: (1) like the English perfect, to express action complete in present time; e. g. *āmāvi, I have loved*: (2) like the English imperfect, to express action indefinitely in past time; e. g., *āmāvi, I loved*. This is called the *perfect aorist*. [The latter use is by far the most common. This distinction should be thoroughly understood.]

2. The *subjunctive* mood has no future (it uses the periphrastic form 661).
3. The present, perfect, and future are called *primary tenses*, referring, as they do, either to present or future time; the imperfect, perfect aorist, and pluperfect are called *historical tenses*, referring, as they do, to *past* time.

(3.) *Numbers and Persons.*

(648.) As there may be more than one person engaged in an action, the verb has *two numbers*, singular and plural. These persons must be either *I, thou, we, ye, or some other person or thing*; therefore the verb has *three persons*, 1st, 2d, and 3d, which are denoted in Latin by different *endings*.

3. CONJUGATION.

(649.) Conjugation is the *inflection* (21, R.) of a verb through all its parts. There are in Latin *four* conjugations of verbs, distinguished by the ending of the infinitive; thus:

1.	2.	3.	4.
-ārē.	-ērē.	-ērē.	-irē.

4 THE AUXILIARY OR SUBSTANTIVE VERB ESSE, to be.

(650.) [Before proceeding to the conjugations, we must give the forms of *esse*, to be, called an *auxiliary*, because it is used in forming some of the parts of the verb; and *substantive*, because it is the verb expressing simple existence.]

1. INDICATIVE.						
ACTION INCOMPLETE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Present.	sūm, <i>I am.</i>	ēs, <i>thou art.</i>	est, <i>he is.</i>	sūmūs, <i>we are.</i>	estis, <i>ye are.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>
Imperf.	ērām, <i>I was.</i>	ērās, <i>thou wast.</i>	ērāt, <i>he was.</i>	ērāmūs, <i>we were.</i>	ērātis, <i>ye were.</i>	ērant, <i>they were.</i>
Future.	erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	eris, <i>thou, &c.</i>	erit, <i>he, &c.</i>	erimūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	eritis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	erunt, <i>they, &c.</i>
ACTION COMPLETED.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Perfect.	fūi, <i>I have been.</i>	fuisti, <i>thou hast been.</i>	fuit, <i>he has been.</i>	fūimūs, <i>we have been.</i>	fūistis, <i>ye have been.</i>	fūerant, <i>they have been.</i>
Pluperf.	fūerām, <i>I had been.</i>	fūerās, <i>thou hadst, &c.</i>	fūerāt, <i>he had been.</i>	fūerāmūs, <i>we had been.</i>	fūerātis, <i>ye had been.</i>	fūerant, <i>they had been.</i>
Fut. Perf.	fūerō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	fūeris, <i>thou shalt, &c.</i>	fūerit, <i>he shall, &c.</i>	fūerimūs, <i>we shall, &c.</i>	fūeritis, <i>ye shall, &c.</i>	fūerint, <i>they shall, &c.</i>
2. SUBJUNCTIVE.						
INCOMPLETE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Present.	sīm, <i>I may be.</i>	sis, <i>thou, &c.</i>	sit, <i>he, &c.</i>	sīmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	sitis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	sint, <i>they, &c.</i>
Imperf.	essem, <i>I might be.</i>	essēs, <i>thou, &c.</i>	essēt, <i>he, &c.</i>	essēmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	essētis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	essent, <i>they, &c.</i>
COMPLETED.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Perfect.	fūerīm, <i>I may have been.</i>	fūeris, <i>thou, &c.</i>	fūerit, <i>he, &c.</i>	fūerimūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	fūeritis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	fūerint, <i>they, &c.</i>
Pluperf.	fūissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	fūissēs, <i>thou, &c.</i>	fūissēt, <i>he, &c.</i>	fūissēmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	fūissētis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	fūissent, <i>they, &c.</i>
3. IMPERATIVE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
	2. ēs, estō, be thou.			2. estē, estōtē, be ye.		
	3. estō, let him be.			3. suntō, let them be.		
4. INFINITIVE.						
	Present.		Perfect.	Future.		
Essē, to be.	fuisse, to have been.		fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, esse, to be about to be.			
5. PARTICIPLE.						
	Present.			Future.		
Only in compounds; absens, absent (from absūm); præsens, present (from præsūm).				Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, one who will be.		

5. PARADIGMS OF REGULAR VERBS.

(651.) (1.) *Verb-stem*.—The *stem* of any verb is found by striking off the infinitive-ending; e. g., of *ām-ārē*, *mōn-ērē*, *rēg-ērē*, and *aud-irē* the stems are *ām-*, *mōn-*, *rēg-*, *aud-*, respectively.*

(2.) *Tense-stem*.—Each *tense* has its own *tense-stem*, consisting of the *verb-stem* with or without some additions. Thus, in the first conjugation:

Pres. tense-stem = *verb-stem* = *am-*.

Imperf. tense-stem = *verb-stem* + *ab* = *amab-*.

Perf. tense-stem = *verb-stem* + *av* = *amav-*.

[In the annexed paradigms the *tense-stems* are shown upon the left hand side. Observe that the *perfect tense-stem* serves also for the stem of the *pluperfect* and *future perfect tenses*.]

(3.) *Tense-ending*.—Each *tense* has its own endings, which, added to the *tense-stem*, give the *person-forms*. Thus:

Imperfect-stem *āmab-* + *ām* = *amabam*, 1st person.

amab- + *ās* = *amabas*, 2d person,† &c.

(4.) The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* of the *passive voice* are formed by means of the *past participle* and forms of *essē*; thus:
āmātūs sum, *āmātūs eram*, *āmātūs ēro*.

[No farther explanation of the paradigm is necessary. The student should learn the modes of formation, and the *tense-endings* for each *tense*, apart from the stems *am-*, *mōn-*, &c., and unite them afterward with those or any other stems.]

* In reality, the crude-forms are *ama-*, *mone-*, *audi-* (the three *pure* conjugations), and *rēg-* (the *consonant* conjugation). But the changes of the crude-form in inflection form too great a difficulty for beginners, we therefore present the stem as the language affords it to us, without going into a *nicer* analysis.

† Farther, the *person-ending* forms part of the *tense-ending*. From the paradigm (active), it will be seen that in every *tense* except the *perfect* the endings are

o, or m, s, t, mus, tis, nt.

These endings are added to the *tense-stem*, either directly, as *am-o*, or by means of a connecting-vowel, as *reg-i-s*, or of a flexion syllable and connecting-vowel, as *amav-er-a-s*.



262 PARADIGMS FOR THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PARADIGMS FOR

ACTIVE.						
(654.) INDICATIVE MOOD.						
PRESENT, <i>I love or am loving, thou art loving, &c.</i>						
ām-	ā.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	ant.
mōn-	ēā.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
rēg-	ī.	īs.	īt.	īmūs.	ītīs.	unt.
aud-	īā.	īs.	īt.	imūs.	itīs.	iunt.
IMPERFECT, <i>I was loving, advising, ruling, hearing, &c.</i>						
ām-āb- mōn-ēb- rēg-ēb- aud-iēb-	} ām.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	ant.
FUTURE, <i>I shall or will love, advise, rule, hear, &c.</i>						
ām-āb- mōn-ēb- rēg- aud-i-	} ā.	īs.	īt.	īmūs.	ītīs.	unt.
	} ām.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
PERFECT, <i>I have loved. (PERFECT AORIST, I loved.)</i>						
ām-āv- mōn-ū- (reg-s) rex- aud-iv-	} ī.	istī.	īt.	īmūs.	istīs.	ērunt, or ērē.
PLUPERFECT, <i>I had loved, &c.</i>						
ām-āv- mōn-ū- rex- aud-iv-	} ērām.	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	ērātīs.	ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have loved, &c.</i>						
ām-āv- mōn-ū- rex- aud-iv-	} ērō.	ērīs.	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	ērīnt.
(653.) IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
	2d Singular.	3d Singular.	2d Plural.	3d Plural.		
ām-	a, atō.	ātō.	atē, atōtē.	antō.		
mōn-	e, etō.	etō.	etē, etōtē.	entō.		
rēg-	ē, itō.	itō.	itē, itōtē.	untō.		
aud-	i, itō.	itō.	itē, itōtē.	iuntō.		

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PASSIVE.						
INDICATIVE MOOD.						
PRESENT, <i>I am loved, &c.</i>						
ām-	ōr.	{ ārīs. ārē.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	āntūr.
mōn-	ēōr.	{ ārīs. ārē.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.	entūr.
rēg-	ōr.	{ ārīs. ārē.	ītūr.	īmūr.	īmīnī.	untūr.
aud-	īōr.	{ ārīs. ārē.	itūr.	imūr.	imīnī.	iuntūr.
IMPERFECT, <i>I was loved, &c.</i>						
ām-ab- mōn-ēb- rēg-ēb- aud-iēb-	{ ar.	{ ārīs. ārē.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	antūr.
FUTURE, <i>I shall be loved, &c.</i>						
ām-āb- mōn-ēb- rēg- aud-ī-	{ or. ār.	{ ārīs. ārē. ārīs. ārē.	ītūr. ētūr.	īmūr. ēmūr.	īmīnī. ēmīnī.	untūr. entūr.
PERFECT, <i>I have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ sūm, or fūl.	ēs, or fuiſī.	est. or fuit.	sūmūs, or fūlmūs.	estīs, or fuiſītīs.	sunt, or fuerunt.
PLUPERFECT, <i>I had been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ ērām.†	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	erātīs.	erant.
FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ erō.†	erīs.	erīt.	erīmūs.	erītīs.	erunt.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
	2d Singular.	3d Singular.	2d Plural.	3d Plural.		
ām-	ārē, ātōr.	ātōr.	āmīnī, āmīnōr.	antōr.		
mōn-	ērē, ētōr.	ētōr.	ēmīnī, ēmīnōr.	entōr.		
rēg-	ērē, itōr.	itōr.	īmīnī, imīnōr.	untōr.		
aud-	irē, itōr.	itōr.	imīnī, imīnōr.	iuntōr.		

* The participle must be inflected in gender and number to agree with the subject.

† Sometimes fueram, fueras, &c.

‡ Sometimes fuero, fueris, &c.

PASSIVE.						
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
PRESENT, <i>I may be loved, &c.</i>						
ām- mōn-e- rēg- aud-ī-	} ēr.	{ ēris. ērē.	ētūr.	āmūr.	ēmīnl.	ēntūr.
		{ ārīs. ārē.	atur.	āmūr.	āmīnl.	āntūr.
IMPERFECT, <i>I might be loved, &c.</i>						
ām-ār- mōn-ēr- rēg-ēr- aud-īr-	} ēr.	{ ēris. ērē.	ētūr.	āmūr.	ēmīnl.	ēntūr.
PERFECT, <i>I may have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs. mōnītūs. rectūs. auditūs.	} sīm.*	sīs.	sīt.	sīmus.	sītīs.	sint.
PLUPERFECT, <i>I might have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs. mōnītūs. rectūs. auditūs.	} essēm.†	essēs.	essēt.	essēmūs.	essētīs.	essent.
INFINITIVE.						
PRESENT [<i>to be (being) loved, &c.</i>].						
¹ ām-ārī,	² mōn-ērī,	³ rēg-ī,	⁴ aud-īrī.			
PERFECT [<i>to have been loved, &c.</i>].						
¹ āmātūs essē,	² mōnītūs essē,	³ rectūs essē,	⁴ auditūs essē.			
FUTURE [<i>to be about to be loved, &c.</i>].						
¹ āmātūm irī,	² mōnītūm irī,	³ rectūm irī,	⁴ auditūm irī.			
PARTICIPLES.						
PRESENT AND PERFECT [<i>loved, being loved, having been loved, &c.</i>].						
¹ āmātūs,	² mōnītūs,	³ rectūs,	⁴ auditūs.			
GERUNDIVE.						
¹ GERUNDIVE: āmāndūs,	² mōnendūs,	³ rēgendūs,	⁴ audiendūs.			
* Sometimes fuerim.				† Sometimes fuissem.		

6. VERBS IN IŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

(659.) Some verbs of the third conjugation assume *i* before the person ending in some of the tenses, as shown in the following paradigm of *căp-ăre*, to take.

ACTIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	i-ŏ.	is.	it.	imăŏ.	itis.	i-ant.
Imperf.	căp-i-eb-	ăm.	as.	ăt.	ămăs.	ătis.	ant.
Fut.	căp-i-	ăm.	es.	ët.	ëmăs.	ëtis.	ent.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	cap-i-	ăm.	as.	ăt.	ămăs.	ătis.	ant.
PASSIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	i-ŏr.	ăris.	ătŭr.	imŭr.	imîni.	i-antŭr.
Imperf.	căp-i-eb-	ăr.	ăris.	ătŭr.	ămŭr.	ămîni.	antŭr.
Fut.	căp-i-	ăr.	ăris.	ëtŭr.	ëmŭr.	ëmîni.	entŭr.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	căp-i-	ăr.	ăris.	ătŭr.	ămŭr.	ămîni.	antŭr.
IMPERATIVE.							
3d Plur. Active, căp-i-untŏ.				3d Plur. Pass., căp-i-untŏr.			
PARTICIPLES.							
Pres. Active, căp-i-ens.				Fut. Pass., căp-i-endus.			
GERUND, căp-i-ënd-i, ŏ, &c.							

7. DEPONENT VERBS.

(660.) (1.) Deponent verbs have the *passive* form with *active* signification. As the endings are the same as those of the passives (Paradigm, p. 263, 265), we need not repeat them.

(2.) But deponents have *three* active participles, while other verbs have but *two*: thus,

Pres., *exhorting*, Perf., *having exhorted*, Fut., *about to exhort*,
hort-ans. hort-atŭs. hortat-urŭs.

(3.) Also, all *transitive* deponents have the verbal adjective in *du*s; e. g., *hortandŭs*, one that should be exhorted: *intransitive* deponents have it only in the *neuter*; e. g., *moriendŭm est*, one must die.

8. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

(661.) By means of the tenses of *essŭ*, combined with the future participle in *rus*, and the verbal in *du*s, the periphrastic conjugation is formed; e. g., *amătŭrŭs sum*, I am about to love, I intend to love; *amandŭs sum*, I am to be loved, I must be loved, one must love me; and so through all the tenses and persons. The deponent verbs employ this periphrastic conjugation also.

1. WITH PARTICIPLE IN *rūs*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
āmātūrūs, ā, ūm,	sūm, ēs, est, &c.	āmātūrūs, ā, ūm,	sīm, sis, sīt, &c.
	ērām, ērās, &c.		essēm, essēs, &c.
	fui, fuisti, &c.		fuērim.
	fuerām, fuērās, &c.		fuissēm.
	erō, eris, &c.		
* INFINITIVE.			
Pres., āmatūrūs essē, <i>to be about (or intending) to love.</i>			
Perf., āmatūrūs fuissē, <i>to have been about to love.</i>			
Fut., āmatūrūs forē, <i>to intend to love hereafter.</i>			

2. WITH VERBAL IN *dūs*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
āmandūs, ā, ūm,	{ sūm.	āmandūs, ā, ūm,	{ sīm.
	{ ērām.		{ essēm.
	{ fui.		{ fuerīm.
	{ fuerām.		{ fuissēm.
	{ ērō.		
INFINITIVE.			
Pres., āmandūs, ā, ūm, essē, <i>ought to be loved.</i>			
Perf., āmandūs, ā, ūm, fuissē, <i>ought to have been loved.</i>			
Fut., āmandūs, ā, ūm, forē, <i>ought to be loved hereafter.</i>			

9. ON THE FORMATION OF THE PERFECT-STEM.

(662.) In the paradigms, the perfect-stems are formed by adding to the *erb*-stem in the 1st conj. āv- (ām-āv-); in the 2d, ā (mōn-ā-); in the 3d, (reg-s); in the 4th, iv- (aud-iv-). But, although most Latin verbs form the perf.-stem thus, many use different endings, which are exhibited in the following classification:

I. FIRST CONJUGATION.

(663.) Four ways of forming the perfect-stem:

- I. By adding āv to the verb-stem: ām-ārē—ām-āv-I.
- II. " " " crēp-ārē—crēp-ā-I.
- III. By reduplicating the first consonant: d-ārē—dēd-I.
- IV. By lengthening the stem-vowel: jūv-ārē—jūv-I.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Five ways:

- I. By adding ū to the verb-stem: mōn-ārē—mōn-ū-I.
- II. " ēv " dēl-ārē—dēl-ēv-I.
- III. " s " alg-ārē—al(g)-s-I.
- IV. By reduplication: mōrd-ārē—mō-mōrd-I.
- V. By lengthening the stem-vowel: cāv-ārē—cāv-I.

III. THIRD CONJUGATION. *

Six ways:

- I. By adding *s* to the verb-stem: scrib-ērē—scrip-s-i
 II. " " u " āl-ērē—āl-ū-I.
 III. " " v or iv " cern-ērē—cern-v-I.
 arcess-ērē—arcess-iv-I.
 IV. By reduplication: curr-ērē—cū-curr-I.
 V. By lengthening the stem-vowel: ōm-ērē—ōm-I.
 VI. By presenting the simple verb-stem: ācu-ērē—ācū-I.

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Five ways:

- | | | |
|---|-------------|------------|
| I. By adding <i>iv</i> to the verb-stem : | aud-irē, | aud-iv-i |
| II. " " " | āpēr-irē, | āpēr-ā-i |
| III. " " " | fulc-irē, | ful(c)-a-i |
| IV. By lengthening the stem-vowel : | vēn-irē, | vēm-i |
| V. By presenting the simple verb-stem : | compēr-irē, | compēr-i |

[In the following lists, the verbs are arranged according to the above classification, and the supines also given. When any peculiarity exists in the compounds, it is stated. Of Class I. (which embraces most of the verbs in the language), only one example is given in each conjugation, as the student is familiar with its form; but under the remaining heads *all* the verbs in common use are mentioned.]

10. LIST OF VERBS.

(664.)

FIRST CONJUGATION.

- ✓ I. *Perfect-stem adds av to the Verb-stem.*

To love, ăm-ă, ăm-ără, ăm-ăv-î, ăm-ă-tăm.

- ✓ II. *Perfect-stem* adds *ü* to the *Verb-stem*.

To creak, crēp-o, crēp-ārē, crēp-ā-i, crēp-i-tām.
Lie down, cūb-o, cūb-ārē, cūb-ū-l, cūb-i-tām.

- So the compounds; *e. g.*, *accūbō, accūbārē, accūbui, accūbitūm*.
Some compounds, however, which take *m* before *b*, follow the 3d
conj.; *e. g.*, *accumbō, accumbārē, accumbui, accumbitūm*.

<i>To tame,</i>	döm-o,	döm-ärë,	döm-ä-I,	döm-I-tüm.
<i>To rub,</i>	fric-o,	fric-äre,	fric-ä-I,	{ fric-t-üm and fric-ä-tüm.
<i>To glitter,</i>	míc-o,	míc-ärë,	míc-ä-I,	
<i>To gush forth,</i>	ëmíc-o,	ëmíc-ärë,	ëmíc-ä-I,	ëmíc-ä-tüm.
<i>To fold,</i>	plic-o,	plic-ärë,	plic-ä-I,	plic-I-tüm.

- Phc-ḥ is used only in composition: supplied, duplicated, multiplied, have
avī, ātūm; explicd, to explain, avī, ātūm; to unfold, uī, itūm.

<i>To cut,</i>	sēc-o,	sēc-arē,	sēc-ū-i,	sēc-t-ūm.
<i>To sound,</i>	sōn-o,	sōn-arē,	sōn-ū-i,	sōn-i-tūm.
<i>To thunder,</i>	tōn-o,	ton-arē,	tōn-ū-i,	tōn-i-tūm.
<i>To forbid,</i>	vēt-o.	vēt-arē,	vēt-ū-i,	vēt-i-tūm.

— III. *Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant with e.*

To give, d-o, d-ăre, dăd-î, dă-tum.

So, also, those compounds of which the first part is a word of *two syllables*; e. g., circumdō, circumdāre, circumdēdi, circumdātum, *to surround*; but the compounds with *monosyllables* follow the 3d conj.; e. g., addō, addāre, addidi, additum, *to add*.

To stand, st-o, st-ără, stăt-i, st-ă-tăm.

The compounds have in the perfect *stätti* when the first part is a *disyllable*; e. g., *circumstð*, *circumstätti*; but *stítí* when it is a *monosyllable*; e. g., *adstð*, *adstítí*.

IV. *Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.*

To assist, jūv-o, jūv-ārē, jūv-I, jū-tūm.

[illegible]

(655.)

SECOND CONJUGATION.

L. Perfect-stem adds ū to the Verb-stem.

— *To admonish*, mǎn-eo, mǎn-ērě, mǎn-ǎ-i, mǎn-l-tǔm.

II. Perfect-stem adds *əv* to the Verb-stem. .

— *To blot out,* dēl-eo, dēl-ērě, dēl-ēv-ī, dēl-ē-tūm.

To weep, fl-eo, fl-ěřě, fl-ěv-ī, fl-ě-tům.

To spin, n-eo, n-ěřě, n-ěv-ī, n-ě-tŭm.

To fill up, compl-eo, compl-ērē, compl-ēv-i, compl-ē-tūm.

To abolish, ăbōl-eo, ăbōl-ērē, ăbōl-ēv-i, ăbōl-i-tūm.

— The primitives *ōleo* and *pleo* are obsolete: like *compleo* are conjugated *impleo*, *expleo*; like *aboleo*, *adoleo*, and *exoleo*.

III. *Perfect-stem adds s to the Verb-stem.*

Euphonic Rules.

1. A t-sound before s is dropped; e. g., ar(d)-si = ars-i.

2. A c-sound + s = x; e. g., aug-si = aux-i.

3. But a c-sound *after* l or r, before s, is dropped; e. g., ful(g)-s i = fuls-i.

To shiver } alg-eo, alg-ērē, { al-s-i
with cold, } { (alg-s-i).

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

<i>To suck,</i>	hær-eo,	hær-ērē,	{ hæs-s-i (hær-s-i).	} hæs-sūm.
<i>To indulge,</i>	indulg-eo,	indulg-ērē,	{ indul-s-i (indulg-s-i).	} indul-tūm.
<i>To command,</i>	jūb-eo,	jūb-ērē,	jus-s-i (jub-s-i),	jus-sūm.
<i>To remain,</i>	mān-eo,	mān-ērē,	man-s-i,	man-sūm.
<i>To assuage,</i>	mulc-eo,	mulc-ērē,	{ mul-s-i (mulc-s-i).	} mul-sūm.
<i>To milk,</i>	mulg-eo,	mulg-ērē,	{ mul-s-i (mulg-s-i).	} mulc-tūm.
<i>To laugh,</i>	rīd-eo,	rīd-ēre,	rī-s-i (rīd-s-i),	rī-sūm.
<i>To advise,</i>	suād-eo,	suād-ērē,	{ suā-s-i (suad-s-i).	} suā-sūm.
<i>To wipe,</i>	terg-eo,	terg-ērē,	{ ter-s-i (terg-s-i).	} ter-sūm.
<i>To swell,</i>	turg-eo,	turg-ērē,	{ tur-s-i (turg-s-i).	
<i>To twist,</i>	torqu-eo,	torqu-ērē,	{ tor-s-i (torqu-s-i).	} tor-tūm.
<i>To press,</i>	urg-eo,	urg-ērē,	ur-s-i (urg-s-i).	
<i>To shine,</i>	lūc-eo,	lūc-ērē,	lux-i (lūc-s-i).	
<i>To mourn,</i>	lūg-eo,	lūg-ērē,	lux-i (lug-s-i).	

IV. *Perfect-stem reduplicates first Consonant and Vowel.*

<i>To bite,</i>	mord-eo,	mord-ērē,	mōmord-i,	mor-sūm.
<i>To hang,</i>	pend-eo,	pend-ērē,	pēpend-i,	pen-sūm.
<i>To betroth,</i>	spond-eo,	spond-ērē,	spōpond-i,	spōn-sūm.
<i>To shear,</i>	tond-eo,	tond-ērē,	tōtond-i,	ton-sūm.

— The compounds of these verbs drop the reduplication ; e. g., re-spondi (not re-spopondi).

V. *Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.*

<i>To take care,</i>	cāv-eo,	cāv-ērē,	cāv-i,	cau-tūm.
<i>To favour,</i>	fāv-eo,	fāv-ērē,	fāv-i,	fau-tūm.
<i>To cherish,</i>	fōv-eo,	fōv-ērē,	fōv-i,	fō-tūm.
<i>To move,</i>	mōv-eo,	mōv-ērē,	mōv-i,	mō-tūm.
<i>To dread,</i>	pāv-eo,	pāv-ērē,	pāv-i,	
<i>To sit,</i>	sēd-eo,	sēd-ērē,	sēd-i,	ses-sūm.

In the same manner are conjugated the compounds with dissyllables ; e. g., circumsēdeo, circumsēdērē, circumsēdī, circumsessūm, *to sit around* ; but those with monosyllables change ē of the stem into i ; e. g., assēdeo, assēdērē, assēdī, assessūm, *to sit by*.

<i>To see,</i>	vid-eo,	vid-ērē,	vid-i,	vī-sūm.
<i>To now</i>	vōv-eo,	vōv-ērē,	vōv-i,	vō-tūm.

(666.)

THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Perfect-stem adds *s* to the Verb-stem.*Euphonic Rules.*

1. *b* before *s* = *p*; e. g., scrib-sī = scrip-sī.
 2. *c*-sound + *s* = *x*; e. g., cing-sī = cinx-l.
- [*c*, *g*, *h*, *qu*, are regarded as *c*-sounds.]
3. *t*-sound (*d* or *t*) before *s* is dropped; e. g., claud-sī = claus-l.
 4. *m* before *s* is either changed into *s*, or *p* is interposed (prem-sī = pres-sī; com-sī = comp-sī).

To write,	scrib-o,	scrib-ěre,	{ scrip-sī (scrib-sī), }	scrip-tūm.
To bind,	cing-o,	cing-ěřě,	cinxī (cing-sī),	cinc-tūm.
To carry,	věh-o,	věh-ěřě,	vexī (veh-sī),	vec-tūm.
To cook,	cōqu-o,	cōqu-ěřě,	coxī (coqu-sī),	coc-tūm.
To shut,	claud-o,	claud-ěřě,	{ clau-sī (claud-sī), }	clau-sūm.

A *u* in the compounds is changed into *ū*; e. g., inclūdo, inclūdēřě, inclūsi, inclūsūm, to shut in.

To give way,	cēd-o,	cēd-ěřě,	cessī (cēd-sī),	ces-sūm.
To scatter,	sparg-o,	sparg-ěřě,	{ spar-sī (sparg-sī), }	spar-sūm.

In the compounds *a* is changed into *e*; e. g., aspergo, aspergēřě asper-sī, aspersūm, to besprinkle.

To adorn,	cōm-o,	cōm-ěřě,	com-psī,	com-p-tūm.
To press,	prēm-o,	prēm-ěřě,	{ pressī (prem-sī), }	pres-sūm.

In the compounds *ē* is changed into *ī*; e. g., comprīmo, comprīmēřě compressī, compressūm, to press together.

To carry,	gēr-o,	gēr-ěřě,	gessī (gēr-sī),	ges-tūm.
-----------	--------	----------	-----------------	----------

II. Perfect-stem adds *u* to the Verb-stem.

(a) Without change of Verb-stem.

To nourish,	āl-o,	āl-ěřě,	āl-u-ī,	āl-ī-tūm.
To till,	cōl-o,	cōl-ěřě,	cōl-u-ī,	cūl-tūm.
To ask advice,	consūl-o,	consūl-ěřě,	consūl-u-ī,	consul-tūm.
To knead,	deps-o,	deps-ěřě,	deps-u-ī,	deps-tūm.
To murmur,	frēm-o,	frēm-ěřě,	frēm-u-ī,	frēm-ī-tūm.
To groan,	gēm-o,	gēm-ěřě,	gēm-u-ī,	gēm-ī-tūm.
To grind,	mōl-o,	mōl-ěřě,	mōl-u-ī,	mōl-ī-tūm.
To conceal,	occūl-o,	occūl-ěřě,	occūl-u-ī,	occul-tūm.
To grind,	pins-o,	pins-ěřě,	pins-u-ī,	pins-ī-tūm.
To snatch,	rāp-io,	rāp-ěřě,	rāp-u-ī,	rap-tūm.
To join together	{ sēr-o,	sēr-ěřě,	sēr-u-ī,	ser-tūm.

<i>To weave,</i>	tex-o,	tex-ērē,	tex-u-i,	tex-tām.
<i>To tremble,</i>	trēm-o,	trēm-ērē,	trēm-u-i,	
<i>To vomit,</i>	vōm-o,	vōm-ērē,	vōm-u-i,	vōm-i-tām.

(b) With change of Verb-stem.

<i>To beget,</i>	gign-o,	gign-ērē,	gēn-u-i,	gēn-i-tām.
<i>To reap,</i>	mēt-o,	mēt-ērē,	mess-u-i,	mess-sūm.
<i>To place,</i>	pōn-o,	pōn-ērē,	pōs-u-i,	pōs-i-tām.

[For compounds of cumbērē, see 664, II.]

III. Perfect-stem adds v or iv to the Verb-stem.

(a) Adds v, and lengthens Stem-vowel if short.

<i>To separate,</i> <i>perceive,</i>	cern-o,	cern-ērē,	crē-v-i,	crē-tām.
---	---------	-----------	----------	----------

The perfect and supine of cerno are found only in the compounds
e. g., dēcerno, dēcernērē, dēcrevi, dēcētūm, *to decree*.

<i>To grow,</i>	cresc-o,	cresc-ērē,	crē-v-i,	crē-tām.
<i>To smear,</i>	lin-o,	lin-ērē,	lē-v-i, or li-v-i,	li-tām.
<i>To know,</i>	nosc-o,	nosc-ērē,	nō-v-i,	nō-tām.

So, also, the compounds inter, ig, per, prae-nosco, have ōvi, ōtūm; but
cog, ag, prae-cog, recog-nosco, have ōvi, itūm; e. g., agnosco, agnosco-
ērē, agnōvi, agnītūm, *to perceive*.

<i>To feed,</i>	pasc-o,	pasc-ērē,	pā-v-i,	pas-tām.
<i>To rest,</i>	quiesc-o,	quiesc-ērē,	quiē-v-i,	quiē-tām.
<i>To decide,</i>	scisc-o,	scisc-ērē,	sci-v-i,	sci-tām.
<i>To sow,</i>	sēr-o,	sēr-ērē,	sē-v-i,	sā-tām.

The compounds have the supine in itūm; e. g., consēro, consērerē
consēvi, consītūm, *to plant*.

<i>To allow,</i>	sīn-o,	sīn-ērē,	sī-v-i,	sī-tām.
<i>To despise,</i>	spērn-o,	spērn-ērē,	sprē-v-i,	sprē-tām.
<i>To strew,</i>	stern-o,	stern-ērē,	strā-v-i,	strā-tām.
<i>To become</i> <i>accustom-</i> <i>ed,</i>	suesc-o,	suesc-ērē,	suē-v-i,	suē-tām.

(b) Perfect-stem adds iv.

<i>To summon,</i>	arcess-o,	arcessērē,	arcess-iv-i,	arcess-i-tām.
-------------------	-----------	------------	--------------	---------------

In the same manner, capesso, facesso, incesso, laceaso.

<i>To seek,</i> <i>strive af-</i> <i>ter,</i>	pēt-o,	pēt-ērē,	pēt-iv-i,	pēt-i-tām.
<i>To seek,</i>	quer-o,	quer-ērē,	quēs-iv-i,	quēs-i-tām.

The compounds change e of the stem into i; e. g., conquiro, conqui-
quērērē, conquisīvi, conquistūm, *to examine*.

<i>To rub,</i>	tēr-o,	tēr-ērē,	{ tr-iv-i (for tēr-iv-i), }	trī-tām.
----------------	--------	----------	--------------------------------	----------

IV. *Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant.*

Some of these present vowel-changes, which must be carefully observed
(a) When the first vowel is i, o, u, the first consonant is reduplicated with that vowel; (b) in other verbs with e; (c) the compounds of *dăre*, *to give*, with i.

(a) First Vowel i, o, or u.

To run, curr-o, curr-ērē, cū-curr-i, cur-sūm.

Most of the compounds have the perfect both with and without the reduplication; e. g., *accurro*, *accurrērē*, *accurri* and *accūcurri*, *accursum*, *to run to*.

To learn, disc-o, disc-ērē, dī-dīc-i.

The compounds also reduplicate; e. g., *perdiscō*, *perdidici*, *to learn thoroughly*.

To weigh, pend-o, pend-ērē, pē-pend-i, pen-sūm.

The compounds do not reduplicate; e. g., *appendō*, *appendērē*, *appendi*, *appensūm*, *to hang to*.

To demand, posc-o, posc-ērē, po-posc-i.

The compounds reduplicate; e. g., *rēposcērē*, *rēpōposci*, *to demand back again*.

To prick, pung-o, pung-ērē, pū-pūg-i, pūc-tūm.

Compounds have perf. p u n x i.

To beat, tund-o, tund-ērē, tū-tūd-i, tun-sūm.

Compounds have supine tūsum; e. g., *contundērē*, *contūsūm*, *to crush*.

(b) Other Verbs reduplicate with e.

To fall, cād-o, cād-ērē, cē-cīd-i, cē-sūm.

To cut, cæd-o, cæd-ērē, cē-cīd-i, cæ-sūm.

The compounds have cīdī, cīsūm; e. g., *occidērē*, *occidī*, *occīsūm*, *to kill*.

To sing, cān-o, cān-ērē, cē-cīn-i, can-tūm.

The compounds have cīnī; e. g., *succinērē*, *succīnī*, *to sing to*.

To cheat, fall-o, fall-ērē, fē-fell-i, fal-sūm.

To bargain, pang-o, pang-ērē, pē-pīg-i, pac-tūm.

The compounds have pingō, pēgī, pactūm; e. g., *compingērē*, *compēgī*, *compactūm*, *to fasten together*.

To spare, paro-o, paro-ērē, pē-pero-i, par-sūm.

To bring forth, pār-io, pār-ērē, pē-pār-i, pār-tūm.

To drive, pell-o, pell-ērē, pē-pāl-i, pul-sūm.

To touch, tang-o, tang-ērē, tē-tīg-i, tac-ūm.

The compounds have *tingo*, *tingērē*, *tīgī*, *tactūm*; *e. g.*, *atingērē*, *attīgī*, *attactūm*, *to reach*.

(c) Compounds of *dare*, reduplicate with *i*.

<i>To hide</i> ,	ab-do,	abd-ērē,	ab-dīd-i,	ab-dī-tūm.
<i>To add</i> ,	ad-do,	add-ērē,	ad-dīd-i,	ad-dī-tūm.
<i>To lay up</i> ,	con-do,	con-d-ērē	con-dīd-i,	con-dī-tūm.
<i>To believe</i> ,	crē-do,	crēd-ērē,	crē-dīd-i,	crē-dī-tūm.
<i>To surrender</i> ,	dē-do,	dēd-ērē,	dē-dīd-i,	dē-dī-tūm.
<i>To publish</i> ,	ē-do,	ēd-ērē,	ē-dīd-i,	ē-dī-tūm.
<i>To put in</i> ,	in-do,	ind-ērē,	in-dīd-i,	in-dī-tūm.
<i>To oppose</i> ,	ob-do,	obd-ērē,	ob-dīd-i,	ob-dī-tūm.
<i>To destroy</i> ,	per-do,	perd-ērē,	per-dīd-i,	per-dī-tūm.
<i>To betray</i> ,	prō-do,	prod-ērē,	pro-dīd-i,	pro-dī-tūm.
<i>To restore</i> ,	red-do,	redd-ērē,	red-dīd-i,	red-dī-tūm.
<i>To deliver</i> ,	trā-do,	trad-ērē,	tra-dīd-i,	tra-dī-tūm.
<i>To sell</i> ,	ven-do,	vend-ērē,	ven-dīd-i,	ven-dī-tūm.

V. Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel of the Verb.

(a) Without Vowel-changes.

<i>To take</i> ,	ēm-o,	ēm-ērē,	ēm-i,	em-tūm.
------------------	-------	---------	-------	---------

Compounds, *coēmo*, *adīmō*, *exīmō*.

<i>To dig</i> ,	fōd-io,	fōd-ērē,	fōd-i,	fos-sūm.
<i>To fly</i> ,	fūg-io,	fūg-ērē,	fūg-i,	fūg-i-tūm.
<i>To pour</i> ,	fund-o,	fund-ērē,	fūd-i,	fū-sūm.
<i>To read</i> ,	lēg-o,	lēg-ērē,	lēg-i,	lec-tūm.

The compounds with *per*, *præ*, *re*, and *sub* retain *ē*; *e. g.*, *perlēgērē*, *perlēgī*, *perlectūm*, *to read through*; but those with *col*, *de*, *a*, *se* change *ē* into *i*; *e. g.*, *colligērē*, *collēgī*, *collectūm*, *to collect*: *three*, *dillīgo*, *I love*; *intellīgo*, *I understand*; *neglīgo*, *I neglect*, *have exī*, *ectūm*; *e. g.*, *dillīgērē*, *dilexī*, *dilectūm*.

<i>To leave</i> ,	linqu-o,	linqu-ērē,	liqu-i,	lic-tūm.
<i>To burst</i> ,	rump-o,	rump-ērē,	rūp-i,	rup-tūm.
<i>To conquer</i>	vinc-o,	vinc-ērē,	vīc-i,	vic-tūm.

(b) With Vowel-change.

<i>To drive</i> ,	āg-o,	āg-ērē,	āg-i,	ac-tūm.
-------------------	-------	---------	-------	---------

Three of the compounds retain *ā*, *circumāgo*, *perāgo*, *sātāgo*: two undergo contraction, *cōgo* (*con* + *āgo*), *dēgo* (*de* + *āgo*): compounds with *ab*, *amb*, *ad*, *ex*, *prod*, *sub*, change *ā* into *i*; *e. g.*, *ābigērē*, *ābēgī*, *abactūm*, *to drive away*.

<i>To take</i> ,	cāp-io,	cāp-ērē,	cēp-i,	cap-tūm.
------------------	---------	----------	--------	----------

All the compounds change *ā* into *i*, and have supine *ceptūm*; *e. g.*, *accīp-ērē*, *accēpī*, *acceptūm*, *to receive*.

<i>To make,</i>	}	fāc-io,	fāc-ērē,	fēc-i,	fac-tūm.
<i>To do,</i>					

1. Compounds with verbs retain ā; e. g., lābefācērē, lābefēcī, labefactūm, *to weaken*.

2. Compounds with prepositions change ā into i; e. g., afficērē, affēcī, affectūm, *to affect*.

<i>To break,</i>	frang-o,	frang-ērē,	frēg-i,	frac-tūm.
------------------	----------	------------	---------	-----------

Compounds change a into i; e. g., refringērē, refrēgī, refractūm, *to break open*.

<i>To cast,</i>	jāc-io,	jāc-ērē,	jēc-i,	jac-tūm.
-----------------	---------	----------	--------	----------

Compounds ab, ad, de, e, in, ob, re, trans. all change ā into i; e. g., abjicērē, abjēcī, abjectūm, *to throw away*.

VI. The Perfect-stem presents the simple Verb-stem.

(a) Stems ending in u or v.

<i>To refuse,</i>	abnu-o,	abnu-ērē,	abnu-i.	
<i>To sharpen,</i>	ācu-o,	ācu-ērē,	ācu-i,	acū-tūm.
<i>To show,</i>	argu-o,	argu-ērē,	argu-i,	argū-tūm.
<i>To agree,</i>	congru-o,	congru-ērē,	congru-i.	
<i>To put off,</i>	exu-o,	exu-ērē,	exu-i,	exū-tūm.
<i>To put on,</i>	indu-o,	indu-ērē,	indu-i,	indū-tūm.
<i>To imbue,</i>	imbu-o,	imbu-ērē,	imbu-i,	imbū-tūm.
<i>To pay,</i>	lu-o,	lu-ērē,	lu-i.	lū-tūm.
<i>To fear,</i>	mētu-o,	mētu-ērē,	mētu-i.	
<i>To lessen,</i>	mīnu-o,	mīnu-ērē,	mīnu-i,	mīnū-tūm.
<i>To rush,</i>	ru-o,	ru-ērē,	ru-i,	rū-tūm.
<i>To loose,</i>	solv-o,	solv-ērē,	solv-i,	solū-tūm.
<i>To spit,</i>	spu-o,	spu-ērē,	spu-i,	spū-tūm.
<i>To place,</i>	stātu-o,	statu-ērē,	statu-i,	statū-tūm.
<i>To sneeze,</i>	sternu-o,	sternu-ērē,	sternu-i,	sternu-tūm.
<i>To sew,</i>	su-o,	su-ērē,	su-i,	sū-tūm.
<i>To give,</i>	tribu-o,	tribu-ērē,	tribu-i,	tribu-tūm.
<i>To roll,</i>	volv-o,	volv-ērē,	volv-i,	volū-tūm.

(b) Consonant-stems.

<i>To weigh,</i>	append-o,	append-ērē,	append-i,	appen-sūm.
------------------	-----------	-------------	-----------	------------

So, also, the other compounds of pendo.

<i>To attend,</i>	attend-o,	attend-ērē,	attend-i,	atten-sūm.
-------------------	-----------	-------------	-----------	------------

So, also, the other compounds of tendo.

<i>To drink,</i>	bīb-o,	bīb-ērē,	bīb-i,	bībī-tūm.
<i>To forge,</i>	cūd-o,	cūd-ērē,	cūd-i,	cū-sūm.
<i>To eat,</i>	ēd-o,	ēd-ērē,	ēd-i,	ē-sūm.
<i>To lick,</i>	lamb-o,	lamb-ērē,	lamb-i,	
<i>To chew,</i>	mand-o,	mand-ērē,	mand-i,	man-sūm.
<i>To spread,</i>	pand-o,	pand-ērē,	pand-i,	pas-sūm.

<i>To take,</i>	prēhend-o,	prēhend-ērē,	prēhend-i.	prēhen-sūm.
<i>To scratch,</i>	scāb-o,	scāb-ērē,	scāb-i.	
<i>To climb,</i>	scand-o,	scand-ērē,	scand-i.	scan-sūm.

Compounds (a, e, de, con, in) change *ā* into *ē*; *e. g.*, ascendo.

<i>To sink down,</i>	sīd-o,	sīd-ērē,	sīd-i.	
----------------------	--------	----------	--------	--

The compounds take the perf. and supine from *sēdeō*; *e. g.*, consīd-ērē, consēdī, consessūm, *to sit together*.

<i>To hiss,</i>	strīd-o,	strīd-ērē,	strīd-i.	
<i>To turn,</i>	vert-o,	vert-ērē,	vert-i,	ver-sūm.

Deverto, præverto, and rēverto are also used in the passive form as deponents; *e. g.*, rēvertōr, rēvertī, reversūs sūm, *I turn back*.

<i>To brush,</i>	verr-o,	verr-ērē,	verr-i,	ver-sūm.
<i>To pluck,</i>	vell-o,	vell-ērē,	vell-i,	vul-sūm.

Compounds of candō and fendō belong here, viz.,

<i>To burn,</i>	incend-o,	incend-ērē,	incend-i,	incen-sūm.
<i>To defend,</i>	dēfend-o,	dēfend-ērē,	dēfend-i,	dēfen-sūm.

(667.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. Perfect-stem adds *iv* to the Verb-stem.

(Obs.) This class contains most of the verbs of the fourth conjugation; the following alone has a peculiar supine:

<i>To bury,</i>	sēpāl-io,	sēpāl-irē,	sēpāl-iv-i,	sēpul-tūm.
-----------------	-----------	------------	-------------	------------

II. Perfect-stem adds *u* to the Verb-stem.

<i>To clothe,</i>	āmīc-io,	āmīc-irē,	āmīc-u-i,	āmīc-tūm.
<i>To open,</i>	āpēr-io,	āpēr-irē,	āpēr-u-i,	āper-tūm.*
<i>To cover,</i>	ōpēr-io,	ōpēr-irē,	ōpēr-u-i,	ōper-tūm.
<i>To leap,</i>	sāl-io,	sāl-irē,	sāl-u-i,	sal-tūm.

Compounds change *ā* into *i*; *e. g.*, dēstīlirē, dēstīlūi, dēsultūm, *to leap down*.

III. Perfect-stem adds *s* to the Verb-stem.

<i>To cram,</i>	farc-io,	farc-irē,	{ far-s-i (farc-s-i),	} farc-tūm.
-----------------	----------	-----------	--------------------------	-------------

The compounds change *a* into *e*; *e. g.*, confercīre, confersī, confertūm, *to fill up*.

<i>To prop,</i>	fulc-io,	fulc-irē,	{ ful-s-i (fulc-s-i),	} ful-tūm.
<i>To draw,</i>	haur-io,	haur-irē,	{ hau-s-i (haur-s-i),	} haus-tūm.
<i>To decree,</i>	sanc-io,	sanc-irē,	{ sanx-i (sanc-s-i),	} sanc-i-tum and sanc-tūm.

* The compounds of par-īd which begin with a vowel have *ui*, ertūm, as in Class II.; those beginning with a consonant have *i*, ertūm, as in Class V.

quero
whenever you find

LIST OF DEPONENT VERBS.

277

<i>To patch,</i>	sarc-io,	sarc-irë,	{ sarc-s-i (sarc-s-i),	} sar-tüm.
<i>To feel,</i>	sent-io,	sent-irë,	{ sen-s-i (sent-s-i),	} sen-süm.

Instead of *assentið*, *assentiör*, deponent is more common.

<i>To hedge in,</i>	sëp-io,	sëp-irë,	sëp-s-i,	sëp-tüm.
<i>To bind,</i>	vinc-io,	vinc-irë,	{ vinx-i (vinc-s-i),	} vinc-tüm.

IV. Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.

Contains but a single simple verb.

<i>To come,</i>	vën-io,	vën-irë,	vën-i,	ven-tüm.
-----------------	---------	----------	--------	----------

V. Perfect-stem takes the simple Verb-stem.

<i>To ascertain,*</i>	compër-io,	compër-irë,	compër-i,	comper-tüm.*
<i>To discern,</i>	rëpër-io,	rëpër-irë,	rëpër-i,	rëper-tüm.*

(668.)

DEPONENT VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

<i>To exhort,</i>	hort-ör,	hort-ärl,	hort-ät-üs.
-------------------	----------	-----------	-------------

The deponents of the first conjugation are the most numerous, but are formed like *hortör*, with *ärl*, *ätüs*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>To acknowledge,</i>	fät-eör,	fät-ërl,	fas-süs.
------------------------	----------	----------	----------

The compounds make *fiteör*, *fessüs*; e. g., *confiteör*, *confitërl*, *confessüs*, *to confess*: *diffiteor* has no participle.

<i>To bid,</i>	lic-eör,	lic-ärl,	lic-ît-üs.
<i>To heal,</i>	mëd-eör,	mëd-ërl.	
<i>To deserve,</i>	mër-eör,	mër-ërl,	mër-ît-üs.
<i>To pity,</i>	mîsër-eör,	mîsër-ërl,	{ mîsër-ît-üs, or miser-tüs.
<i>To think,</i>	r-eör,	r-ërl,	rä-tüs.
<i>To look upon,</i>	tu-eör,	tu-ärl,	{ tu-ît-üs, or tû-tüs.
<i>To fear,</i>	vër-eör,	vër-ërl,	vër-ît-üs.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

<i>To devise,</i>	comminisc-ör,	comminisc-i,	commen-tüs
-------------------	---------------	--------------	------------

Rëminiscor, *to remember*, has no perfect.

<i>To obtain,</i>	ädipisc-ör,	ädipisc-i,	ädep-tüs.
<i>To be weary,</i>	dëfetisc-ör,	dëfetisc-i,	dëfes-süs.

* See note, p. 276.

A A

Not
Book
D.H.E.

<i>To awake,</i>	expergisc-ör,	expergisc-I,	experrec-tüs.
<i>To enjoy,</i>	frü-ör,	frü-I,	{ fruc-tüs and frü-it-us.
<i>To perform,</i>	fung-ör,	fung-I,	func-tüs.
<i>To proceed,</i>	gräd-iör,	gräd-I,	gres-süs.

Compounds change the ä into ë ; e. g., aggrëdi, aggressüs, *to assail*

<i>To be angry,</i>	irasc-ör,	irasc-I,	
<i>To fall,</i>	läb-ör,	läb-I,	lap-süs.
<i>To speak,</i>	löqu-ör,	löqu-I,	löcä-tüs.
<i>To die,</i>	mör-iör,	mör-I,	mor-tüs.
<i>To obtain,</i>	nancisc-ör,	nancisc-I,	nac-tüs.
<i>To be born,</i>	nasc-ör,	nasc-I,	nä-tüs.
<i>To lean upon, to strive,</i>	{ nüt-ör,	nüt-I,	{ nī-sus, or nī-üs.
<i>To forget,</i>	öblivisc-ör,	öblivisc-I,	öbli-tüs.
<i>To bargain,</i>	päcisc-ör,	päcisc-I,	pac-tüs.
<i>To feed,</i>	pasc-ör,	pasc-I,	pas-tüs.

This verb is the passive of pascërë, *to give food*.

<i>To suffer,</i>	pät-iör,	pät-I,	pas-sus.
-------------------	----------	--------	----------

Perpëtiör, perpessüs, *to endure*, changes ä into ë.

(From plectö, *to twine*.)

<i>To embrace,</i>	{ amplect-ör,	amplect-I,	amplex-üs.
	{ complect-ör,	complect-I,	complex-üs.
<i>To set out,</i>	pröfiscisc-ör,	pröfiscisc-I,	pröfec-tüs.
<i>To complain,</i>	quër-ör,	quër-I,	ques-tüs.
<i>To grin,</i>	ring-ör,	ring-I,	
<i>To follow,</i>	sëqu-or,	sëqu-I,	sëcä-tüs.
<i>To revenge,</i>	ulcisc-ör,	ulcisc-I,	ul-tüs.
<i>To use,</i>	üt-or,	üt-I,	ü-sus.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<i>To assent,</i>	assent-iör,	assent-iri,	assen-süs.
<i>To flatter,</i>	bland-iör,	bland-iri,	bland-it-üs.
<i>To try,</i>	expër-iör,	expër-iri,	exper-tüs.
<i>To bestow money,</i>	larg-iör,	larg-iri,	larg-it-üs.
<i>To lie,</i>	ment-iör,	ment-iri,	ment-it-üs.
<i>To measure,</i>	mët-iör,	mët-iri,	men-süs.
<i>To move a mass,</i>	möl-iör,	möl-iri,	möl-it-üs.
<i>To wait for,</i>	oppër-iör,	oppër-iri,	opper-tüs.
<i>To begin,</i>	ord-iör,	ord-iri,	or-süs.

<i>To rise,</i>	ör-iör,	ör-iri,	or-täs.
<i>To divide,</i>	part-iör,	part-iri,	part-it-üs.
<i>To possess myself of,</i> }	pöt-iör,	pöt-iri,	pöt-it-üs.
<i>To cast lots,</i>	sort-iör,	sort-iri,	sort-it-üs.

(669.)

INCHOATIVE VERBS.

Inchoatives are verbs derived from nouns, adjectives, or other verbs, expressing a *beginning* or *becoming* of the act or state denoted by the primitive. Their stems always end in *sc*, and they all follow the form of the 3d conj.; e. g.,

From *puer*, *boy*, we have *puerasc-ërë*, *to become a boy (again)*.

" *mätür-üs*, *ripe*, we have *mätäresc-ëre*, *to become ripe*.

" *dorm-irë*, *to sleep*, we have *obdormisc-ërë*, *to fall asleep*.

(1.) It is enough to observe on those derived from *adjectives* and *nouns* that they either *have* no perfect, or else form it in *üi*.

(2.) As to those derived from *verbs*,

(a) Most are from verbs in the *second* conjugation, and form their perfect-stem by adding *u* to the stem, rejecting *sc*; or, in other words, their perf.-stem is the same as that of the simple verb from which they are derived; e. g.,

To become gray, *canesc-ërë* (*canërë*), *canu-i*.

To grow sour, *acesc-ërë* (*acëre*), *acu-i*.

(b) Those derived from verbs of the other conjugations take the perfects of the simple verbs from which they are derived.

To grow old, *inveterasc-ërë* (*inveterärë*), *inveteräv-i*, *inveterä-tum*.

To come to life, *rëvivisc-ërë* (*vivërë*), *rëviv-i*, *rëvic-tum*.

To fall asleep, *obdormisc-ërë* (*dormirë*), *obdormiv-i*, *obdormi-tum*.

11. IRREGULAR VERBS.*

(670.)	INFINITIVE MOOD.
<i>Tenses for Incomplete Action.</i>	<i>Tenses for Complete Action.</i>
Present and Imperfect.	Perfect and Pluperfect.
1. <i>possë</i> , <i>to be able</i> .	<i>pötuissë</i> , <i>to have been able</i> .
2. <i>vellë</i> , <i>to be willing</i> .	<i>völuissë</i> , <i>to have been willing</i> .
3. <i>nollë</i> , <i>to be unwilling</i> .	<i>nöluissë</i> , <i>to have been unwilling</i> .
4. <i>mallë</i> , <i>to be more willing</i> .	<i>mäluissë</i> , <i>to have been more willing</i> .
5. <i>ëdërë</i> , or <i>essë</i> , <i>to eat</i> .	<i>ëdiassë</i> , <i>to have eaten</i> .
6. <i>ferrë</i> , <i>to bear</i> .	<i>tüllissë</i> , <i>to have borne</i> , or <i>suffered</i> .
7. <i>fieri</i> , <i>to become</i> .	<i>factüm essë</i> , <i>to have been made</i> , or <i>done</i> .
9. <i>ferri</i> , <i>to be borne</i> .	<i>latüm essë</i> , <i>to have been borne</i> .

* See note, next page.

(671.)			INDICATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT, <i>I am able, &c.</i>			PERFECT, <i>I have been able, &c.</i>		
1. possūm,*	pōtēs,	pōtest.	1. pōtu-ī,	istī,	it.
possūmūs,	pōtestis,	possunt.	pōtu-īmūs,	istis,	erunt or erē.
2. vōlō,	vis,	vult.	2. vōlu-ī,	isti,	it.
vōlūmūs,	vultis,	volunt.	vōlu-īmūs,	istis,	erunt or erē.
3. nōlō,	nonvis,	nonvult.	3. nōlu-ī,	isti,	it.
nōlūmūs,	nonvultis,	nolunt.	nōlu-īmūs,	istis,	erunt or erē.
4. malō,	māvis,	māvult.	4. malu-ī,	isti,	it.
malūmūs,	māvultis,	malunt.	malu-īmūs,	istis,	erunt or erē.
5. ēdō,	ēdis or es,	ēdit or est,	5. ēd-ī,	isti,	it.
ēdimūs,	ēditis or estis ;	ēdunt.	ēd-īmūs,	istis,	erunt or ērē.
6. fērō,	fers,	fert.	6. tūl-ī,	isti,	it.
fērimūs,	fertis,	fērant.	tūl-īmūs,	istis,	erunt or erē.
7. fio,†	fis,	fit.	7. factus sūm,	ēs,	est.
fimūs,	fitis,	fiunt.	facti sūmūs,	estis,	sunt.
8. fērōr,	ferris or ferre ;	fertur,	8. latūs sūm,	ēs,	est.
fērimūr,	fērimini,	fērantur.	lati sūmūs,	estis,	sunt.
IMPERFECT, <i>I was able, &c.</i>			PLUPERFECT, <i>I had been able, &c.</i>		
1. pōt-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt.	1. pōta-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt.
pōt-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.	pōta-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
2. vōl-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt.	2. vōlu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt.
vōl-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	vōlu-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
3. nōl-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt.	3. nōlu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt.
nōl-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	nōlu-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
4. mal-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt.	4. malu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt.
mal-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	malu-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
5. ēd-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt.	5. ēd-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt.
ēd-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	ēd-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
6. fēr-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt.	6. tūl-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt.
fēr-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	tūl-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
7. fi-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt.	7. factūs ērām,	ērās,	ērāt.
fi-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	facti ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
8. fēr-ēbār,	ēbaris or ē,	ēbātūr,	8. latūs ērām,	ērās,	ērāt.
fēr-ēbāmūr,	ēbamini,	ēbantūr.	lati ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
FUTURE,			FUTURE PERFECT,		
<i>I shall or will be able, &c.</i>			<i>I shall or will have been able, &c.</i>		
1. pōt-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt.	1. pōtu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt.
pōt-ērīmūs,	ērītis,	ērunt.	pōtu-ērīmūs,	ērītis,	ērint.
2. vōl-ām,	ēs,	ēt.	2. vōlu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt.
vōl-ēmūs,	ētis,	ent.	vōlu-ērīmūs,	ērītis,	ērint.
3. nōl-ām,	ēs,	ēt.	3. nōlu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt.
nōl-ēmūs,	ētis,	ent.	nōlu-ērīmūs,	ērītis,	ērint.
4. mal-ām,	ēs,	ēt.	4. malu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt.
mal-ēmūs,	ētis,	ent.	malu-ērīmūs,	ērītis,	ērint.
5. ēd-ām,	ēs,	ēt.	5. ēd-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt.
ēd-ēmūs,	ētis,	ent.	ēd-ērīmūs,	ērītis,	ērint.
6. fēr-ām,	ēs,	ēt.	6. tūl-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt.
fēr-ēmūs,	ētis,	ent.	tūl-ērīmūs,	ērītis,	ērint.
7. fi-ām,	ēs,	ēt.	7. factus ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt.
fi-ēmūs,	ētis,	ent.	facti ērīmūs,	ērītis,	ērint.
8. fēr-ār,	ērīs or ērō,	ētūr.	8. latūs ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt.
fēr-ēmūr,	ēmīni,	entūr.	lati ērīmūs,	ērītis,	ērint.

* As many of these verbs are nearly related to each other, it seems unnecessary to separate their forms of inflection. The correspondent numbers will be sufficient direction in tracing the several tenses of each verb.

† Fio, contrary to the general rule (24, a), has *i* long throughout, before vowels : but before *er* it is short : as. *fīeri*.

(672.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

NOTE.—*Possum, volo, malo*, have no imperative mood.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>3. <i>nōli</i>, or <i>nōlitō</i>, <i>be thou unwilling.</i>
 <i>nōlitē</i>, or <i>nōlitōtē</i>, <i>be ye, &c.</i>
 5. <i>ēdē</i>, <i>ēditō</i>, or <i>ēs</i>, <i>estō</i>, <i>eat thou.</i>
 <i>ēditā</i>, <i>ēditōtē</i>: 3. <i>ēduntō</i>.
 6. <i>fēr</i>, or <i>fertō</i>, <i>bear thou.</i>
 <i>fertē</i>, or <i>fertōtē</i>: 3. <i>fēruntō</i>.</p> | <p>7. <i>fi</i>, or <i>fitō</i>, <i>become thou.</i>
 <i>fitē</i>, or <i>fitōtē</i>: 3. <i>fiuntō</i>.
 8. <i>ferre</i>, or <i>fertōr</i>, <i>be thou borne.</i>
 <i>fērimini</i>, or <i>fēriminōr</i>: 3. <i>fēruntōr</i>.</p> |
|---|---|

(673.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *I may be able, &c.*

- | | | |
|---------------------|---|----------------|
| 1. <i>poss-īm</i> , | <i>is</i> , | <i>it</i> , |
| <i>poss-īmūs</i> , | <i>itīs</i> , | <i>int</i> . |
| 2. <i>vēl-īm</i> , | <i>is</i> , | <i>it</i> , |
| <i>vēl-īmūs</i> , | <i>itīs</i> , | <i>int</i> . |
| 3. <i>nōl-īm</i> , | <i>is</i> , | <i>it</i> , |
| <i>nōl-īmūs</i> , | <i>itīs</i> , | <i>int</i> . |
| 4. <i>māl-īm</i> , | <i>is</i> , | <i>it</i> , |
| <i>māl-īmūs</i> , | <i>itīs</i> , | <i>int</i> . |
| 5. <i>ēd-ām</i> , | <i>ās</i> , | <i>āt</i> , |
| <i>ēd-āmūs</i> , | <i>ātīs</i> , | <i>ant</i> . |
| 6. <i>fēr-ām</i> , | <i>ās</i> , | <i>āt</i> , |
| <i>fēr-āmūs</i> , | <i>ātīs</i> , | <i>ant</i> . |
| 7. <i>fi-ām</i> , | <i>ās</i> , | <i>āt</i> , |
| <i>fi-āmūs</i> , | <i>ātīs</i> , | <i>ant</i> . |
| 8. <i>fēr-ār</i> , | <i>āris</i> or <i>ārē</i> , <i>ātūr</i> , | |
| <i>fēr-āmūr</i> , | <i>amini</i> , | <i>antūr</i> . |

PERFECT, *I may have been able, &c.*

- | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. <i>pōtu-ērīm</i> , | <i>ēris</i> , | <i>ērīt</i> , |
| <i>pōtu-ērīmūs</i> , | <i>ērītīs</i> , | <i>ērint</i> . |
| 2. <i>vōlu-ērīm</i> , | <i>ēris</i> , | <i>ērīt</i> , |
| <i>vōlu-ērīmūs</i> , | <i>ērītīs</i> , | <i>ērint</i> . |
| 3. <i>nōlu-ērīm</i> , | <i>ēris</i> , | <i>ērīt</i> , |
| <i>nōlu-ērīmūs</i> , | <i>ērītīs</i> , | <i>ērint</i> . |
| 4. <i>malu-ērīm</i> , | <i>ēris</i> , | <i>ērīt</i> , |
| <i>malu-ērīmūs</i> , | <i>ērītīs</i> , | <i>ērint</i> . |
| 5. <i>ēd-ērīm</i> , | <i>ēris</i> , | <i>ērīt</i> , |
| <i>ēd-ērīmūs</i> , | <i>ērītīs</i> , | <i>ērint</i> . |
| 6. <i>tūl-ērīm</i> , | <i>ēris</i> , | <i>ērīt</i> , |
| <i>tūl-ērīmūs</i> , | <i>ērītīs</i> , | <i>ērint</i> . |
| 7. <i>factus sim</i> , | <i>sis</i> , | <i>sit</i> , |
| <i>facti simūs</i> , | <i>sitīs</i> , | <i>sint</i> . |
| 8. <i>lātās sim</i> , | <i>sis</i> , | <i>sit</i> , |
| <i>lati simūs</i> , | <i>sitīs</i> , | <i>sint</i> . |

IMPERFECT, *I might be able, &c.*

- | | | |
|---|---|----------------|
| 1. <i>Posa-ēm</i> , | <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ēt</i> , |
| <i>posa-ēmūs</i> , | <i>ētīs</i> , | <i>ent</i> . |
| 2. <i>vell-ēm</i> , | <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ēt</i> , |
| <i>vell-ēmūs</i> , | <i>ētīs</i> , | <i>ent</i> . |
| 3. <i>noll-ēm</i> , | <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ēt</i> , |
| <i>noll-ēmūs</i> , | <i>ētīs</i> , | <i>ent</i> . |
| 4. <i>mall-ēm</i> , | <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ēt</i> , |
| <i>mall-ēmūs</i> , | <i>ētīs</i> , | <i>ent</i> . |
| 5. <i>ēdēr-ēm</i> or <i>essēm</i> ; <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ēt</i> , | |
| <i>ēdēr-ēmūs</i> , | <i>ētīs</i> , | <i>ent</i> . |
| 6. <i>ferr-ēm</i> , | <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ēt</i> , |
| <i>ferr-ēmūs</i> , | <i>ētīs</i> , | <i>ent</i> . |
| 7. <i>fīēr-ēm</i> , | <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ēt</i> , |
| <i>fīēr-ēmūs</i> , | <i>ētīs</i> , | <i>ent</i> . |
| 8. <i>ferr-ēr</i> , | <i>ēris</i> or <i>ērē</i> , <i>ētūr</i> , | |
| <i>ferr-ēmūr</i> , | <i>ēmīni</i> , | <i>entūr</i> . |

PLUPERFECT, *I might have been able, &c.*

- | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>pōtu-issēm</i> , | <i>issēs</i> , | <i>issēt</i> , |
| <i>pōtu-issēmūs</i> , | <i>issētīs</i> , | <i>issent</i> . |
| 2. <i>vōlu-issēm</i> , | <i>issēs</i> , | <i>issēt</i> , |
| <i>vōlu-issēmūs</i> , | <i>issētīs</i> , | <i>issent</i> . |
| 3. <i>nōlu-issēm</i> , | <i>issēs</i> , | <i>issēt</i> , |
| <i>nōlu-issēmūs</i> , | <i>issētīs</i> , | <i>issent</i> . |
| 4. <i>malu-issēm</i> , | <i>issēs</i> , | <i>issēt</i> , |
| <i>malu-issēmūs</i> , | <i>issētīs</i> , | <i>issent</i> . |
| 5. <i>ēd-issēm</i> , | <i>issēs</i> , | <i>issēt</i> , |
| <i>ēd-issēmūs</i> , | <i>issētīs</i> , | <i>issent</i> . |
| 6. <i>tūl-issēm</i> , | <i>issēs</i> , | <i>issēt</i> , |
| <i>tūl-issēmūs</i> , | <i>issētīs</i> , | <i>issent</i> . |
| 7. <i>factūs essēm</i> , | <i>essēs</i> , | <i>essēt</i> , |
| <i>facti essēmūs</i> , | <i>essētīs</i> , | <i>essent</i> . |
| 8. <i>lātūs essēm</i> , | <i>essēs</i> , | <i>essēt</i> , |
| <i>lati essēmūs</i> , | <i>essētīs</i> , | <i>essent</i> . |

(674.)

GERUNDS.

- | |
|---|
| 2. <i>vōlendi</i> , <i>volendō</i> , <i>volendūm</i> , <i>of being, in being, to be, willing.</i> |
| 3. <i>nōlendi</i> , <i>nōlendō</i> , <i>nōlendūm</i> , " " " <i>unwilling.</i> |
| 4. <i>malendi</i> , <i>malendō</i> , <i>malendūm</i> , " " " <i>more willing.</i> |
| 5. <i>ēdendi</i> , <i>ēdendō</i> , <i>edendūm</i> , <i>of eating, in eating, to eat.</i> |
| 6. <i>fērendi</i> , <i>fērendō</i> , <i>fērendūm</i> , <i>of bearing, in bearing, to bear.</i> |

(675.)

SUPINES.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Accusative.</i> 5. <i>ēsum</i> , <i>to eat.</i> | <i>Ablative.</i> <i>ēsū</i> , <i>to be eaten, to eat.</i> |
| 6. <i>latūm</i> , <i>to bear.</i> | <i>lātū</i> , <i>to be borne.</i> |

(676.)

PARTICIPLES.

Active. 1. pōtens, *being able.*
 2. vōlens, " *willing.*
 3. nōlens, " *unwilling.*
 4. malens, " *more willing.*
 5. ēdens, *eating.* ēsūrus, *about to eat.*
 6. fērens, *bearing.* lātūrus, *about to bear.*
 7. faciendūs, *to be made or done.*
 8. fērendūs, *to be borne.*

Passive. 7. factūs, *being or having been made or done.*
 8. latūs, *being or having been borne or suffered.*

(677.)

Eo, I go.

Eō, I go, is conjugated like *audio*, except in the following tenses:

	Singular.	Plural.
Imp. Ind. Pres.	eō, is, it.	imūs, itīs, eunt.
Past.	ibām, ibās, ibāt.	ibāmūs, ibātīs, ibant.
Fut.	ibō, ibīs, ibit.	ibimūs, ibitīs, ibunt.
Imperative.	i, or itō.	itē, or itōtē. 3. euntō.
Imp. Pot. Pres.	eām, eās, eāt.	eāmūs, eātīs, eant.
Gerunds.	eundi, eundō, eundūm.	
Particips. Pres.	iens (<i>gen. euntīs</i>), going.	Fut. itārūs, <i>about to go.</i>
Supines.	itūm, itū.	

Rem. In like manner, the compounds of *eo* are formed: also, *queo*, *to be able*, and *nēqueo*, *to be unable*; except that these two have no imperative mood or gerunds.

12. DEFECTIVE VERBS

(678.) Are those which have only some particular tenses and moods; as, *aio*, *I say*; *ausim*, *I dare*; *avē*, *hail*! &c.

(1.) Aio, I say.					
	Singular.			Plural.	
Ind. Pres.	aio,	āis,	ait.		aiunt.
Imperfect.	ai-ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbāt.	ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs, ēbant.
Imperative.		ai.			
Subj. Pres.		aiās,	aiāt.		aiant.
Participle.	aiens.				
(2.) Ausim, I dare.					
Ind. Pres.	ausim,	ausis,	ausit.		ausint.
(3.) Avē, hail!					
Imperative.	āvē, or āvēto.			āvētē, or āvētōtē.	
Infinitive.	āvērē.				
(4.) Salvē, God save you!					
Imperative.		salvē, or salvētō.		salvētē, or salvētōtē.	
Infinitive.	salvērē.				
Inf. Fut.		salvēbis.			

(5.) Cēdo, give me.					
<i>Imperative.</i>	Singular.		Plural.		
	cēdō.		cēditē.		
(6.) Faxo, or faxim (for faciam), I will or may do it.					
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	fax-o, or fax-im,	is,	It.	imūs,	Itīs, int.
(7.) Quæso, I pray.					
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	quæso-ð,	is,	It.	ūmūs.	
<i>Infinitive.</i>	quæserē.				
<i>Participle.</i>	quæsens.				
(8.) Inquām, or Inquið, I say.					
<i>Impf. Ind. Pres.</i>	inqu-ið, or am,	is,	It.	Imus,	iunt.
<i>Past.</i>				inquiēbat.	inquiē-
<i>Fut.</i>		inquiēs,		inquiēt.	[bant.
<i>Perf. Ind. Pres.</i>		inquiati.			
<i>Imperative.</i>	inquē,	inquið.		inquitē.	
<i>Participle.</i>	inquiens.				

(9.) These verbs,

Nōv-i, I know;
Mēmīn-i, I remember;
Cœp-i, I begin;
Od-i, I hate,

have the forms of the perfect tenses combined with the meanings of the imperfect. Nosco, the present of nōv-i, is in use, and denotes *to learn*, whence nōv-i expresses the actual knowledge which is the result of past learning.

Nōv-	{ i,	isti, &c.	(Pres.)
Memīn-	{ ērām,	ērās, &c.	(Past.)
Cœp-	{ ērō,	ērīs, &c.	(Fut.)
Od-	{ ērim,	ērīs, &c.	(Subj. Pres.)
	{ issēm,	issēs, &c.	(Subj. Past.)
	{ issē,		(Infinitive.)
Mementō,	mementōtē. (Imperative.)		
Ōsūs,	ōsūrūs; cœptūs, cœptūrūs. (Participles.)		

13. IMPERSONAL VERBS

(679.) Are those which have no *subject*, and take the pronoun *it* before them in English; e. g., pluīt, *it rains*.

1. Impersonals never used personally.

libēt, libuit, <i>it pleases</i> .	*pœnitēt, pœnituit, <i>it repents</i> .
licēt, licuit, or } <i>one may</i> ,	*pūdet, pūduīt, { <i>it shames</i> ,
licitum est, } <i>it is lawful</i> .	} <i>one is ashamed</i> .
oportēt, oportuit, { <i>one ought</i> ,	*tædet, pertæsum est, { <i>it wearies</i> .
} <i>it behooves</i> .	} <i>disgusts</i> .
*miserēt, <i>one pities</i> .	rēfert, <i>it concerns</i> .
*plgēt, <i>it grieves (one)</i> .	

* Those marked * take *acc.* of person and *gen.* of the thing (or object of the feeling).

2. Impersonals sometimes used *personally* in third person singular or plural.

fulmīnāt,	} <i>it lightens.</i>	ningit,	<i>it snows.</i>
fulgurat,		pluit,	<i>it rains.</i>
grandināt,	<i>it hails.</i>	tōnāt,	<i>it thunders.</i>
lucescit,	<i>it grows light.</i>	vespērascit,	<i>it grows dark.</i>

3. Personal verbs used *specially* as impersonals in third person singular.

accidit,	<i>it happens.</i>	fit,	<i>it happens.</i>
accēdit,*	<i>it is added.</i>	intērest,	<i>it concerns.</i>
apparēt,	<i>it appears.</i>	jūvāt,	<i>it is pleasant.</i>
attīnēt;	<i>it belongs to.</i>	lātēt,	{ <i>it is unknown, concealed.</i>
conducit,	<i>it is conducive.</i>	liquēt,	
constāt,	{ <i>it is known, it is agreed upon.</i>	pātēt,	<i>it is plain, open.</i>
contingit,		<i>it happens.</i>	plācēt,
convenit,	<i>it suits, agrees.</i>	præstāt,	<i>it is better.</i>
delectāt,	<i>it is delightful.</i>	restāt,	<i>it remains.</i>
dēcēt,	<i>it is becoming.</i>	sōlēt,	{ <i>it happens usually.</i>
dēdēcēt,	<i>it is unbecoming.</i>	assolēt,	
evēnit,	<i>it turns out.</i>	stāt,	<i>it suffices.</i>
expēdit,	<i>it is expedient.</i>	sufficit,	<i>(I) have leisure.</i>
excidit,†	<i>it has escaped me.</i>	vācāt,	

Rem. These may be used in the different tenses of indic. and subj. moods.

4. The third person singular of many intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive; e. g., *currītūr*, *they run* (it is run by them); *pugnātū est*, *they fought* (it was fought by them). Those which govern the dative, govern it also in the impersonal form; e. g., *I am envied*, *mihi invidētūr*.

* Accēdit quod (or ut) = *moreover*.

† i. e., *dē mēmōria excidit* = *it has slipped from my memory - is forgotten*.

§ 7. ADVERB.

THE adverb qualifies a verb, adjective, or another adverb.

I. Derivative Adverbs.

(680.) *Derivative adverbs* (a) are nearly all formed from *adjectives* or *participles*, by adding *ē* or *Itēr* to their stems:

1. Add *ē* to stem of adjectives in *ūs*, *ā*, *īm*; e. g.,

clār-ūs, *illustrious*. clār-ē, *illustriously*.

Rem. Bōnūs makes bōnē, *well*; and mālūs (*bad*); mālē, *badly*.
All others end in *ē* (*long*).

2. Add *Itēr* to the stem of adjectives of 2d or 3d class; e. g.,

brēv-is, *brief*. brēv-Itēr, *briefly*.
fērox (ferō-s), *fierce*. fērōc-Itēr, *fiercely*.

Rem. 1. Those which end in *ns* do not take the connecting vowel *i*;
e. g.,

prādens, *prudent*. prāden-tēr, *prudently*.

2. Audax, *bold*, makes audac-tēr, *boldly*.

(b) A few are formed from nouns, by adding *tūs* or *tīm* to the stem by means of a connecting vowel; e. g.,

cæl-ām, *heaven*. cæl-i-tūs, *from heaven*.
fund-ūs, *bottom*. fund-i-tūs, *from the bottom, totally*.
greg (greg-s), *flock*. grēg-ā-tīm, *by flocks*.

(c) Cases of adjectives, especially in the *neuter*, are often used as adverbs; e. g., dulcē, *sweetly*; falsē, *falsely*, &c.

II. Primitive Adverbs.

(681.) *Primitive adverbs* are such as cannot conveniently be classed among the derivatives above mentioned. The most common are arranged in the following lists:

1. ADVERBS OF PLACE (fivefold).

(1.) <i>In a Place.</i>			
ubi ? hic, illic, istic, ibi, intus, foris,	where ? here. there. there, where you are. there. within. without.	ubique, nusquam, alicubi, alibi, ubivis, ibidem,	everywhere. nowhere. somewhere. elsewhere. { anywhere (you please). in the same place.
(2.) <i>To a Place—(o, uc).</i>			
quo ? huc, illuc, istuc, intro,	whither ? hither. thither. { thither, to where you are. to within.	foras, eo, alio, aliquo, eodem,	to without. to that place. to another place. to some place. to the same place.
(3.) <i>Towards a Place.</i>			
quorsum, versus, sursum, deorsum,	whitherward ? towards. upward. downward.	retorsum, dextorsum, sinistorsum,	backward. to the right hand. to the left hand.
(4.) <i>From a Place—(nc, nde).</i>			
unde ? hinc, illic, istinc, inde,	whence ? hence. thence. { thence, from where you are. thence.	aliunde, alicunde, sicunde, utrinque, superne, inferne,	from elsewhere. from some place. if from any place. on both sides. from above. from below.
(5.) <i>Through or by a Place.</i>			
qua ? hac, illac,	which way ? this way. that way.	istac, alia,	that way, by you. another way.

2. ADVERBS OF TIME (threefold).

(1.) <i>Being in time, either,</i>			
nunc, hōdiē,	1. <i>Present.</i> <i>now.</i> <i>to-day.</i>	protinus, illico,	<i>instantly.</i> <i>straightway.</i>
	2. <i>Past.</i> <i>then.</i> <i>yesterday.</i> <i>heretofore.</i> <i>the day before.</i> <i>lately.</i>	crās, postridie, perendie, nondum,	<i>(Remote.)</i> <i>to-morrow.</i> <i>the day after.</i> <i>two days hence.</i> <i>not yet.</i>
	3. <i>Future.</i> <i>(Very Near.)</i> <i>presently.</i> <i>immediately.</i> <i>by-and-by.</i>	quandō? aliquandō, nonnunquā interdum, semp̄r, nunquā, int̄rīm, int̄rēa, quōtidie,	4. <i>Indefinite.</i> <i>when?</i> <i>sometimes.</i> <i>always.</i> <i>never.</i> <i>in the mean time.</i> <i>daily.</i>
jamjam, mox, statim,			
(2.) <i>Continuance of Time.</i>			
quamdiū? diū, tamdiū,	<i>how long?</i> <i>long.</i> <i>so long.</i>	jamdiū, am̄dēdūm, jampridē,	<i>long ago.</i>
(3.) <i>Vicissitude, or Repetition of Time.</i>			
quōtiēs? sēp̄s, tōtiēs, aliquōtiēs, vicissim, rursū, it̄rūm,	1. <i>Indefinite.</i> <i>how often?</i> <i>often.</i> <i>so often.</i> <i>for several times.</i> <i>by turns.</i> <i>again.</i> <i>a second time.</i>	subindē, identidē, sēm̄l, bis, t̄r, quat̄r,	<i>immediately after.</i> <i>several times.</i> 2. <i>Definite, or in Number.</i> <i>once.</i> <i>twice.</i> <i>thrice.</i> <i>four times.</i>

3. ADVERBS OF ORDER.

indē, <i>then.</i>	deinceps, <i>successively.</i>	primo,* -um,† <i>first.</i>
deindē, <i>thereafter.</i>	dēnuō, <i>anew.</i>	secundō,† <i>secondly.</i>
dehinc, <i>henceforth.</i>	deniquē, <i>finally.</i>	&c.
porrō, <i>moreover.</i>	(postrēmō,† <i>lastly.</i>	

4. ADVERBS OF QUALITY, MANNER, &c.

adeō, <i>so, and therefore.</i>	nēp̄s, <i>truly.</i>
admōdūm, <i>very, greatly.</i>	nīmīūm, <i>too much.</i>
an, <i>whether? or else?</i>	nōn, <i>not.</i>
cūr, <i>why.</i>	nūm? <i>whether?</i>
dēmūm, <i>at length.</i>	omninō, <i>at all, in general.</i>
etiam, <i>likewise, yes.</i>	pārūm, <i>little.</i>
fēre, <i>almost.</i>	sātis, <i>enough.</i>
haud, <i>not.</i>	sic, <i>so, thus.</i>
immō, <i>yes, truly.</i>	scilicēt, <i>namely.</i>
it̄a, <i>so, thus.</i>	videlicēt, <i>namely.</i>
māgis, <i>more.</i>	vix, <i>scarcely.</i>
nē, <i>not.</i>	

* Primo = *at first*; primūm = *first, in the first place.*

† These fall under (680. c).

§ 8. PREPOSITION.

(682.) 1. PREPOSITIONS governing the *accusative*:

Antē, apūd, ad, adversūs,
Circū, circa, citrā, cīs,
Ergā, contrā, intēr, extrā,
Infra. intra, juxtā, ob,
Pōnēs, pōnē, post, and prætēr,
Prōpē, proptēr, pēr, sēcundū,
Sūpra, versūs, ultrā, trans.

[Versūs is placed *after* the noun which it governs.]

2. Governing the *ablative*:

Absquē, ā, āb, abs, and dē.
Cōrām, clām, cūm, ex, and ē.
Tēnūs, sīnē, prō, and prae.

3. Governing both *accusative* and *ablative*:

In, sūb, sūpēr, subter

§ 9. CONJUNCTION.

(683.) CONJUNCTIONS connect words and sentences. They may be divided into the following classes:

- I. *Copulative*, which simply unite sentences together (*and*): they are *et*, *atque* or *ac*, *que*, *neque* or *ne*, *necnon*, *etiam*, *quod*, with the adverbials *item* and *itidem*.
- II. *Disjunctive*, which connect *unlike* prepositions (*or*): they are *aut*, *vel*, the suffix *ve*, and *sive* or *seu*; (*either—or*): *aut—aut*, *vel—vel*; (*whether—or*): *sive—sive*.
- III. *Comparative* (*as, like, as if, &c.*): they are *ut*, *sicut*, *velut*, *prout*, *ceu*, *quam*, *tamquam*, *quasi*, *utsi*, *acsi*, together with *ac* and *atque*, when they mean *as*.
- IV. *Adversative*, expressing *opposition* of thought (*but*): they are *sed*, *autem*, *verò*, *at* and its compounds, *tamen* (and its compounds with *at* *sed* and *verum*), and *ceterum*.
- V. *Concessive*, expressing something *granted* (*although, even if*): they are *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*, *quamlibet*, *licet*, with *ut* and *quum*, when they mean *although*.
- VI. *Conditional*, expressing a *condition* (*if, if only, if but*): they are *si*, *sin*, *ni* or *nisi*, *simodò*, *dumodò*, *modone*, and some times *dum* and *modò* used alone.
- VII. *Conclusive*, expressing a *conclusion* or *inference* (*therefore*): they are *ergo*, *igitur*, *itaque*, *eò*, *ideò*, *idcirco*, *proinde*, *propterea*, and the relatives (*wherefore*) *quapropter*, *quare*, *quomobrem*, *quocirca*, *undè*.
- VIII. *Causal*, expressing a *cause* or *reason* (*for, because*): *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, *et enim*, *quia*, *quod*, *quoniam*, *quippe*, *quum*, *quando*, *quandoquidem*, *siquidem*.
- IX. *Final*, expressing a *purpose* or *aim* (*in order that, in order that not*): *ut* or *utì*, *quò*, *nè*, *utnè*, *nève*, *neu*, *quin*, *quominus*.
- X. *Temporal*, expressing a *relation of time* (*when, as soon as, after that, just as*): *quum*, *ut*, *ubi*, *postquam*, *antequam*, *priusquam*, *quando*, *simul*, *simulac*, *dum*, *usque dum*, *dò nec*, *quoad*.
- XI. *Interrogative*, used in asking questions: *nàm*, *utrùm*, *an*, *nò* (suffix)

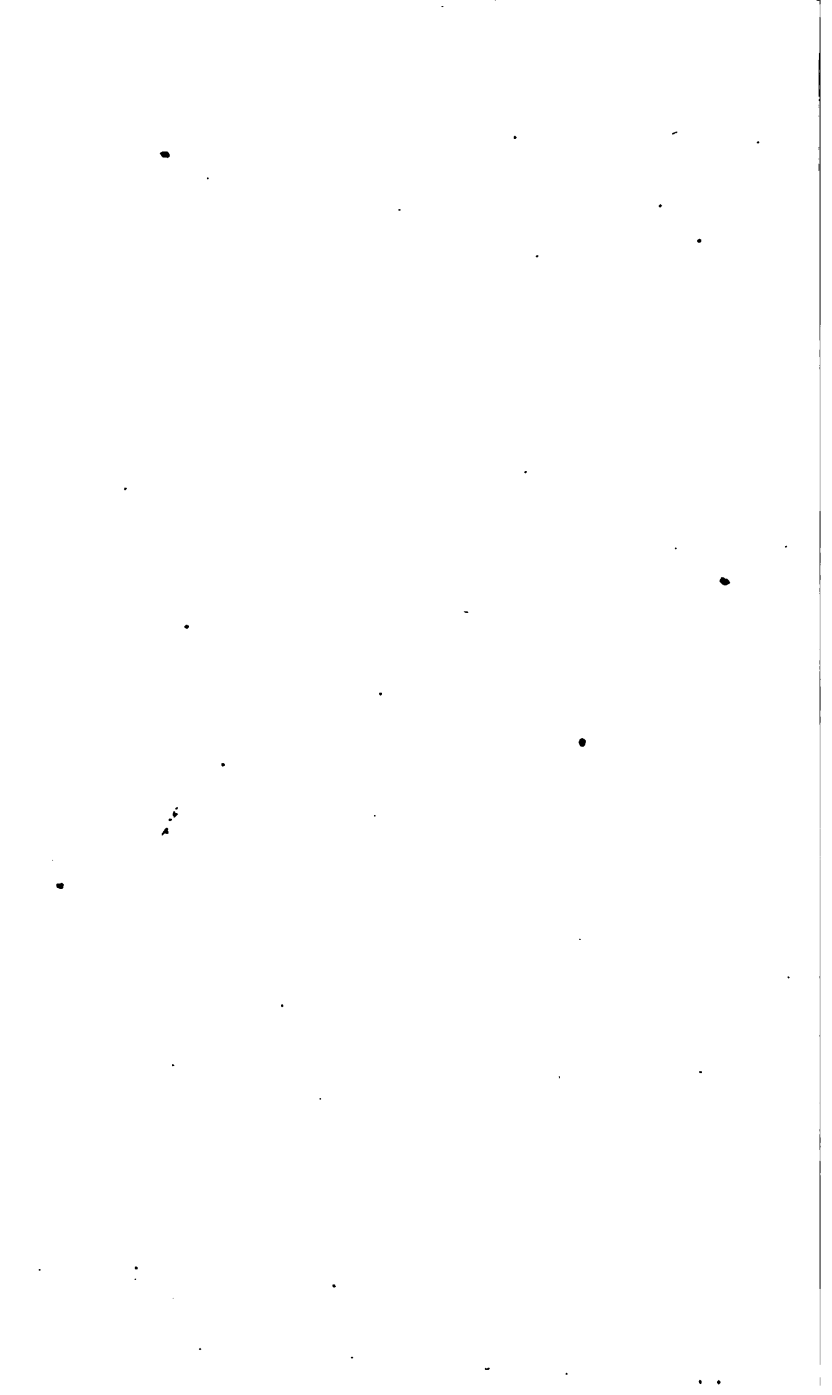
§ 10. INTERJECTION.

(684.) INTERJECTIONS are simply signs of emotion . . .

áh,	<i>ah !</i>	hēm,	<i>hem ! how !</i>
ápáġe,	<i>away !</i>	iō,	<i>kuzza !</i>
eccē,	<i>behold !</i>	ōh,	<i>oh ! alas !</i>
eccūm,	<i>see him !</i>	pāpae,	<i>O strange ! good !</i>
eū,	<i>lo !</i>	prā,	<i>alas !</i>
hei, heū,	<i>alas !</i>	vae,	<i>woe !</i>
		váh,	<i>O rare !</i>

PART IV.

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.



SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION.

(685.) A *proposition* is a thought expressed in words ; *e. g.*, *the rose blooms ; the rose is beautiful.*

(686.) A *simple sentence* consists of a single proposition ; *e. g.*, *the messenger was sent ; the swift messenger arrived.*

(687.) A *compound sentence* is one made up of two or more propositions ; *e. g.*, *the messenger, who had been sent arrived.*

(688.) SYNTAX treats of the use of words in the formation of sentences, and of the relation of sentences to each other. We speak first,

PART I.

OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

§ 1. Definition of Subject and Predicate.

(689.) Every sentence (*e. g.*, *the eagle flies*) consists of two parts, the *subject* (*e. g.*, *eagle*) and the *predicate* (*e. g.*, *flies*).

(a) The *subject* is that of which anything is declared, and is generally (1) a *noun*, or (2) some word used instead of a *noun*.

1. The *eagle flies*. Here the *noun eagle* is the subject.

2. *To err* is human. Here the infinitive *to err* is used as a *noun*, and forms the subject.

(b) The *predicate* is that which is declared of the subject, and is generally either (1) a *verb*, (2) an *adjective* or *participle*, or (3) a *noun*, connected with the subject by some form of the verb *to be*.

1. The *eagle flies*. Here the *verb flies* is the predicate.

2. *To err* is human. Here the *adjective human* is the predicate.

3. *John* is a man. Here the *noun man* is the predicate.

§ 2. Agreement.

(690.) RULE I. The verb of the predicate agrees with the subject in number and person.

The trees are green.

| *Arbores virent.*

Art thou happy?

| *Esne tu beatus?*

Rem. 1. If the subj. consists of two or more singular nouns denoting persons, the verb is generally in the plural.

2. A *collective* noun sometimes has a plural verb.

The crowd rushes.

| *Turba ruunt.*

[This construction is not used by Cicero, and seldom, if at all, by Caesar.]

3. A plural verb is sometimes used with *uterque* and *quisque*.

Each of them leads his army out of the camp.

| *Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt.*

4. The verb agrees with the first person rather than the second; the second rather than the third.

If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

| *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.*

(691.) An adjective may stand either

- (1.) As predicate; *e. g.*, the man is *happy*;
- (2.) As modifying the subject; *e. g.*, the *good* man is happy;
- (3.) As modifying the predicate; *e. g.*, the good man is a *happy* man.

In either case we have

RULE II. Adjectives agree with the nouns to which they refer in gender, number, and case.

[This rule applies to all adjectives, pronouns, and participles.]

Rem. If there be two or more nouns denoting *persons*, the most worthy* gender prevails; if *things*, the neuter is used.

My father and mother are dead.

| *Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*

Labour and enjoyment are united.

| *Labor voluptasque juncta sunt.*

(692.) **RULE III.** If the predicate be a noun, it takes the case of the subject.

Numa was made king.

| *Numa rex creabatur.*

§ 3. *Apposition.*

(693.) A noun may stand

- (a) In the subject, denoting the same person or thing with the subject-noun; *e. g.*, the general, a *brave man*, led the army.
- (b) In the predicate, denoting the same person or thing with a noun in the predicate; *e. g.*, we have sent the consul, a *brave man*.

Nouns thus expressing the same person or thing, whether in the subject or predicate, are said to be in *apposition* with each other; and in either case we have

RULE IV. Nouns in apposition with each other agree in case.

* The *masculine* is said to be more worthy than the *feminine*; the *feminine* than the *neuter*.

The commander, a brave man, led the army.	Imperator, vir fortis, exercitum duxit.
We sent the consul, a brave man.	Consulem, virum fortem, misimus.

Rem. 1. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is commonly put in the plural.

M. Antony and C. Crassus, tribunes of the people.	M. Antonius, C. Crassus, tribuni plebis.
---	--

2. A noun in apposition with the name of a town may be put in the ablative, with or without the preposition *in*.

At Rome, the chief city of Italy. | Romæ, (in) prima urbe Italiæ.

II. USE OF CASES.

§ 4. Nominative.

(694.) *Subject-nominative*.—The subject of a proposition takes the nominative case, and is called the *subject-nominative*.

(2.) *Predicate-nominative*.—The predicate-nominative (692) is always connected with the subject by *esse*, *to be*, or some verb expressing an incomplete idea.

Rem. Of this class of verbs are *to appear*, apparere, videri; *to become*, fieri, evadere, existere; *to be named*, dici, appellari, nominari; *to be esteemed*, existimari, haberi, &c.

Ariovistus was called king by the senate.	Ariovistus a senatu rex appellatus est.
---	---

§ 5. Genitive.

(695.) **RULE V.** The genitive answers the questions *whose?* *of whom?* *of what?* *e. g.*, the love of glory, amor gloriæ; Cicero's orations, Ciceronis orationes.

Rem. The genitive is *subjective* when it denotes that which does something, or to which a thing belongs; *e. g.*, Ciceronis orationes. It is *objective* when it denotes that which is affected by the action or feeling spoken of; *e. g.*, amor gloriæ: the taking of the town, expugnatio urbis.

(696.) **RULE VI.** *Genitive of Quality*.—The genitive (with an adjective, or pronoun of quality, number, &c.) is used to express the *quality* of a thing.

A man of great bravery.	Vir magnæ virtutis.
A ditch of fifteen feet.	Fossa quindecim pedum.

Rem. 1. The *ablative* is also used in the same way (724).

2. If the two nouns are connected, not immediately, but by another part of speech, the *accusative* must be used: fossa quindecim pedes lata.

(697.) RULE VII. *Partitive-genitive*.—The genitive is used to express the *whole* of which anything is a part. Hence,

(a) With comparatives and superlatives :

The more learned of the two brothers. | Doctior fratrum duorum.

The most learned of the Romans. | Doctissimus Romanorum.

(b) With all words expressing *number* or *quantity*, whether adjectives, pronouns, numerals, or adverbs; e. g., *many of the soldiers*, multi militum; *which of you?* quis vestrum? *the last of the Romans*, ultimus Romanorum; *enough eloquence*, satis eloquentiæ; *where* (in what part) *of the world?* ubinam gentium?

Rem. This rule includes the neuters tantum, quantum, aliquantum, quid, aliquid, &c.

(698.) RULE VIII. *Genitive of Mental Affections*.—The genitive is used with verbs and adjectives expressing certain operations of the mind or feelings, to denote the *object* thereof.

(a) *Operations of the mind.*

1. Adjectives of *knowledge* and *ignorance*, *remembering* and *forgetting*, *certainty* and *doubt*.

Mindful of a kindness.

| Beneficii memor.

He was not ignorant of the result of the war.

| Eventus belli non erat ignarus.

2. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* (recordor, meminī, reminiscor, obliviscor).

To remember past events.

| Meminisse præteritorum.

He exhorts the Æduans to forget their disputes.

| Cohortatur Æduos ut controversiarum obliviscantur.

[The thing remembered is often put in the accusative.]

(b) *Operations of the feelings.*

1. Adjectives expressing *desire* or *aversion*, *patience* or *impatience*, *appetite* or *passion*. Participles used as adjectives fall under this rule.

Desirous of praise.

| Avidus laudis.

A lover of (= one loving) virtue.

| Amans virtutis.

2. Verbs.

(a) Those expressing *pity*, viz., miseresco, misereor.

I pity the unfortunate.

| Miseresco infelicium.

(b) The impersonals pudet, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret (*shame, disgust, repentance, loathing, pity*).

<i>I am not only sorry for my folly, but ashamed of it.</i>	<i>Me non solum pœnitet stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet.</i>
<i>I am weary of my life.</i>	<i>Me tædet vitæ.</i>

Rem. 1. Observe that the *person* feeling is expressed by the accusative.

2. The cause of feeling may be a verb, or part of a sentence, instead of a noun in the genitive.

<i>I am not sorry (= it does not repent me) that I have lived.</i>	<i>Non pœnitet me vixisse</i>
--	-------------------------------

(699.) **RULE IX. Genitive of Participation.**—The genitive is used with adjectives and participles expressing (1) *plenty* or *want*, (2) *power* or *weakness*, (3) *sharing* or its opposite, (4) *likeness* or *unlikeness*.

(1.) <i>Full of wrath.</i>	<i>Plenus iræ.</i>
(2.) <i>Master of one's faculties.</i>	<i>Compos mentis.</i>
(3.) <i>He is like his brother.</i>	<i>Similis est fratris.</i>
(4.) <i>Man is a sharer of reason.</i>	<i>Homo particeps est rationis.</i>

Rem. 1. Those of *plenty* and *want* take also ablative (716, R. 4).

2. Those of *likeness* and *unlikeness* take also the dative (704, 4).

(700.) **RULE X. Genitive of Value.**—The genitive of certain adjectives is used with verbs of *valuing*, *esteeming*, *buying*, *selling*, &c., to denote the price or value.

<i>The poor man estimates riches at a great value.</i>	<i>Pauper divitias magni æstimat.</i>
--	---------------------------------------

Rem. 1. Such genitives are *magni*, *permagni*, *pluris*, *maximi*, *minoris*, and others.

2. If the price be a noun, the ablative is used (719). Also, the ablatives *magno*, *permagno*, *plurimo*, *parvo*, *minimo*, *nihi- lo*, are often used.

(701.) **RULE XI. Genitive of Crime.**—The genitive is used with verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquitting*, &c., to denote the *crime* or *offence* charged.

<i>To accuse of treachery.</i>	<i>Proditionis accusare.</i>
<i>The judge acquitted the prisoner of the crime.</i>	<i>Prætor reum criminis absolvit.</i>

(702.) **RULE XII. Genitive of Property.**—The genitive is used with *esse* to denote (1) that to which something belongs; (2) that to which something is peculiar.

(1.) <i>This book belongs to my father.</i>	<i>Hic liber est mei patris.</i>
(2.) <i>It is peculiar to the brave to endure pain with fortitude.</i>	<i>Fortium est dolorem fortiter pati.</i>

Rem. 1. Under this last head come the following constructions

It is	{	the property peculiarity duty mark characteristic &c.	}	of a wise man = est sapientia.
-------	---	--	---	--------------------------------

2. Observe carefully, that instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns (*mei, tui, &c.*), the neuter possessives (*meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*) are used; e. g., *it is my duty, &c.; est meum, &c.*

(703.) **RULE XIII.** The genitive is used with the impersonal interest (*it concerns*), to express the person concerned.

It concerns my brother.

Mei fratris interest.

It concerns the state.

Reipublicæ interest.

Rem. But instead of the genitives of the personal pronouns (*mei, tui, &c.*), the possessive forms *mea, tua, &c.*, are always used; and with them the impersonal *refert* has the same force as *interest*.

It concerns you.

Tua interest (not tui interest)

It is of great importance to me to see you.

Magni mea refert ut te videam

§ 6. Dative.

(704.) **RULE XIV.** The dative case is used to express the person or thing *to or for whom* (or *which*), *to or for whose advantage or disadvantage* anything is done or tends.

☞ Almost every instance in which the dative occurs may be explained by a proper application of this rule. For the sake of fuller illustration, however, we add the following heads:

(1.) *Dative of Remote Object.*—The dative is used to express the *remote* object,

(a) With *transitive* verbs governing also a *direct object*.

I send you a book.

Mitto tibi librum.

Pisistratus conquered the Megarenses for himself.

Pisistratus sibi Megarenses vicit.

Rem. The accusative is often omitted, and the dative alone appears with the verb; e. g., *I persuade you, tibi suadeo; he told the general, nuntiavit imperatori.*

(b) With *intransitive* verbs expressing an action done *to or for* some person or thing.

I have leisure for philosophy.

Vaco philosophiæ.

(2) On the same principle (*advantage or disadvantage*), the dative is used with verbs of the following meanings, viz. :

*Envy, profit, please, displease, obey,
Help, hurt, resist, excel, or disobey,
Command, indulge, be angry, spare, upbraid,
Marry, heal, favour, meet, trust, and persuade.*

Rem. 1. Juvo, lædo, delecto, offendo, rego, gubernō, govern the accusative.

2. Impero, credo, minor, comminor, are also used transitively, with accusative and dative.

(3.) *Dative with Compound Verbs.*—The dative is used with *most* verbs compounded with ad, con, in, inter, ob, præ, sub; and with *many* of those compounded with ab, ante, de, e, post, præ, re, super.

Rem. These verbs govern the dative when they acquire a meaning from the preposition which calls for the dative; e. g., *to join*, jungere, takes accusative; but *to join to*, adjungere, takes dative also. When they are transitive, they take both accusative and dative; but when intransitive, the dative only.

<i>To prefer unknown men to known.</i>	Ignotos notis anteferre.
<i>Vices creep upon us.</i>	Vitia nobis obrepunt.

(4.) So, also, the dative is used with *adjectives* expressing *advantage, likeness, usefulness, fitness, facility, nearness to*, and their opposites.

<i>Be kind to all.</i>	Cunctis esto benignus.
<i>Hurtful to the body.</i>	Corpori perniciosum.
<i>A place fit for ambush.</i>	Locus insidiis aptus.
<i>They are neighbours to the Germans.</i>	Proximi sunt Germanis.

Rem. 1. Adjectives of *likeness* or *unlikeness* may take the genitive (699, 3).

2. Those of *fitness* and *unfitness* often take the accusative with ad; e. g., locus ad insidias aptus.

(705.) **RULE XV. Dative of Possession.**—The dative is used with esse to express the person who has or possesses something.

I have a book. . . . | Est mihi liber (= habeo librum).

Rem. 1. *I have a name* = est mihi nomen; but if the name be expressed, it may be put either in nominative or dative; e. g., *my name is Lælius* = mihi est nomen Lælius (or Lælio).

2. The possessor is expressed by the *dative* when the mind refers chiefly to the *possession* (e. g., *I have a book* = est mihi liber); but by the *genitive* when the mind refers chiefly to the *possessor* (e. g., *this book is my father's* = hio liber est mei patris).

(706.) RULE XVI. *Dative of the End (Double Dative).*—Two datives are used with *esse*, and with verbs of *giving, coming, sending, imputing*; one to express the *person*, the other the *object or end*.

The Boians were (for) a protection to the rear. | *Boii novissimis præsidio erant.*

Pausanias came to aid (for an aid to) the Athenians. | *Pausanias venit Atheniensibus auxilio.*

Rem. The verbs used with double dative are *esse, dare, ducere, tribuere, vertere, accipere, relinquere, deligere, mittere, venire, habere*.

[The dative is used with gerundives, for which see 737, b.]

§ 7. Accusative.

(707.) The ACCUSATIVE is the case of the *direct object*, and answers the questions *whom? what? to what place?*

Under this general statement we make three heads: (1) the accusative with verbs; (2) the accusative with prepositions; (3) the accusative according to the usage of the language.

I. Accusative with Verbs.

(708.) RULE XVII. *Accusative of the Direct Object.*—The accusative is used with transitive verbs, to express the *direct object*.

Cæsar recalls the lieutenant. | *Cæsar legatum revocat.*

Rem. 1. Some verbs are used both transitively and intransitively; the use of these must be learned by practice.

2. Some *intransitives* (especially those of motion), compounded with prepositions, acquire a transitive force easily recognised from their meaning; thus: *to go, ire*; *to go across, transire*, which takes the accusative.

3. Some *intransitives* take an accusative of a noun from the same root with themselves; e. g., *to live a life, vivere vitam*.

(709.) RULE XVIII. *Accusative with Impersonals.*—The accusative of the *person affected* is used with the impersonals *pudet, piget, tædet, miseret, pœnitet*.

I am tired of life. | *Tædet me vitæ.*

Rem. *Decet* and its compounds (which admit a personal subject), also *juvat* and *delectat*, take the accusative.

Anger becomes wild beasts. | *Decet ira feras.*

(710.) RULE XIX. *Double Accusative.*

(a) Two accusatives, one of the *person*, the other of the

thing, are used with verbs of *teaching, concealing, asking, or entreating*, and also with those verbs whose passives have a double nominative (694, 2, R.).

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| (1.) <i>Who taught Epaminondas music?</i> | Quis musicam docuit Epaminondam. |
| (2.) <i>I conceal nothing from you.</i> | Nihil te celo. |
| (3.) <i>I ask this of you earnestly.</i> | Hoc te vehementer rogo. |
| (4.) <i>Avarice renders men blind.</i> | Avaritia homines cæcos reddit. |

Rem. 1. With verbs of *asking, demanding*, the ablative with a preposition is used instead of one of the accusatives.

<i>The ambassadors were asking peace of Cæsar.</i>	Legati pacem a Cæsare poscebant.
--	----------------------------------

2. *Petere* and *postulare* always take the ablative with *ab*; and *querere*, the ablative with *ab*, *de*, or *ex*.

(b) Two accusatives are used also with verbs compounded with *trans*.

<i>Cæsar led the army across the Rhine.</i>	Cæsar exercitum Rhenum transduxit.
---	------------------------------------

The *trans* is often repeated; e. g., Cæsar exercitum trans Rhenum transduxit.

Rem. 1. In the passive construction of verbs which take a double accusative, the *person* takes the nominative, but the *thing* generally remains in the accusative.

<i>I was asked my opinion.</i>	Ego rogatus sum sententiam.
<i>The multitude is led across the Rhine.</i>	Multitudo Rhenum transducitur.

2. But with verbs of *demanding* the ablative with a preposition is generally used.

<i>Money is demanded of me.</i>	Pecunia a me poscitur.
---------------------------------	------------------------

II. Accusative with Prepositions.

(711.) **RULE XX.** The accusative is used with the prepositions *ad, apud, ante, adversus, cis, citra, circa, circum, circiter, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, præter, prope, propter, secundum, supra, trans, versus, ultra*. Also, with *in* and *sub*, when motion is expressed; with *super*, when it means *over*, and with *subter* nearly always.

III. Accusative according to the Usage of the Language.

(712.) **RULE XXI.** *Accusative of Measure.*—The accusative is used in answer to the questions *how far? how deep? how*

thick? how broad? how old? how long? (whether of time or distance).

The city is two miles off.

The ditch is ten feet wide (deep, or long).

Only one hour.

Twenty years old.

Urbs duo millia abest.

Fossa decem pedes lata (alta, longa).

Unam modo horam.

Viginti annos natus.

Rem. 1. How far? is sometimes answered by the ablative.

Six miles from Caesar's Camp.

Millibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris.

2. For time how long, the accusative with per is sometimes used, and sometimes the ablative alone.

Through the whole night.

He was absent six months.

Per totam noctem.

Sex mensibus absuit.

(713.) **RULE XXII. Accusative of Direction, Whither?**—The accusative is used with names of *towns* and *small islands*, in answer to the question, *whither?*

To set out for Athens.

| Athenas proficisci.

Rem. 1. With names of countries or large islands the prepositions in, ad, must be used.

He crossed into Europe.

| In Europam trajecit.

2. Domus and rus follow this rule.

To go home.

I will go into the country.

| Ire domum.

| Rus ibo.

(714.) **Greek Accusative.**—The accusative is used to express a special limitation.

Naked as to his limbs.

For the most part (men) say so.

| Nudus membra.

| Maximam partem ita dicunt.

Rem. This is a Greek usage, common in Latin poetry, but not in prose.

(715.) **Exclamations.**—The accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an interjection.

Miserable me!

Behold, four altars!

| Me miserum.

| En quattuor aras.

[For the accusative with the infinitive, see 751.]

§ 8. Ablative.

(716.) **RULE XXIII. General Rule.**—The ablative is used to express the (1) *cause*; (2) *manner*; (3) *means, material, or instrument*; (4) *supply*.

1. *Cause*.—The ablative of cause is used with passive verbs, and with the participles *natus*, *genitus*, *ortus*, *contentus*.

The world is illuminated by the sun. | *Sole mundus illustratur.*

I am content with my lot. | *Sorte mea contentus sum.*

O thou, born of a goddess! | *Nate Dea!*

☞ If the cause be a *person* (or a thing *personified*), *a* or *ab* must be used with passive verbs.

The world was built by God. | *A Deo mundus ædificatus est.*

2. *Manner*.—(a) This ablative generally occurs in nouns *denoting* manner; e. g., *mos*, *modus*, *ratio*, &c.

In this way I wrote. | *Hoc modo scripsi.*

(b) With other nouns, *cum* is generally used, unless an *adjective* is joined with the noun.

He hears with pleasure. | *Cum voluptate audit.*

He bears the injury with firmness. | *Æquo animo fert injuriam.*

3. *Means, Material, Instrument*.—Ablative without a preposition.

To travel by horse, carriage, ships. | *Equo, curru, navibus, vehi.*

Bulls defend themselves with their horns. | *Cornibus tauri se tutantur.*

☞ If the instrument or means be a *person*, *per* or *propter* is used, with the accusative.

I was freed by you. | *Per te liberatus sum.*

4. *Supply*.—As supply may be either abundant or defective, the ablative is used with verbs and adjectives of *abounding*, *wanting*, *filling*, *emptying*, &c.; e. g., *abundare*, *egere*, *carere*, *inops*, *refertus*, *præditus*, &c.

Germany abounds in rivers. | *Germania fluminibus abundat.*

The mind is endowed with perpetual activity. | *Mens est prædita motu sempiterno.*

(717.) RULE XXIV. The ablative of the *thing needed*, and the dative of the *person*, are used with *opus est* (*there is need*).

We have need of a leader. | *Duce nobis opus est.*

Rem. If *opus est* be used personally, the *thing needed* is put in the nominative as subject.

Leaders are necessary for us. | *Duces nobis opus sunt.*

(718.) RULE XXV. The ablative is used with the deponents *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*.

To make use of advice. | *Consilio uti.*

They were enjoying peace. | *Pace fruebantur.*

Rem. Potior is used also with the genitive.

To obtain possession of all Gaul. | Totius Galliae potiri.

(719.) RULE XXVI. *Ablative of Price.*—The ablative is used with verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, &c.*; also with the adjectives dignus and indignus, to express the *price* or *value*.

He sold his country for gold.

Worthy of hatred.

That battle cost the blood of
many.

Patriam auro vendidit.

Odio dignus.

Multorum sanguine ea victoria
stetit.

 If the price or value be an *adjective*, it is generally put in the genitive (700).

(720.) RULE XXVII. *Ablative of Limitation.*—The ablative is used to denote the limitation generally expressed in English by *as to, in respect of, in regard to*.

Older (i. e., greater in age).

Skilled in the law.

In affection a son.

Major natu.

Jure peritus.

Pietate filius.

(721.) RULE XXVIII. *Ablative of Separation.*—The ablative is used with verbs of *removing, freeing, depriving*, and the like.

Cæsar removed his camp from the
spot.

The trees are stripped of leaves.

Cæsar castra loco movit.

Arbores foliis nudantur.

Rem. Many of these verbs also take the prepositions *a, ab, de, ex*.

(722.) RULE XXIX. *Ablative of Quality.*—The ablative is used (with an adjective of quality) to express that one thing is a quality or property of another.

Cæsar was a man of consummate
talent.

Agesilaus was a man of low sta-
ture.

Cæsar summo fuit ingenio.

Agesilaus statura fuit humili.

Rem. The genitive is also thus used (696).

(723.) RULE XXX. *Ablative of Comparison.*—The ablative is used with the comparative degree (*quam* being omitted) to express the object with which another is compared.

Cicero was more eloquent than
Hortensius.

Cicero fuit eloquentior Horten-
sio.

(724.) RULE XXXI. *Ablative of Measure*.—The ablative of measure is used,

- (a) With *comparatives* and *superlatives*, to express the measure of excess or defect.
- (b) To express the measure of time *before* or *after* any event.

Much greater.

Themistocles lived many years before Demosthenes.

Multo major.

Themistocles permultis annis ante fuit quam Demosthenes.

(725.) RULE XXXII. *Ablative of Time When*.—The ablative is used to express the point of time at which anything occurs.

On the sixth day.

| Sexto die.

Rem. The time *within which* anything occurs is expressed by the ablative with or without *in* or *de*.

Within ten years.

| Decem annis.

Within those days.

| In his diebus.

(726.) RULE XXXIII. *Ablative of Place*.

- (a) The place *whence* is expressed by the ablative.

He departed from Corinth.

| Corintho profectus est.

- (b) The place *where* is expressed by the ablative, if the noun be of the *third* declension or *plural* number.

Alexander died at Babylon.

| Alexander Babylone mortuus est.

At Athens.

| Athenis.

Rem. If the noun be of the 1st or 2d declension singular, the genitive is used.

At Rome. At Corinth.

| Roma. Corinthi.

(Domi follows this rule.)

(727.) The ablative is used with the following prepositions.
viz. :

Absque, a, ab, abs, and de,
Coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,
Tenus, sine, pro, and proæ.

Also with *in* and *sub* (implying *rest*, not *motion*), and *super*, when it means *upon*. *Subter* is sometimes, also, used with ablative.

(728.) RULE XXXIV. *Ablative with Compound Verbs*.—The ablative is used with some verbs compounded with *a* (*ab*, *abs*), *de*, *e* (*ex*), and *super*.

To be absent from the city.

Urbe abesse.

Cæsar resolved to desist from battle.

Cæsar prælio supersedere statuit.

Rem. The preposition is sometimes repeated.

To depart from life (= to die). | *Exire de vita.*

[For the Ablative Absolute, see 750.]

(729.) Verbs followed by genitive, dative, or ablative, where we use *no* preposition, and should therefore be likely to put the accusative. (Those with asterisks take also an accusative of the *thing*, though some of them only when the accusative is a neuter pronoun.)*

GENITIVE.			
<i>obtain,</i>	<i>potior (abl.).</i>	<i>hurt,</i>	<i>noceo.</i>
<i>pity,</i>	<i>{ misereor.</i>	<i>indulge,</i>	<i>*indulgeo.</i>
<i>forget,</i>	<i>{ miseresco.</i>	<i>marry,</i>	<i>nubo.</i>
<i>remember,</i>	<i>{ obliviscor (acc.).</i>	<i>obey,</i>	<i>{ pareo.</i>
<i>recollect,</i>	<i>{ memini (acc.).</i>		<i>{ obedio.</i>
<i>require,</i>	<i>{ recordor (acc.).</i>	<i>pardon,</i>	<i>{ obtempero.</i>
<i>need,</i>	<i>{ reminiscor (acc.).</i>	<i>permit,</i>	<i>*ignosco.</i>
	<i>{ egeo } (abl.).</i>	<i>persuade,</i>	<i>*permitto.</i>
		<i>please,</i>	<i>*persuadeo.</i>
		<i>resist,</i>	<i>placeo.</i>
		<i>oppose,</i>	<i>{ resisto;</i>
		<i>rival,</i>	<i>{ repugno.</i>
		<i>satisfy,</i>	<i>semulor (acc.).</i>
		<i>spare,</i>	<i>satisfacio.</i>
		<i>suit,</i>	<i>parco.</i>
		<i>threaten,</i>	<i>convenio.</i>
		<i>trust,</i>	<i>{ minor.</i>
			<i>{ minitor.</i>
			<i>{ fido } (abl.).</i>
			<i>{ confido } (abl.).</i>
DATIVE.		ABLATIVE.	
<i>abuse,</i>	<i>{ maledico.</i>	<i>abuse,</i>	<i>abutor.</i>
<i>revile,</i>	<i>{ *suadeo.</i>	<i>discharge,</i>	<i>{ fungor.</i>
<i>advise,</i>	<i>{ *respondeo.</i>	<i>perform,</i>	<i>{ fruor.</i>
<i>answer,</i>	<i>{ credo.</i>	<i>enjoy,</i>	<i>{ potior (gen.).</i>
<i>believe,</i>	<i>{ *impero.</i>	<i>obtain,</i>	<i>{ egeo } (gen.).</i>
<i>command,</i>	<i>{ *mando.</i>	<i>require,</i>	<i>{ indigeo } (gen.).</i>
<i>commission,</i>	<i>{ *gratulator.</i>	<i>need,</i>	<i>{ utor.</i>
<i>charge,</i>	<i>{ displiceo.</i>	<i>want,</i>	<i>{ careo.</i>
<i>congratulate,</i>	<i>{ *præcipio.</i>	<i>use,</i>	
<i>displease,</i>	<i>{ *invideo.</i>	<i>want,</i>	
<i>direct,</i>	<i>{ faveo.</i>	<i>am without,</i>	
<i>envy,</i>	<i>{ adolor (acc.).</i>		
<i>favour,</i>	<i>{ *do.</i>		
<i>flatter,</i>	<i>{ auxiliior.</i>		
<i>give,</i>	<i>{ opitulator.</i>		
<i>help,</i>	<i>{ subvenio.</i>		
<i>aid,</i>	<i>{ succurro.</i>		
<i>assist,</i>	<i>{ medeor.</i>		
<i>succour,</i>			
<i>heal,</i>			
<i>cure,</i>			

III. USE OF THE INDEFINITE VERB.

§ 9. Infinitive.

(730.) **RULE XXXV. Infinitive as Subject.**—The infinitive is used as the *subject* of a verb, and is then regarded as a neuter noun.

To love (= loving) is pleasant. | *Jucundum est amare.*

* Arnold.

(731.) RULE XXXVI. *Infinitive as Complementary Object.*

—The infinitive is used (exactly as in English) to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by certain words.

I wish to learn.

| Cupio discere.

Worthy to be loved.

| Dignus amari.

Rem. 1. The complementary infinitive occurs after *verbs* denoting to wish, to be able, to be accustomed, ought (debere), to hasten, &c.; after the adjectives *dignus, indignus, audax, &c.*

2. Observe that this construction, which occurs after *all verbs* in English, can only stand in Latin after those expressing imperfect ideas, as above stated. A *purpose* cannot be expressed in Latin, as in English, by the simple infinitive; e. g., *he comes to learn* = venit ut discat, *not* venit discere.

(732.) *Historical Infinitive.*—In animated narrative the infinitive is sometimes used for the indicative.

The Romans hastened, made ready, | Romani festinare, parare, &c.
&c.

(This construction is quite common in Sallust.)

[For Accusative with Infinitive, see 751.]

§ 10. *Participle.*

• (733.) RULE XXXVII. The participle agrees with its noun in gender, case, and number, and the active participle governs the same case as its verb.

The honoured man.

| Vir laudatus.

The blooming rose.

| Rosa florens.

I saw him reading a book.

| Eum legentem librum vidi.

(734.) The participle future active is used to express a *purpose* (where in English we should use *to, in order to*, with the infinitive).

Alexander goes to Jupiter Ammon,
in order to inquire concerning
his descent.

| Alexander ad Jovem Ammonem
pergit, consulturus de origine
sua.

(735.) The passive participle is often used to supply the place of a noun.

After Tarentum taken (= after
the taking of Tarentum).

| Post Tarentum captum.

From the city built (= from the
building of the city).

| Ab urbe condita.

[For Participle in Subordinate Sentences, see 749]

§ 11. *Gerund*.

(736.) RULE XXXVIII. As the *infinitive* is used as a noun in the nominative or accusative, so the *gerund* is used in the remaining cases, and governs the same case as its verb.

Nom.	<i>Writing is useful.</i>	Scribere est utile.
Gen.	The art of <i>writing</i> is useful.	Ars scribendi est utilis.
Dat.	Paper is useful <i>for writing</i> .	Charta scribendo est utilis.
Acc.	{ I learn <i>writing</i> .	Scribere disco.
	{ I learn <i>during writing</i> .	Inter scribendum disco.
Abl.	We learn <i>by writing</i> .	Scribendo discimus.

Rem. 1. With a preposition the gerund in the accusative must be used, *not* the infinitive: ad (inter, ob) scribendum, *not* ad (inter, ob) scribere.

2. The general rules for the use of cases of nouns (695-728) apply to the cases of the infinitive and gerund, as above given.

Special Remark. The gerund is *not* used in the *dative* or *accusative* with an active government; e. g., we can say scribendi epistolas, *of writing letters*, or scribendo epistolas, *by writing letters*, but *not* charta utilis est scribendo (*dat.*) epistolas, nor charta utilis est ad scribendum literas. In these last cases the *gerundive* must be used (738).

§ 12. *The Gerundive, or Verbal in dus, da, dum.*

(737.) RULE XXXIX. (a) The gerundive in the *nominative neuter* (dum) is used with the tenses of *esse*, to denote that an action *should* or *must* be done; and these may govern the case of the verb.

(One) *must write.* | Scribendum est.

(b) The *person* by whom the action *should* or *must* be done is put in the *dative*.

I must write. | Scribendum est mihi.
Caius must write. | Scribendum est Caio.
One must use reason. | Ratione utendum est.

(738.) RULE XL. (a) The gerundive is used with *esse*, in all cases and genders, as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun, to express *necessity* or *worthiness*.

I am to be loved · she is to be | Amandus sum; amanda est
loved, &c | &c.

(b) When the *person* is specified, it must be put in the *dative*.

I must love Tullia.

All things were to be done by Cæsar at one time.

Tullia mihi amanda est.
Cæsari omnia uno tempore erant agenda.

Rem. a or ab with ablative is sometimes used instead of the dative.

My cause must be managed by the consuls.

A consulibus mea causa sus- cipienda est.
--

(739.) RULE XLI. The gerundive is used (*to express continued action*) as a verbal adjective, in all genders and cases (but the nominative) *agreeing* with the noun, instead of the gerund governing the noun; *e. g.*,

Gen. Of writing a letter.

Scribendæ epistolæ, instead of scribendi epistolam.

Dat. To or for writing letters.

Scribendis epistolis, instead of scribendo epistolas.

• *Acc. To write a letter.*

Ad scribendam epistolam, instead of ad scribendum epistolam.

Abl. By, &c., writing a letter.

Scribenda epistola, instead of scribendo epistolam.

Rem. As observed in (736), the gerundive *must* be used for the dative or accusative of the gerund when it has an active government. It *may* be used for it in any other case, unless the object of the gerund is a neuter adjective or pronoun; *e. g.*, *of learning the true* = vera discendi, not verorum discendorum; *of hearing this* = hoc audiendi, not hujus audiendi.

§ 13. Supines.

(740.) RULE XLII. (1.) The supine in um is used with verbs of motion, to express the *design* of the motion, and governs the same case as its verb.

I come to ask you.

| Venio te rogatum.

(2.) The supine in u is used,

(a) With *adjectives*, to show in *what respect* they are used; *e. g.*,

Pleasant as to taste.

| Dulce gustata.

(b) With the nouns *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*, in the same sense: *fas est dictu*.

PART II.

OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

(741.) A compound sentence is one made up of two or more simple sentences. The sentences thus combined are either co-ordinate or subordinata.

I. CO-ORDINATE SENTENCES.

§ 14. *Classes of Co-ordinate Sentences.*

(742.) Co-ordinate sentences are united together, but yet *independent* of each other.* co-ordination is either,

- (a) *Copulative*; e. g., His father has abandoned him, and his friends have deserted him, *and* the son remains.
- (b) *Disjunctive*; e. g., Either his father has abandoned, *or* his friends have deserted him.
- (c) *Adversative*; e. g., His father has abandoned him, *but* his friends have not.
- (d) *Causal*; e. g., His friends will abandon him, *for* his father has done so.
- (e) *Conclusive*; e. g., His father has abandoned him, *therefore* his friends will desert him.

II. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

§ 15. *Classes of Subordinate Sentences.*

(743.) Subordinate sentences are so united to others (called *principal sentences*) as to be *dependent* upon them.

The messenger, *who was sent*, an- | Nuntius, qui missus est, nun-
nounced. | tiavit.

Here *the messenger announced* is the principal sentence; *who was sent* the subordinate sentence.*

(744.) Subordinate sentences are of five classes :

- A. *Participial sentences.*
- B. *Accusative with infinitive.*
- C. *Conjunctive sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by a conjunction or adverb of time.
- D. *Relative sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by a relative word.
- E. *Interrogative sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by an interrogative word.

We shall treat these in order, premising a few remarks upon the use of the moods and tenses, which must be thoroughly understood.

§ 16. *The Moods.*

(745.) The verb expresses affirmation. The moods of the verb are used to vary the character of the affirmation.

* It must be obvious that *all co-ordinate sentences* are, for grammatical purposes, *principal sentences*. Moreover, the doctrines and rules applied to *simple sentences* (Part I.) are applicable to all *principal sentences*: it is only in *subordinate sentences* that difficulty is likely to occur. The pupil should, therefore, obtain as accurate a knowledge as possible of the various kinds of subordinate sentences, and the different modes of affirmation which they express, as it is upon these that their syntax depends.

1. By the *indicative*, affirmation of a *fact* is expressed ; e. g., *I write, I did not write.**
2. By the *subjunctive*, affirmation is expressed *doubtfully, contingently, or indefinitely* ; e. g., *I may write, if I should write, perhaps some (may) think.*
3. By the *imperative*, affirmation is expressed as an *injunction or request* ; e. g., *write.*

(746.) It must be obvious that in principal sentences the indicative mood chiefly occurs, and in subordinate sentences the subjunctive, as affirmations of fact are made more frequently in the former than in the latter. But,

- (a) The subjunctive is used (of course), even in principal sentences, when the affirmation is doubtful, contingent, or indefinite (745, 2).
- (b) The indicative is used, even in subordinate sentences, when the affirmation is positive.

True friendships are everlasting, because nature cannot be changed.	Verse amicitiae sempiternae sunt, quia natura mutari non potest.
--	---

§ 17. The Tenses.

(a) DIVISION.

(747.) The tenses are either primary or historical (647, R. 3).

	Present.	Futura.	Pres. Perf.
(a) Primary,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amat,} \\ \text{he loves.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amabit,} \\ \text{he will love.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amavit,} \\ \text{he has loved.} \end{array} \right.$
	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.	Perf. Aorist.
(b) Historical,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amabat,} \\ \text{he was loving.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amaverat,} \\ \text{he had loved.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amavit,} \\ \text{he loved.} \end{array} \right.$

(b) SUCCESSION OF TENSES.

(748.) RULE XLIII. If there be a primary tense in the principal sentence, there must be a primary tense in the subordinate ; if an historical tense in the principal, an historical in the subordinate.

Principal.	Subordinate.	Principal.	Subordinate.
<i>I know</i>	what you <i>are doing</i> .	<i>Scio,</i>	quid agas.
<i>I was knowing</i>	what you <i>were doing</i> .	<i>Sciebam,</i>	quid ageres.
<i>I have learned</i>	what you <i>are doing</i> .	<i>Cognovi,</i>	quid agas.
<i>I learned</i>	what you <i>were doing</i> .	<i>Cognovi,</i>	quid ageres.

(A.) § 18. Participial Sentences.

[The participle is used to abridge discourse, instead of a relative, adverb, or conjunction with a verb. Thus (1), Tarquin, *when he was expelled*

* Of course the *action* may be either positive or negative, without affecting the *affirmation*.

from Rome = Tarquin, expelled from Rome. (2) Cæsar, when the work was finished, departed = Cæsar, the work having been finished, departed

These are abridged subordinate sentences, (1) being called the *conjunctive participial construction*, and (2) the *ablative absolute*.]

(749.) *Conjunctive Participial Construction*.—The participle in a subordinate sentence which has for its subject the subject or object of the principal sentence, agrees with this last in gender, number, and case.

Aristides, when he was expelled from his country, fled to Lacedæmon.	Aristides, patria pulsus, Lacedæmonem fugit.
--	--

☞ Observe, in this example, that Aristides is the subject of both the principal and the subordinate sentence, and pulsus agrees with Aristides in gender, number, and case. In English such sentences are generally expressed by an adverb or conjunction with a verb.

(750.) *RULE XLIV. Ablative Absolute*.—If the subordinate sentence contains a noun and participle independent of the subject of the leading sentence, both noun and participle are placed in the ablative. (This construction is called the *ablative absolute*.)

When Tarquin was reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy.	Pythagoras, Tarquinio regnante, in Italiam venit.
All things having been provided, they appoint a day.	Omnibus rebus comparatis, diem dicunt.

Rem. Nouns, adjectives, and pronouns are often used in the *ablative absolute* without a participle.

Under the guidance of Nature (= Nature being guide).	Natura duce.
In the consulship of Manlius.	Manlio consule.

(B.) § 19. *Accusative with Infinitive*.

(751.) *RULE XLV*. Many subordinate sentences, which in English are introduced by the conjunction *that* (especially after verbs of *thinking, saying, knowing, &c.*), are expressed in Latin by the *accusative with the infinitive*.

They said that they did not fear the enemy.	Dicebant non se hostem vereri.
He knows that Cicero is eloquent.	Scit Ciceronem esse eloquentem.

Rem. 1. Observe that the *subject* of the sentence thus subordinated is put in the accusative, and the *predicate* in the infinitive. If the predicate contain an adjective, it must agree with the subject.

I perceive that the water is cold. | Sentio aquam frigidam esse.

2. The accusative with infinitive occurs chiefly,

(a) After verba sentiendi et dicendi (*thinking, feeling perceiving, knowing, saying, announcing, willing, forbidding, &c.*).

(b) After such expressions as apparet (*it is evident*), constat (*it is known*), opus est, oportet, necesse est, justum est (*it is necessary, right, just, &c.*). In this case the accusative with infinitive becomes the *subject* of the entire sentence.

It is known to all that the Romans were very brave. | Constat inter omnes Romanos fuisse fortissimos.

☞ Oportet and necesse est may take the subjunctive, instead of the accusative with infinitive.

We ought (= it behooves us) to practice virtue. | Oportet nos virtuti studere; or Virtuti studeamus oportet.

(C.) § 20 Conjunctive Sentences.

Relation of Conjunctions to the Moods.

(752.) From what has been said (745, 746), it is obvious, that as the *moods* express the varieties of affirmation, and as the *conjunctions* are used to indicate different relations of thought (as *positive, conditional, causal, &c.*), there must be a close connexion between the use of the conjunctions and that of the moods. It must be borne in mind, however, that the *nature of the affirmation* (except, perhaps, in purely idiomatic expressions) decides both the mood and the conjunction that shall be used. It cannot properly be said, therefore, that the conjunctions *govern* the moods; but, for convenience' sake, we treat them together.

GENERAL RULE.

(753.) The subjunctive is used in all subordinate sentences in which affirmation is expressed as *dependent* upon some previous affirmation, either as *purpose, aim, consequence, condition, or imaginary comparison*.

SPECIAL RULES.

1. *Final Conjunctions*, ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus.

(754.) RULE XLVI. The subjunctive is used in sentence expressing a *purpose* or a *consequence*, introduced by the final conjunctions ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus.

1. Ut, ne, expressing purpose.

I did not write that in order to instruct you.	Ea non ut te insti uerem scripai.
I beseech you not to do this.	Te obsecro ne hoc facias.

2. Ut, expressing consequence.

The soldiers went with such violence that the enemy betook themselves to flight.	Eo impetu milites ierunt, ut hostes se fugæ mandarent.
--	--

(3.) Quo is used to express a purpose, instead of ut, especially when a comparative enters into the sentence.

Cæsar erects forts, that he may the more easily keep off the Helvetians.	Cæsar castella communit, quo facilius Helvetios prohibere possit.
--	---

(4.) Quin is used in the sense of "but that" (as not, &c.) after negative sentences, and after non dubito, non dubium est, &c.

There is no one but thinks.	Nemo est quin putet.
It is not doubtful but that the soldiers will fight bravely.	Non dubium est quin milites fortiter pugnaturi sint.

(5.) Quominus is used (in preference to ne) after verbs of hindering, preventing, standing in the way of, &c. (It can generally be rendered in English by "of" or "from" with a participle.)

Nothing hinders him from doing this.	Nihil impedit quominus hoc faciat.
--------------------------------------	------------------------------------

2. Conditional Conjunctions, si, nisi, dum, dummodo, modo.

(755.) RULE XLVII. Conditional conjunctions take the indicative if the condition is expressed as *real* or *certain*, the subjunctive where it is not.

If he has any money, he will give it (it is uncertain whether he has any).	Si pecuniam habeat, dabit.
--	----------------------------

Rem. 1. If the condition is represented as *impossible* or *unreal*, (1) the *imperfect* subjunctive must be used for present or future time, (2) the *pluperfect* subjunctive for past time.

(1) If he had any money, he would give it (but he has none).	Si pecuniam haberet daret.
(2) If he had had any money, he would have given it.	Si pecuniam habuisset, dedisset.

Rem. 2. As dum, dummodo, modo, in the sense of *provide*, *that*, can never express a *real*, existing condition, they *always* take the subjunctive.

3. *Concessive Conjunctions* (683, 5).

(756) The *concessive conjunctions* take the indicative when they introduce a definite statement of fact, but the subjunctive when something is expressed as possible, not actual. *Etsi*, *quamquam*, and *tametsi* are used principally in the *former* sense; in the *latter*, *etiamsi* more commonly, and *licet* and *quamvis** nearly always. Hence,

RULE XLVIII. *Licet* and *quamvis* (*although*) are always followed by the subjunctive; *etiamsi*, generally.

<i>Though truth should obtain no defender.</i>	Veritas licet nullum defensorem obtineat.
--	---

The wise man endures pain patiently, even though it be grievous.	Sapiens dolorem patienter tolerat quamvis acerbus sit.
--	--

Rem. The comparative conjunctions, when used concessively, *velut*, *quasi*, *acsi*, *tanquam*, &c. (meaning *as if*, *as though*), always take the subjunctive, for the reason given (756) for *licet* and *quamvis*.

Why do I use witnesses, as though the matter were doubtful?	Quid testibus utor, quasi res dubia sit?
---	--

4. *Temporal Conjunctions.*

(757.) *Temporal conjunctions* (*when*, *after that*, *as soon as*, *just as*, &c.) of course generally take the indicative.

After Cæsar drew up the line of battle.	Postquam Cæsar aciem instruxit.
Every animal, as soon as it is born.	Omne animal, simulac ortum est.

SPECIAL REMARKS.

(A.) *Quum* has two uses: *temporal* and *causal*.

(a) *Temporal.*

1. As a *pure particle of time*, *quum* takes the indicative.
2. In *historical narrative* (especially where the principal clause has the indicative perfect) *quum* temporal is followed by the *subjunctive* imperfect or pluperfect.

When Cæsar had conquered Pompey, he crossed over into Italy.	Cæsar, quum Pompeium vicisset, in Italiam trajecit.
--	---

[In many such cases, the action introduced by *when* is in some sense the *cause* of the action in the principal sentence.]

* *Quamvis* is used by the later writers in the sense of *quamquam*, with the indicative.

(b) *Quum* causal, expressing the relation of *cause* and *effect* (*since* *because, although*), obviously requires the *subjunctive*.

Since *these things are so.* | *Quæ cum ita sint.*

Hence,

RULE XLIX. *Quum* causal is always followed by the *subjunctive*; and *quum* temporal by the imperfect or pluperfect *subjunctive*, when the aorist perfect indicative is used in the principal sentence.

(B.) *Antequam* and *priusquam* are used,

1. To express simple *priority* of one action to another, and here the *indicative* is obviously required.

All these things were done before | *Hæc omnia ante facta sunt*
Verres touched Italy. | *quam Verres Italiam attigit.*

2. To express a *connexion* between one action and another, and here the *subjunctive* is obviously required.

Before Cæsar attempted anything, | *Cæsar, priusquam quidquam*
he orders Divitiacus to be sum- | *conaretur, Divitiacum ad se*
moned. | *vocari jubet.*

3. To introduce a *general* or *indefinite* statement, requiring, of course, the *subjunctive*.

The tempest threatens before it | *Tempestas minatur, antequam*
rises. | *surgat.*

(C.) *Dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, in the sense of *until*, take the *subjunctive* when the affirmation is expressed as *possible* or *future*.

He was unwilling to leave the | *Dum Milo veniret, locum relin-*
spot until Milo came. | *quere noluit.*

[For interrogatives, see § 22.]

(D.) § 21. *Relative Sentences.*

(758.) In the compound sentence, "the messenger, *who was sent*, announced," the clause "the messenger announced" is the principal sentence; and the clause "*who was sent*" the relative sentence. The word "*messenger*" is the *antecedent* of the relative "*who*."

1. *Agreement.*

(759.) RULE L. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; but its *case* depends upon the construction of the relative sentence.

The bridge which was at Geneva | *Pontem, qui erat ad Genevam.*
he orders to be cut down. | *jubet rescindi.*

This was a kind of fighting in <i>which the Germans had exercised themselves</i>	Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo Germani se exercuerant.
---	--

Rem. The verb in the relative sentence takes the *person* of the antecedent.

We who write.

| Nos qui scribimus.

2 The Moods in Relative Sentences.

(760.) (a) The *indicative* mood occurs in the relative sentence only when it states a fact distinctly, with reference to a particular subject.

The messenger who was sent.

| Nuntius qui missus est.

(b) But *qui* is used in Latin very commonly (1) to avoid the use of a conjunction, and (2) to introduce indefinite statements, or the words or opinions of another; and in such cases is always followed by the subjunctive.

(761.) **RULE LI.** The subjunctive is used in relative sentences expressing the *purpose*, *result*, or *ground* of the principal sentence.

1. Purpose (*qui* = *ut* with demonstrative).

They sent ambassadors to sue for
(= *who should sue for*) peace.

| Miserunt legatos, qui pacem peterent (= *ut* ii pacem peterent).

2. Result (*qui* = *ut* after *is*, *tam*, *talis*, *dignus*, *ita*, &c.).

I am not the man to do this (= *I am not such who can do*).

| Non is sum qui hoc faciam.

Pollio is worthy of our love (= *worthy, whom we may love*).

| Dignus est Pollio, quam diligamus.

3. Ground or cause (*qui* = *cur* or *quod*).

You err, *who think* (= *because you think*)—

| Erras qui censeas—

Hannibal did wrong in wintering
(= *because he wintered*) at Capua.

| Male fecit Hannibal qui Capuam hiemarit.

(762.) **RULE LII.** The subjunctive is used in relative sentences containing *indefinite statements*, especially after the words *there are*, *there can be found*, *there is no one*, &c.

There are those who say.

| Sunt qui dicant.

I have nothing whereof to accuse
(= *no reason to blame*) old age.

| Nihil habeo quod incusem senectutem.

Rem. When the sentence introduced by the relative expresses the

sentiments of another (rather than of the writer), the subjunctive is used.

<i>The Helvetians determined to get together those things which (they thought) belonged to marching (were necessary for setting out).</i>	<i>Helvetii constituerunt ea quæ ad proficiscendam pertinerent comparare.</i>
---	---

§ 22. Interrogative Sentences.

1. Questions.

(763.) Questions are often expressed in English without any interrogative word; e. g., *Is Caius writing?* but in the Latin, almost invariably, an interrogative word is used. These are either (a) interrogative particles, (b) interrogative pronouns, or (c) interrogative adverbs or conjunctions.

(a) *Interrogative Particles*: ne, nonne, num, utrum, an.

(1.) Ne simply asks for information.

<i>Is Caius writing?</i>	<i>Scribitne Caius?</i>
--------------------------	-------------------------

(2.) Nonne expects the answer YES.

<i>Do you not think the wise man happy?</i>	<i>Nonne putas sapientem beatum esse?</i>
---	---

(3.) Num expects the answer NO.

<i>Do you think the fool happy?</i>	<i>Num putas stultum esse beatum?</i>
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

(4.) Utrum is used in *double* questions, with an (*whether—or*).

(Whether) is that your fault or ours?	<i>Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est?</i>
---------------------------------------	---

(b) *Interrogative Pronouns*: quis, qui, qualis, quantus, eccuis, &c.

<i>Who taught Epaminondas music? &c.</i>	<i>Quis Epaminondam musicam docuit?</i>
--	---

(c) *Interrogative Adverbs or Conjunctions*: quare, cur, quando, ubi, quomodo, &c.

(764.) Questions are either *direct* or *indirect*: direct, when they are not dependent on any word or sentence going before; e. g., *Is Caius writing?* Indirect, when they are so dependent; e. g., *Tell me if Caius is writing.*

2. Use of the Moods in Questions.

(a) Direct.

(765.) In *direct* questions the *indicative* is used when the question is put *positively*, and the *subjunctive* when it is put *doubtfully*; e. g.,

(Positive.) <i>What are you doing?</i>	<i>Quid agis? (Indic.)</i>
--	----------------------------

(Doubtful) <i>What can we do?</i>	<i>Quid agamus?</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------

(b) *Indirect.*

(766.) RULE LIII. In *indirect* questions the *subjunctive* is always used.

I do not know <i>what</i> book you are reading.	Nescio quem librum legas.
Tell me <i>what</i> you are doing.	Dic, quid agas.

§ 23. *Oratio Obliqua.*1. *Nature of Oratio Obliqua.*

(767.) When any one relates the words or opinions of another, he may do it in two ways :

(a) He may represent him as speaking in the *first person*, and give his words precisely as they were uttered; *e. g.*, Ariovistus said, "*I have crossed the Rhine*"—Ariovistus dixit, Rhenum transii. This is called *oratio recta*, *direct discourse*.

(b) He may *state* the substance of what the speaker said in narrative form; *e. g.*, Ariovistus said *that he had crossed the Rhine*—Ariovistus dixit se Rhenum transisse. This is called *oratio obliqua*, *indirect discourse*.

2. *The Moods in the Oratio Obliqua.*

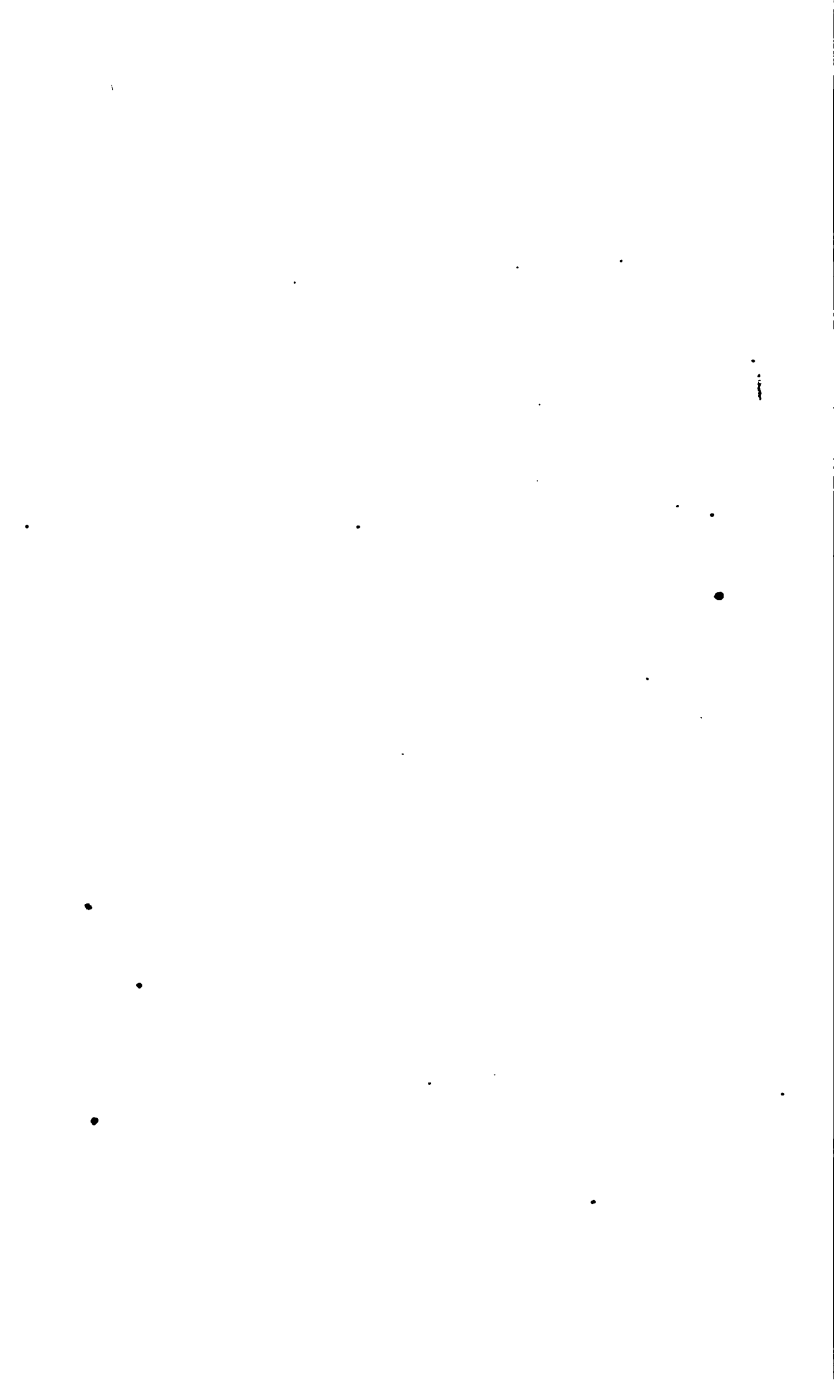
(768.) The sentences introduced in the *oratio obliqua* are either *principal* or *subordinate*; *e. g.*, Ariovistus said that he would not wage war on the Æduans if they paid the tribute yearly. Here the sentence *that he would not wage war upon the Æduans* is a principal sentence, and *if they paid the tribute yearly* is a subordinate sentence.

(769.) RULE LIV. (a) *Principal sentences* in the *oratio obliqua* are expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; *e. g.*, Ariovistus dixit, se Æduis bellum non esse illaturum.

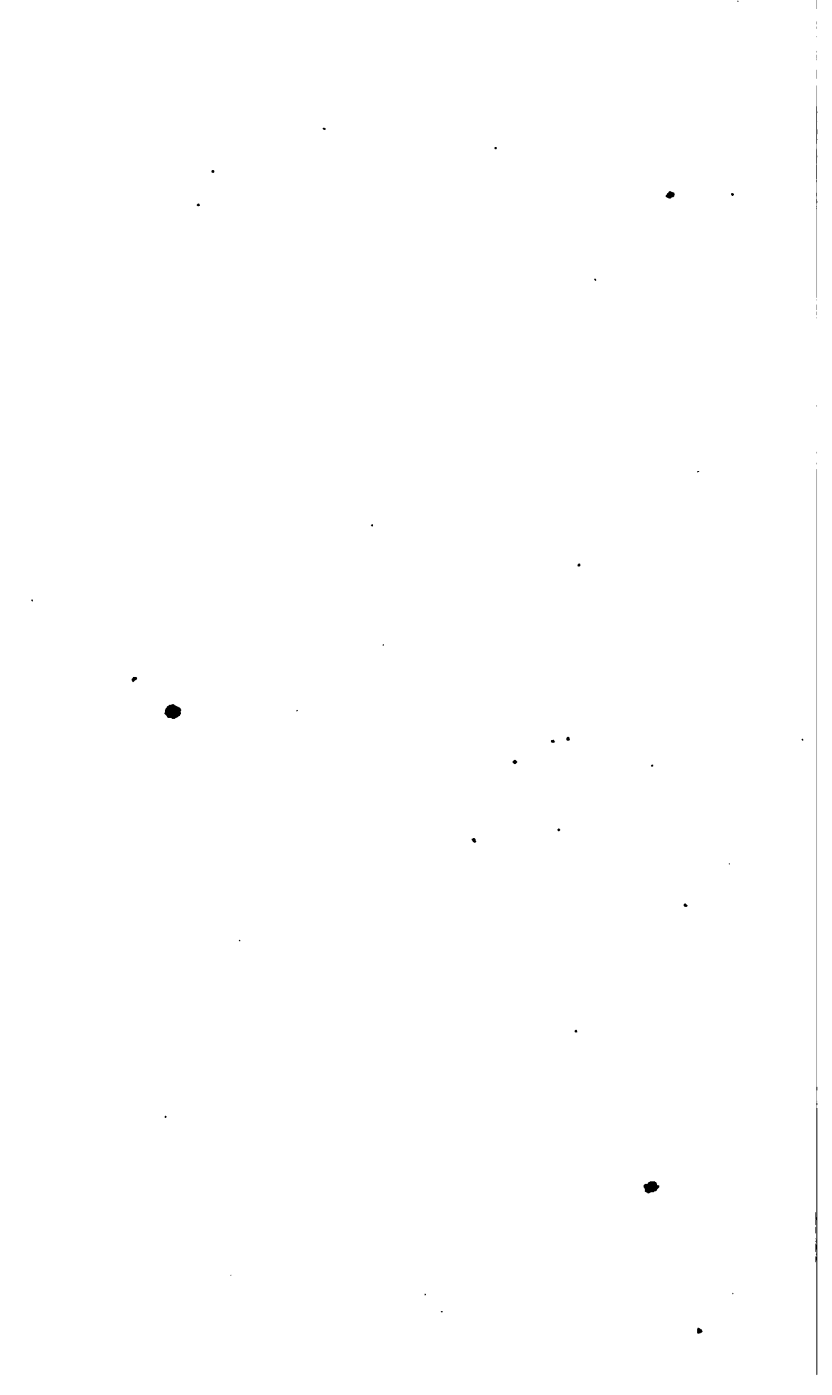
Rem. If the principal sentence contains a *command* or *wish*, it is expressed by the *subjunctive*; *e. g.*,

The leader said <i>that the troops</i> <i>should consult their own safety.</i>	Dux dixit, milites suis saluti consularent.
---	---

(b) *Subordinate sentences* in *oratio obliqua* always take the *subjunctive*; *e. g.*, Ariovistus dixit, se Æduis bellum non esse illaturum, si stipendium quotannis penderent (*if they paid the tribute yearly*).



APPENDICES.



APPENDIX I.

OF PROSODY.

§ 1. *Quantity.*

[THE rules of quantity in Lesson XLII. should be reviewed, and the following additional rules learned.]

1. *Penults.*

(770.) DISSYLLABIC SUPINES lengthen the penult; e. g., *visum*.

Rem. The following are short, viz.:

Ditum, rätum, sätum, stätum, itum,

Citum, litum, solum, rätum, quätum.

(771.) REDUPLICATED PERFECTS shorten both penult and antepenult.
e. g., *cecidi, didici.*

Rem. Penult is long in *cecidi* (*cædere*) and *pæpædi* (*pædere*).

(772.) In ADJECTIVE PENULTS observe the following:

1. *Short Penults*: *-acus, -icus, -idus, -imus*; e. g., *Ægyptiäcus, modicus, cupidus, legitimus.*

Exceptions.—*Meräcus, opäcus, amicüs, apricus, anticüs, posticus, mendicus, umbilicus, fidus, infidus, bimus, trimus* (of *two, three years, &c.*), *matrimus, opimüs, patrimus, imus, primus.*

2. *Long Penults*: *-alis, -anus, -ädu, -ätus*, with all before *-rus, -vus, -sus*; e. g., *dotälis, montänu, percrädus, astätus, avärus, sincörus, delirus, decörus, octävus, sætivus, famösus.*

Exc.—*Infëri, postäri, barbärus, opipärus.*

3. *Penults sometimes long, sometimes short*: *-ilis, -inus.*

(a) *-ilis*, from *verbs*, is short; from *nouns*, long; e. g., *facilis* (*short*) *civilis* (*long*). *Exilis, subtilis*, and the names of months (*Aprilis* &c.), are long.

(b) *-inus*, from *nouns* denoting *time* or *material*, is short; from other words, long; e. g., *crastinus, elephantinus* (*short*); *caninus, Latinus* (*long*).

2. *Compound Words.*

(773.) Compound words generally retain the quantity of the simple words; e. g., *per+lëgo* = *perlëgo*; *per+lëgi* = *perlëgi*.

Rem. 1. A change of vowels does not affect the rule; e+lēgo=elīgo.

2. Dejēro, pejēro (jāro); maledīcus, &c. (dīco), cognītum, agnītum (nōtum), are short, though the simple words are long.

(774.) a, ē, dē, dī, prō, sē, in composition are long, but rē is short.

Exc.—Dirimo, disertus, refert. Pro is short in Greek words, and in the compounds of cello, fanum, fari, fateor, festus, fugio, fundo, nepos, neptis, torvus; also in proficiscor. In prōpago, prōpino, it is doubtful.*

(775.) If the first part of a compound word end in a, it is generally long; if in e, i, or u, generally short; e. g., trāduco, trādo (contracted from trans); trēcenti, trēcola, quadrēpes.

§ 2. Rhythm, Arsis, Thesis, Verse, Feet.

(776.) (a) By *Rhythm* we mean a regular alternation of elevations (stress) and depressions of the voice. In poetry this alternation follows certain fixed laws.

(b) The effort of voice by which stress is laid upon one syllable is called *Ictus*, or rhythmical accent. A syllable so raised by the ictus stands in the *Arsis*. The syllable or syllables on which the voice rests or sinks are said to be in the *Thesis*.

(c) A *Foot* is formed by the union of arsis and thesis. A combination of feet forms a *Verse*.

Thus, in the line *vīsērē mōntēs*, the ictus falls on the syllables marked with the accent; *vīs* and *mōn*, therefore, are in the *arsis*, *sērē* and *tēs* in the *thesis*. The union of *arsis* and *thesis* in *vīsērē* forms a foot; so also in *mōntēs*. The combination of these two feet forms the verse

Vīsērē mōntēs.

(d) A *Dactyl* is a foot composed of one long syllable (*arsis*) and two short syllables (*thesis*); e. g., *vīsērē*: a *Spondee* of two long (*arsis* and *thesis*); e. g., *mōntēs*.

§ 3. Scanning.

(777.) *SCANNING* is the measuring of a verse into the feet which compose it. Observe the following points in scanning:

1. *Synalæpha* cuts off a vowel at the end of a word when the next word begins with a vowel or h; e. g., instead of *regina ad*, we read *regin' ad*; instead of *atque hinc*, *atqu' hinc*.
2. *Ecthlipsis* cuts off m with the vowel before it at the end of a word

* The following lines contain the exceptions:

At rape quæ fundo, fugio, neptisque, neposque,
Et cello, fari, fateor, fanumque, festumque;
Atque proci, proficiscor, cumque propheta, profecto.

when the next begins with a vowel; *e. g.*, instead of *ignōtum est*, we read *ignōt' est*.

3. The last syllable of a word ending with a consonant is always long if the next word begins with a consonant; *e. g.*, *manibūs tremor*; here *būs* (naturally short) is made long.

4. *Synæresis* contracts two syllables into one; *e. g.*, *aurēā* into *aurēa* (pronounced *aurya*).

5. *Diaeresis* divides one syllable into two; *e. g.*, *pictas*, *pictaī*.

§ 4. Hexameter Verse.

(778.) (a) **HEXAMETER** verse is so called because it has *six measures*, of a foot each. The first *four* feet may be either dactyls or spondees; the *fifth* is regularly a dactyl, the *sixth* a spondee.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
Sēd fūgīt	Intērē-	ā fūgīt	irrēpā-	rābīlēs	tēmpūs.
Infan-	dūm Rē-	gīnā jū-	bēs rēnō-	vārē dō-	lōrēm.

Rem. 1. Sometimes a spondee is found in the 5th place, especially when anything grave or solemn is expressed. The line is then called *spondaic*.

2. The final syllable of a verse is always reckoned *long*; *e. g.*, *rem*, in *dolorem*.

(b) *Cæsura* is the separation, by the end of a word, of syllables entering into a foot. If the feet of a verse be marked off like bars in music, whenever a bar falls in the middle of a word there is a *cæsura*; *e. g.*, the following hexameter has *five* *cæsuras*:

Illē la- | tās nīvē- | ūm mōl- | lī fūl- | tās, hŷā- | cīnthō.

(c) The *cæsural pause* in hexameter verse is a pause or rest of the voice on a *cæsural syllable*, designed to give harmony to the entire verse.

(1.) The most approved *cæsural pause* (*the heroic*) falls on the arsis of the *third foot*, as in the following examples:

Sēd fūgīt | Intērē- | a fūgīt | irrēpā | rābīlēs | tēmpūs.
 Illē lā- | tās nīvē | ūm mōl- | lī fūl | tās hŷā- | cīnthō.

(2.) Next in excellence is the *cæsural pause* in the thesis of the third foot, or in the arsis of the fourth. Occurring in other places, it mars the harmony of the verse.

E H

APPENDIX II.

(779.)

GREEK NOUNS.

	<i>Ænē-as</i> , æ, æ, am (an), ā. ā.	
<i>1st Decl.</i>	<i>Anchis-es</i> , æ, æ, en, ē, ē. Voc. sometimes ā and d	
	<i>Pēnēlōp-ē</i> , ēs, æ, en, ē, ē.	
	<i>Del-ēs</i> , i, o, um, or en, e, o.	
<i>2d Decl.</i>	<i>Orph-eūs</i> , eī, eo, eum, or ēā, eū eo. •	
	(or, N. eūs, G. eos, D. ēi (eī), Acc. ēā poetical.)	
	<i>Ath-ēs</i> , ē, ē, en, or ē, ēs, ē. (In Greek, ως.)	
	<i>Pōēs-is</i> , is, } i, im, } is, i. es, eōn (ibus not found;	
	(eos,) } (in,) }	
	<i>Nerē-is</i> ,	
<i>3d Decl.</i>	<i>G. Nerēid-is</i> , } i, em, } (Nerēī), ē. es, um, ibus, es. }	
	(ōs,) } (ā,) }	(ās.) }
	<i>Pericl-ēs</i> , is, } i, em, } es, }	
	i, } ea, } e, }	
	<i>Did-ō</i> , ūs, ē, ē, ē. (also, ōnis, &c.)	

Obs. Neuters in *a*, gen. *ētis*, have dat. plur. in *ātis*; thus: *poēma*, dat. plur. *poēmātis*, not *poēmatibus*.

(780.)

EXAMPLES OF PATRONYMICS

(OR NAMES FROM A FATHER OR ANCESTOR).

	<i>Ænēas</i> ,	<i>Anchises</i> ,	<i>Tyndārus</i> ,	<i>Theseus</i> ,	<i>Atlas</i> (<i>antis</i>)
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Æneādes</i> ,	<i>Anchisiādes</i> ,	<i>Tyndarīdes</i> ,	<i>Thesides</i> ,*	<i>Atlantiādes</i> ,
					<i>Atlantiādes</i> .
<i>Fem.</i>	(<i>Æneis</i>),	<i>Anchisias</i> ,	<i>Tyndāris</i> ,	<i>Thesōis</i> ,	<i>Atlantis</i> ,
					<i>Atlantis</i> .

(781.)

EXAMPLES OF NAMES

(DERIVED FROM ONE'S TOWN OR NATIVE COUNTRY).

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Persa</i> ,	<i>Cres</i> ,	<i>Tros</i> ,	<i>Thrax</i> ,	<i>Laco</i> (<i>Lacon</i>),	<i>Phoenix</i> .
<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Persis</i> ,	<i>Cressa</i> ,	<i>Troas</i> ,	<i>Threissa</i> ,	<i>Lacana</i> ,	<i>Phanissa</i> .
		<i>Cretis</i> ,		<i>Thressa</i> .		
<i>Romānus</i>	<i>Clusinus</i>	<i>Atheniensis</i>	<i>Abderitēs</i> (<i>fem.</i> , <i>Abderitis</i>).			
(<i>Roman</i>).	(<i>of Clusium</i>).	(<i>an Athenian</i>).	(<i>of Abdera</i>).			
	<i>Milesius</i>		<i>Arpinas</i>			
	(<i>of Miletus</i>).		(<i>of Arpinum</i>).			

* For *Thesōides*. Hence *īdes* comes from nom. in *eas*.

APPENDIX III.

(782.)

THE CALENDAR.

(1.) THE Roman months had the same number of days as ours, but were differently divided.

1. The *Kalends* were the 1st day of the month.
2. The *Nones* " 5th or 7th day of the month.
3. The *Ides* " 13th or 15th day of the month.

 We make in *March, July, October, May,*
The *Nones* the *seventh*, the *Ides* the *fifteenth* day.

In all the other months the 5th and 13th were used.

(2.) The names of the months are used as adjectives agreeing with *Kalendæ, Nonæ, and Idus.*

The 1st of January.

The 5th of June.

The 13th of September.

Kalendis Januariis.

Nonis Juniis.

Idibus Septembribus.

(3.) (a) Instead of beginning at the 1st of the month and numbering the days regularly 2d, 3d, &c., as we do, the Romans counted them backward from the *Kalends, Nones, and Ides*. Thus, the 2d of January was called *the 4th day before the Nones of January*, *quarto (die ante) Nonas Januarias*; the 3d, *tertio Nonas*; the 4th, *pridie Nonas*; the 5th, *Nonis*.

(b) From the above cases it will be seen that the day with which the reckoning commences is included (except *pridie*), i. e., the 2d day before the *Nones* is *tertio Nonas*; the 3d day before, *quarto Nonas*, &c.

The 13th of October.

The 3d of June.

Tertio (die ante) Idus Octobres.

Tertio (die ante) Nonas Junias.

(c) Special care must be taken, in designating any day between the *Ides* of one month and the *Kalends* of another, to ensure correctness. Thus, *III. (die ante) Kalend. Januar.* will be December 30; but *III. Kal. Maias* = 29th April, inasmuch as December has 31 days and April but 30. So *III. Kal. Martias* = 27th February.

APPENDIX II

WEEK 5075

[illegible]

$\begin{matrix} \text{---} \\ \text{---} \\ \text{---} \\ \text{---} \end{matrix}$

The Workers in a few States have not placed in this; thus: position.
page numbers and corrections.

EXAMPLES OF PATRONYMS

NAME TAKEN FROM A FATHER OR ANCESTOR).

<i>Esch.</i>	<i>Ancistrus</i>	<i>Tyridius</i>	<i>Thorus</i>	<i>Atlas</i>
<i>Mac.</i>	<i>Eschsch.</i>	<i>Ancistrus</i>	<i>Tyrididae</i>	<i>Thoridae</i> *
				<i>Atla.</i>
<i>Am.</i>	<i>Eschsch.</i>	<i>Ancistrus</i>	<i>Tyridius</i>	<i>Thorus</i>
				<i>Atla.</i>

EXAMPLES OF NAMES

~~THE~~ FROM HIS TOWN OR NATIVE COUNTRY).

Box	Box	Box	Thos.	Thrax,	Laco (Lacou).
Box	Box	Box	Thos.	Thrinax,	Lacina,
		Box		Thrinax.	
Box	Box		Atheniensis	Abderites (of	
Box	Box		an Athenian).	Abdera).	
				Arpinus	
				(of Arpinum).	

• ~~J. J. Thibault~~ Hence id's comes from nom. in eu



(4.) The following table, exhibiting the correspondence between the Roman calendar and ours, can now be readily understood :

The Days of our Months.	March, May, July, and October (have 31 days).	January, August, and December (have also 31 days).	April, June, September, and November (have 30 days).	February (has 28, and in Leap-years 29 days).
1.	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>
2.	VI. } ante	IV. } ante	IV. } ante	IV. } ante
3.	V. } Nonas.	III. } Nonas.	III. } Nonas.	III. } Nonas.
4.	IV. } Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5.	III. } Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.
6.	Pridie Nonas.	VIII.	VIII.	VIII.
7.	Nonis.	VII.	VII.	VII.
8.	VIII. } ante	VI. } ante	VI. } ante	VI. } ante
9.	VII. } Idus.	V. } Idus.	V. } Idus.	V. } Idus.
10.	VI. } ante	IV. } ante	IV. } ante	IV. } ante
11.	V. } Idus.	III. } Idus.	III. } Idus.	III. } Idus.
12.	IV. } Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13.	III. } Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
14.	Pridie Idus.	XIX.	XVIII.	XVI.
15.	Idibus.	XVIII.	XVII.	XV.
16.	XVII.	XVII.	XVI.	XIV.
17.	XVI.	XVI.	XV.	XIII.
18.	XV.	XV.	XIV.	XII.
19.	XIV.	XIV.	XIII.	XI.
20.	XIII.	XIII.	XII.	X.
21.	XII.	XII.	XI.	IX.
22.	XI.	XI.	X.	VIII.
23.	X.	X.	IX.	VII.
24.	IX.	IX.	VIII.	VI.
25.	VIII.	VIII.	VII.	V.
26.	VII.	VII.	VI.	IV.
27.	VI.	VI.	V.	III.
28.	V.	V.	IV.	Prid. Kalendas
29.	IV.	IV.	III.	Martias.
30.	III.	III.	Prid. Kalendas	
31.	Prid. Kalendas (of the following month).	Prid. Kalendas (of the following month).	(of the following month).	

(5.) The 5th day before the Kalends of April (for instance) may be expressed in three ways :

(a) Die quinto ante Kalendas Apriles.

(b) Quinto Kalendas Apriles.

(c) Ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles; or, abbreviated, a. d. V. Kal. Apr.

APPENDIX IV.

ABBREVIATIONS.

(713.) THE following abbreviations of words occur in Latin authors :

(a)

NAMES.

A. Aulus.	M'. Manius.	Sept. Septimius.
Ap. Appius.	M. Marcus.	Serv. Servius.
C. Caius.	Mam. Mamercus.	Sex. Sextus.
Cl. Claudius.	M. T. C. Marcus Tulli-	Sp. Spurius.
Cn. Cnæus.	us Cicero.	T. Titus.
D. Decimus.	N. Numerius.	Ti. or } Tiberius.
D. Decius.	P. Publius.	Tib. }
L. Lucius.	Q. Quintus.	Tull. Tullius.

(b)

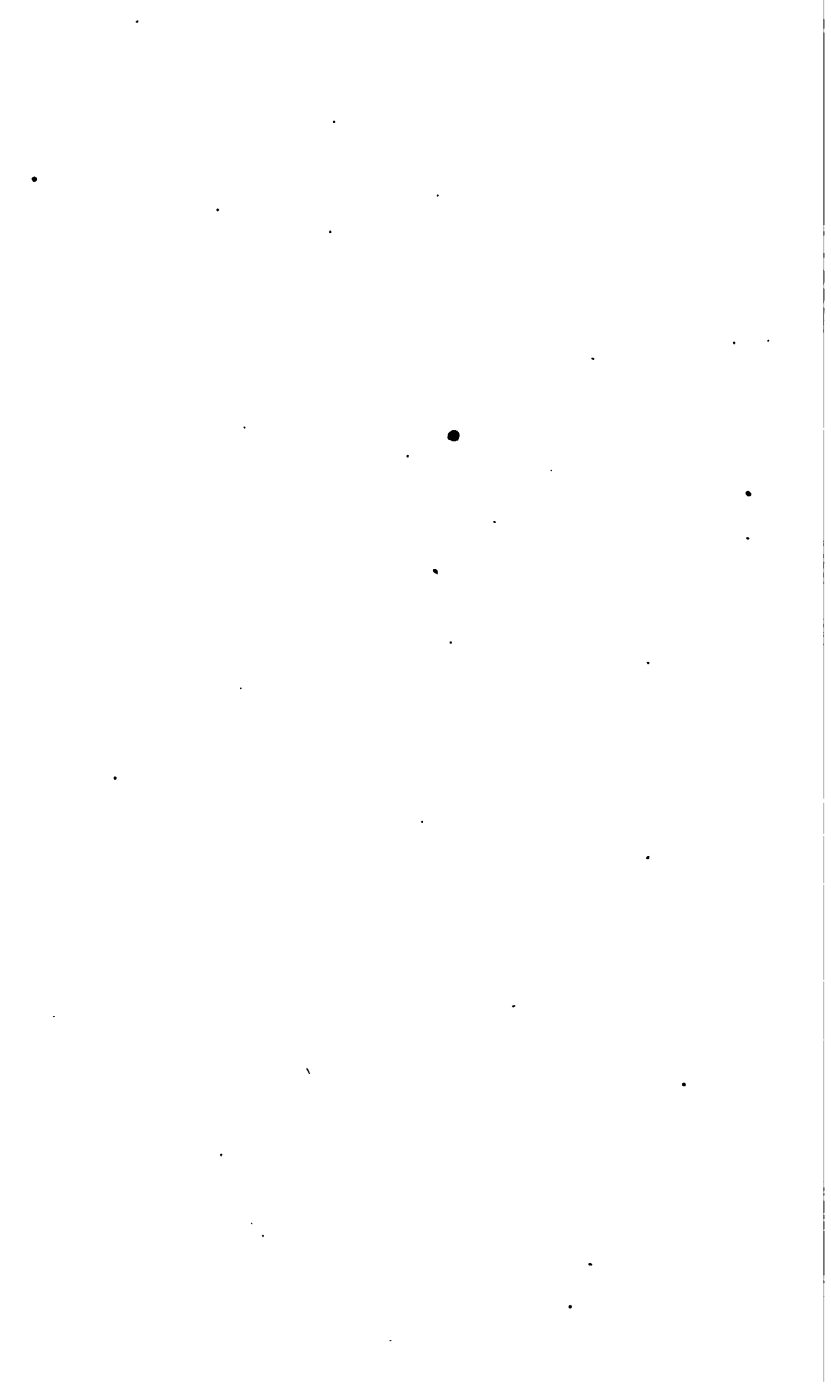
PUBLIC EXPRESSIONS.

Æd. Ædilia.	Id. Idus.	Pr. Prætor.
Aug. Augustus.	Imp. Imperator.	Præf. Præfectus.
Cal. or } Kalendæ.	Imp. Imperatores.	Pont. Max. Pontifex
Kal. }	Non. Nonæ.	Maximus.
Cos. Consul.	O. M. Optimus Maxi-	Resp. Respublica.
Coss. Consules.	mus.	S. Senatus.
D. Divus.	P. C. Patres Con-	S. C. Senatus consul-
Des. Designatus.	scripti.	tum.
Eq. Rom. Eques Ro-	Pl. Plebis.	S. P. Q. R. Senatus po-
manus.	Pop. Populus.	pulusque Romæ
F. Filius.	P. R. Populus Rom.	Tr. Tribunus.

(c)

OTHER ABBREVIATIONS.

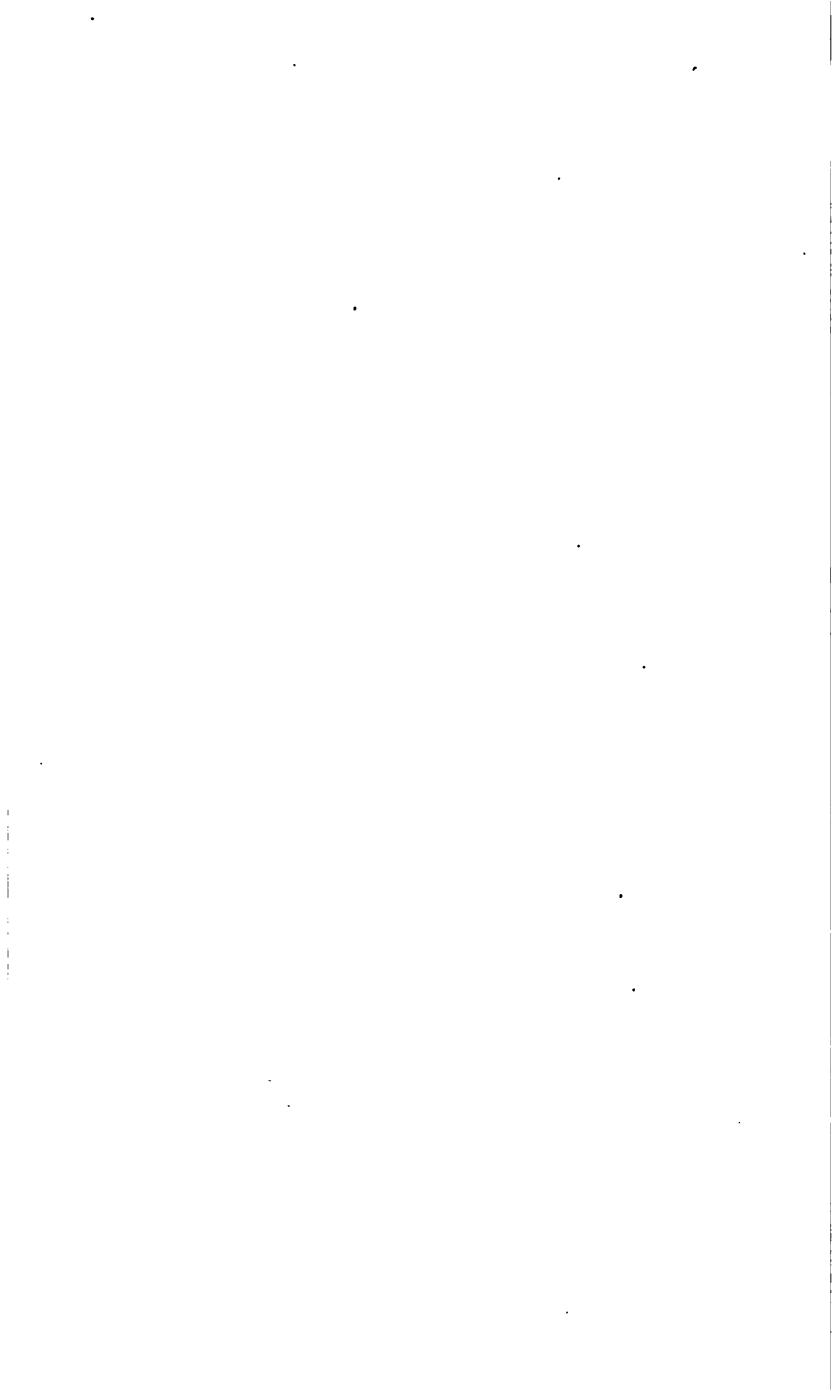
A. Anno.	S. Salutem.
A. C. Anno currente.	S. P. D. Salutem dicit plurimam.
A. pr. Anno præterito.	c. caput.
A. M. Anno mundi.	cf. confer.
A. Chr. Anno Christi.	e. g. exempli gratia.
A. D. Anno Domini.	i. e. id est.
A. U. C. Anno urbis conditæ.	l. c. loco citato.
D. D. Dono dedit.	pag. m. pagina mea.
D. D. D. Dono dedit dicavit.	q. d. quasi dicat.
D. D. C. q. Dedit dicavit consecra-	q. l. quantum libet.
vitque.	q. s. quantum sufficit.
D. M. Diis Manibus.	scil. scilicet.
L. S. Loco sigilli.	seq. sequens.
M. S. Manuscriptus.	v. versus.
P. S. Postscriptum.	v. g. verbi gratia.
Q. D. B. V. Quod Deus bene vertat.	viz. videlicet.
S. V. B. E. E. V. Si vales bene est	vid. vide.
ego valeo.	



WORD-BUILDING

AND

READING LESSONS.



WORD-BUILDING.

(784.) 1. THE *generic* meaning of a word is contained in its *root*; the *specific* meaning is generally given by its *ending*. Thus, in all the words *am-o* (*I love*), *am-or* (*love*), *am-ator* (*a lover*), *am-icus* (*friend*), we find the same generic idea (*love*) expressed by the root *am*; while the specific meanings, *I love* (verb), *love* (noun), *lover* (noun), *friend* (adjective noun), are given by the endings *o*, *or*, *ator*, *icus*, respectively.

2. The meanings of words are farther modified by certain *prefixes*; e. g., *ire* (*to go*), *amb-iro* (*to go round*).

3. Again, words may be compounded with each other, and form new words; e. g., with *agr-* (the stem of *ager*, *field*), and *col-* (the stem of *colere*, *to till*), we form *agricol-a*, *a tiller of the field* = *a farmer*.

Thus there are three modes of forming words: by *suffixes*, *prefixes*, and *composition*. We treat them in order.

(1.) WORD-BUILDING BY SUFFIXES.

(A.) Nouns.

(785.) First Declension.

1. The ending *-a*, suffixed to verb-stems, expresses an *agent* or *doer*.

<i>scrib-a</i> ,	<i>writer</i> ,	from	<i>scrib-ere</i> ,	<i>to write</i> .
<i>perfug-a</i> ,	<i>deserter</i> ,	from	<i>perfug-ere</i> ,	<i>to desert</i> .

2. *-ia*, *-itia*, with adjective-stems, a *disposition* or *condition*.

<i>ignav-ia</i> ,	<i>cowardice</i> ,	from	<i>ignav-us</i> ,	<i>cowardly</i> .
<i>prudent-ia</i> ,	<i>prudence</i> ,	from	<i>pruden(t)-s</i> ,	<i>prudent</i> .
<i>trist-itia</i> ,	<i>sadness</i> ,	from	<i>trist-is</i> ,	<i>sad</i> .
<i>victor-ia</i> ,	<i>victory</i> ,	from	<i>vict-or</i> ,	<i>victorious</i> .

3. *-ura*, with supine-stems, the *action* or *condition* of the verb.

<i>pict-ura</i> ,	<i>painting</i> ;	<i>pingere</i> (<i>pict-</i>),	<i>to paint</i> .
<i>præfect-ura</i> ,	<i>prefectship</i> ;	<i>præficere</i> (<i>præfect-</i>),	<i>to place over</i> .

(786.) Second Declension.

1. *-us*, *-ius*, with verb-stems, form nouns denoting the *agent* or the *action* of the verb.

<i>serv-us</i> ,	<i>slave</i> ;	<i>serv-ire</i> ,	<i>to serve</i> .
<i>fluv-ius</i> ,	<i>river</i> ;	<i>flu(v)-ere</i> ,	<i>to flow</i> .
<i>coqu-us</i> ,	<i>cook</i> ;	<i>coqu-ere</i> ,	<i>to cook</i> .
<i>lud-ue</i> ,	<i>sport</i> ,	<i>lud-ere</i> ,	<i>to play</i> .

2. -um, -ium, with verb-stems, gives a *result* of the action of the verb.

jug-um,	yoke,	jug-ĕre,	to join.
vad-um,	ford;	vad-ĕre,	to go.
incend-ium,	fire;	incend-ĕre,	to burn.

3. -ium, with noun-stems, (a) *an office*, or (b) *an assemblage of men* exercising an office or function.

(a) sacerdot-ium,	office of sacerdos.
minister-ium,	office of minister.
(b) colleg-ium,	assemblage of collegæ.
conviv-ium,	assemblage of convivæ.

4. -mentum, with verb-stems, the *means* of doing what the verb expresses.

teg-u-mentum,	covering;	teg-ĕre,	to cover.
adju-mentum,	aid;	adjuv-ĕre,	to assist.

5. -ulum, -bulum, -culum, with verb-stems, *means or instrument*.

jac-ulum,	javelin;	jac-ĕre,	to hurl.
venab-ulum,	hunting-spear;	ven-ĭri,	to hunt.
veh-iculum,	carriage;	veh-ĕre,	to carry.

Rem. culum also sometimes—the *place where*; e. g., cœna-culum, cubi-culum.

6. -crum, -strum, with verb-stems, *place or thing prepared for any purpose*.

lava-crum,	bath;	lav-ĕre,	to wash.
claus-trum,	lock;	claud-ĕre,	to shut.

(787.) *Diminutives of First and Second Declensions.*

lus, -la, -lum, with noun-stems, form diminutive nouns, of masculine, feminine, and neuter genders.

- (a) Connecting vowels *i, o, u*, the latter sometimes with *c*.

fili-o-lus, fili-o-la, *little son, daughter*—(filius); frator-culus (frater); opus-culum (opus).

- (b) Sometimes *l* is doubled: lap-illus (lapis); codic-illus (codex, codicis); sac-ellum (sacrum).

(788.) *Third Declension.*

1. -tās, -tūs (with or without *i* as connecting vowel), form, with adjective-stems, abstract nouns denoting *quality*, &c.

bon-i-tas,	goodness;	bon-us,	good.
hones-tas,	honour;	honest-us,	honourable
fort-i-tudo,	bravery;	fort-is,	brave.

2. (a) -or, with verb-stems, the *action* or *condition* of the verb.

pav-or,	<i>fear</i> ;	pav-ēre,	<i>to fear</i> .
am-or,	<i>love</i> ;	am-āre,	<i>to love</i> .

(b) -or, with supine-stems, the *agent* or *doer*.

doct-or,	<i>teacher</i> ;	doc-ēre (doct-),	<i>to teach</i> .
monit-or,	<i>adviser</i> ;	mon-ēre (monit-),	<i>to advise</i> .

3. -io, with supine-stems, the *action* of the verb, especially the doing of it.

act-io,	<i>action</i> ;	ag-ēre (act-),	<i>to act, do</i> .
caut-io,	<i>caution</i> ;	cav-ēre (caut-),	<i>to take care</i> .

4. -tudo, with adjective-stems, the *abstract quality*.

fort-i-tudo,	<i>bravery</i> ;	fort-is,	<i>brave</i>
--------------	------------------	----------	--------------

(789.) *Fourth Declension.*

Most nouns of the 4th declension are abstracts formed from verb-stems or supine-stems.

us-us,	<i>use</i> ;	uti (us-),	<i>to use</i> .
mōt-ta	<i>motion</i> ;	mōv-ēre (mōt-),	<i>to move</i> .

(790.) *Fifth Declension.*1. -es, -ies, -ities, with verb or adjective-stems, a *property*, *operation*, *quality*, &c.

fid-es (fid-ēre); ser-ies (ser-ēre); fac-ies (fac-ēre); dur-ities (dur-us); mund-ities (mund-us).

2. [Those in -ities coexist with others in -itia (784, 2); e. g. munditia, duritia, &c.]

(B.) *Adjectives.*(791.) *First Class, us, a, um.*1. -us, *quality* in general (coexisting with verb and noun stems).

alb-us,	<i>white</i> ;	alb-āre,	alb-umen.
curv-us,	<i>curved</i> ;	curv-āre,	curv-amen.
dur-us,	<i>hard</i> ;	dur-āre,	dur-ities.
viv-us,	<i>alive</i> ;	viv-ēre,	vit-a.

2. -idus and uus, chiefly with stems of intransitive verbs, the *quality* of the verb, without addition.

turg-idus,	<i>swelling</i> ;	turg-ēre,	<i>to swell</i> .
cal-idus,	<i>warm</i> ;	cal-ēre,	<i>to be warm</i> .
noc-uus,	<i>hurtful</i> ;	noc-ēre,	<i>to hurt</i> .

3. -bundus, with verb-stems, force of present participle, intensified.

hēsita-bundus, *full of hesitation*; hēsit-are, *to hesitate*.
lacryma-bundus, *weeping profusely*; lacrym-are, *to weep*.

- 4 -cundus, same as bundus, generally with the additional idea of *permanency*.

ira-cundus, *passionate*; ira-sc-i, *to be angry*
vere-cundus, *bashful*; verē-ri, *to fear*.

- 5 -lus, with noun-stems, *belonging or relating to a thing*.

class-icus, *belonging to a fleet*; class-is, *fleet*.
civ-icus, *civic*; civ-is, *citizen*.

- 6 -eus, -aceus, -icius, with noun-stems, *material or origin*.

ferr-eus, *of iron*; ferr-um, *iron*.
chart-aceus, *of paper*; chart-a, *paper*.

- 7 -inus, with noun-stems, *similarity, quality, or material*.

asin-inus, *asinine, like an ass*; asin-us, *an ass*
mar-inus, *marine*; mar-e, *the sea*.
crystall-inus, *crystalline*; crystall-um, *crystal*.

- 8 -anus, with names of towns ending in a or æ, a *native of such place*.

Rom-anus, *a Roman*; Roma, *Rome*.

- 9 -osus, -entus, with noun-stems, *fulness, abundance* (like the English -ous).

fam-osus, *famous*; fam-a, *fame*.
vino-lentus, *drunken*; vin-um, *wine*.

(792.) *Second Class, is, is, e.*

- 1 -is, *quality in general* (coexisting commonly with noun and verb forms).

lev-is, *light*; lev-āre, *lev-itāre*.

- 2 -ilis, -ibilis, with verb-stems, the *quality* of the verb, or the *capacity* of it, in two senses, (a) *active* and (b) *passive*.

(a) terri-bilis, *exciting terror*; terr-ēre, *to terrify*.
(b) doc-ilis, *docile*; doc-ēre, *to teach*.
amāb-ilis, *amiable*; am-āre, *to love*.

- 3 -ilis (i long), with noun-stems, *belonging or relating to a thing*.

civ-ilis, *belonging to a citizen, civil*; civ-is, *citizen*.
host-ilis, *hostile*; hos-tis, *enemy*.

[Observe that *ilis*, with verb-stems, is *short*; with noun-stems, *long*.]

- 4 -alis, -aris, with noun-stems, *of or belonging to*.

conviv-alis, *convivial*; conviv-a, *head*.
capit-alis, *capital*; caput, *head*.
consul-aris, *consular*; consul.

- 5 -ensis, with names of towns—a *native of such town*.

Cann-ensis, *an inhabitant of Cannæ*.
Arimin-ensis, *an inhabitant of Ariminum*.

(793.) *Third Class, one ending.*

-ax, with verb-stems, the *tendency* of the verb, generally in a bad sense.

pugn-ax,	pugnacious ;	pugn-äre,	to fight.
rap-ax,	rapacious ;	rap-äre,	to seize.

(C.) *Verbs.*(794.) *First Conjugation.*

1. -äre, generally a *transitive* ending, with noun-stems.

numer-äre,	to count ;	numer-us,	number.
nomin-äre,	to name ;	nomen (nomin-is),	name.

2. FREQUENTATIVE verbs, expressing a *repetition* or *increase* of the action of the original verb, are formed by the endings -äre and -itäre; thus:

(a) -äre, added to supine-stems.

curs-äre,	to run to and fro ;	currere (curs-um),	to run.
dormit-äre,	to be sleepy ;	dormire (dormit-um),	to sleep.

(b) -itäre, added to verb-stems.

rog-itäre,	to ask often ;	rog-äre,	to ask.
vol-itäre,	to fly to and fro ;	vol-äre,	to fly.

3. -ari, deponent-ending, with noun-stems, is much used for expressing "to be that which, or of the character that," the noun indicates.

comit-ari,	{ to attend as com- panion ; }	comes (comit-is),	companion
domin-ari,	to rule as master ;	domin-us,	master.

(795.) *Second Conjugation.*

-äre, frequently an *intransitive* ending, with noun and adjective stems.

alb-äre,	to be white ;	alb-us,	white.
luc-äre,	to shine ;	lux (luc-is),	light.

(796.) *Third Conjugation.*

INCHOATIVE verbs express the *beginning* or *increase* of the action of the verb from which they are derived. They are formed by adding *sc* to the verb-stem, with the connecting-vowels *a*, *e*, or *i*. Most of them are formed on stems of verbs of second conjugation.

pallesco-äre,	to grow pale ;	pall-äre,	to be pale.
labasco-äre,	to totter ;	lab-äre,	to waver.

(797.) *Fourth Conjugation.*

DESIDERATIVE verbs express a *desire* of that which is implied in the primitive, and are formed by adding -ürre to supine-stems.

es-ürre,	to want to eat ;	edere (es-um),	to eat.
----------	------------------	----------------	---------

(II.) WORD-BUILDING BY PREFIXES.

(798.) Under this head we place only the *inseparable prepositions* (329). viz., amb-, dis- (di-), re-, se.

1. Amb = *about, around, on both sides*; e. g., amb-ire, *to go round* (amb+ire).

☞ Before *p* the *b* is dropped; e. g., am-plector: before *c*-sounds amb is changed into an; e. g., an-ceps, an-qui-ro.

2. Dis (di) = *asunder*; e. g., dis-jungere, *to disjoin* (dis+jungere)

☞ Di is used before *d, g, l, m*; e. g., digerere, &c. Before *f* the *s* is assimilated; e. g., differre (dis+ferre).

3. Re = *back, again, away, un-*; e. g., re-pellere, *drive-back* (re+pellere); re-ficere, *refit* (re+facere).

☞ Before vowels, *d* is inserted; e. g., re-d-ire (re+ire).

[Re long occurs only in re-fert.]

4. Se = *aside*; e. g., se-ducere, *lead astray seduce* (se+ducere); se-ponere, *lay aside* (se+ponere).

(III.) WORD-BUILDING BY COMPOSITION.

I. *Prepositions in Composition with other Words.*

(799.) ☞ Most prepositions are used to form compound words, and generally modify their meaning in a way easily understood; e. g., stare, *to stand*; prae-stare, *to stand before, to excel*. We notice here only those which present some peculiarities.

1. a, ab, abs = *away, from*. (a) *a* is used before *m* and *v*; e. g., a-mittere, *to send away, lose*; a-vertere, *turn away*. (b) *au* is used before *ferre* and *fugere*: auferre, aufugere. (c) *as*, before *p* or *sp*: asperito, aspernor.
2. ad = *to*. (a) Assimilated before consonants, except *d, j, v, m*; e. g., arripere, assurgere, adducere, &c. (b) *d* dropped before *gn*; e. g., agnoscere, agnatus.
3. con (a variation of cum) = *with*. (a) *co* before *k* and vowels; e. g., co-ortus, co-hibere. (b) *com* before *b, p*: com-burere, com-pellere. (c) Assimilated before *l, m, r*: col-ligere, com-movere, cor-ripere.
4. e or ex = *out of*. (a) Assimilated before *f*; e. g., efferro (ex+ferro). (b) *e* before liquids and *b, d, g, v*.
5. in, with verbs = *into, on, in, against*; with adjectives has privative force; e. g., doctus, *learned*; indoctus, *unlearned*.
(a) Assimilated before *l, r*, e. g., illatum (in+latum); irrumperere (in+rumpere).

* And sometimes before vowels: comedere.

- (b) Changed into *im* before *b, p*; e. g., *imbibĕre* (*in*+*bibere*); *imponĕre* (*in*+*ponere*).
6. *ob* = *against*; e. g., *obfrudĕre* (*ob*+*frudere*), *thrust against*.
 Assimilated before *c, f, p*; e. g., *oc-cĭdere* (*ob*+*cadere*); *of-ferre*, *op-ponĕre*.
7. *pro* = *forth, forward*; e. g., *projicĕre* (*pro*+*jacere*), *cast forth*.
 Before vowels, *d* is inserted; e. g., *prod-esse* (*pro*+*esse*).
8. *præ* = *before*; e. g., *præcĕdĕre* (*præ*+*cedere*), *to go before, to surpass*.
9. *sub* = *under, from under*; e. g., *subducĕre*, *to draw from under*.
 (a) Generally assimilated; e. g., *sum-movĕre*, *sup-ponere*, &c.
 (b) Sometimes *sus-*; e. g., *sus-cipĕre*, *sus-tinĕre*, &c.
10. *trans* = *across, over*; e. g., *transducere*, *to lead across*.
 *Trā*, instead of *trans*, occurs in *tradĕre*, *traducĕre*, *trājicĕre*.

(800.) II. *Adverbs in Composition with other Words.*

1. *nē, vĕ*, have a *privative* force; e. g., *nĕfas*, *wicked* (*ne*+*fas*); *vĕsanus*, *insane* (*vĕ*+*sānus*).
2. *benĕ, well*; *malĕ, ill*; *satis, enough*; e. g., *beneficium, a good deed*; *maleficium, an evil deed*; *satisfacĕre, to satisfy* (= *to do enough*).
3. *bis* (and other numerals), *twice* (*thrice*), &c.: *bicorpor, two-bodied* (*bis*+*corp-us*).

(801.) III. *Nouns and Adjectives in Composition with other Words.*

 When a noun or adjective is compounded with another word, the connecting vowel is always short *i*.

agri-cola (*agr*+*col*-), *a husbandman*.
arti-fex (*art*+*fac*-), *an artificer*.

(802.) IV. *Verbs in Composition with other Words.*

None occur, except in composition with *facere*; e. g., *calefacere* (*calĕre*+*facere*), *to make hot*; *patefacere* (*patĕre*+*facere*), *to lay open*.

[ Observe that the vowel *a* in *facere* remains unchanged.]

(803.) V. *Common Vowel-changes in Composition.*

1. *a* into *i*; e. g., *arripĕre* (*ad*+*rapere*), *conficĕre* (*con*+*facere*), *constituĕre* (*con*+*statuere*), &c.
2. *a* into *e* (more rarely); e. g., *ascendĕre* (*ad*+*scandere*).
3. *e* into *i* (not always); e. g., *colligĕre* (*con*+*legere*), *abstinĕre* (*abs*+*tenerere*), &c.
4. *æ* into *i*; e. g., *occidĕre* (*ob*+*cædere*), *rĕquirĕre* (*rĕ*+*querere*).

READING LESSONS.

I.

GALLIA est omnis divisa¹ in partes tres.—Belgæ unam incolunt;² Aquitani alteram; Celtæ tertiam.—Hi, ipsorum* linguâ³ Celtæ⁴ appellantur;⁵ nostrâ* linguâ, Galli.⁴

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgæ, alteram Aquitani, tertiam qui⁶ ipsorum linguâ Celtæ, nostrâ Galli appellantur.

Hi omnes inter se differunt.⁷—Linguâ, institutis,⁸ legibus differunt.—Garumna⁹ flumen Gallos ab Aquitanis dividit.—Matrôna flumen Gallos a Belgis dividit.—Horum omnium¹⁰ fortissimi sunt Belgæ.—Ab humanitate¹¹ Provinciæ longe absunt.¹²—A cultu¹³ Provinciæ longissime absunt.—Minime ad eos mercatores¹⁴ commeant.—Quædam¹⁵ animos effeminant.¹⁶—Quædam ad effeminandos animos pertinent.¹⁷

Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus, inter se differunt.—Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrôna et Sequâna dividit.—Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate Provinciæ longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores sæpe commeant, atque ea, quæ ad effeminandos animos pertinent,¹⁸ important.¹⁹

Proximi sunt Germanis.²⁰—Germani trans Rhenum incolunt.—Belgæ cum Germanis continenter²¹ bellum gerunt.

¹ 435, c.—² in+colere.—³ 716.—⁴ 694, 2, R.—⁵ ad+pellare (*obsolete*), 799, 2, a.—⁶ 167, d, 4.—⁷ 798, [P].—⁸ 786, 2, instituere = in+statuere, 803, 1.—⁹ 225, a.—¹⁰ 697, a.—¹¹ 788, 1 (*humanus*), humanitas = *refinement*.—¹² ab+sum, 799, 1.—¹³ cultus (*civilization*), from colere (*cult-*), 789.—¹⁴ mercator, from mercari (*mercāt-*), 788, 2, b.—¹⁵ *Some things*.—¹⁶ effeminare (*to make effeminate*), ex+feminare, 799, 4, a: feminare, from femina (*woman*), 794, 1.—¹⁷ *tend to make minds effeminate*, 739.—¹⁸ per+tenere, 803, 3.—¹⁹ in+portare, 799, 5, b.—²⁰ 704, 4.—²¹ from continens (*con+tenere*) 215, 2, b.

* Ipsorum and nostra precede linguâ, instead of following it, because opposed to each other, and therefore *emphatic*.

Proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, qui
hunc²² continenter bellum gerunt.

II.

Helvetii quoque¹ reliquos² Gallos virtute³ præcedunt.⁴—Fere
quotidianis præliis cum Germanis contendunt.—Aut⁵ suis finibus
Germanos prohibent,⁶ aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

Qua⁷ de causa⁸ Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute
præcedunt, quod⁹ fere quotidianis præliis cum Germanis con-
tendunt, quum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum
finibus bellum gerunt.

Galli unam partem obtinent.¹⁰—Unam partem Gallos¹¹ obti-
nere dictum est.¹²—Ea pars initium capit a flumine Rhodanō.
—Continetur Garumnā flumine,¹³ Oceano,¹³ finibus¹³ Belgarum.
—Attingit¹⁴ ab Sequānis flumen Rhenum.—Vergit ad Septen-
triones.—Belgæ ab extremis¹⁵ Galliæ finibus oriuntur.—Pertin-
ent¹⁶ ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni.—Spectant¹⁷ in
Septentriones et orientem¹⁷ solem.

Eorum una pars, quam¹⁸ Gallos obtinere dictum est, ini-
tium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur¹⁹ Garumna flumine,
Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab²⁰ Sequanis et
Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad Septentriones.—Belgæ
ab extremis Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem
partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in Septentriones et orientem
solem.

Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenæos montes pertinet.
—Una pars Oceani est ad²⁰ Hispaniam.—Aquitania ad eam

²² 125, II., b.

¹ Quoque neve begins a sentence.—² from relinquere (reliqu-), 791, 1.
—³ 718, in *valour*.—⁴ 799, 8.—⁵ 519, R. 4.—⁶ 721.—⁷ 89, II.—⁸ Qua de cau-
sa = *for which reason*.—⁹ *because*.—¹⁰ ob+tenere, 803, 3.—¹¹ 751.—¹² 751,
R. 2.—¹³ 716.—¹⁴ ad+tangere, 799, 2, a, 803, 1.—¹⁵ 78, II., b.—¹⁶ Pertinent
= *they extend*, per+tenere.—¹⁷ 438, a.—¹⁸ 759.—¹⁹ *is bounded*.—²⁰ *on the
side of, or near*.

* Spectant in Septentriones, &c.: *they look into the north and the rising sun*;
i. e., *they lie in a N.E. direction*.

partem Oceani, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertinet.—Spectat inter occasum²¹ solis et Septentriones.

Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceani, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat* inter occasum solis et Septentriones.

III.

Orgetorix nobilis fuit.—Apud Helvetios nobilissimus fuit Orgetorix.—Apud Helvetios longè ditissimus¹ fuit Orgetorix.—Is regni cupiditate² inductus conjurationem³ nobilitatis⁴ fecit.—Is civitati⁵ persuadet, ut de finibus suis exeant.⁶—De finibus suis exeunt.—Perfacile erat totius Galliæ imperio⁷ potiri.—Perfacile esse⁸ (dixit), quum virtute omnibus præstarent,⁹ totius Galliæ imperio potiri.

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix.—Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco Pisone consulibus,¹⁰ regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit; et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent:¹¹ perfacile esse (dixit), quum virtute omnibus præstarent, totius Galliæ imperio potiri.

Id facile eis persuadet.¹²—Id hoc facilius eis persuasit.—Undique naturâ loci¹³ Helvetii continentur.—Unâ ex parte continentur flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo.—Alterâ ex parte continentur monte Jurâ altissimo; tertiâ ex parte lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano.—Flumen Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit.—Mons Jurâ est inter Sequanos et Helvetios.—Flumen Rhodanus provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

²¹ 789, from occidere, ob+cadere.

¹ 371, R. 1.—² from cupid-us, by 788, 1.—³ 788, 3, con+jurare.—⁴ 788, 1.
⁵ 704, 2: *he persuades the state*; i. e., *the citizens*.—⁶ ut exeant = *to go out of*: subj. pres., 754 (ex+ire).—⁷ abl., 718.—⁸ The sentence *perfacile esse*, &c., is in orat. obliqua; 769, a, applies.—⁹ 799, 8.—¹⁰ 458, b.—¹¹ Why is exirent in subj. imperf.? 748.—¹² suadere, *to recommend*; persuadere, *recommend thoroughly*, i. e., *persuade*.—¹³ *by the nature of the country*.

* It looks between the setting of the sun and the north; i. e., in a N.W. direction

Id hoc facilius eis persuadet, quod undique loci naturâ Helvetii continentur; unâ ex parte, flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; alterâ ex parte, monte Jurâ altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertiâ, lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

Minus latè vagantur.—His rebus fit,¹⁴ ut minus late vagentur.¹⁵—Bellum inferunt.¹⁶—Bellum inferre¹⁷ possunt.—Minus facile bellum finitimis¹⁸ inferre possunt.—His rebus fit, ut minus facile bellum finitimis inferre possent.—Magno dolore afficiebantur.¹⁹—Bellandi²⁰ erant cupidi.²¹

His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possint.—Quâ de causa, homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur.

IV.

Pro¹ multitudine² hominum, angustos habebant fines.—Pro gloria³ belli atque fortitudinis,³ angustos habebant fines.—Angustos se⁴ fines habere arbitrabantur.⁵—Hi (i. e., fines) millia passuum ducenta (CC.) patebant.⁶—Hi in longitudinem⁷ millia⁷ passuum ducenta et quadraginta (XL.) patebant.

Pro multitudine autem⁸ hominum, et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem millia passuum CCXL., in latitudinem centum et octoginta (CLXXX.) patebant.

Ducti sunt.—Adducti⁹ sunt.—Moti sunt.—Permoti¹⁰ sunt.—Auctoritate¹¹ Orgetorigis adducti et permoti sunt.—Quædam ad proficiscendum¹² pertinent.—Constituerunt¹³ ea comparare.¹⁴—Constituerunt jumenta et carros emere.¹⁵—Constituerunt se-

¹⁴ By these circumstances it is brought about.—¹⁵ 754, 2.—¹⁶ in+ferre.—¹⁷ 731.—¹⁸ 704, 3.—¹⁹ ad+facere, 799, 2; 803, 1.—²⁰ 736.—²¹ cupere, 791, 2.

¹ For, or, in view of.—² mult-us, 788, 4.—³ reputation for war and courage.—⁴ 471.—⁵ from arbit-er, by 794, 3.—⁶ extended.—⁷ 712.—⁸ 522, b.—⁹ Ducti sunt=they were led: adducti sunt=they were led to, i. e., they were induced.—¹⁰ Moti sunt=they were moved: permoti sunt=they were thoroughly moved, i. e., prevailed upon.—¹¹ 788, 1.—¹² 487.—¹³ con+statuere, 803, 1.—¹⁴ con+parare, 799, 3, b.—¹⁵ 731.

mentes magnas facere,¹⁶ ut in itinere copia frumenti suppet-
eret.¹⁷—Cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam¹⁸ con-
firmant.

His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti,
constituerunt, ea, quæ¹⁹ ad proficiendum pertinērent, com-
parare; jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum nu-
merum²⁰ coemere;²¹ sementes quam maximas²² facere, ut
in itinere copia frumenti suppetaret; cum proximis civitatibus
pacem et amicitiam confirmare.

Biennium Helvetiis²³ satis erat.—Biennium sibi²⁴ Helvetii satis
esse duxerunt.²⁴—Ad eas res conficiendas²⁵ biennium satis erat.
—Profectionem²⁶ lege confirmant.²⁷—In tertium annum profec-
tionem lege confirmant:—Ad eas res conficiendas²⁸ Orgetorix
deligitur.²⁸—Is sibi legationem²⁹ suscepit.²⁹—In eo itinere per-
suadet Castico.—Casticus Catamantalēdis erat filius, Sequānus.
—Pater Castici regnum in Sequanis multos annos³⁰ obtinuerat.
—Pater Castici a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat.
—Orgetorix Castico persuadet, ut regnum in civitate suā occu-
paret.³¹

Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt;
in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res
conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civi-
tates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantale-
ois filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos
annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus
erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod³² pater ante
habuerat.

V.

Item Dumnorigi persuadet.—Dumnorix erat Æduus.—
Dumnorix erat frater Divitiaci.—Dumnorix principatum¹ in

¹⁶ to make great sowings, i. e., to sow much land.—¹⁷ Sub+petere, 799
9, a, neuter; suppeteret = might be in store: subjunc. by 754, 1.—¹⁸ 785, 2.
—¹⁹ 759, Rem.—²⁰ As great a number as possible.—²¹ con+emere, to buy
together, to buy up, 799, 3.—²² As great sowings as possible.—²³ 704.—
²⁴ reckoned.—²⁵ 498, d.—²⁶ 788, 3.—²⁷ They fix the departure by a law
²⁸ de+legere, 803, 3.—²⁹ 799, 9, b.—³⁰ 712.—³¹ 754.—³² 759.

¹ chief power, from princeps.

civitate obtinebat. — Dumnorix plebi² acceptus³ erat. — Dumnorigi, ut idem conaretur persuadet,* eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Itemque Dumnorigi Æduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore⁴ principatum in civitate obtinebat, ac maximè⁵ plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Perfacile factu⁶ erat conata perficere.⁷ — Ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus erat. — Totius⁸ Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possunt. — Non est dubium quin plurimum Helvetii possint.⁹ — Ipse illis regnum conciliaturus¹⁰ erat. — Ipse, suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regnum conciliaturus erat.

(*Oblique Narration*, 769.) “Perfacile factu esse,” illis probat, “conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possent;” “Se, suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regna conciliaturum,” confirmat.

Helvetii jam¹¹ se¹² ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrantur. — Oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim,¹³ incendunt. — Vicos suos ad quadringentos incendunt. — Reliqua¹⁴ privata ædificia¹⁵ incendunt. — Frumentum secum portaturi erant. — Frumentum omne comburunt. — Domum¹⁶ reditionis¹⁷ spes sublata¹⁸ est. — Paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda¹⁹ erant.

Ubi²⁰ jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia incendunt; frumentum omne, præter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut, domum reditionis spe²¹ sublata,²¹ paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent.²²

² 702, was acceptable to the common people (a favourite). — ³ ad + capere, 803, 1. — ⁴ 725. — ⁵ 376. — ⁶ 380. It was a very easy thing to do. — ⁷ to accomplish, per + facere, 803, 1. — ⁸ Of the whole of Gaul, the Helvetians are the most powerful. — ⁹ 754, 4. — ¹⁰ 446. — ¹¹ jam = at last. — ¹² 751. — ¹³ in number (amounting) to twelve. — ¹⁴ relinquere. — ¹⁵ 801, ædes + facere. — ¹⁶ 713, Rem. 2. — ¹⁷ 788, 3. — ¹⁸ tollere. — ¹⁹ sub + ire, gerundive, 739. — ²⁰ when. — ²¹ 750. — ²² 754.

* Cæsar often uses the *historical present*, as in this instance, instead of the perfect aorist. If persuadet were used really as the present, then conaretur would have to be conetur, by 748; but, as the historical present, it requires a past tense in the subordinate sentence.

VI.

Omnes res ad profectionem comparant.—Diem dicunt¹ qua die omnes conveniant.²—Is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas³ Aprilis, Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio consulibus.—Is dies erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pisone, A. Gabinio Coss.

Omnibus rebus⁴ ad profectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant: is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio Consulibus.

Helvetii per provinciam nostram iter⁵ facere conantur.—Id Cæsari nuntiatum erat.—Cæsari nuntiatum erat, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere⁶ conari.⁷—Maturat ab urbe proficisci,⁸ et magnis itineribus in Galliam contendit, et ad Genevam pervenit.—De ejus adventu⁹ Helvetii certiores facti sunt.—Legatos ad eum mittunt.—Helvetiis est in animo⁹ sine ullo maleficio¹⁰ iter per provinciam facere; aliud iter habent nullum; rogant, ut, Cæsaris voluntate, id facere liceat.¹¹

Cæsari quum id nuntiatum esset,¹² eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari,⁷ maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genevam pervenit. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt,¹³ qui dicent,¹⁴ “*sibi¹⁵ esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habeant nullum; rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat.*”

Lucius Cassius, consul, ab Helvetiis occisus erat.—Exercitus¹⁶ Cassii ab Helvetiis pulsus¹⁷ erat, et sub jugum missus.—Eâ Cæsar memoriâ¹⁸ tenebat.—Concedendum¹⁹ non putabat.—Facultas²⁰ per provinciam itineris faciendi²¹ non data est.—

¹ *They appoint.*—² *con+venire*; subj. pres., 766.—³ 782, 5.—⁴ 750.—⁵ *iter facere = to make journey = to march.*—⁶ 731.—⁷ 751.—⁸ *advenire (advent-),* 789.—⁹ 468, b.—¹⁰ 800, 2.—¹¹ 754.—¹² 757, A. 2.—¹³ *historical present.*—¹⁴ 761, 1.—¹⁵ *oblique narration.*—¹⁶ *exercere*, 789.—¹⁷ *pellere.*—¹⁸ *memoriâ tenebat, held in memory, i. e., remembered.*—¹⁹ 737 (*esse understood*, 504, a).—²⁰ *power of marching through, or permission to march through* facultas, 788, 1, from *facil-is. facio.*—²¹ 496.

Homines inimico²² animo ab injuria et maleficio non temperant.

Cæsar, quod memoria tenebat, L. Cassium consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque²³ homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturos ab injuria²⁴ et maleficio, existimabat.

VII.

Hujus legationis Divico princeps fuit.—Divico, bello Cassiano,¹ dux Helvetiorum fuerat.—Is ita cum Cæsare egit.²—Helvetii in eam partem ibunt, atque ibi erunt, ubi Cæsar constituerit.³—Cæsar veteris incommodi⁴ reminiscitur.⁵—Cæsar pristinae virtutis⁶ Helvetiorum reminiscitur.

(*Oblique Narration, present time.*⁷) Is ita cum Cæsare agit: "*Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciat,⁸ in eam partem ituros⁹ atque ibi futuros⁹ Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constituerit atque esse voluerit; sin bello persequi perseveret,¹⁰ reminiscatur¹¹ et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.*"

Hujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui, bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Cæsare egit (*obl. narr., past time*): "*Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros, atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi Cæsar eos constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.*"

²² 722.—²³ neque existimabat = *nor did he think*.—²⁴ outrage.

¹ *In the Cassian war*, i. e., in which Cassius had been the Roman general.—² *He treated with Cæsar as follows*.—³ 803, 1; subj. by 766.—⁴ *incommodum, disaster*, in+commodus, 799, 5; con+modus, 799, 3, c; genitive by 698, a, 2.—⁵ *re+miniscor, stem of meminī, meno*.—⁶ *vir, gen.*, 698, a, 2.—⁷ Observe carefully the *tenses* in this and the following paragraph.—⁸ *If the Roman people will make peace*.—⁹ 484, a.—¹⁰ 542, b.—¹¹ 528 b

His Cæsar ita¹³ respondet.—Cæsari nihil dubitationis¹³ datur.¹⁴—Legati Helvetii quasdam res commemoraverunt.¹⁵—Eas res Cæsar in memoria tenet.¹⁶—Eo¹⁷ Cæsari minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoraverunt, in memoria tenet.—Eas res graviter¹⁸ fert.¹⁹—Eæ res non merito²⁰ populi Romani acciderunt.²¹—Eas res graviter fert, quod non merito populi Romani acciderunt.—Eo²² gravius fert, quo²³ minus merito Populi Romani acciderunt.

His Cæsar ita respondet²⁴ (*oblique narration, present time*): “*Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoraverint, memoria teneat: atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani acciderint.*”

His Cæsar ita respondit (*oblique narration, past time*): “*Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret: atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent.*”

VIII.

Helvetii postero die¹ castra ex eo loco movent.—Idem² Cæsar facit.—Quas in partes³ hostes iter faciunt?⁴—Equitatum⁵ omnem præmittit.⁶—Hi videbunt, quas in partes hostes iter faciant.⁷—Equitatus ex omni Provincia et Æduis atque eorum sociis coactus⁸ erat.—Hunc equitatum præmittit, qui videant,⁹ quas in partes hostes iter faciant.⁷—Hi cupidius¹⁰ novissimum¹¹ agmen insequuntur.¹²—Cum equitatu Helvetiorum prælium commit-

¹³ *as follows*.—¹³ 788, 3, dubitare (dubitat).—¹⁴ *To Cæsar nothing of doubt is given = Cæsar has no doubt*.—¹⁵ *con + memorare (memor)*.—¹⁶ *holds in memory, i. e., remembers*.—¹⁷ *On this account Cæsar has less doubt, because*.—¹⁸ 215, 2, a.—¹⁹ *ferre graviter = to bear heavily, to be indignant at*.—²⁰ 716.—²¹ *accidere = ad + cadere, 803, 1, to happen*.—²² *By so much*.—²³ *by how much*.—²⁴ *Observe the moods and tenses carefully in this and the following paragraph of oblique narration*.

¹ 725.—² 150.—³ *Into what parts (of the country)?*—⁴ 765.—⁵ *Equitare (equitat)*, 789.—⁶ 795, 8.—⁷ 766.—⁸ *had been collected; cogere = con + agere*.—⁹ *who may see, i. e., to see*, 761, 1.—¹⁰ *too eagerly, adv.*, 376.—¹¹ *novissimum agmen = the newest rank, i. e., the rear rank*.—¹² *in + sequi*

tunt.—Aliēno¹³ loco prœlium committunt.—Pauci de nostris cadunt.

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent: idem Cæsar facit; equitatumque omnem ad num̄rum quattuor millium, quem ex omni provincia et Æduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant.—Qui, cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti,¹⁴ alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum prœlium committunt, et pauci de nostris cadunt.

Hoc prœlio sublāti¹⁵ sunt Helvetii.—Quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulserant.¹⁶—Audacius¹⁷ subsistere¹⁸ cœperunt.—Nonnunquam¹⁹ et²⁰ prœlio²¹ nostros lacerare cœperunt.—Cæsar suos a prœlio continebat.²²—Hostem rapinis,²³ pabulationibusque prohibere²⁴ volēbat.—Hoc satis habebat in præsentiā.²⁵

Quo prœlio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere, nonnunquam et novissimo agmine prœlio nostros lacerare cœperunt.—Cæsar suos a prœlio continebat, ac satis habebat in præsentiā hostem rapinis pabulationibusque²⁶ prohibere.

IX.

Multa¹ antēhac tacuerat² Liscus.—Hæc orationē³ Cæsaris adductus propōnit⁴.—Sunt nonnulli,⁵ quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum⁶ valet.—Hi privātīm⁷ plus possunt⁸ quam ipsi

¹³ In a place not their own, i. e., on disadvantageous ground.—¹⁴ 451, c.—¹⁵ sub+lati, irreg. perf. of tollere: the Helvetians were elated.—¹⁶ they had driven off, pro+pellere.—¹⁷ 376.—¹⁸ to halt, sub+sistere; inf. 731.—¹⁹ non+nunquam, not never, i. e., sometimes.—²⁰ also.—²¹ by an assault.—²² to hold together, i. e., to restrain.—²³ 721, from plunder and from foraging parties.—²⁴ pro+habere.—²⁵ acc. pl. of præsens; in præsentiā (tempora), for the present.—²⁶ 517, a.

¹ Many things, before this, Liscus had kept secret.—² tacere, intrans = to be silent; trans = to keep secret.—³ 788, 3, orare (orāt).—⁴ pro+ponere, to set before, to relate.—⁵ non+nullus, not none, i. e., some.—⁶ plurimum valet = avails very much (has very great weight).—⁷ 215, 3.—⁸ plus possunt = can more. i. e., have more power.

magistrātus.⁹—Hi seditiōes¹⁰ atque imprōba¹¹ oratione multitudine deterrent.¹²—Frumentum non confērent.¹³—Hi multitudine deterrent, ne frumentum conferant.¹⁴—Ipsi quidem principatū Galliae obtinere non possunt. — Satius¹⁵ est Gallōrum quam Romanōrum imperia perferre.¹⁶

Si Helvetios superavērint¹⁷ Romāni, una¹⁸ cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem eripient.¹⁹—Dubitare non debent, quin Romani Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi.²⁰—Satius est si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre.

Tum demum Liscus,²¹ oratione Cæsaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat proponit.—(*Oratio obliqua*): “Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus; hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod præstare debeant. Si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre satius esse, neque dubitare debere, quin si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi.”

X

Hac oratione Lisci, Dumnōrix, Divitiaci frater, designabatur.¹—Id Cæsar sentiēbat.²—Pluribus præsentibus³ eas res jactari nolēbat. — Celeriter⁴ concilium dimittit; Liscum retinet. — Quærit,⁵ ex solo,⁷ ea quæ in conventu⁸ dixerat. — Dicit liberius⁹ atque audacius.⁹—Eādem secrēto¹⁰ ab aliis quærit. — Repērit¹¹ esse vera.

⁹ *The magistrates themselves.*—¹⁰ 791, 9 (seditio).—¹¹ in+probis, 799, 5.—¹² de+terrere.—¹³ con+ferre, contribute.—¹⁴ ne conferant, *that they may not contribute*, i. e., deter them from contributing, 548, b.—¹⁵ Satius, compar. of satis, 376: *it is better.*—¹⁶ per+ferre, to endure.—¹⁷ 542, b, 2.—¹⁸ *they will wrest liberty from the Aeduians, together with the rest of Gaul.*—¹⁹ ē+raperē, 803, 1.—²⁰ 754, 4.—²¹ *Then, finally (then, and not till then).*

¹ *was alluded to, de+signare.*—² *was aware of.*—³ 750, many being present, i. e., in the presence of many.—⁴ 794, 2, a; from jacio (jact): jactare = to toss to and fro; hence, to discuss.—⁵ 215, 2.—⁶ *He inquires into.*—⁷ ex solo = of him alone.—⁸ 789.—⁹ 376.—¹⁰ *privately.*—¹¹ *He finds (the statements) are true.*

Ipse est Dumnōrix,¹³ summa audacia,¹³ magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia,¹⁴ cupidus rerum¹⁵ novarum.—Comp. āres annos¹⁶ portoria¹⁷ reliquaque omnia Æduorum vectigalia habet.—Hæc vectigalia parvo pretio¹⁸ redempta sunt.¹⁹—Vectigalia²⁰ parvo pretio redempta habet, propterea quod, illo²¹ licente,²² contra licēri²³ audet nemo.—His rebus suam rem familiarem auxit.—His rebus facultates²⁴ ad largiendum²⁵ magnas comparavit.—Magnum numerum equitatūs suo sumptu²⁶ semper alit.—Magnum numerum equitatūs semper circum se habet.—Non solum domi,²⁷ sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter²⁸ potest.

Cæsar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designāri sentiebat: sed, quod pluribus præsentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: quærit, ex solo, ea quæ in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quærit; reperit esse vera: "Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum: complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Æduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra licēri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse: magnum numerum equitatūs suo sumtu semper alere et circum se habere: neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse."

XI.

Ad has suspiciones certissimæ res¹ accedebant.—Dumnorix per fines Sequanōrum Helvetios transduxerat.²—Obsides inter eos dandos³ curaverat.—Ea omnia jussū⁴ Cæsaris fecerat.—Ea

¹³ *Dumnorix is the very person, (a man) of the highest audacity, &c.*—¹⁴ 722.—¹⁵ *influence.*—¹⁶ 698, *b.*—¹⁷ 712.—¹⁸ *transit duties, custom duties.*—¹⁹ 719.—²⁰ *were contracted for.*—²¹ *vectigalia . . . habet, he holds the taxes contracted for at a low price; i. e., holds them under a very favourable contract.*—²² 456, *a*, *when he bids.*—²³ *liceor, licēri, to bid.*—²⁴ 731.—²⁵ *Means for making largesses.*—²⁶ 489.—²⁷ *suo sumptu, at his own expense.* *Sumptus*, 789, from *sumere*.—²⁸ 726, *R.*, *at home.*—*largiter potest, he can largely, i. e., he has extensive power.*

¹ *certissimæ res = most certain (or undoubted) facts.*—*accedebant = were added; ad+cedere, intransitive.*—² *trans+ducere.*—³ 504, *a.*—⁴ 789 from *jubere* (*juss-*): *by the command*, 716.

omnia injussu⁶ Cæsaris et⁶ civitatis fecerat.—Ea omnia inscientibus ipsis⁷ fecerat.—Ea omnia non modo injussu Cæsaris et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecerat.—A magistratū⁸ Æduorum accusabatur.—Satis est causæ,⁹ quare in eum animadvertat.¹⁰—Satis est causæ, quare in eum civitatem animadvertēre jubeat.—Satis erat causæ, quare in eum aut ipse animadvertēret, aut civitatem animadvertere jubēret.—Satis esse¹¹ causæ arbitrabatur.

Quibus rebus cognitis,¹² quum¹³ ad has suspiciones certissimæ res accederent—quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset¹⁴—quod obsides inter eos dando curasset—quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis, fecisset—quod a magistratu Æduorum accusarētur; satis esse causæ arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadvertēret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet.

His omnibus rebus¹⁵ unum repugnabat.¹⁶—Divitiaci fratris¹⁷ summum in populum Romānum studium¹⁸ cognoverat Cæsar.—Divitiaci summam in se voluntatem cognoverat.—Divitiaci egregiam fidem, justitiam,¹⁹ temperantiam,¹⁹ cognoverat.—Dumnorigis supplicio²⁰ Divitiaci animum offendet.—Ne²¹ Divitiaci animum offendat, verētur.—Ne²² Divitiaci animum offendēret, verebatur.

His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur.

⁶ *without the command*; in-jussū.—⁶ The English idiom demands *or* instead of *and*: *without the command of Cæsar or the state*.—⁷ *themselves not knowing it*, i. e., without the knowledge of Cæsar and the Ædian government.—⁸ *By a magistrate*, 93, II., b.—⁹ 697, b.—¹⁰ in eum animadvertere, *to animadvert upon him*, i. e., *to punish him*.—¹¹ 751, R. 2.—¹² *Quibus rebus cognitis* = *Which things being known by inquiry*, i. e., *after he had inquired into these things*.—¹³ *Since (seeing that)*, 757, A, b.—¹⁴ *transduxisset, curasset, &c.*, are subjunctives, because they express, not Cæsar's own sentiments or knowledge, but what he had heard from others: *certissimæ res accederent*.—¹⁵ 704, *To all these considerations one (thing) opposed itself*.—¹⁶ *re-pugnare*.—¹⁷ *Of his brother Divitiacus*, i. e., the brother of Dumnorix.—¹⁸ *zeal*.—¹⁹ 785, 2.—²⁰ *By the punishment of Dumnorix he will hurt the feelings of Divitiacus*.—²¹ *veretur ne . . . he fears that he shall*.—²² *verebatur ne . . . he feared that he should*.

XII.

Cæsar graviter¹ in² Dumnorigem statuet.—Divitiacus Cæsarem complectitur.—Divitiacus multis³ cum lacrymis Cæsarem complectitur.—Obsecrâre incipit ne⁴ quid gravius⁵ in² fratrem statuât.—Scit Divitiacus illa esse vera.—Nemo ex eo⁶ plus quam Divitiacus doloris⁷ capit.—Divitiacus gratiâ⁸ plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia poterat.—Dumnōrix minimum⁹ propter adolescentiam poterat.—Dumnorix per Divitiacum crevit.¹⁰—His opibus¹¹ ac nervis¹² ad minuendam¹³ gratiam Divitiaci utitur.—His opibus ad perniciem¹⁴ Divitiaci utitur.—Quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem Divitiaci utitur.—Divitiacus tamen et¹⁵ amore fraterno et existimatione¹⁶ vulgi commovetur.¹⁷—Divitiacus summum locum amicitiae apud Cæsarem tenet.—Nemo existimabit non ejus voluntate factum.¹⁸—Ex hac re tōtius Galliae animi a Divitiaco avertentur.¹⁹

(*Direct Narration, Present Time.*²⁰) Scit Divitiacus illa esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ipse doloris capit, propterea quod, quum ipse gratiâ plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem ipsius utitur. Divitiacus tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovetur, quod, si²¹ quid fratri a Cæsare acciderit, quum²² ipse talem locum amicitiae apud eum teneat, nemo existimabit non

¹ graviter statuet = *will decide severely.*—² against.—³ 89, II.—⁴ 548, a.
⁵ quid gravius = *anything more severe (than usual): anything at all severe.*—⁶ from him, i. e., Dumnorix.—⁷ plus doloris, *more pain*, 697.—⁸ by his influence (popularity).—⁹ minimum poterat = *had very little power.*—¹⁰ crescere: *grew* (in power).—¹¹ resources.—¹² sinews, abl. by 716.—¹³ 739, for *diminishing the influence of Divitiacus.*—¹⁴ 790, 1.—¹⁵ 517, c.—¹⁶ existimare, 788, 3: existimatione vulgi = *by the opinion of the public.*—¹⁷ con+movere; commovetur = *is strongly moved.*—¹⁸ No one will think it was not done with his (Divitiacus's) consent.—¹⁹ a+vertere: *the affections of all Gaul will be turned away from him.*—²⁰ Observe carefully the moods and tenses in the following paragraphs of direct and oblique narration.—²¹ if anything happen to his brother from Cæsar.—²² quum ipso teneat, *seeing that he himself holds.*

ejus voluntate factum; qua ex re fiet²³ uti totius Galliae animi ab eo avertantur.²⁴

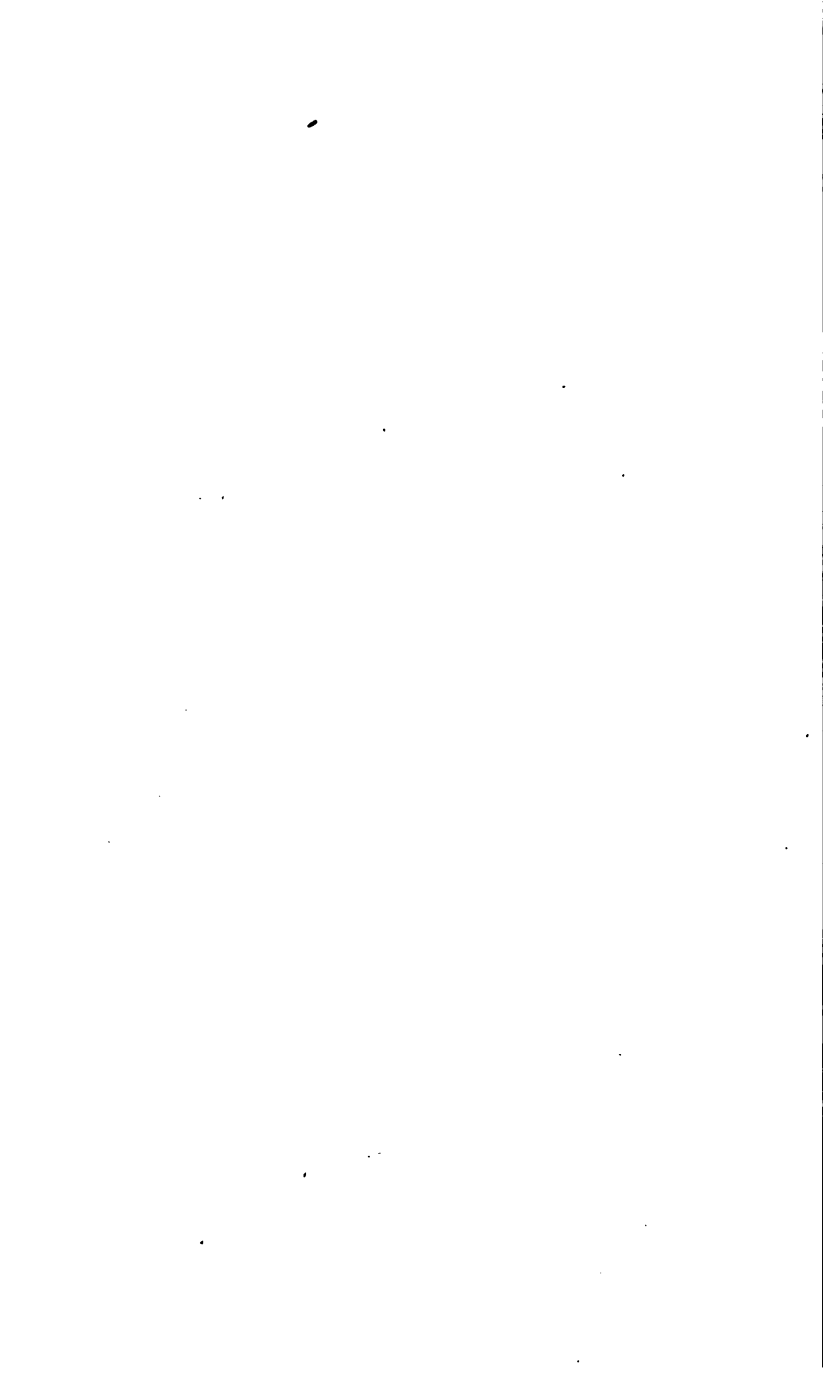
(*Direct Narration, Past Time.*) Sciebat Divitiacus illa esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ipse doloris capiēbat, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se creverat; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem ipsius utebatur. Divitiacus tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovēbatur, quod si quid fratri a Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse talem locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nemo erat existimatūrus non ejus voluntate factum, qua ex re futurum erat uti totius Galliae animi ab eo averterentur.

Divitiacus, multis cum lacrymis Cæsarem complexus obsecrare incipit (*oblique narration, present time*), "Ne quid gravius in fratrem statuatur; scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se creverit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam utatur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri, quod, si quid ei gravius a Cæsare acciderit, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneat, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se avertantur."

Divitiacus multis cum lacrymis, Cæsarem complexus, obsecrare coepit (*oblique narration, past time*), "Ne quid gravius in fratrem statuēret; scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri, quod si quid ei a Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur."

²³ from which thing it will result.—²⁴ 754. 2.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.



LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

 THE numbers refer to paragraphs. In verbs, the perfect and supine-stems are placed in brackets, immediately after the infinitive endings. The declensions of nouns may be known by the genitive endings. the conjugations of verbs by the infinitive endings.

A, ab, abs, prep. with abl., <i>by, from</i> .	Adduc-ère (addux-, adduct-), <i>to lead to, induce</i> .
Abesse (abfu-, ab+esse), <i>to be away from, to be distant, to be absent</i> .	Adeo, adv., <i>to this point, to such a degree</i> .
Abrog-äre (av-, at-), <i>to abrogate</i> .	Adesse (adfu-, ad+esse), <i>to be present (with dat.)</i> .
Abstinent-äre (abstinu-, abstinent-, abs+tenere), <i>to abstain from (with abl.)</i> .	Adhib-äre (adhibu-, adhibit-, ad+habere), <i>to apply, employ, admit</i> .
Abund-äre (av-, at-), <i>to abound (with abl.)</i> .	Adhort-äri (at-), dep., <i>to exhort</i> .
Ac, conj., <i>and, as well as</i> .	Adjung-äre (adjunx-, adjunct-), <i>to join to</i> .
Acced-äre (access-, access-, ad+cedere, 401, 3), <i>to approach</i> .	Adjuv-äre (adjäv-, adjüt-), <i>to assist</i> .
Accid-äre (accid-, ad+cadere), <i>to happen</i> .	Admödum, adv., <i>very</i> .
Accidit, impers., 583, <i>it happens</i> .	Admon-äre (admonu-, admonit-), <i>to advise, admonish</i> .
Accip-äre (io, accëp-, accept-, 666, V., ð), <i>to receive: acceptus erat, he was popular, or acceptable</i> .	Adolescens, (adolescent) is, <i>young man</i> .
Accurr-äre (accurr-, and accucurr-, accurs-, ad+currere), <i>to run to, to run up to</i> .	Adolescenti-a, æ, <i>youth</i> .
Accus-äre (av-, at-), <i>to accuse</i> .	Ador-äre (av-, at-), <i>to adore, worship</i> .
Acer, acris, acre, 105, R. 1, <i>sharp, spirited</i> .	Advent-us, ðs, <i>approach</i> .
Acerrime (superl. of acriter), <i>very spiritedly</i> .	Adversus, or adversum, prep. with accus., <i>against, towards</i> .
Acies, ei, <i>line of battle</i> .	Ædific-äre (av-, at-), <i>to build</i> .
Acriter, adv., 217, <i>sharply, spirit-edly</i> .	Ædifici-um, i, <i>building</i> .
Acut-us, æ, um, <i>sharp, acute</i> .	Ædu-us, i, <i>Ædian (people of Gaul)</i> .
Ad, prep. with accus., <i>to, near</i> .	Ægens, (ëgent) is, 107, <i>poor</i> .
Add-äre (addid-, addit-, ad+dare, 411, c), <i>to add</i> .	Æger, gra, grum, <i>sick</i> .
	Ægritudo, (ægritudin) is, 339, <i>sorrow, affliction, sickness</i> .
	Ægrot-äre (av-, at-), <i>to be sick</i> .
	Ægyptus, i, f., 25, a, <i>Ægypt</i> .
	Æquor, (æquör) is, 327, <i>sea</i> .
	Æstas, (æstat) is, 293, <i>summer</i> .

- Ætas**, (ætat) is, 293, *age, time of life*.
Æternitas, (æternitat) is, 293, *eternity*.
Ætern-us, a, um, *eternal*; in æternum, *forever*.
Affectio, (affection) is, 293, *affection*.
Afferre (attul-, allat-, ad+ferre), *to bring, bring to, adduce*.
Affic-ère (affec-, affect-, ad+facere), *to affect, move, influence*.
Afric-a, æ, *Africa*.
African-us, i, *Africanus*.
Ager, gri, 64, *field*.
Ag-ère (æg-, act-), *to do, act, drive; to treat* (as an ambassador).
Agmen, (agmin) is, 344, *a, army on march, or in marching order; novissimum agmen, the rear*.
Agn-us, i, *lamb*.
Agricol-a, æ, m., *husbandman*.
Agricultur-a, æ, *agriculture*.
Agripp-a, æ, *Agrippa*.
Aio, 609, *I say, say yes, affirm*.
Al-a, æ, *wing*.
Al-ère (alu-, alt-), *to nourish, support, maintain*.
Alexander, -dri, *Alexander*.
Alien-us, a, um, *foreign, belonging to another*.
Aliquando, *at some time, some day, at last*.
Aliquant-us, a, um, 184, *somewhat great; aliquantum agri, a pretty large piece of ground*.
Aliquis, quæ, quid (quod), 178, 5, *some one, something; aliquid novi, something new*, 180.
Aliter, *otherwise*.
Ali-us, a, ud, gen. alius, &c., 194, R. 1, *other, another*. [of Gaul.
Allobroges, um, *Allobroges, people*
Allu-ère (allu-), *to wash*.
Alpes, ium, *Alps, mountains between Gaul and Italy*.
Alter, a, um, gen. ius, 194, R. 1, *another, the second* (in a series).
- Alt-us**, a, um, *high, lofty, deep; altum, i, the deep, the sea*.
Amabilis, is, e, 104, *amiable*.
Am-äre (av-, at-), *to love*.
Ambo, æ, o, *both*.
Ambul-äre (av-, at-), *to walk*.
Amiciti-a, æ, *friendship*.
Amic-us, i, *friend*.
Amitt-ère (amis-, amiss-), *to lose*.
Amplè, adv., *largely*.
Amplius, comp. of amplè, *more, larger, greater than*.
Ancill-a, æ, *maid-servant*.
Angli-a, æ, *England*.
Angusti æ, arum, *defiles*, 57, R.
Angust-us, a, um, *narrow*.
Animadvert-ère (vert-, vers-), *animus + ad + vertere*, *to turn the mind to, to observe; with in, to punish; Cæsar in Dumnorigem animadvertit, Cæsar punishes Dumnorix*.
Animal, (animal) is, 325, *animal*.
Animans, (animant) is, *living; as noun, a living being*.
Anim-us, i, *soul, mind*.
Ann-us, i, *year*.
Anser, (anser) is, 319, *goose*.
Ante, prep. with accus., *before*.
Antehac, adv., *before, before this*.
Antepon-ère (posu-, posit-), *to place before, to prefer*.
Antonin-us, i, *Antonine*.
Antoni-us, i, *Antony*.
Aper ire (aperu-, apert-, 427, II.), *to open*.
Apert-us, a, um, *open*.
Apis, (Ap-) is, *Apis, Egyptian deity*.
Appell-äre (av-, at-), *to call, name*.
Aprilis, is (sc. mensis), m., 23, *a, April*. [proach.
Appropinqu-äre (av-, at-), *to approach*.
Apud, prep. with accus., *among, apud te, with you* (at your house); *apud Ciceronem, in Cicero* (i. e., his writings).

Aqu-a, æ, *water*.

Aquil-a, æ, *eagle*.

Aquit-an-us, i, *Aquitanian* (people of Gaul).

Arâr, (Arâr) is, *the Saone* (river of Gaul).

Ar-âre (av-, at-), *to plough*.

Arbitr-âri (at-), dep., *to judge, think*.

Arbor, (arbôr) is, *f., tree*.

Arcess-ère (arcessiv-, arcessit-), *to send for*.

Arethus-a, æ, *Arethusa*.

Argent-um, i, *silver*.

Arid-um, i, *the sand* (neuter of aridus, a, um, *dry*).

Ariovist-us, i, *Ariovistus*, a German chieftain.

Aristides, (Aristid-) is, *Aristides*.

Arma, orum, *arms*.

Arm-âre (av-, at-), *to arm*.

Arrip-ère (arripu-, arrept-, ad+rap-ere), *to snatch up, to seize*.

Arroganti-a, æ, *haughtiness, obstinacy, arrogance*.

Ars, (art) is, 293, *art*.

Asper, a, um, *rough*.

At, conj., *but*.

Athenæ, arum, *Athens*.

Atheniensis, is, *an Athenian*.

Atque, conj., *and*.

Atrox, (atrôc) is, 107, *fierce*.

Attent-e, adv., *attentively*.

Attent-us, a, um, *attentive*.

Attic-a, æ, *Attica*.

Atting-ère (attig-, attact-), *to touch on, border upon*.

Auctoritas, (auctoritat) is, 293, *authority, influence*.

Audacius, comp. of audacter, 376, *more boldly*.

Audacter, adv., *boldly*.

Aud-ère (ausus sum), *to dare*.

Aud-ire (audiv-, audit-), *to hear*.

Aug-ère (aux-, auct-), *to increase*.

August-us, i, *Augustus*.

Aur-um, i, *gold*.

Aut, conj., *or*.

Autem, conj., 315, *but, moreover, also*.

Auxili-um, i, *assistance*; auxilia, pl., *auxiliary troops*.

Avar-us, i, *avaricious*.

Avert-ère (avert-, avers-), *to turn away*.

Avien-us, i, *Avienus*.

Avis, (av) is, 300, *bird*.

B.

Barbar-us, a, um, *barbarian, foreign*; used as a noun, a *barbarian*.

Beat-us, a, um, *happy*.

Beat-è, 215, 1, *happily*.

Belg-a, æ, *a Belgian*, people of Gaul.

Bell-âre (av-, at-), *to wage war*.

Bellicos-us, a, um, *warlike*.

Bell-um, i, *war*.

Benè, adv., *well*, 215, 1, *R.*

Benefici-um, i, *good deed, act of kindness*.

Benign-us, a, um, *kind*, with dat.

Besti-a, æ, *beast, brute*.

Bib-ère (bib-, bibit-), *to drink*.

Bienni-um, i, *space of two years*.

Bini, æ, a, dist., 189, *two apiece, two at a time*.

Bis, 189, *twice*.

Bonitas, (bonitat) is, 293, *goodness*.

Bon-us, a, um, *good*; bona, neut. pl., *blessings, advantages*.

Bos, bovis, 351, 2, *ox or cow*.

Brevis, is, e, 104, *short*.

Britanni-a, æ, *Britain*.

Britann-us, i, *a Briton*.

Brut-us, i, *Brutus*.

C.

Cad-ère (cecîd-, cas-, 411, b), *to fall*.

Cadm-us, i, *Cadmus*.

Caduc-us, a, um, *frail*.

Cæd-ère (cecîd-, cæs-, 411, b), *to fell, kill, cut down*.

Cæsar, (Cæsâr) is, *Cæsar*.

- Caius, i, *Caius*.
 Calamitas, (calamitat) is, *calamity*.
 Calcar, (calcar) is, 325, *spur*.
 Camp-us, i, *field, plain*.
 Can-is, (can) is, *c, dog*.
 Cant-äre (av-, at-), *to sing*.
 Cant-us, ūs, *singing*.
 Cap-äre (cēp-, capt-), *to take*.
 Captiv-us, i, *captive, prisoner*.
 Car-äre (caru-, 398), *to want, with abl.*
 Carmen, (carmin) is, 344, *a, song*.
 Caro, (carn) is, 340, R., *flesh*.
 Carthaginensis, is, *a Carthaginian*.
 Carthago, (Carthagin) is, *Carthage*.
 Carr-us, i, *wagon*.
 Car-us, a, um, *dear*.
 Cassi-us, i, *Cassius*.
 Castell-um, i, *fortress, tower*.
 Castic-us, i, *Casticus*.
 Castra, orum, *camp*.
 Cas-us, ūs, *accident, chance*.
 Catamentales, edis, *Catamentales*, proper name.
 Catilin-a, æ, *Catiline*, proper name.
 Cato, (Catōn) is, *Cato*.
 Caus-a, æ, *cause, reason*; abl., causā, *for the sake of*, 135, II., b; salutis causā, *for the sake of safety*.
 Caut-us, a, um, *cautious*.
 Celebr-äre (av-, at-), *to celebrate*.
 Celer, (celer) is, 107, *swift*.
 Celeriter, adv., 215, 2, b, *swiftly*.
 Celta, æ, *a Celt*, people of Gaul.
 Centum, indecl., *a hundred*.
 Cens-äre (censu-, cens-), *to think, judge, believe*.
 Centurio, (centurion) is, *centurion*.
 Cern-äre (crev-, cret-), *to separate, decide, judge*.
 Cert-us, a, um, *certain*; certiore facere, *to make more certain*, i. e., *to inform*.
 Cerv-us, i, *stag*.
 Ceteri, orum, *the rest*.
 Christ-us, i, *Christ*.
 Cicero, (Cicerōn) is, *Cicero*.
 Cing-äre (cinx-, cinct-), *to gird, surround*.
 Circa, prep. with acc., *about, around*.
 Circiter, prep. with acc., *about, near*; circiter viginti, *about twenty*.
 Circum, prep. with accus., *about, around*.
 Circumst-äre (or circumstāre), circumstēt-, 391, 1, *to surround, to stand about*.
 Citō, adv., *quickly*.
 Cit-us, a, um, *quick, swift*.
 Civis, (civ) is, *c, citizen*.
 Civitas, (civitat) is, 293, *state*.
 Clamor, (clamōr) is, 319 *noise, clamour*.
 Clar-us, a, um, *illustrious*.
 Classis, (class-) is, 300, *fleet*.
 Claud-äre (claus-, claus-), *to shut*.
 Cliens, (client) is, m., *a dependant*.
 Cœl-um, i, *firmament, heaven*.
 Coem-äre (coēm-, coempt-), *to buy up* (con-+emere).
 Coen-äre (av-, at-), *to sup*.
 Cœpi, used only in perf. tenses. I begin, 611.
 Cog-äre (coēg-, coact-), *to bring together, collect, compel*.
 Cogit-äre (av-, at-), *to think*.
 Cognosc-äre (cognov-, cognit-), *to learn, find out, know*.
 Cohors, (cohort) is, 293 *cohort*, the tenth part of a legion.
 Cohort-ari (at-, dep-), *to encourage*.
 Col-äre (colu-, cult-), *to cultivate, serve, honour*.
 Collig-äre (collēg-, collect-, con-+legere), *to collect*.
 Collis, (coll) is, m., 302, R., *hill*.
 Colloc-äre (av-, at-), *to place*.
 Colloqui-um, i, *conference*.
 Color, (colōr) is, 319, *colour*.
 Columb-a, æ, *dove*. [burn up
 Combur-äre (combuss-, combust-) *to*

- Comes, (comit) is, *c, companion*.
 Commē-āre (av-, at-), *to go to, to go and return*.
 Commemor-āre (av-, at-), *to mention, to call to mind*.
 Committ-ēre (commis-, commiss-), *to intrust to, with dative; praelium committere, to join battle*.
 Commov-ēre (commōv-, commōt-), *to move greatly, to excite*.
 Commun-ire (iv-, it-), *to fortify*.
 Communis, is, e, 104, *common*.
 Commut-āre (av-, at-), *to change*.
 Commutatio, (commutatio) is, *change*.
 Compar-āre (av-, at-), *to get together, procure*.
 Compell-ēre (compul-, compuls-, con+pellere), *to compel, drive on*.
 Comper-ire (comper-, compert-, 427, V.), *to find out, discover*.
 Complect-i (complex-), dep., *to embrace*.
 Compl-ēre (complēv-, complēt-, 395, II.), *to fill up*.
 Complures, ium, 327, *very many*.
 Con-ari (at-), *to attempt, try*.
 Conat-um, i, *attempt*.
 Conced-ēre (concess-, concess-), *to yield to, to grant, give way*.
 Concess-us, ūs, *grant*.
 Concili-āre (av-, at-), *to gain (for another)*.
 Concili-um, i, *assembly, council*.
 Concit-āre (av-, at-), *to stir up, to excite*.
 Concupisc-ere (concupiv-), *to desire*.
 Concurr-ēre (concurr-, concurs-), *to run together*.
 Condemn-āre (av-, at-), *to condemn*, 348.
 Conditio, (conditio) is, 333, R., *condition*.
 Conditor, (conditōr) is, *builder, founder*. [lead or bring together].
 Conduc-ēre (condux-, conduct-), *to*
- Conferre (contul-, collat-), *to bring together, contribute*.
 Confic-ēre (confec-, confect-), *to finish*.
 Confid-ēre (confisus sum), *to trust to, to confide in*.
 Confirm-āre (av-, at-), *to confirm, establish, affirm, fix*.
 Conflu-ēre (conflux-, conflux-), *to flow together*.
 Congreg-āre (av-, at-), *to gather into flocks*.
 Congress-us, ūs, *meeting*.
 Conjic-ere (conjec-, conject-, con+jacere, 416), *to hurl*.
 Conjung-ere (conjunx-, conjunct-), *to join together, unite*.
 Conjur-āre (av-, at-), *to conspire, plot*.
 Conjuratio, (conjuratio) is, 333, R., *conspiracy*.
 Conjux, (conjug) is, *c, husband or wife*.
 Conscend-ēre (conscend-, conscens-, con+scandere, 309), *to climb up*.
 Conscisc-ēre (consciv-, conscit-), *to decree, determine; mortem sibi consciscere, to commit suicide*, 555.
 Consci-us, a, um, *conscious, privy to*.
 Conscrib-ēre (conscrips-, conscript-), *to enrol, levy*.
 Consent-ire (consens-, consens-), *to agree*.
 Consid-ēre (consed-, consess-), *to sit down, to encamp*.
 Consili-um, i, *plan, judgment, counsel, deliberation*.
 Consist-ēre (constit-, coconstit-), *to stand, halt*.
 Conspect-us, ūs, *sight, beholding*.
 Conspic-ēre (conspex-, conspect-), *to see, get sight of*.
 Const-āre (stit-, stit-or stat-), *to stand together, to halt*.
 Constitu-ēre (constitu-, constitut-

- con-+statuere), *to place, fix, appoint.*
- Consuesc-ère (consuev-, consuet-), *to be accustomed.*
- Consuetudo, (consuetudin) is, 339, *custom, usage.*
- Consul, (consül) is, *consul, chief magistrate of Rome.*
- Consul-ère (consulu-, consult-), *to consult.*
- Consult-um, i, *decree.*
- Consum-ère (consumps-, consumpt-, con-+sumere), *to consume.*
- Contemn-ère (contemps-, contempt-), *to despise.*
- Contempl-ari (at-), dep., *to contemplate.*
- Contend-ère (contend-, content-), *to contend, strive after, hasten.*
- Content-us, a, um, *content, with abl.*
- Contin-ère (continu-, content-, con-+tenere), *to contain, restrain, hold together.*
- Continens, (continent) is, 107, *successive, continued.*
- Continenter, 215, 2, b, *continually.*
- Contingit, impers., 580, *it happens.*
- Continuatio, (continuatiön) is, 333, R., *continuance.*
- Contra, prep. with accus., *against; adv., in opposition to.*
- Contrah-ère (contrax-, contract-, con-+trahere), *to draw together, collect.*
- Convén-ire (convén-, convent-, con-+venire), *to come together, meet, agree.*
- Convent-us, ñs, *meeting, assembly.*
- Convert-ère (convert-, convers-), *to turn completely round.*
- Convoc-are (av-, at-, con-+vocare), *to call together.*
- Door-iri (coort-), dep., *to rise, as a storm.*
- Copi-a, æ, *abundance; pl., copiæ, arum, troops, forces.*
- Cor, (cord) is, E., *heart.*
- Corinth-us, i, f., *Corinth.*
- Corniger, a, um, *horned.*
- Corn-u, 111, *horn, wing of an army.*
- Coron-a, æ, *crown.*
- Corpus, (corpör) is, 344, b, *body.*
- Corrig-ère (correx-, correct-, con-+regere), *to correct, make straight.*
- Corv-us, i, *crow.*
- Cras, adv., *to-morrow.*
- Crass-us, i, *Crassus.*
- Cre-ère (av-, at-), *to create.*
- Creber, bra, brum, *frequent.*
- Cred-ère (credid-, credit-), *to believe, intrust, with dat.*
- Crep-ère (crepu-, crepit-, 387, II.), *to chide, creak (as a door).*
- Creso-ère (crêv-, crêt-), *to grow.*
- Crimen, (crimin) is, 344, a, *crime.*
- Crus, (crur) is, n., *leg.*
- Cubicul-um, i, *bed-chamber.*
- Cubile, (cubil) is, 314, *bed, place to lie down.*
- Calmen, (culmin) is, 344, a, *top, summit.*
- Culp-a, æ, *fault.*
- Cultus, ñs (from colere), *cultivation, civilization, refinement.*
- Cum, prep. with abl., *with; cum, conj., same as quum, when.*
- Cunct-ari (at-), dep., *to delay.*
- Cunct-us, a, um, *all, the whole.*
- Cup-ère (io, 199, cupiv-, cupit-), *to desire.*
- Cupidæ, adv., *with desire, 215, 1 (cupidus).*
- Cupiditas, (cupiditat) is, 293, *desire.*
- Cupid-us, a, um (with gen.), *desirous, eager.*
- Cûr, adv., *why.*
- Cur-a, æ, *care.*
- Cur-ère (av-, at-), *to take care, to see that.*
- Curi-a, æ, *senate-house.*
- Curr-ère (cucurr-, curs-, 411, a), *to run.*

Curs-us ūs, *course, running.*

Custos. (custod) is, 25, *a, guard, guardian.*

Cyrus, i, *Cyrus.*

D.

Danubi-us, i, *Danube (river).*

D-āre (ded-, dat-), *to give.*

Dari-us, i, *Darius, Persian king.*

De, prep. with abl. *of, from, concerning.* De tertia vigilia, *in (about, or after) the third watch.*

Deb-ēre (debu-, debit-), *to owe—ought.*

Deced-ēre (decess-, decess-, de+cedere), *to go away, depart, retire.*

Decem, indecl., *ten.*

Decern-ēre (decrēv-, decrēt-, 407), *decree, determine.*

Decert-āre (av-, at-), *to contend, fight.*

Decet, impers., 583, *deciit, it is becoming.*

Decim-us, a, um, *tenth.*

Ded-ēre (dedīd-, dedīt-), *to surrender.*

Deditio, (deditiō) is, 333, R., *surrender.*

Deduc-ēre (dedux-, deduct-), *to lead away.*

De-esse (defu-, de+esse), *to be wanting (with dat-), to be away.*

Defend-ēre (defend-, defens-), *to defend.*

Defess-us, a, um (part. of defetisci, obsol.), *wearied, worn out.*

Defic-ēre (defēc-, defēct-, de+facere), *to fail, to be wanting, with dat.*

Delect-āre (av-, at-), *to delight.*

Del-ēre (delēv-, delēt-), *to destroy.*

Deliber-āre (av-, at-), *to deliberate.*

Delig-ēre (delāg-, delect-, de+legere), *to choose.*

Demetri-us, i, *Demetrius (proper name).*

Demum, adv., *finally, at last.*

Denique, adv., *at last, in short.*

Dens, (dent) is, m., 295, R. 1 *tooth.*

Dens-us, a, um, *thick, dense.*

Depon-ēre (deposu-, deposit-, de+ponere), *to lay aside, put down.*

Deser-ēre (deseru-, desert-), *to leave, desert.*

Desert-um, i, *a desert.*

Desil-ire (desilu-, desult-, de+salire 428), *to leap down.*

Design-āre (av-, at-), *to point out, allude to.*

Desper-āre (av-, at-, de+sperare), *to despair.*

Desperatio, (desperatiō) is, *despair*

Deterr-ēre (deterra-, deterit-), *to deter, frighten from.*

Deus, i, *God*, 62, R.

Dic-ēre (dix-, dict-), *to say, tell.*

Dictio, (dictiō) is, 333, R., *speaking, pleading.*

Dies, ei, *day.*

Differre (distul-, dilat-, dis+ferre), *to differ, to put off.*

Difficilis, is, e (dis+facilis), *difficult.*

Dignitas, (dignitat) is, 293, *dignity, rank.*

Dign-us, a, um, *worthy, with abl.*

Diligens, (diligent) is, *careful, diligent.*

Diligenter, 215, 2, b, *carefully, diligently.*

Dilig-ēre (dilex-, dilect-, di+legere), *to love (with esteem).*

Dimitt-ēre (dimis-, dimiss-, di+mittere), *to send away, dismiss.*

Dirip-ēre (diripu-, dirept-, di+rapere), *to plunder.*

Disced-ēre (discess-, discess-, dis+cedere, 401, 3, b), *to go away, depart.*

Disc-ēre (didic-, 411, a), *to learn.*

Discess-us, ūs, *departure.*

Disciplin-a, æ, *instruction, discipline*

Discipul-us, i, *scholar, pupil.*

Disert-us, a, um, *fluent, eloquent*.
 Displic-ère (displīcu-, displicīt-, dis+placere), *to displease*, with dat.
 Dispon-ère (disposu-, disposit-, dis+ponere), *to place in different directions, arrange, dispose*.
 Disput-ère (av-, at-), *to dispute, discuss*.
 Dissent-īre (dissens-, dissens-, dis+sentire, 427, III.), *to differ in opinion, dissent*.
 Disser-ère (disseru-, dissert-, 407), *to treat of, discuss*.
 Dissolv-ère (dissolv-, dissolut-, dis+solvere), *to dissolve*.
 Dist-ère, *to be distant, or apart* (di+stare).
 Distribu-ere (distribu-, distribūt-), *to divide or distribute among*, 422.
 Ditissimus, superl. of dives.
 Diu, adv., *long*; compar., diutius, *longer*.
 Divers-us, a, um, *different*.
 Dives, (divit) is, 371, R. 1, *rich*.
 Divico, (Divicōn) is, *Divico*, proper name.
 Divid-ère (divis-, divis-), *to divide*.
 Divin-us, a, um, *divine*.
 Divitiac-us, i, *Divitiacus*, proper name.
 Divitiæ, arum, 57, R., *riches, wealth*.
 Doc-ère (docu-, doct-), *to teach*.
 Docilis, is, e, 104, *docile, teachable*.
 Dol-ère (dolu-, dolīt-), *to grieve*.
 Dolor, (doler) is, 319, *grief, pain*.
 Dol-us, i, *fraud, deceit*.
 Dom-ère (domu-, domit-, 387, II.), *to subdue*.
 Domicili-um, i, *dwelling*.
 Domin-us, i, *master*, of house or slaves.
 Dom-us, i and us, 112, 3, *house, home*; domi, *at home*; domum, *to one's house*.
 Dorm-īre (dormiv-, dormīt-), *to sleep*.
 Draco, (dracōn) is, 331, *dragon*.

Druides, um, *Druids*, priests of ancient Britain.
 Dubit-ère (av-, at-), *to doubt, hesitate*.
 Dubitatio, (dubitatiō) is, 333, R., *doubt*.
 Dubi-us, a, um, *doubtful*.
 Duc-ère (dux-, duct-), *to lead*.
 Dulcis, is, e, 104, *sweet*.
 Dum, conj., *while, so long as, until*.
 Dumnorix, (Dumnorig) is, *Dumnorix*, proper name.
 Duo, two, 194.
 Duodecim, indecl., *twelve*.
 Duplic-ère (av-, at-), *to double*.
 Dur-ère (-av-, at-), intrans., *to endure last*; trans., *to harden*.
 Dur-us, a, um, *hard*.
 Dux, (duc) is, *leader, guide, commander*.

E.

E or ex, prep. with abl., *out of from*.
 Ecquis, interrog. pron., 178, 7, *any one?*
 Ed-ère, or esse (ed-, es-, 601), *to eat*.
 Educ-ère (av-, at-), *to train, educate*.
 Educ-ère (educ-, educt-), *to lead out*.
 Effect-us, ūs, *effect*.
 Effemin-ère (av-, at-, ex+femina), *to effeminate, make womanish*.
 Ego, I, 120.
 Egregi-us, a, um, *excellent, remarkable*.
 Elegans, (elegant) is, 107, *elegant*.
 Eloquent, (eloquent) is, 107, *eloquent*.
 Em-ère (ēm-, empt-), *to buy*.
 Emic-ère (emicu-), 387, II., *to shine or flash forth*.
 Enim, conj., *for*, 442, e.
 Enunti-ère (av-, at-), *to divulge*.
 Eo, adv., *there, to that place, on that account, by so much*.
 Eodem, adv., *to the same place*.

Epistol-a, æ, *letter*.
Eques, (equit) is, *horse soldier*.
Equester, tris, tre, 428, a, *belonging to cavalry*. **Equestri prælio**, in a battle of cavalry.
Equit-ars (av-, at-), *to ride on horse-back*.
Equitat-us, ñs, *cavalry*.
Equ-us, i, *horse*.
Erip-ere (eripu-, erept, e+rapere), *to take away from, snatch away*.
Err-are (av-, at-), *to err, wander*.
Erump-ere (erûp-, erupt-), *to burst forth, sally out*.
Esse, *to be*, 650; **esse**, *to eat*, see *edere*.
Et, conj., *and*. **Et—et**, both—and.
Etenim, conj., *for*.
Etiam, conj., *also, even*.
Etsi conj., *although*.
Europ-a, æ, *Europe*.
Evoc-are (av-, at-, e+vocare), *to call out*.
Ex, prep. with abl. See **E**.
Exced-ere (excess-, excess-, ex+cedere), *to go away, depart out of*.
Exclam-are (av-, at-), *to cry out*.
Excip-ere (excép-, except-, ex+capere), *to receive*.
Excit-are (av-, at-), *to raise, kindle, excite*.
Excusatio, (excusatio) is, 333, R., *excuse*.
Exe-dere (exêd-, exes-, ex+edere), *to eat up, consume, corrode*.
Exempl-um, i, *example*.
Exerc-ere (exerou-, exercit-), *to exercise, practice*.
Exercit-us, ñs, *army*.
Exigu-us, a, um, *small*.
Ex-ire (exiv- and exi-, exît-), *to go out, depart*.
Existim-are (av-, at-), *to think, judge*.
Existimatio, (existimatio) is, 335 R., *opinion*. •
Expect-are (av-, at-), *to wait for*.

Expedi, impers., 583, *it is expedient*.
Expeditio, (expeditio) is, 333, R., *military expedition*.
Expell-ere (expul-, expuls-, ex+pellere), *to expel, drive out*.
Expers, (expert) is, 107, *devoid of* with gen. or abl., 336.
Expet-ere (expetiv-, expetît-), *to covet, desire earnestly*.
Explorator, (explorator) is, 319, *scout*.
Expon-ere (exposu-, exposit-, ex+ponere), *to place out, set forth, explain*.
Expugn-are (av-, at-, ex+pugnare), *to take by storm*.
Extra, prep. with accus., *outside of, without*.
Extrem-us, a, um, superl. of *exterus*, 370, *the last, outermost*.
Exur-ere (exuss-, exust-, ex+urere), *to burn up*.

F.

Faber, bri, *artificer, workman*.
Fabul-a, æ, *fable, story*.
Fac-ere (io, fêc-, fact-), *to make, do*.
Facilê, adv., *easily*.
Facilis, is, e, 104, *easy*.
Facultas, (facultât) is, 293, *power of doing; hence means, resources*.
Facund-us, a, um, *eloquent*.
Fall-ere (fefell-, fals-), *to deceive*.
Fam-a, æ, *rumour, fame*.
Fames, (fam) is, 300, *hunger*.
Famili-a, æ, *family, gang of slaves*.
Familiaris, e, *belonging to the familia*. *Res familiaris*, *property*.
Fat-eri (fass-), dep., *to confess*.
Fat-um, i, *fate*.
Fav-ere (fâv-, faut-, 395, v.), *to favour*.
Felix, (felic) is, 104, *happy*.
Femin-a, æ, *woman*.
Fer-a, æ, *wild beast*.
Fere, adv., *almost*.
Ferre (tul-, lat-, 596), *to bear*.

Ferocus, a, um, *surlly*.
Ferox, (feroc) is, 107, *fierce*.
Ferr-um, i, *iron*.
Festin-are (av-, at-), *to hasten*.
Fid-es, ei, *faith*.
Fieri (fact-), 600, used as pass. of facere; *to be made, to become*.
Figur-a, æ, *figure*.
Fili-a, æ, *daughter*, dat. and abl. pl. filiiabus.
Fili-us, i, *son*, 62, R., 2.
Fin-is, (fin) is, m., *end, boundary*; fines, *boundaries, territories*.
Finitim-us, a, um, *neighbouring*.
Firm-us, a, um, *strong, firm*.
Fit, it happens, pres. indic. of fio, fieri.
Flagiti-um, i, *disgraceful crime, infamy*.
Flamm-a, æ, *flame*.
Fl-ère (flæv-, flët-, 395, II.), *to weep*.
Flet-us, ùs, *weeping*.
Flos, (flôr) is, 331, b, *flower*.
Fluct-us, ùs, *wave*.
Flumen, (flumin) is, 344, a, *river*.
Fluvi-us, i, *river*.
Fœdus, (fœdër) is, 344, b, *treaty, league*.
Foli-um, i, *leaf*.
Fons, (font) is, m., 293, R., *fountain*.
Foris, (for) is, 300, *door*; used mostly in plur., fores.
Form-a, æ, *form*.
Formid-are (av-, at-), *to fear, be afraid of*.
Formos-us, a, um, *handsome*.
Forsitan, adv., *perhaps*.
Forte, adv., *by chance*.
Fort-is, is, e, 107, *brave*.
Fortiter, 215, 2, b, *bravely*.
Fortitudo, (fortitudin) is, 339, *fortitude, courage*.
Fortun-a, æ, *fortune*.
Fortenat-us, a, um, *fortunate*.
For-um, i, *forum*.
Foss-a, æ, *ditch*.

Fraen-um, i, *bridle*, 396; pl., fraeni and fraena.
Frater, (fratr) is, *brother*.
Fratern-us, a, um, *fraternal*.
Fraus, (fraud) is, 293, *fraud*.
Frigus, (frigör) is, 344, b, *cold*.
Fruct-us, ùs, *fruit*.
Frument-ari (frumentat-), dep., *to collect corn*.
Frument-um, i, *corn*.
Frustra, adv., *in vain*.
Fug-a, æ, *flight*.
Fug-are (av-, at-), *to rout, put to flight*.
Fug-ax, (fugac) is, 107, *fugitive, fleeting*.
Fug-ère (io, fäg-, fugit), *to flee*.
Fulgur, (fulgär) is, 325, *lightning*.
Fund-ere (fäd-, fäs-), *to pour out, to overthrow, discomfit*.
Funditor, (funditör) is, 319, *slinger*.
Futur-us, a, um, *future*.

G.

Galb-a, æ, *Galba*.
Galli-a, æ, *Gaul*.
Gallin-a, æ, *hen*.
Gall-us, i, a *Gaul*.
Garumn-a, æ, *Garonne (river)*.
Gaud-ère (gavisus, sum), *to rejoice*.
Gaudi-um, i, *joy*.
Gener, i, *son-in-law*.
Genev-a, æ, *Geneva*.
Gens, (gent) is, 293, *nation*.
Genus, (gener) is, 344, b, *race, class*.
Ger-ère (gess-, gest-), *to carry on*; gerere bellum, *to carry on war*.
German-us, i, a *German*.
Gladi-us, i, *sword*.
Glori-a, æ, *glory*.
Græc-us, a, um, *Greek*.
Grando, (grandin) is, 339, *hail*.
Grati-a, æ, *influence, favour, popularity*.
Gratul-ari (gratulat-), dep., *to congratulate*.

Grat-us, a, um, *agreeable*.

Gravis, is, e, *heavy, severe*.

Graviter, adv., *heavily, disagreeable*; graviter fert, *he is indignant at*.

Gregatim, adv., *in flocks*.

Gubern-are (av-, at-), *to steer, direct, govern*.

Gubernator, (gubernatōr) is, 319, *pilot, governor*.

H.

Hab-ēre (habu-, habit-), *to have, hold, esteem*.

Hannibal, (Hannibal) is, *Hannibal*.

Haud, adv., *not*.

Helveti-us, i, a *Helvetian*.

Herb-a, æ, *herb*.

Hercyni-us, a, um, *Hercynian*; Hercynia sylva, *the Hercynian forest*.

Heri, adv., *yesterday*.

Hibern-a, orum, *winter-quarters*.

Hiberni-a, æ, *Ireland*.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*, 156.

Hiem-are (av-, at-), *to winter*.

Hiems, (hiem) is, 293, *winter*.

Hirundo, (hirundin) is, 339, *swallow*.

Hispani-a, æ, *Spain*.

Hispan-us, i, a *Spaniard*.

Histori-a, æ, *history*.

Hodie, adv., *to-day*.

Homer-us, i, *Homer*.

Homo, (homin) is, m., *man*.

Honest-e, adv., *honourably*.

Honest-us, a, um, *honourable*.

Honor, (honōr) is, 319, *honour*.

Hor-a, æ, *hour*.

Horati-us, i, *Horace*.

Hort-ari (hortat-), *to exhort*, dep.

Hort-us, i, *garden*.

Hospes, (hospit) is, c, *guest, host*.

Hostis, (host) is, c, *enemy*.

Human-us, a, um, *human*.

Humanitas, (humanitāt) is, 293, *cultivation, refinement, humanity*.

Humilis, is, e, 107, *low*.

I.

Ibi, adv., *there*.

Idem, eadem, idem, *the same*, 150.

Idone-us, a, um, *fit, suitable*.

Idus, iduum (4th declen.), *the Ides* 112, 2.

Ignavi-a, æ, *indolence, cowardice*.

Ignav-us, a, um, *indolent, cowardly*.

Ignis, (ign) is, m., 302, R., *fire*.

Ignomini-a, æ, *disgrace, ignominy*.

Ignor-are (av-, at-), *to be ignorant*.

Ignoratio, (ignoratiō) is, 333, R., *ignorance*.

Ille, illa, illud, *this, that*, 158.

Imago, (imagin) is, 339, *image*.

Imber, (imbr) is, 320, *shower of rain*.

Immemor, (immemor) is, 107, *unmindful*, with gen.

Immens-us, a, um, *immense*.

Immortalis, is, e, 104, *immortal*.

Impediment-um, i, *hinderance*; impedimenta, pl., *the baggage of an army*.

Imped-ire (iv-, it-), *to hinder, impede*.

Impend-ēre, *to hang over*.

Imper-are (av-, at-), *to command*, with dat.

Imperator, (imperatōr) is, 319, *commander, general*.

Imperi-um, i, *command*.

Impetr-are (av-, at-), *to accomplish, effect, obtain*.

Impet-us, ūs, *onset, attack*; impetum facere, *to make an attack*.

Impiē, adv., 215, 1, *impiously*.

Impi-us, a, um, *impious*.

Impl-ēre (implēv-, implēt-), *to fill up*.

Implor-are (av-, at-), *to implore*.

Impon-ēre (imposu-, imposit-, in + ponere, 407), *to place in or upon*.

Import-are (av-, at-), *to bring in, import*.

Improb-us, a, um, *wicked, dishonest*.

In, prep. with acc., *into, against* with abl., *in, among*.

- Incend-ère (incend-, incens-), *to set fire to, to burn*
- Incert-us, a, um, *doubtful, uncertain.*
- Incip-ère (to, incip-, incept-), *to begin.*
- Incol-a, æ, *inhabitant.*
- Incol-ère (incolu-, incult-), *to dwell in, inhabit.*
- Incommod-um, i, *inconvenience.*
- Incredibilis, is, e, 104, *incredible*
- Increp-ère (increpu-, increpit-, 390), *to chide.*
- Incus-ère (av-, at-), *to blame.*
- Inde, adv., *thence.*
- Indici-um, i, *private information.*
- Indign-us, a, um, *unworthy.*
- Induc-ère (indux-, induct-), *to lead to, induce.*
- Indulg-ère (induls-, indult-), with dat., *to indulge.*
- Ineptis, arum, 57, R., *folly.*
- Inerti-a, æ, *idleness.*
- Infans, (infant) is, c, *infant; (infari, that cannot speak).*
- Inferior, (inferiôr) is, comp. of inferus, 370, *inferior, lower.*
- Inferre (intul-, illat-, in+ferre), *to bring upon; bellum alicui inferre, to wage war upon any one.*
- Ingeni-um, i, *talent.*
- Ingens, (ingent) is, 107, *great, enormous.*
- Inimiciti-a, æ, *enmity.*
- Inimic-us, a, um, *hostile, unfriendly,* with dat.
- Initi-um, i, *beginning.*
- Injuri-a, æ, *injury, outrage.*
- Injust-us, a, um, *unjust.*
- Innocens, (innocent) is, 107, *innocent.*
- Innocenti-a, æ, *innocence.*
- Innumerabilis, is, e, 104, *innumerable.*
- Inops, (inop) is, 107, *poor.*
- Inquam. *I say; inquit, says he, 610.*
- Insciens, (inscient) is, 107, *not knowing.*
- Insect-um, i, *insect.*
- Insequ-i (insecût-), dep., *to pursue.*
- Insi-di-a, arum, 57, R., *snares, ambush.*
- Instig-ère (av-, at-), *to instigate.*
- Institut-um, i, *purpose, plan, usage.*
- Instru-ère (instrux-, instruct-, in+struere), *to draw up in battle array.*
- Insul-a, æ, *island.*
- Intellig-ère (intellex-, intellect-), *to perceive, understand.*
- Intent-us, a, um, *intent, bent upon.*
- Inter, prep. with accus., *between among.*
- Interced-ère (intercess-, intercess-), *to intervene.*
- Interdiu, adv., *by day.*
- Interdum, adv., *sometimes.*
- Inter-esse (interfu-), *to be among, to differ; nihil interest, it makes no difference.*
- Interfector, (interfectôr) is, 319 *slayer.*
- Interfic-ère (interfēc-, interfec-, in+ter+facere), *to slay, kill.*
- Interim, adv., *in the mean while.*
- Interitus, us, *perishing, destruction, death.*
- Interregn-um, i, *interreign.*
- Interrog-ère (av-, at-), *to ask, interrogate.*
- Intu-eri (intuit-), dep., *to look upon.*
- Inven-ire (invên-, invent-), *to find, discover.*
- Invoc-ère (av-, at-), *to call upon, invoke.*
- Ipse, a, um, 159, *self.*
- Ir-a, æ, *anger.*
- Iracundi-a, æ, *wrathfulness, wrath.*
- Ire (iv-, it-), 605, *to go.*
- Irrump-ère (irräp-, irrupt-, in+rum+pere), *to break into.*
- Is, ea, id, *this, that, he, she, it, 153.*

Iste, a, ud, *that*, 157.

Ita, adv., *so, thus*.

Itali-a, æ, *Italy*.

Iter, (itiner) is, n., *journey, way, march*.

J.

Jac-ère (jēc-, jact-), *to cast, hurl*.

Jact-äre (av-, at-), *to discuss*.

Jacul-um, i, *dart*.

Jam, adv., *now, already*.

Jan-us, i, *Janus*.

Jub-ère (juss-, juss-), *to order*.

Jucund-us, a, um, *pleasant*.

Judex, (judic) is, 306, *judge*.

Judic-äre (av-, at-), *to judge*.

Judici-um, i, *trial, judgment*.

Jugurth-a, æ, *Jugurtha*.

Jug-um, i, *yoke*.

Jument-um, i, *beast of burden*.

Jung-ère (junx-, junct-), *to join*.

Juno, (Junōn) is, f., *Juno (goddess)*.

Jupiter, Jovis, 351, *Jupiter*.

Jur-a, æ, *Jura (mountain east of Gaul)*.

Jur-äre (av-, at-), *to swear*.

Jus, (jūr) is, 344, *law, right*.

Juss-us, ūs, *command*.

Justiti-a, æ, *justice*.

Just-us, a, um, *just*.

Juv-äre (jāv-, jūt-), *to help*.

Juvenis, is, *a youth*.

Juventus, (juventūt) is, 293, *youth*.

Juxta, prep. with acc., *near*.

K.

Kalend-æ, arum, *Kalends*.

L.

Labienus, i, *Labienus*, one of Cæsar's lieutenant-generals.

Labor, (labōr) is, 319, *labour, toil*.

Labor-äre (av-, at-), *to labour*.

Lac, (lact) is, 346, 2, *milk*.

Lacess-ère (iv-, it-, 406, III., b), *to provoke, harass*.

Lacrym-a, æ, *tear*

Lac-us, ūs, *lake*.

Lapis, (lapid) is, 295, 3, *stone*.

Larg-iri (it-), dep., *to give largess, to bribe*, 515.

Larg-iter, adv., 215, 2, b, *largely*; largiter potest, *he can largely*, i. e., *he is quite powerful*.

Lat-è, adv., 215, 1, *widely* (lat-us, wide).

Latin-us, a, um, *Latin*.

Latitudo, (latitudin) is, 340, *breadth* (from latus, broad).

Latius, adv., *more widely* (compar of latè, 376).

Latro, (latron) is, 331, a, *robber*.

Lat-us, a, um, *broad, wide*.

Laud-äre (av-, at-), *to praise*.

Laus, (laud) is, 293, *praise*.

Legatio, (legation) is, 333, R., *embassy*.

Legat-us, i, *lieutenant, ambassador*.

Lēg-ère (lēg-, lect-, 416, a), *to read*.

Legio, (legion) is, 333, R., *legion*.

Lemann-us, i, *Lake Leman, or Geneva*.

Leo, (leon) is, 333, *lion*.

Lepus, (lepōr) is, m., 345, 4, *hare*.

Lev-äre (av-, at-), *to lighten, alleviate*.

Lex, (leg-) is, 293, *law*.

Libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly*.

Liber, libri, 64, *book*.

Liberalitas, (liberalitat) is, 293, *liberality*.

Liber-è, 215, 1, *freely* (from liber free).

Liber-i, orum, 65, R., *children*.

Liber-tas, (libertat) is, 293, *freedom liberty*.

Libet, 583, libebat, libuit, or libitum est, impers., *it is agreeable, it pleases, it suits*.

Lic-eri (licit), dep., *to bid money, to offer a price*.

Licet, licuit, licitum est, *it is allowed, it is lawful, one must*, 583.

Lili-um, i, *lily*.
 Lingua, æ, *language*.
 Litter-a, æ, *a letter* (as of the alphabet); littur-æ, arum (pl.), *a letter*, i. e., *an epistle*.
 Littus, (littor) is, 344, *b, shore*.
 Livi-us, i, *Livy*, a Roman historian.
 Loc-us, i, pl., i and a, 309, *place*.
 Long-ë, adv., 215, 1, *far, long*: (long-us.)
 Longitudo, (longitudin) is, 339, *length*: (longus.)
 Long-us, a, um, *long*.
 Loqu-i (locüt-), dep., *to speak*.
 Lubet. See libet.
 Luct-us, ùs, *grief*.
 Lud-ëre (lûs, lûs-, 401, 3, b), *to play*.
 Lud-us, i, *sport, game, play*.
 Lun-a, æ, *moon*.
 Lup-us, i, *wolf*.
 Lux, (luc) is, 293, *light*.

M.

Macul-are (av-, at-), *to stain*.
 Magis, adv., *more*.
 Magister, tri (64), *master, teacher*.
 Magistrat-us, ùs, *a magistrate*.
 Magnanimus, a, um (magr-us+animus), *high-spirited, magnanimous*.
 Magnitudo, (magnitudin) is (340), *extent, greatness*.
 Magnus, a, um, *great*; comp., major, *greater*.
 Malë, adv. (215, 1, B.), *badly*.
 Maleficium, i (800, 2), *evil deed, crime*.
 Malle (592), *to be more willing, to prefer*; perf., malui.
 Málum, i, *evil, misfortune*.
 Man-ëre (mans-, mans-), 665, III., *to remain*.
 Manus, ùs (f., 112, 2), *hand, band of soldiers*.
 Mare. (mar) is (314), *sea*

Massilia, æ, *Marseilles*.
 Mater, (matr) is (f., 25, 2), *mother*.
 Matrimonium, i, *matrimony*.
 Matrona, æ, *the Marne*, a river of Gaul.
 Matur-are (av-, at-), *to hasten*.
 Maxim-ë (adv., 376), *most, most greatly, in the highest degree*.
 Maxim-us, a, um (sup. of magnus, 370), *greatest*.
 Me (acc. and abl. of ego, I), *me*; mecum, *with me* (125, II, b).
 Medicin-a, æ, *medicine*.
 Mediterrane-us, a, um, *Mediterranean* (medi-us+terr-a).
 Medi-us, a, um, *middle*.
 Meli-us, adv. (376), *better*.
 Memini (defect., 611), *I remember*; meminisse, *to remember*.
 Memori-a, æ, *memory*; memoriâ tenëre, *to hold in memory, to remember*.
 Mens, (ment) is, f., *mind*.
 Mercatör, (mercator) is (319), *merchant*.
 Meridi-es, ei (m., 115), *mid-day, noon*.
 Merit-um, i, *merit, desert*.
 Metall-um, i, *metal*.
 Met-ëre (messu-, mess-, 666, II, b), *to reap*.
 Met-iri (mens-), dep., *to measure*.
 Metu-ëre (metu-, 666, VI, a), *to fear*.
 Me-us, a, um (122), *my, mine*.
 Mic-are (micu-, 664, II.), *to glitter shine*.
 Migr-are (av-, at-), *to migrate*.
 Miles, (milit) is, *soldier*.
 Mille (sing. indecl., pl. millia, ium), *thousand*.
 Minerv-a, æ, *Minerva*.
 Minim-us, a, um, *least* (superl. of parvus, 370).
 Minor (minus), 358, *less* (compar. of parvus, 370).
 Minu-ëre (minu-, minüt-), *to diminish*

Mirabil-is, is, e, *wonderful*.
Mirific-us, a, um, *causing wonder, astonishing* (mir-us+facere).
Miser, a, um (77, b), *miserable, wretched*.
Miseret (impers., 579, a), *one pities; me miseret, I pity*.
Mitig-are (av-, at-), *to mitigate*.
Mitt-ere (mis-, miss-, 401, 3, b), *to send*.
Mod-us, i, *measure, manner*.
Mœnia, ium (used only in pl.), *walls*.
Mœror, (mœrôr) is (319), *sadness*.
Mon-ere (monu-, monit-), *to advise, warn, remind*.
Monstr-are (av-, at-), *to show*.
Mord-ere (momord-, mors-, 395, IV.), *to bite, champ*.
Mor-i, and **mor-iri** (mort-), *dep., to die*.
Mortal-is, is, e, *mortal*.
Mors, (môrt) is, 293, *death*.
Mos, (môr) is, 331, 1, b, *custom, manner*.
Mot-us, ūs, *motion, moving*.
Mov-ere (môv-, môt-, 395, V.), *to move*.
Mulier, (mûlier) is, (f.), *woman*.
Multitudo, (multitudin) is, 340, *multitude*.
Multi-us, a, um, *much, many*.
Mund-us, i, *world*.
Mun-ire (iv-, it-), *to fortify*.
Munitio, (munition) is, 333, R., *fortification*.
Munus, (muner) is, 344, 3, b, *office, gift*.
Murus, i, *wall*.
Mut-are (āv-, āt-), *to change*.

N.

Nam, conj., *for*.
Nasc-i (nat-), *dep., to be born, spring from*.
Nat-are (āv-, āt-), *to swim*.
Nant-a, æ (m.), *sailor*

Natio, (nation) is, 333, R., *nation*.
Natur-a, æ, *nature*.
Naval-e, (naval) is, 314, *a dock-yard*.
Navigatio, (navigation) is, 333, R., *navigation, voyage*.
Nav-is, (nav) is, 300, *ship*.
Nē, interrogative particle, 135, II., *a*.
Nē, adv., *not*, used imperatively 534, a, conj., *that not*, 548, b.
Nēc, conj., *nor*.
Neg-are (av-, āt-), *to deny, refuse*.
Neglig-ere (neglex-, neglect-, 666, V., a), *to neglect*.
Negligens, (negligent) is, 107, *negligent*.
Negoti-um, i, *matter, business*.
Nemo, (nemin) is, c, *no one*.
Neque, conj., *neither, nor*, 515.
Nequidem, adv., *not even*, 217; always separated by the words which have the emphasis; e. g., ne Socrates quidem, *not even Socrates*.
Nervi-us, i, *a Nervian (people of Gaul)*.
Nerv-us, i, *a sinew*.
Nesc-ire (iv-, it-), *to be ignorant, not to know* (ne+scire).
Neuter, tra, trum, 194, 1, *neither of the two*.
Nidific-are (āv-, āt-), *to build a nest* (nidus+facere).
Niger, nigra, nigrum, 77, a, *black*.
Nihil, n., indecl., *nothing*.
Nimi-us, a, um, *too much*.
Nit-i (nis- and nix-), *dep., to strive*.
Nisi, conj., *unless, if not*.
Nobilis, is, e, *noble, illustrious*.
Nobilitas, (nobilitat) is, 293, *nobility*.
Noc-ere (nocū-, nocit-), *to hurt, with dat*.
Noctū, adv., *by night*.
Nolle, nolui, *to be unwilling*, 592.
Nomen, (nomin) is, 344, a, *name*.
Nōn, adv., *not*.

Nonne, interrogative particle (expects answer *yes*).
 Nonnullus, a, um, *some*; nonnulli, *some* (persons).
 Nonnunquam, adv., *sometimes*.
 Non-us, a, um, *ninth*.
 Nos, *we*, 120.
 Nosc-ère (nôv-, nôt-), *to learn, know*.
 Noster, tra, trum, 122, *our*.
 Nôv-i (gen. of novus), *news*, 174 (vocab.).
 Nôv-i, defective, *I know*, 611; novisse, *to know*.
 Novissimus, a, um (superl. of novus), *newest, latest*; novissimum agmen, *the rear-rank*.
 Novitas, (novitât) is, 293, *novelty* (novus).
 Nov-us, a, um, *new*.
 Nox, (noct) is, 293, *night*.
 Nub-es, (nub) is, 300, *cloud*.
 Nud-us, a, um, *naked*.
 Nullus, a, um, gen. nullius, dat. nulli, 194, 1, *no one, none*.
 Num (interrog. particle), *whether* (expects the answer *no*, 174).
 Numa, s (m.), *Numa*.
 Numer-us, i, *number*.
 Nunti-äre (äv-, ät-), *to announce*.
 Nunti-us, i, *a messenger*.
 Nunquam, adv., *never*.
 Nuptiæ, arum, 57, R., *a marriage*.
 Nutrix, (nutric) is, 293, *nurse*.

O.

Ob (prep. with acc.), *on account of*.
 Obæratu-s, a, um, *a debtor*.
 Obscur-äre (äv-, ät-), *to obscure*.
 Obsecr-äre (äv-, ät-), *to beseech*.
 Obses, (obsid) is (c), *hostage*.
 Obstring-ère (obstrinx-, obstruct-), *to bind*: ob+stringere.
 Obtin-ère (obtina-, obtent-), *to hold, maintain*: ob+tenere.
 Occas-us, ūs, *setting, e.g., of the sun*; occasu solis, *sunset*, 118, II., c.

Occidens, (occident) is, m. (sol understood), *west*.
 Occid-ère (occid-, occas-, ob+cadere), *to fall, set, die*.
 Occid-ère (occid-, occis-, ob+cadere), *to slay, kill*.
 Occup-äre (äv-, ät-), *to seize, take possession of*.
 Oceanus, i, *ocean*.
 Octavus, a, um, *eighth*.
 Octoginta (indecl.), *eighty*.
 Octoni, æ, a, *eight each, eight at a time*, 197.
 Ocul-us, i, *eye*.
 Odi (defect., 611), *I hate*; odiſſe, *to hate*.
 Odi-um, i, *hatred*.
 Offend-ère (offend-, offens-, ob+fendere), *to offend*.
 Olim, adv., *once upon a time, formerly*.
 Omnino, adv., *altogether, in all*.
 Omnis, is, e, *all, every, the whole*; omnis res, *the whole affair*.
 Onus, (oner) is, 344, *b, burden, load*.
 Oper-a, æ, *toil, labour*.
 Oportet (impers., 583), oportebat, oportuit, *it behooves, one ought*.
 Oppidan-us, a, um, *of or belonging to a town, a townsman*.
 Oppid-um, i, *a town*.
 Opprim-ère (oppress-, oppress-, ob+premere), *to repress, crush*.
 Oppugn-äre (äv-, ät-), *to attack, besiege* (ob+pugnare).
 Ops, opis, 293, *power*; opes, *resources, means*.
 Optim-us, a, um, *best* (superl. of bonus).
 Opulens, (opulent) is, 107, *rich, opulent*.
 Opus, (oper) is, 344, *work*.
 Oracul-um, i, *oracle*.
 Or-äre (äv-, ät-), *to pray, beg, beseech*.
 Oratio, (oration) is, 333, R., *oration, speech*.

Orator, (orator) is, 319, *orator*.
 Orb-is, (orb) is (m., 302, R.), *orb, circle*; orbis terrarum, *the world*.
 Ordo, (ordin) is (m., 340, exc.), *order*.
 Orgetorix, (Orgetorig) is, *Orgetorix*, a Helvetian chieftain.
 Origo, (origin) is, 339, *origin*.
 Or-iri (ort-), dep., *to rise*.
 Orn-are (av-, at-), *to adorn*.
 Ornatus, a, um, *adorned*, part. of ornare.
 Ostend-ere (ostend-, ostens-, ob-tendere), *to show*.
 Ostent-are (av-, at-), *to vaunt*.

P.

Pabulatio, (pabulation) is, 333, R., *foddering, foraging*.
 Pæne, adv., *almost*.
 Pag-us, i, *village, canton*.
 Palûs, (palûd) is, 293, *marsh*.
 Par-are (av-, at-), *to prepare*.
 Parat-us, a, um, *prepared, ready* (part. pass. of parare).
 Parc-ere (peperc-, pars- and parcit-, 666, IV., b), *to spare, with dat.*
 Par-ere (paru-), with dat., *to obey*.
 Pars, (part) is, 293, *part*.
 Parsimoni-a, æ, *parsimony, frugality*.
 Parv-us, a, um, *small, little*.
 Pastor, (pastor) is, 319, *shepherd*.
 Pater, (patr) is, *father*; patres, um, *patricians of Rome*.
 Pat-ere (patû-), *to be open, extend*.
 Pat-i, (pass-), dep., *to suffer*.
 Patienter, adv., 215, 2, b, *patiently*.
 Patienti-a, æ, *patience, endurance*.
 Paucitas, (paucitat) is, 293, *fewness*.
 Pauci, æ, a, *few*.
 Paullisper, adv., *for a little while*.
 Paullo, adv., *a little*; paullo longius, *a little too far*.
 Pauper, (pauper) is, 107, *poor*.
 Paupertas, (paupertat) is, 293, *poverty*.

Pax, (pac) is, 293, *peace*.
 Pecc-are (av-, at-), *to sin*.
 Peccat-um, i, *sin*.
 Pecuni-a, æ, *money*.
 Pedes, (pedit) is, 306, *foot-soldier*.
 Pell-ere (pepûl-, puls-, 411, b), *to drive, rout, expel, defeat*.
 Pellis, (pell) is, 300, *hide, skin*.
 Pend-ere (pend-, pens-, 666, IV., a), *to weigh, pay*.
 Pene, adv., *almost*.
 Peninsul-a, æ, *peninsula* (pene+insula).
 Per (prep. with accns.), *through, during*.
 Perdives, (perdivit-) is, 107, *very rich*.
 Perduc-ere (perdux-, perduct-, per+ducere), *to lead through, bring along*.
 Perfacilis, is, e, *very easy*.
 Perferre (pertûl-, perlat-, per+ferre), *to convey, bear through*.
 Perfic-ere (perfec-, perfect-, per+facere), *to accomplish, finish, bring to pass*.
 Perfring-ere (perfræg-, perfract-, per+frangere), *to break through*.
 Perfug-a, æ, *deserter*.
 Perg-ere (perrex-, perrect-), *to go on, go straight*.
 Pericul-um, i, *danger*.
 Per-ire (peri-, perit-, per+ire), *to perish*.
 Peritus, a, um, *skilful, skilled in* (with gen.).
 Permôv-ere (permôv-, permôt-), *to move thoroughly, to induce*.
 Pernici-es, ei, *destruction*.
 Perpauci, æ, a, *very few*.
 Perpetu-us, a, um, *perpetual*.
 Perrump-ere (perrûp-, perrupt-, per+rumpere), *to break through*.
 Pers-a, æ, a *Persian*.
 Persequ-i (persecût-, per+sequi dep., *to follow after, pursue*

- Persever-äre (äv-, ät-), *to persevere.*
 Persolv-äre (persolv-, persolüt-, per-
 +solvere), *to pay up, pay in full*;
 pœnas persolvere, *to suffer full*
punishment.
 Perspic-äre (perspex-, perspect-), *to*
observe, get sight of, see plainly.
 Persuad-äre (persuas-, persuas-), *to*
persuade, convince.
 Perterr-äre (perterra-, perterrît-), *to*
frighten thoroughly.
 Pertin-äre (pertinu-, per+tenere), *to*
reach, belong to, extend to.
 Perturb-äre (äv-, ät-), *to disturb, con-*
found.
 Pervên-äre (vên-, vent-), *to arrive at,*
come to.
 Pes, (ped) is (m., 295, 3), *foot*; pe-
 dem referre, *to draw back the*
foot, to retreat.
 Pet-äre (petiv-, petit-), *to seek, aim*
at, strive after.
 Petr-a, æ, *rock.*
 Phalanx, (phalang) is, 293, *phalanx.*
 Pharsalus, i, *Pharsalus, a town in*
Thessaly.
 Philosoph-ari (ät-), dep., *to philoso-*
phize.
 Piget (impers., 579, a), piguit, *it*
grieves, pains, disgusts; *I am*
Pil-um, i, javelin. [grieved at.
 Pisc-is, (pisc) is (m., 302, R.), *fish.*
 Pius, a, um, *pious.*
 Plac-äre (placü-, placit-), *to please*
(with dat.).
 Placet (impers., 584, a), placuit, *it*
pleases; Cæsari placuit, *Cæsar*
determined.
 Placid-us, a, um, *calm, placid.*
 Plant-a, æ, *plant.*
 Plan-us, a, um, *level, plain.*
 Plato, (Platôn) is, *Plato.*
 Plebs, (plëb) is, 293, *common people.*
 Plen-us, a, um, *full.*
 Plerique, pleræque, pleraque, *most,*
the greater part.
 Plerumque, adv., *for the most part.*
 Plum-a, æ, *feather.*
 Plurim-us, a, um (superl. of multus),
most, very many.
 Plurimum, adv., *very much, in the*
highest degree.
 Pocu-lum, i, *cup.*
 Pœn-a, æ, *punishment*; pœnas per-
 solvere, *pay the full penalty.*
 Pœnitet (impers., 579), pœnituit, *it*
repents; me pœnitet, *I repent.*
 Poet-a, æ (m.), *poet.*
 Pompeius, i, *Pompey.*
 Pon-äre (posü-, posit-), *to place,*
castra ponere, to pitch the camp.
 Pons, (pont) is (m., 295, 1), *bridge.*
 Popul-ari (ät-), dep., *to plunder, lay*
waste.
 Popul-us, i, *people.*
 Port-a, æ, *gate.*
 Port-äre (äv-, ät-), *to carry.*
 Port-üs, üs, *harbour.*
 Portori-um, i, *tax, customs duty.*
 Posc-äre (poposc-, 411, a), *to demand*
(admits two accusatives).
 Posse, potui, *to be able, can, 587.*
 Possessio, (possessión) is, 333, R.,
possession.
 Possid-äre (possêd-, possess-), *to*
possess.
 Post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*
 Postea, adv., *afterward.*
 Poster-us, a, um, *after*; postero die,
on the day after, on the next day.
 Postquam, adv., *after that.*
 Postul-äre (äv-, ät-), *to demand.*
 Potens, (potent) is, 107, *powerful.*
 Potestas, (potestat) is, 293, *power.*
 Pot-iri (it-), dep., with gen. or abl
to acquire, get possession of.
 Præ (prep. with abl.), *before.*
 Præb-äre (præbu-, præbit-), *to af-*
ford.
 Præced-ere (cess-, cess-), *to go be-*
fore, excel.
 Præceps, (præcipit) is, 107, *headlong*

Præceptor. (præceptōr) is, *a teacher, preceptor.*

Præcept-um, i, *precept.*

Præcip-ère (cēp-, cept-, præ + capere), *to command, enjoin.*

Præclar-us, a, um, *illustrious.*

Præco, (præcōn) is, *herald.*

Præd-a, æ, *booty, prey.*

Præd-ari (at-), dep., *to plunder, get booty.*

Prædic-are (av-, at-), *to declare.*

Prædo, (prædōn) is, *pirate.*

Præesse, piæfui, *to be over, command* (præ + esse), with dat.

Præferre (tīl-, lat-), *to prefer.*

Præfic-ère (fēc-, fect-, præ + facere), *to place over.*

Præmitt-ère (mīss-, miss-), *to send before.*

Præmi-um, i, *reward.*

Prænunti-a, or **prænuncia,** æ, *harbinger.*

Præsertim, adv., *especially.*

Præsidi-um, i, *garrison, defence.*

Præstans, (præstant) is, 107, *excellent.*

Præst-are (stīt-, stīt-), *to stand before, excel.*

Præter, prep. with acc., *besides, except.*

Præter-ire (iv- and ī-, īt-, præter + ire, 605, 2), *to pass by.*

Prætor, (prætōr) is, *a prætor (Roman magistrate).*

Preti-um, i, *price, reward.*

Prex, (prec) is, 293, *prayer.*

Primus, a, um, *first.*

Princeps, (princip) is, 107, *chief* (used only as a noun).

Principat-ūs, ūs, *chieftainship, chief authority.*

Principi-um, i, *beginning, principle.*

Pristin-us, a, um, *ancient, former.*

Privatim adv., *privately.*

Privat-us, a, um, *private.*

Priusquam, adv., *before that.*

Pro (prep. with abl.), *before, for, in view of.*

Prob-are (av-, at-), *to prove.*

Prob-itas, (probitāt) is, 293, *honesty.*

Prob-us, a, um, *honest.*

Proced-ère (cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b), *to advance, go forward.*

Procell-a, æ, *tempest.*

Procurr-ère (curr-, curs-, pro + currere), *to run forward.*

Prod-esse (pro + esse), *to profit, with dat.*

Prælium, i, *battle, fight.*

Profectio, (profectiō) is, 333, R., *setting out, departure.*

Proficisc-i (profect-), dep., *to set out, depart.*

Prohib-ère (prohibu-, prohibit-, pro + habere), *to restrain, keep off.*

Projic-ère (jēc-, ject-, pro + jacere), *to throw forward, throw.*

Prope (prep. with acc.), *near, nigh to; propius, nearer; proxime, nearest.*

Propell-ère (pul-, puls-, pro + pellere), *drive on, drive away.*

Proper-are (av-, at-), *hasten.*

Propinquus, a, um, *near to, related to; propinquus* (used as noun), *a relation.*

Propius. See *prope.*

Propon-ère (posu-, posit-, pro + ponere), *to set before, propose.*

Propter (prep. with accus.), *on account of.*

Propterea, adv., *therefore; propterea quod, because, for the reason that.*

Propuls-are (av-, at-), *to ward off, avert, repel.*

Prorsus, adv., *straight on, truly, precisely.*

Prosequ-i (prosecūt-), dep., *to pursue.*

Proverbi-um, i, *proverb.*

Providenti-a, æ, *Providence* (pro + videre).

Provinci-a, æ, *province*.
 Proxim-us, a, um (superl., 371), *next*,
nearest.
 Ptolemæus, i, *Ptolemy*.
 Pudet (impers., 579, a), *puduit, it*
shames, one is ashamed.
 Puell-a, æ, *girl*.
 Puer, i, *boy*.
 Pugn-are (av-, at-), *to fight*.
 Pulvis, (pulver) is, 331, b, *dust*.
 Pun-ire (iv-, it-), *to punish*.
 Put-are (av-, at-), *to suppose, think,*
reckon.
 Pyrenæi (montes), *the Pyrenees,*
mountains between Gaul and
Spain.

Q.

Quadringenti, æ, a, *four hundred*.
 Quær-ere (quæsi-, quæsit-), *to seek,*
ask, inquire into.
 Qualis, is, e, *of what kind; talis—*
qualis, such—as, 184.
 Quam, conj., *than*.
 Quamdiu, adv., *how long*.
 Quamvis, conj., *although*.
 Quando, adv., *when*.
 Quantus, a, um, *how great, 184*.
 Quantuscunque, -acunque, -uncun-
que, however great, 184.
 Quasi, adv., *as if*.
 Quatern-i, æ, a, *four apiece, four at*
a time, 189.
 Quattuor, indecl., *four*.
 Que, conj., *and, 517, a*.
 Queo, *I am able, 606*.
 Quer-i (quest-), *to complain*.
 Qui, quæ, quod, *who, which, what,*
164.
 Quia, conj., *because*.
 Quid, neut. of quis, used interrog.,
what? as adv., why?
 Quicunque, *whosoever, 164, R*.
 Quidam, quædam, quoddam, *or quid-*
dam, a certain one; plur., some,
178, 1.

Quidem, adv., *indeed*.
 Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, *any*
one, any you please, 178, 2.
 Quin, conj., *but that, that not, 558, b*.
 Quindecim, indecl., *fifteen*.
 Quingent-i, æ, a, *five hundred*.
 Quinque, indecl., *five*.
 Quint-us, a, um, *fifth*.
 Quire, *to be able, 606*.
 Quis, quæ, quid, interrog., *who,*
which, what? 170.
 Quisnam, quænam, quidnam? *pray*
who? what? 171.
 Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam, quid-
piam, somebody, some, 178, 4.
 Quisquam, quicquam, *or quodquam,*
any, any one, 178, 3.
 Quisque, quæque, quodque, quid-
que, each, every one, 178, 6.
 Quisquis, *whoever, whatever, 637, 3*.
 Quivis, *any one you please, 178, 2*.
 Quò, adv., *whither, in which direc-*
tion?
 Quò, conj., *to the end that, that, so*
that, 558, a.
 Quod, conj., *because*.
 Quod, rel. pron. neut. of qui.
 Quominus, *that the less, that not, af-*
ter verbs of hindering, &c., 558, c.
 Quondam, adv., *formerly, at one*
time.
 Quoniam, conj., *since, because*.
 Quoque, conj., *also*.
 Quot, *so many, how many? 184*.
 Quotannis, adv., *yearly*.
 Quotidian-us, a, um, *daily*.
 Quot-us, a, um, *what one? quota*
hora, what o'clock?
 Quum, conj., *when, since, 561*

R.

Rapin-a, æ, *rapine, plunder*.
 Ratio, (ration) is, 333, R., *reason,*
manner, plan.
 Rauracus, i, *a Rauracian people of*
Gaul.

Rebellio, (rebelliōn) is, 333, R., *rebellion*.

Reced-ēre (cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b), *to give way, retreat*.

Recip-ēre (cāp-, cept-, re+capere, io, 416, c, 199), *to receive back, take back; se recipere, to take one's self back, to go back*.

Rect-ē, adv., 215, 1, *rightly*.

Redd-ēre (reddid-, reddit-, re+dare), 666, IV., c), *give back, return, restore*.

Redintegr-āre (av-, at-), *to renew*.

Redim-ēre (redēm-, redempt-, re+emere), *to buy back, redeem, farm (as revenues)*.

Reditio, (reditiōn) is, 333, R., *return (redire)*.

Reduc-ēre (dux-, duct-, re+ducere), *to bring, bring back*.

Referre (retūl-, relat-, re+ferre), *to bring back, to draw back; pedem referre, to retreat*.

Rēfert, *it matters, it concerns, it interests*, 584, d.

Refic-ēre (fēc-, fect-, re+facere), *to renew, rebuild*.

Reg-ēre (rex-, rect-) *to rule*.

Regin-a, æ, *queen*.

Regn-āre (av-, at-), *to reign*.

Regn-um, i, *kingdom, royal power*.

Relinqu-ēre (reliqu-, relict-), *to leave*.

Reliqui-æ, arum, 57, R., *remains, remnant*.

Reliqu-us, a, um, *remaining*.

Reminisc-i (dep.), *to remember (with gen.)*.

Remōv-ēre (remōv-, remōt-), *to remove*.

Renunti-āre (av-, at-), *to bring back word, report*.

Repell-ēre (repūl-, repuls-, re+pellere), *to repel, drive back*.

Repente, adv., *suddenly*.

Repentin-us, a, um, *sudden; repentina res, the sudden occurrence*.

Reper-ire (reper-, reperit-, 427, V.) *to find out, to discover*.

Repet-ēre (repetiv- and repeti-, repetit-), *to demand back, to ask again*.

Repugn-āre (av-, at-, re+pugnare) *to oppose, resist*.

Res, rei, *thing; res novæ (pl.), revolution; res familiaris, private property*.

Rescind-ēre (rescīd-, resciss-), *to cut down, to cut in pieces*.

Resist-ēre (restit-, restit-), 390, intrans., *to halt, stop; with dat., to resist*.

Respond-ēre (respond-, respons-, 665, IV.), *to answer*.

Respublic-a, reipublicæ, 351, 3, *republic, state*.

Ret-e, (ret) is, 312, *net*.

Retin-ēre (retin-, retent-, re+tenere), *to restrain, hold back, retain*.

Revert-ēre (revert-, revers-, 422), *to turn back, return*.

Revert-i (revers-), dep., *to return*.

Revoc-āre (av-, at-), *to call back, recall*.

Rex, (reg) is (m), *king*.

Rhen-us, i, *Rhine (river)*.

Rhetoric-a, æ, *rhetoric*.

Rhodan-us, i, *Rhone (river)*.

Rid-ēre (ris-, ris-), *to laugh*.

Rip-a, æ, *bank of a river*.

Ris-us, ūs, *laughter*.

Robur, (robor) is, 344, a, *strength*.

Rog-āre (av-, at-), *to ask*.

Roman-us, a, um, *Roman; Romanus (used as noun), a Roman*.

Romul-us, i, *Romulus*.

Ros-a, æ, *a rose*.

Rot-a, æ, *wheel*.

Ruber, bra, brum, 77, a, *red*.

Rumor, (rumōr) is, 319, *rumour, report*.

Bursus, adv., *backward, again*.

S.

Sacer, cra, crum, 77, *a, sacred*. Mons Sacer, *the Sacred Mount*; sacra, orum, *sacred rites*.

Sæpe, adv., *often*.

Sæviti-a, æ, *cruelty*.

Sagittari-us, i, *archer*.

Sagunt-um, i, *Saguntum*, a town in Spain.

Salt-äre (av-, at-), *to dance*.

Salus, (salüt) is, 293, *safety*.

Salv-us, a, um, *safe*.

San-äre (av-, at-), *to heal, cure*.

Sanct-us, a, um, *sacred*.

Sanguis, (sanguin) is (m.), *blood*.

Sapiens, (sapiens) is, 107, *wise, a wise man*.

Sapienter, 215, 2, *b, wisely*.

Sapienti-a, æ, *wisdom*.

Satis, adv., *enough*.

Satius, comp. of satis; satius est, *it is better*.

Schol-a, æ, *school*.

Scienti-a, æ, *science, knowledge*.

Scind-äre (scid-, aciss-), *to cut, cut down*.

Scipio, (Scipiön) is, *Scipio*.

Sc-äre (sciv-, scit-), *to know*.

Scrib-äre (scrips-, script-), *to write*.

Scriptor, (scriptör) is, 319, *writer*.

Se, acc. of sui, 142.

Seced-äre (secess-, secess-), *to secede*.

Secretö, adv., *secretly, privately*.

Secund-us, a, um, *second, following*.

Sed, *but*.

Sed-äre (séd-, sess-, 394, V.), *to sit, sit down*.

Seditio-us, a, um, *seditions*.

Semel, adv., *once*; semel atque iterum, *once and again*.

Sementis, (sement) is, *a sowing (of corn)*.

Semper, adv., *always*.

Sempitern-us, a, um, *eternal*.

Senat-us, ūs *senate*.

Senex, (sen) is, 107, *old, old man*.

Senectus, (senectät) is, 293, *old age*.

Sen-i, æ, a, *six each, six at a time, distrib.*, 189.

Sententi-a, æ, *opinion*.

Sent-äre (sens-, sens-), *to feel, think perceive*.

Separ-äre (av-, at-), *to separate*.

Septem, indecl., *seven*.

September, bris (m.), *September*.

Septentrion-es, um, *the north, the seven stars composing Ursa Major*.

Septim-us, a, um, *seventh*.

Septuaginta, indecl., *seventy*.

Sequan-a, æ, *Seine (river)*.

Sequan-us, i, *Sequanian (people of Gaul)*.

Sequ-i (secüt-), dep., *to follow*.

Ser-äre (sév-, sät-), *to sow plant*.

Sermo, (sermön) is, 331, *speech*.

Serv-äre (av-, at-), *to keep, preserve*.

Serv-us, i, *slave*.

Severitas, (severität) is, 293, *severity*.

Sex, indecl., *six*.

Sext-us, a, um, *sixth*.

Si, conj., *if*.

Sic, adv., *so, thus*.

Sicut, conj., *so as, just as*.

Sidus, (sider) is, 344, *b, star, constellation*.

Sign-um, i, *standard, signal*.

Simil-is, is, e, 104, *like (with gen. or dat.)*.

Simul, adv., *together, at the same time*; simulac, simulatque, *as soon as*.

Sin, conj., *but if*.

Sine, prep. with abl., *without*.

Sitis, (sit) is, 300, *thirst*.

Socer, i, 65, R., *father-in-law*.

Societas, (societät) is, 293, *society fellowship*.

Soci-us, i, *companion, ally*.

Socrates, (Socrat) is, *Socrates*.

Söl, (Söl) is, *the Sun*.

- Solum**, adv., *only*; non solum—sed etiam, *not only—but also*.
- Sol-us**, a, um, gen. solius, 194, R. 1, *alone*.
- Somn-us**, i, *sleep*.
- Sordid-us**, a, um, *sordid, mean*.
- Soror**, (sorôr) is, *sister*.
- Sors**, (sort) is, 293, *lot*.
- Spati-um**, i, *space, opportunity*; spatium arma capiendi, *time for taking up arms*, 492, a.
- Speci-es**, ei, *appearance*.
- Spect-äre** (av-, at-), *to look, look at*.
- Spes**, ei, *hope*.
- Splendid-us**, a, um, *brilliant, splendid*.
- Splendör**, (splendör) is, 319, *splendour, glare*.
- St-äre** (stët-, stät-, 387, III.), *to stand*.
- Statim**, adv., *immediately*.
- Statio**, (station) is, 333, R., *station, post*.
- Statu-äre** (statü-, statät-), *to appoint, fix, decide*.
- Stell-a**, æ, *star*.
- Stipendi-um**, i, *tribute, tax*.
- Stipendiari-us**, a, um, *tributary*.
- Stoicus**, i, a *Stoic*.
- String-äre** (strinx-, strict-), *to draw* (as a sword).
- Studiosë**, 215, 1, *zealously, studiously*.
- Studi-um**, i, *zeal, study, desire*.
- Stultiti-a**, æ, *folly*.
- Stult-us**, a, um, *foolish*; stultus, a *fool*.
- Suad-äre** (suas-, suas-), *to advise, to persuade*.
- Suav-is**, is, e, 104, *sweet*.
- Sub**, prep. with acc., *up to, under*; with abl., *under*.
- Subesse** (sub+esse), *to be under, to be near*.
- Subig-äre** (subëg-, subact-, sub+agere), *to subdue*.
- Sub-ire** (iv-, it-), *to go under, to un-*
- dergo**; ad pericula subeunda, *for undergoing perils*.
- Subitö**, adv., *suddenly*.
- Subjic-äre** (subjēc-, subject-, sub+jacere), *to throw under, to throw up*.
- Sublatus**, a, um, part. of tollere, *elated, puffed up, taken away*.
- Subsist-äre** (substît-), *to stand still, to halt*.
- Subsidi-um**, i, *assistance, a reserve of troops*.
- Suev-us**, i, a *Suevian* (people of Germany).
- Sufferre** (sustül-, sublät-, sub+ferre), *to bear, sustain*.
- Sui**, reflex. pron., 142, *himself, herself, &c.*
- Sum**, I am. (See esse.)
- Sum-äre** (sumps-, sumpt-, 401, 4, b), *to take*.
- Summ-us**, a, um (superl. of superus, 370), *highest, top of a thing*; in summo monte, *on the top of the mountain*.
- Sumpt-us**, ūs, *expense*; sumptū suō, *at his own expense*.
- Super-äre** (av-, at-), *to overcome*.
- Superior**, -oris (compar. of superus, 370), *higher*.
- Suppet-äre** (suppetiv- and suppeti suppetit-), *to be at hand, to be in store*.
- Supplici-um**, i, *punishment*.
- Suscip-äre** (suscēp-, suscept-, sub+capere), *to undertake*.
- Suspicio**, (suspiciō) is, 333, R., *suspicion*.
- Sustin-äre** (sustinu-, sustent-, sub+tenere), *to sustain*.
- Suus**, a, um, *one's own*, 143.

T.

- Tac-äre** (tacu-, tacit-), intrans., *to be silent*; trans., *to keep secret*.
- Tædet**, pertæsum est (impers., 576),

- it wearies, it disgusts*; me tædet,
I am disgusted.
- Talis, is, e, 184, *such*.
- Tam, adv., *so*.
- Tamen, conj., *nevertheless*.
- Tang-ère (tetig-, tact-, 411), *to touch*.
- Tanquam, adv., *as, like*.
- Tantum, *so much* (neut. of tantus);
tantum auri, *so much gold*, 186.
- Tant-us, a, um, 184, *so great*.
- Tard-ère (av-, at-), *to delay*.
- Taur-us, i, *bull*.
- Tel-um, i, *weapon, dart*.
- Temerè, adv., *rashly*.
- Temeritas, (temeritât) is, 293, *rashness*.
- Temper-ère (av-, at-), *to refrain from*; ab injuria temperare, *to refrain from outrage*.
- Temperanti-a, æ, *temperance*.
- Tempestas, (tempestât) is, 293, *storm, tempest*.
- Templ-um, i, *temple*; templum de marmore, *temple of marble, marble temple*.
- Tempus, (tempör) is, 344, *b, time*.
- Tenax, (tenâc) is, 107, *tenacious, firm*.
- Tener, a, um, 77, *b, tender*.
- Ten-ère (tenu-, tent-), *to hold*.
- Terg-um, i, *back*.
- Terni, æ, a (distrib., 189), *three apiece, three at a time*.
- Terr-a, æ, *earth*; terra marique, *by land and sea*.
- Terr-ère (terru-, territ-), *to terrify*.
- Terti-us, a, um, *third*.
- Tiberi-us, i, *Tiberius*.
- Themistocles, (Themistocl) is, *The-mistocles*.
- Tigurinus pagus, *the canton of Zurich*.
- Tim-ère (timu-), *to fear*.
- Timid-us, a, um, *timid*.
- Timor, (timör) is, 319, *fear*.
- Tiro, (tirön) is, 107, *inexperienced, raw*.
- Toler-ère (av-, at-), *to endure*.
- Toll-ère (sustül-, sublat-), *to lift up, take away*.
- Tot, *so many*, 184.
- Tot-us, a, um, gen. ius, 194, R. 1, *whole, all*.
- Trabs, (trab) is, *beam*, 293.
- Trad-ère (tradid-, tradit-), *to surrender*.
- Tragul-a, æ, *a dart* (used by the Gauls).
- Trah-ère (trax-, tract-, 401, 2), *to draw*.
- Trajic-ère (trajēc-, traject-), *transit, to throw or convey over*; intrans., *to cross over*.
- Tranquill-iter, adv., *calmly, tranquilly* (215, 2, tranquillus, *tranquil*).
- Transduc-ère (transdux-, transduct-) *to lead across*.
- Trans-ire (iv-, it-), *to cross or pass over*.
- Transn-ère (av-, at-), *to swim across*.
- Tredecim, indecl., *thirteen*.
- Tres, tria, 194, *three*.
- Tribun-us, i, *tribune*.
- Triginta, *thirty*.
- Triplex, (triplic) is, 107, *triple, three fold*.
- Tripartitö, adv., *in three divisions*.
- Tristiti-a, æ, *sadness*.
- Tu, thou, 130.
- Tullus Hostilius, *Tullus Hostilius*.
- Tum, adv., *then*.
- Turbo, (turbin) is (m., 340), *whirl wind*.
- Turp-is, is, e, 104, *base*.
- Turpiter, adv., 215, 2, *a, basely*.
- Tarris, (turr) is, 302, *tower*.
- Tut-us, a, um, *safe*.
- Tu-us, a, um, *thy, thine*, 134.

U.

Ubi, adv., *where, when*.
 Ubinam? *where in the world?* 297, d.
 Ull-us, a, um, gen. ius, 194, 1, *any*.
 Ulterior, ius (compar. of ultra, 371),
farther.
 Ultrô, adv., *of one's own accord*.
 Ulysses, (Ulyss) is, *Ulysses*.
 Umbr-a, æ, *shade, shadow*.
 Unâ, adv., *together*.
 Unde, adv., *whence*.
 Undecim, indecl., *eleven*.
 Undique, adv., *from all sides*.
 Univers-us, a, um, *universal, the whole*.
 Unquam, adv., *ever*.
 Un-us, a, um, gen. unius, 194, *one*.
 Unusquisque, 178, 6, *each one*.
 Urbs, (urb) is, 293, *city*.
 Usque, adv., *as far as; usque ad, even up to*.
 Ut, or uti, conj., *that*, 546.
 Uter, utra, utrum, 194, *which of the two*.
 Ut-i (ûs-), dep. (with abl., 316, R.), *to use, employ*.
 Util-is, is, e, 104, *useful*.
 Utinam, conj., *would that, O that*, 528.
 Utrum, conj., *whether; utrum—an, whether—or*.
 Uxor, (uxôr) is (f.), *wife*.

V.

Vac-âre (av-, at-), *to be empty, to remain unoccupied*.
 Vag-âri (vagat-), dep., *to wander*.
 Val-êre (valû-), *to avail; plurimum valet, is most powerful*.
 Valid-us, a, um, *strong*.
 Valdê, adv., *greatly, very much*.
 Valetudo, (valetudin) is, 339, *health*.
 Vall-um, i, *rampart*.
 Vast-âre (av-, at-), *to lay waste*.
 Vast-us, a, um, *vast*. [ute.
 Vectigal, (vectigal) is, 325 *tax, trib-*

Veh-êre (vex-, vect-), *to carry, drive*.
 Vehementer, adv., *vehemently*, 215, 2, b.
 Vel, conj., *or*, 519, 2.
 Velle, volui, 592, *to wish, to be able*.
 Velox, (velôc) is, 107, *swift*.
 Venator, (venatôr) is, *hunter*.
 Vener-âri (at-), dep., *to revere, to venerate*.
 Venetus, a, um, *Venetian*.
 Veni-a, æ, *pardon*.
 Vên-îre (vên-, vent-, 426, IV.), *to come*.
 Vent-us, i, *wind*.
 Ver, (ver) is, n., 325, *spring*.
 Verber-âre (av-, at-), *to flog*.
 Verb-um, i, *word*.
 Ver-êri (verit-), dep., *to fear*.
 Verg-êre (vers-), *to incline, tend*.
 Vero, conj., *but, truly, certainly*, 173.
 Verres, (Verr) is, *Verres*.
 Vert-êre (vert-, vers-, 421, b), *to turn*.
 Ver-us, a, um, *true*.
 Versus, prep. with acc., *towards*.
 Vester, tra, trum, *your*, 134.
 Veteran-us, a, um, *veteran*.
 Vetus, (veter) is, 108, R. 2, *old*.
 Vexill-um, i, *standard*.
 Vi-a, æ, *way; Via Sacra, the Sacred Way, a street in Rome*.
 Victori-a, æ, *victory*.
 Vic-us, i, *village*.
 Vid-êre (vid-, vis-, 394, V.), *to see; videri, pass., to seem, appear*.
 Vigilanti-a, æ, *vigilance*.
 Vigil-âre (av-, at-), *to watch*.
 Vigili-a, æ, *watch; de tertia vigilia, about or after the third watch*.
 Viginti, indecl., *twenty*.
 Vil-is, is, e, 104, *cheap, vile*.
 Vinc-êre (vic-, vict-), *to conquer*.
 Vincul-um, i, *bond*.
 Vindex, (vindic) is, *avenger*.
 Vin-um, i, *wine*.
 Viol-âre (av-, at-), *to violate, lay waste*.
 Vir, i, *man*.

Virgill-us, i, *Virgil*.

Virgo, (virgin) is, 339, *virgin*.

Viriliter, adv., *manly, courageously*.

Virtus, (virtut) is, 293, *valour, virtue*.

Vis, vim, vi, 301, 2, *strength, force*;
pl., vires, ium.

Vita, æ, *life*.

Vit-are (av-, at-), *to shun, avoid*.

Viti-um, i, *vice*.

Viv-ere (vix-, vict-) *to live*.

Vix, adv., *scarcely*.

Voc-are (av-, at-), *to call*.

Vol-are (av-, at-), *to fly*.

Volo, *I wish*. (*See velle*.)

Voluntas, (voluntat) is, 293, *will, wish*.

Voluptas, (voluptat) is, 293, *pleasure*.

Volv-ere (volv-, volut-), *to roll*

Vos, *you*, 130.

Vox, (voc) is, 293, *voice*.

Vulg-us, i, n., 62, R. 1, *the common people*.

Vulner-are (av-, at-), *to wound*.

Vulnus, (vulner) is, 344, b, *wound*.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

Ability, facultas, (facultat) is, 293.
Able (to be), posse, quire (queo).
Abode, domicilium, i.
Abound, abundare.
About, circiter (concerning); de, abl.
Abrogate, abrogare.
Absent (to be), abesse.
Abstain from, abstinere (abstinu-, abtent-).
Accuse, incusare.
Accustomed (to be), consuescere (suev-, suet-).
Acquit, absolvère, 421, a.
Act, agere.
Act of kindness, beneficium, i.
Add, addere, 411, c.
Admire, mirari, admirari (dep.).
Admonish, monere.
Adore, adorare.
Adorn, ornare.
Advice, consilium, i.
Advise, monere, admonere.
Ædian, Ædus, i.
Affair, res, 117.
Affection, affectio, 333, B.
Affirm, confirmare.
Afford, præbere, 527.
After, post (with accus.); de (with abl.).
After that, postquam.
Again, rursus; iterum, adv.
Against, contra; adversus (with accus.); against *Cicero*, in *Cicero*-nem.
Age (time of life), ætas, (ætät) is, 293.
Agree, consentire, 427, III.
Agreeable, gratus, a, um (with dat.); it is agreeable, libet, or lubet, 583.

Aid, auxilium, i; to aid, adjuvare. 390.
Alarm, perturbare.
All, omnis, e; cunctus, a, um; in all adv., omnino.
Allowed (it is), licet, 583.
Ally, socius, i.
Almost, fere; pene, adv.
Alone, solus, 194, R. 1; unus
Already, jam, adv.
Also, etiam, adv.
Altogether, omnino, adv.
Although, quamvis, conj.
Always, semper.
Ambassador, legatus, i.
Ambush, insidie, 57, R.
Amiable, amabilis, e, 174.
Among, inter (with acc.).
Ancients (the), veteres; pl. of *vetus*, old.
And, et, que, ac, atque; and not, neque.
Anger, ira, æ.
Animal, animal, 325.
Announce, nuntiare.
Answer, respondere.
Antony, Antonius, i.
Any, ullus, a, um, 194, R. 1; any one, any you please, &c. See 178.
Apart (to be), distare.
Apiece, use the distrib. numerals, 169.
Apply, adhibere (u-, it-).
Appoint, constituere, 421, a.
Approach, adventus, us; to approach, appropinquare: accedere
Archer, sagittarius, i.
Arise (as a storm), cooriri (coort-), dep.
Arm, armare.

Arms, arma, orum.

Army, exercitus, ūs.

Arrange, disponere, 406, b.

Arrival, adventus, ūs.

Arrive at, pervenire, 427, IV.

Art, ars, (art) is, 293.

Artificer, faber, fabri, 77, a.

As, conj., ut; *as*, of what kind, qualis, 184; *as far as to*, usque; *as soon as*, simulatque.

Ashamed (one is), pudet, 579.

Ask, rogare, postulāre.

Assamble, convenire, 427, IV.

Assist, adjuvare, 390.

Assistance, auxilium, i.

Association, societas, (societāt) is,

Assure, confirmare. [293.]

At, ad, apud; *at home*, domi; *at length*, demum.

Athenian, Atheniensis, is.

Athens, Athenæ, arum.

Attack (noun), impetus, ūs (verb), oppugnare.

Austerity, severitas, (severitāt) is, 293.

Auxiliaries, auxilia, orum.

Avail, valere.

Avaricious, avarus, i.

Avoid, vitare.

Await, expectare.

B.

Back, tergum, i.

Bad, malus, a, um, improbus, a, um.

Badly, malè, adv., 215, R.

Band (of men), manus, ūs.

Barbarian, barbarus, i.

Base, turpis, e, 104; *basely*, turpiter, 215, 2, a.

Battle, prælum, i.

Be, esse; *be among*, interesse, 174; *be over*, præesse; *be wanting*, deesse, with dat.

Beam, trabs, (trab) is, 293.

Bear (verb), ferre, 596.

Beast, bestia, æ; *beast of burden*, jumentum, i

Beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum, 77, a
Because, conj., quod, quia, propterea quod.

Becoming (it is), decet, 583.

Bed, cubile, (cubil) is, 312, *bed chamber*, cubiculum, i.

Before, prep., ante (acc.); adv., antea; *before that*, antequam.

Beg, rogare, orare.

Begin, incipere, 416, c; *I begin*, cœpi, 611.

Beginning, initium, i.

Behold, spectare.

Behooves (it), oportet, 583.

Belgian, Belga, æ.

Believe, credere, 411, c.

Belong, pertinere, 394, I.

Benevolent, benevolus, a, um.

Benevolence, benevolentia, æ.

Beseech, obsecrare.

Besiege, oppugnare.

Best, optimus, a, um, 370.

Betake one's self, se recipere, 418, æ.

Better, melior, 370.

Between, inter.

Bind, obstringere.

Bird, avis (avis), 300.

Bit, frænum, i; pl., i and a, 396.

Bite, mordere, 395, IV.

Black, niger, gra, grum, 77, a.

Blame, incusare, vituperare.

Blood, sanguis, (sanguin) is (m.).

Blooming, florens, (florent) is, 107.

Boast, prædicare.

Body, corpus, (corpor) is, 344.

Bond, vinculum, i.

Book, liber, bri.

Booty, præda, æ.

Born (to be), nasci (nat), dep.

Boundary, finis, (fin) is (m.).

Boy, puer, i.

Brave, fortis, e; *bravely*, fortiter 215, 2.

Bruery, virtus, (virtut) is, 293.

Break through, perfringere (page 275); perrumpere, 666, V., a.

Bridge, pons, (pont) is, 295, R. 1.
Bring, ducere, agere; *bring back*, re-ducere; *bring back word*, renuntiare; *bring to pass*, perficere; *bring together*, cogere, 416, b.
Britain, Britannia, æ; *Briton*, Britannus, i.
Broad, latus, a, um.
Brother, frater, (fratr) is.
Build, ædificare; *build a nest*, nidificare.
Bull, taurus, i.
Burn, incendere; *burn up*, exurere, 545.
Burden, onus, (oner) is, 344.
Burst into, irrumpere, 666, V., a.
Business, negotium, i.
But, sed, autem.
Buy, emere; *buy up*, coemere.
By, prep. with abl., a or ab, 93, 2.
By night, noctu, adv.

C.

Cæsar, Cæsar, (Cæsar) is.
Call, vocare; *to name*, appellare; *to be called*, nominari, appellari.
Call together, convocare.
Call-upon, invocare.
Camp, castra, orum.
Can (to be able), posse, 587; *I cannot*, non possum, nequeo.
Captive, captivus, i.
Care (noun), cura, æ; (verb), curare.
Carefully, diligenter, studiose.
Carry, portare, vehere; *carry on*, gerere, 401, 4, a.
Carthage, Carthago, (Carthagin) is.
Cassius, Cassius, i.
Casticus, Casticus, i.
Catiline, Catilina, æ.
Cause, causa, æ.
Cautious, cautus, a, um.
Cavalry, equitatus, ùs; *belonging to cavalry*, equestris, e, 104.
Celebrate, celebrare.
Celt, Celta, æ.

Censure, incusare.
Centurion, centurio, (centuriōn) is.
Certain, certus, a, um; *a certain one*, quidam, 178.
Certainly, adv., certè: profecto, vero.
Chain, vinculum, i.
Change (noun), commutatio, (commutation) is; (verb), mutare, commutare.
Champ, mordere, 395, IV.
Chide, increpare, 390.
Chief, princeps, (princip) is, 107.
Child, infans, (infant) is, 107; *children*, liberi, orum.
Choose, deligere, 666, V., a.
Christ, Christus, i.
Cicero, Cicero, (Cicerōn) is.
Citadel, arx, (arc) is, 293.
Citizen, civis, (civ) is, c, 25, a.
City, urbs, (urb) is, 293.
Cloud, nubes, (nub) is, 300; *cloud of dust*, vis pulveris.
Cohort, cohors, (cohort) is, 293.
Cold, frigidus, a, um; (noun), frigus, (frigor) is, 344.
Collect, colligere (leg-, lect-); *co-gere* (coeg-, coact-); *collect corn*, frumentari, dep.; *collect into a flock*, congregare.
Colour, color, (colōr) is, 319.
Come, venire, 427, IV.; *come near*, appropinquare; *come to*, pervenire; *come together*, convenire.
Coming, adventus, ùs.
Command, imperare, with dat.
Commander, imperator, (imperatōr) is, 319.
Commit, committere; *commit suicide*, mortem sibi consciscere.
Common, communis, e, 104.
Common-people, plebs, (pleb) is, 293.
Companion, socius, i; *comes*, (comit) is.
Compel, cogere, 416, b.
Complain, queri (quest) dep.
Complete, conficere.

Concerning (prep. with abl.), de.
Concerns (it), interest, refert, 584, d.
Condemn, damnare, condemnare, 348.
Conference, colloquium, i.
Confess, fatēri, dep.
Confines, fines, pl. of finis.
Conflict, congressus, ūs.
Confirm, confirmare.
Confound, perturbare.
Congratulate, gratulari, dep.
Conquer, vincere (vic-, vict-); superare.
Conqueror, victor, (victor) is, 319.
Conspiracy, conjuratio, (conjuratiō) is, 333, R.
Consul, consul, (consul) is.
Consult, consulere (consulu-, consult-).
Contemplate, contemplari, dep.
Contend, contendere.
Content, contentus, a, um (with abl).
Continuous, continens, (continent) is, 107.
Continuance, continuatio, (continuatīō) is.
Corn, frumentum, i.
Council, concilium, i.
Counsel, consilium, i.
Course, cursus, ūs.
Covetous, cupidus, a, um.
Cow, vacca, æ.
Cowardice, ignavia, æ.
Creak, crepare, 390.
Create, creare.
Crime, crimen, (crimin) is, 344, a.
Cross over, transire, trajicere.
Crow, corvus, i.
Crown, corona, æ.
Cry out, exclamare.
Cultivation, cultus, ūs; humanitas.
Cup, poculum, i.
Cure, sanare.
Custom, mos, (mor) is, 331, b.
Cut down, rescindere (rescid-, resciss-).

Cut to pieces, cœdere, 411, b.
Cyrus, Cyrus, i.

D.

Daily, adj., quotidianus, a, um; adv., quotidie.
Dance, saltare.
Danger, periculum, i.
Danube, Danubius, i.
Dare, audere (ausus sum).
Dart, telum, i; pilum, i.
Daughter, filia, æ.
Day, dies, ei, 116, R., by day; interdiu, adv.; to-day, hodie, adv.
Dragon, draco, (dracō) is.
Dead, mortuus, a, um.
Dear, carus, a, um.
Death, mors, (mort) is, 293.
Deceive, fallere (fefell-, fals-).
Decide on, statuere.
Decree (verb), decernere (decrev-, decret-); (noun), decretum, i; decree of the senate, senatus consultum.
Deep, altus, a, um.
Defeat, pellere, 411, b.
Defend, defendere, 421, c.
Defence, munitio, 333.
Defender, vindex, (vindic) is, 306.
Defiles, angustias, arum, 57, R.
Delay, cunctari (dep-); active, tardare (to retard).
Deliberate, deliberare.
Delight, delectare.
Delight (with), libenter, adv.
Demand, postulare, 411, a; postulare, imperare, 390; demand back, repetere.
Deny, negare.
Depart, discedere, 401, 3, b.
Depart out of, excedere.
Departure, discessus, ūs.
Dependant, cliens, (client) is, c.
Descend, descendere.
Desert, deserere, 406, a; a desert, desertum, i.

Deserter, perfuga, æ.
Desire, cupiditas, (cupiditāt) is, (verb), cupēre (io): studium, i.
Desirous, cupidus, a, um.
Despair (verb), desperāre; (noun), desperatio, 333, R.
Despise, spernere, 406, III., a: contemnere.
Destroy, delere, 394, II.
Destruction, interitus, ūs.
Determine, constituere, statuere.
Devoid, expers, 336.
Die, mori, or mori (mortu-), dep.
Difference (it makes no), nihil interest, nihil refert.
Different, diversus, a, um; alius, 194, R. 1.
Difficult, difficilis, e, 104.
Dignity, dignitas, (dignitat) is, 293.
Diligence, diligentia, æ.
Diligent, diligens, (diligent) is, 107; *diligently*, adv., diligenter.
Diminish, minuire, diminuire.
Direct (of a ship), gubernare.
Disagree, dissentire, 427, III.
Discipline, disciplina, æ.
Discomfit, fugare.
Discover, invenire, 427, IV.
Discourse, disserere (disseru-, dissert-).
Discretion, consilium, i.
Dismiss, dimittere (mis-, miss-).
Displease, displicere (displicu-, displicit-), with dat., 161, R.
Dispute, disputare.
Dissolve, dissolvere, 421, a.
Distant (to be), distare.
Distribute, distribuere, 406, a; *arrange*, disponere.
District, pagus, i.
Divide, dividere, 401, 3, a; *divide among*, distribuere, 423, c.
Divulge, enuntiare.
Do, agere, facere.
Dock-yard, navale, (naval) is, 312.
Dog, canis (can) is.

Door, foris, (for) is, 300.
Double, duplicare.
Doubt, dubitare.
Doubtful, incertus, a, um; *calculus* a, um.
Dove, columba, æ.
Draw, trahere (trax-, traxi-); *duce* (dux-, duct-); *draw up*, instruere, 401, 2; *draw as a sword*, stringere, 401; *draw out*, educere.
Dread, formidare.
Drive, agere; *drive back*, repellere; *drive on*, or *together*, compellere.
Druids, Druides, um, pl.
Duty, munus, (muner) is, 344.

E.

Each, quisque, 178; *omnis*, e; *each of the two*, uterque.
Eagle, aquila, æ.
Earth, terra, æ.
Easily, facile (adv.).
East, Oriens.
Easy, facilis, e; *very easy*, perfacilis.
Educate, educare.
Egypt, Egyptus, i (f.).
Eighty, octoginta.
Eloquent, facundus, a, um; *disertus*, a, um; eloquens, 107.
Embark (upon), conscendere, 309.
Embrace, amplecti (amplex-), dep.
Emperor, imperator, (imperator) is, 319.
Employ, uti (us-), dep., with abl. adhibere.
End, finis, (fin) is (m.).
Endeavour, conari (conat-), dep.
Endure, durare; *to bear*, tolerare.
Enemy, hostis, (host) is, c.
Enjoin upon, precipere.
Enmity, inimicitia, æ.
Enough, satis, adv.
Enrol, conscribere.
Entreat, rogare.
Equanimity (with), sequo animo.
Erect, communire.

Err, errare.
Especially, adv., præsertim.
Establish, confirmare.
Eternity, æternitas, (æternitat) is, 293.
Even up to, usque ad.
Ever, unquam.
Everlasting, sempiternus, a, um.
Every, omnia, e, 104.
Evil, malum, i.
Evil-deed, maleficium, i.
Example, exemplum, i.
Excel, præstare (præstit-), with dat.
Excellent, præclarus, a, um; præstans, 107.
Excite, excitare.
Excuse, excusatio, 333, R.
Exercise, exercere.
Exhort, hortari, dep.
Expedient (it is), expedit, 583.
Expel, expellere.
Expense, sumptus, ūs; *at his own expense*, sumptu suo.
Eye, oculus, i.

F.

Fable, fabula, æ.
Faith, fides, ei.
Fail, deficere.
Fall, cadere, 411, b.
Fame, fama, æ.
Family of slaves, familia, æ.
Far, longe, adv.
Farm (as revenues), redimere.
Farmer, agricola.
Father, pater, (patr) is.
Father-in-law, socer, i.
Fault, culpa, æ; peccatum, i; *find fault with*, culpâre, incusare.
Favour, venia, æ; (verb), favere, 395, V.
Fear, timor, (timor) is, 319; (verb), timere, metuere.
Feather, pluma, æ.
Fell (cut down), cadere, 413, .
Few, pauci, æ, a; *very few*, perpauci.

Fidelity, fides, ei.
Field, ager, gri.
Fierce, ferox, (feroc) is, 107; *atrox*, 107.
Fifth, quintus, a, um.
Fight, pugnare.
Figure, figura, æ.
Fill, implere; *fill up*, complere 395, II.
Finally, denique, adv.
Find, invenire, 427, IV.; *find out*, reperire, 427, V.
Find fault with, incusare.
Finish, conficere.
Fire, ignis, (ign) is (m.).
Firmament, cælum, i.
First, primus, a, um.
Fish, piscis, (pisc) is (m.).
Fit for, idoneus, a, um, with dat.
Five, quinque; *five at a time*, quini, 189.
Flag, vexillum, i.
Flame, flamma, æ.
Flee, fugere (io), 416, c.
Fleet, classis, (class) is, 300.
Flesh, caro, (carn) is (f.).
Flight, fuga, æ.
Flock, grex, (greg) is (m.); *in flocks*, gregatim, adv.
Flog, verberare.
Flow, fluere; *flow together*, confluere, 401, 2, 422.
Flower, flos, (flor) is, 331, b.
Fly, volare.
Follow sequi (secut-), dep.
Folly, stultitia, æ; ineptiæ, arum, 57, R.
Fool, stultus, i; *foolish*, stultus, a, um.
Foot, pes, (ped) is (m.).
Foot-soldier, pedes, (pedit) is.
For, conj., enim, etenim; *for my sake*, mea causa.
Force, vis, vim, vi, 301, 1; *forces* (troops), copiæ, arum, 57, a.
Foreign, alienus, a, um.

Forest, sylva, æ.
Forever, in æternum.
Forget, oblivisci, with gen.
Form, forma, æ.
Fortification, munītio, (munition) is.
Fortify, munire.
Fortunate, fortunatus, a, um.
Fortune, fortuna, æ.
Forum, forum, i.
Four, quattuor; *four apiece*, 189.
Founder, conditor, 319.
Fountain, fons, (font) is (m.).
Frail, fragilis, e, 104.
Free from (to be), carere, 348.
Friend, amicus, i.
Friendship, amicitia, æ.
Frighten, terrere; *frighten completely*, perterrere.
From, a, de; *from every side*, undique, adv.; *from my boyhood*, a puero.
Frugality, parsimonia, æ.
Fruit, fructus, ūs.
Full, plenus, a, um, 348, b.
Future, futurus, a, um.

G.

Galba, Galba, æ.
Gain, potiri, 209; *gain for another*, conciliare.
Game, ludus, i.
Garden, hortus, i.
Garrison, præsidium, i.
Gate, porta, æ.
Gather, colligere, 416, b.
Gaul, Gallia, æ; *the Gauls*, Galli, orum.
General, imperator, 319.
German, Germanus, a, um.
Get sight of, conspiciere (conspex-, conspect-).
Gift, donum, i.
Girl, puella, æ.
Give, dare, 387, III.
Give largess, largiri (it-), dep.
Glanz, splendor, 319.

Glory, gloria, æ.
Go, ire, 605; *go straight*, pergere; *go away*, discedere, 401, 3, b; *go forward*, procedere; *go forth*, or out, exire.
Goad, concitare.
God, Deus, i, 62, R. 3.
Gold, aurum, i.
Good, bonus, a, um; *good deed*, beneficium; *good-will*, voluntas, 293.
Govern, gubernare.
Grant (verb), concedere, 401, 3, b dare: (noun), concessus, ūs.
Great, magnus, a, um; *comp.*, major; *superl.*, maximus.
Greatly, valde.
Greatness, magnitudo, 339.
Greek, Græcus, a, um.
Grief, mæror, 319; luctus, ūs, 113, N.
Grieve, dolere, it grieves one, piget, 579.
Guardian, custos, (custod) is, c, 25, a.
Guest, hospes, (hospit) is, c, 25, a.
Guide, dux, (duc) is.

H.

Hail, grando, (grandin) is, 339.
Halt, consistere.
Hand, manus, ūs (f.).
Hannibal, Hannibal, (Hannibal) is.
Happen, accidere; it happens, accidit, 580.
Happily, beatē.
Happy, beatus, a, um; felix, 107.
Harass, lacerare, 406, III., b.
Harbinger, prænuntia, æ.
Harbour, portus, ūs.
Hard, durus, a, um.
Hasten, festinare, contendere.
Hate (to), odisse, 611.
Hatred, odium, i.
Have, habere (habu-, habit-). *I have a book*, est mihi liber, 125.
He, is, hic, ille.
Headlong, præceps, (præcipit) is 10

Heal, sanare.

Health, valetudo, 339.

Hear, audire.

Heart, cor, (cord) is (n.).

Heaven, cælum, i.

Heavy, gravis, e, 104.

Help, auxilium, i.

Helvetian, Helvetius, a, um.

Herald, præco, (præcon) is.

Herb, herba, æ.

Hesitate, dubitare.

High, altus, a, um; *higher*, superior, comp. of superus, 370.

Hill, collis, is (m.).

Hillock, tumulus, i.

Hinder, impedire, prohibere.

His, suus, a, um: ejus.

History, historia, æ.

Hold, tenere, obtinere: *hold back*, retinere.

Home (at), domi, gen. of domus.

Honest, probus, a, um.

Honour, honor, 319; (verb), colere (colu, cult-).

Honourable, honestus, a, um.

Hope, spes, ei.

Horn, cornu, 112.

Horned, corniger, a, um, 77, b.

Horse, equus, i.

Horse-soldier, eques, (equit) is.

Hostage, obses, (obsid) is, c, 25, a.

Hour, hora, æ.

House, domus, i and us (f), 112, 3.

Household, familia, æ.

How great, how many? quantus, 186, obs.; *however great*, quantuscunque, 184; *how long*, quamdiu, adv.

Humanity, humanitas, (humanitat) is, 293.

Hunger, fames, (fam) is, 300.

Hurl, conjicere, 416, c (conject-, con-ject-).

Hurt, nocere.

I

I, ego, 120.

Ides, Idus, iduum (f.).

If, si.

Ignorance, ignoratio, 339

Ignorant, ignarus, a, um; *to be ignorant of*, ignorare, nescire.

Illustrious, clarus, a, um; præclarus, a, um.

Image, imago, 339.

Immediately, statim.

Immense, immensus, a, um.

Immortal, immortalis, e, 104.

Impious, impius, a, um.

Implore, implorare.

In, prep., in, with abl.

Incessant, continens, (continent) is, 107.

Increase, augere (aux-, auct-).

Incredible, incredibilis, e, 104.

Indeed, quidem.

Indolence, inertia, æ; ignavia, æ.

Indolent, ignavus, a, um.

Induce, inducere, adducere

Indulge, indulgere, dat.

Infant, infans, (infant) is, c.

Influence, auctoritas.

Inform any one, aliquem certiores facere.

Inhabitant, incola, æ.

Injure, violare.

Injury, injuria, æ; incommodum, i

Innocence, innocentia, æ.

Insect, insectum, i.

Instead of, pro (prep. with abl.).

Instigate, instigare.

In the mean time, interea.

It interests, interest.

Intrust, committere (with et al.).

Invoke, invocare.

Ireland, Hibernia, æ.

Iron, ferrum, i.

Island, insula, æ.

Italy, Italia, æ.

Itself, 159.

J.

Javelin, telum, i; tragula, æ.
Join, jungere (junct-, junct-); *join together*, conjungere.
Journey, iter, (itiner) is (n.).
Junior, junior, 370.
Jupiter, 351.
Just, justus, a, um; *just so many*, totidem.
Justice, justitia, æ.

K.

Keep, tenere, servare.
Kind, benignus, a, um, with dat.: suavis, e, 335.
Kindle, excitare.
King, rex, (reg) is.
Kingdom, regnum, i.
Kill, occidere, interficere, 390.
Know, scire, noscere, 525; cognoscere: *not to know*, nescire.
Knowledge, scientia, æ.

L.

Labour (noun), labor, 319; (verb), laborare.
Lamb, agnus, i.
Land, terra; *by land and sea*, terra marique.
Language, lingua, æ: sermo, 331.
Large, magnus, a, um.
Last (to), durare.
Latin, Latinus, a, um.
Laugh, ridere; *laughter*, risus, ūs.
Law, jus, (jur) is (n.).
Lawful (it is), licet.
Lay aside, deponere, 406, b.
Lay waste, populari (at-), dep.
Lead, ducere (dux-, duct-); *lead back*, reducere; *lead out*, educere; *lead together*, conducere; *lead over or across*, transducere, 113, II.
Leader, dux, (duc) is.
Leaf, folium, i.
League, fœdus, (fœder) is, 344.

Leap down, desilire, 428.
Learn, discere, 411, a: cognoscere.
Leave, relinquere.
Legion, legio, (legion) is, 333, R.
Letter, epistola, æ; litteræ, arum, 58, N.
Level, planus, a, um; æquus, a, um.
Levy, conscribere.
Lieutenant, legatus, i.
Lightning, fulgur, (fulgur) is, 325.
Life, vita, æ.
Like, similis, e, 104 (with dat.).
Line of battle, acies, ei.
Lion, leo, (leon) is.
Literature, litteræ, arum, 57, R.
Little, parvus, a, um.
Live, vivere.
Living-being, animans, (animant) is.
Lofty, altus, a, um.
Long, longus, a, um; adv., longe; *a long time*, diu.
Look at, intuëri, dep.
Lose, amittere, perdere.
Lot, sors, (sort) is, 293.
Love (verb), amare, diligere; (noun), amor, 319.
Low, humilis, e, 104.
Lycurgus, Lycurgus.

M.

Magnanimous, magnanimus, a, um.
Maid-servant, ancilla, æ.
Maintain, alere.
Make, facere, 199; *make war*, bellare; *make war upon*, bellum inferre, with dat.; *make an attack*, impetum facere.
Maker, faber, bri.
Maltreat, violare.
Man, homo, vir.
Many, multus, a, um.
Marble, marmor, 325.
Master (of school), magister, tri; (of slaves), herus, dominus.
Matters (it), interest, refert. 583

Measure, metiri, 206.

Medicine, medicina, æ.

Mediterranean, Mediterraneus, a, um.

Meet, convenire.

Memory, memoria, æ.

Merchant, mercator, 319.

Messenger, nuntius, i.

Metal, metallum, i.

Mid-day, meridies, ei.

Middle, medius, a, um.

Migrate, migrare.

Mile, millia (passuum), 191, b.

Military command, imperium, i.

Milk, lac, (lact) is (n.).

Mind, mens, (ment) is (f.); animus, i.

Mine, meus, a, um.

Minerva, Minerva, æ.

Miserable, miser, a, um, 77, b.

Mitigate, mitigare.

Moderation, modus, i.

Money, pecunia, æ.

Moon, luna, æ.

More, plus, pluris: adv., magis.

Mortal, mortalis, e, 104.

Most, plurimus, a, um; *most men*, plerique, 195.

Mountain, mons, (mont) is (m.).

Move, movere.

Much, multus, a, um; *much money*, magna pecunia.

Multitude, multitudo, 339.

My, meus, a, um.

N.

Naked, nudus, a, um.

Name, nomen, (nomin) is, 344, a; *to name*, nominare.

Narrow, angustus, a, um.

Nation, natio, 333, R.; gens, 293.

Nature, natura, æ.

Navigation, navigatio, 333, R.

Near, prope, juxta; *nearest to*, proximius, a, um.

Neglect, negligere.

Neighbouring, finitimus, a, um: proximus, a, um.

Neither, conj.—*nor*, nec—*neque* *neither* (of two), neuter, tra, trum, 194, R. 1.

Net, rete, (ret) is.

Never, nunquam (adv.).

Nevertheless, tamen, conj.

New, novus, a, um.

Next, posterus, a, um, 118; proximus, 371.

Night, nox, (noct) is, 293.

Nine, novem.

Ninth, nonus, a, um.

Nobility, nobilitas, (nobilitat) is 293.

Noble, nobilis, e, 104.

Nobody, nemo, (nemin) is, c.

Noise, clamor, 319.

No one, nullus, a, um, 194, R. 1

Not, nōn; *with imper.*, nē.

Nothing, nihil.

Notice, (see) conspiciere.

Nourish, alere.

Novelty, novitas, (novitat) is, 293.

November, November, bris.

Nurse, nutrix, (nutric) is, 293

O.

Oath, iurjurandum, 351, 4.

Obey, parere (with dat.).

Obscure, obscurare.

Obtain booty, prædari (dep.)

Obviously, prorsus.

Ocean, oceanus, i.

Of, de.

Of one's own accord, ultro.

Old, vetus, (veter) is, 107.

Old man, senex.

Old age, senectus, 293.

On the other side of, trans (acc.); *on account of*, ob, with acc.

One, unus, a, um, 194, 1.

Open, apertus, a, um; *to open*, aperire.

Opinion, opinio, 33?, R.; sententia, æ.

Opportunity of (with gerund in gen.), spatium, i.
Oracle, oraculum, i.
Oration, oratio, 333, R.
Orator, orator, 319.
Order, ordo, (ordin) is (m.); *to order*, jubere.
Orgetorix, Orgetorix, (Orgetorig) is.
Origin, origo, 339.
Other, alius, a, ud, 194, R. 1. ●
Otherwise, aliter.
Ought (one), oportet, 583
Our, noster, tra, trum.
Out of, e, or ex (abl).
Overcome, superare.
Ox, bos, 351, 2.

P.

Pain, dolor, 319.
Paltry, vilis, e, 104.
Pardon, venia, æ.
Parents, parentes, ium.
Part, pars, (part) is.
Pass, iter facere, 210.
Passage, iter, (itiner) is (n.).
Patience, patientia, æ.
Patiently, patienter, adv.
Pay, pendere.
Peace, pax, (pac) is, 293.
Peninsula, peninsula, æ.
People, populus, i.
Perceive, animadvertere.
Perchance, forsitan, forte, adv.
Persian, Persa, æ.
Persuade, suadere, persuadere.
Phalanx, phalanx, (phalang) is.
Philosopher, philosophus, i.
Philosophize, philosophari, dep.
Pilot, gubernator, 319.
Pious, pius, a, um.
Pirate, praedo, 335.
Pity, miserere; *I pity*, me miseret, 579.
Place, locus, i; pl., i and a: *to place*, ponere.
Place into. imponere

Placid, placidus, a, um.
Plain, planus, a, um; æquus, a, um:
a plain, æquor, 327.
Plan, consilium, i.
Plant, planta, æ; *to plant*, serere.
Plato, Plato, 334.
Pleading, dictio, 333, R.
Pleasant, jucundus, a, um.
Please, placere (with dat.); *it pleases*, placet, 583.
Pleasure, voluptas, (tat) is, 293.
Plough, arare.
Plunder, diripere: praedari, dep., 491
Poet, poeta, æ (m.).
Pompey, Pompeius, i.
Poor, ægens, inops, pauper, 107.
Port, portus, ùs.
Post, statio, 333, R.
Possess one's self of, potiri (with gen. or abl.).
Power, vis, vim, vi, 301, 1; potestas, (tat) is, 293.
Powerful, potens, (potent) is, 107.
Praise, laus, (laud) is, 293; *to praise*, laudare.
Prayers, preces, um, pl. of prex.
Precept, præceptum, i.
Preceptor, præceptor, 319.
Precious, carus, a, um.
Prefer, antepondere.
Prepare, parare.
Present (to be), adesse; interesse, 267.
Preserve, servare; *preserve moderation*, modum habere.
Preside over, præesse.
Prevail upon, permovere.
Prevent, prohibere, obstare.
Principle, principium, i.
Prisoner, captivus, i.
Private information, indicium, i.
Proceed, pergere, 447.
Proclaim, præco, 331, a.
Procure, comparare.
Promise, fides, ei; *to promise*, sperare. 395. IV.

Property, res familiaris : familia, s.
Providence, Providentia, s.
Province, provincia, s.
Prudence, prudentia, s.
Prudent, prudens, (prudent) is, 107.
Ptolemy, Ptolemæus, i.
Punish, punire.
Punishment, poena, s : supplicium, i.
Pursue, persequi (dep.).
Put-to-flight, fugare : dare in fugam.
Pyrenees, Pyrenæi (montes).
Pythagoras, Pythagoras, s.

Q.

Queen, regina, s.
Quickly, cito, adv.

R.

Race, genus, (gener) is, 344 ; gens, (gent) is.
Rain, imber, bris.
Raise, tollere : excitare.
Rank, ordo, (ordin) is (m.).
Rapidly, celeriter, adv.
Rashly, temere.
Rashness, temeritas, (temeritat) is, 293.
Reach, pervenire.
Read, legere.
Reap, metere.
Reason, ratio, 333, R.
Rebellion, rebellio, 333, R.
Recall, revocare.
Receive, accipere ; receive back, recipere.
Reckon, ducere.
Recollection, memoria, s.
Red, ruber, bra, brum, 77, a.
Refrain, temperare.
Refuse, recusare.
Reign, regnum, i ; to reign, regnare.
Rejoice, gaudere.
Relate, narrare : commemorare.
Relieve, levare.
Religion, religio, 333, R.

Remain, manere.
Remains, reliquie, arum, 57, R.
Remove, removere.
Renew, renovare : reintegrare.
Repair, reficere.
Repel, propulsare (ward off).
Repent, poenitere ; I repent, me poenitet, 579.
Repress, opprimere.
Reprove, increpare.
Republic, respublica, 351, 3.
Resist, resistere, with dat.
Restrain, retinere.
Retreat, recedere.
Return (restore), reddere ; (go back), revertere, or reverti.
Revenue, vectigal, (vectigal) is.
Revere, venerare.
Revoke, revocare, abrogare.
Reward, præmium, i.
Rhine, Rhenus, i.
Rhetoric, rhetorica, s.
Rich, dives, (divit) is, 107.
Riches, divitiæ, arum, 57, R.
Ride (on horseback), equitare.
Right, jus, (jur) is ; rightly, jure (abl. of jus) : recte, adv.
Rise, oriri, dep.
River, fluvius, i ; flumen, (flamin) is.
Robber, latro, 331, a.
Rock, petra, s.
Roll, volvere.
Roman, Romanus, a, um.
Rome, Roma, s.
Rosa, rosa, s.
Rouse up, excitare.
Rout, fugare, pellere : fundere, 416, a.
Royal-power, regnum, i.
Rule, regere : imperare, with dat.
Run, currere.

S.

Sacred, sanctus, a, um : sacer, crum ; sacred rites, sacræ, orum ;
Sacred Way, Via Sacra ; *Sacred Mount*, Mons Sacer.

Sadness, tristitia, æ: mœror, 319.
Safe, salvus, a, um; tutus, a, um.
Safety, salus, (salut) is, 293.
Sailor, nauta, æ.
Sake—for the sake of, causa, abl., 135, II., b.
Same, is, ea, id; *the very same*, idem, 150.
Sand, aridum, i.
Say, dicere; *I say*, aio, inquam.
Scarcely, vix.
Scatter, spargere.
Scholar, discipulus, i.
School, schola, æ.
Scout, explorator, 319.
Sea, mare, 312; æquor, 325.
Secede, secedere.
Second, secundus, a, um.
Sedition, seditio, 333, R.
See, videre; (notice), conspiciere.
Seek, quærere.
Seize, occupare; *seize up*, arripere.
Self, ipse.
Senate, senatus, ùs.
Senate-house, curia, æ.
Senator, senator, 319.
Send, mittere; *send away*, dimittere; *send for*, arcessere.
Senior, senior, (senior) is, 167 (comp. of senex), 370.
Separate, separare: dividere.
Sepulchre, sepulchrum, i.
Sequanian, Sequanus, i.
Serve (worship), colere.
Set (as heavenly bodies), occidere.
Set out, proficisci; *set forth*, exponere; *set up*, proponere.
Setting (of heavenly bodies), occasus, ùs.
Seven, septem; *seventh*, septimus, a, um.
Seventy, septuaginta.
Severe, gravis, e, 104.
Severity, severitas, (severitât) is, 293.
Shadow, umbra, æ.

Sharp, acutus, a, um.
Sharply, acriter, adv.
Shine, micare, 389, ; *shine forth*, emicare.
Ship, navis, 300.
Shore, littus, (littor) is, 344.
Short, brevis, e, 104.
Show, monstrare, ostendere; (noun) species, ei.
Shower, imber, bris.
Shun, vitare.
Shut, claudere.
Sick, æger, gra, grum.
Sign, signum, i.
Sight, conspectus, ùs; *in sight of*, conspectu.
Silent (to be), tacere.
Silver, argentum, i.
Similar to, similis (dat.).
Sin, peccatum, i; *to sin*, peccare.
Since, quum, quoniam.
Sing, cantare.
Singing, cantus, ùs.
Sister, soror, (sorôr) is (f.).
Sit, sedere, 394, V.
Six, sex; *sixth*, sextus, a, um.
Slave, servus, i.
Slay, occidere, interficere.
Slayer, interfecto, 319.
Sleep, somnus, i; *to sleep*, dormire.
Slinger, funditor, 319.
Small, parvus, a, um.
Snatch up, arripere.
So, ita, tam; *so great*, tantus; *so long*, tamdiu; *so many*, tot.
Socrates, Socrates, is.
Soldier, miles, (milit) is.
Some (persons), nonnulli.
Somebody, *some*, 178; *some one*, all quis.
Sometimes, interdum, nonnunquam.
Somewhat great, aliquantus, 184.
Son, filius, i.
Son-in-law, gener, i.
Song, carmen, 344, a.
Soul, animus, i.

Spain, Hispania, æ.
Spaniard, Hispanus, i.
Spare, parcere (dat.).
Sparta, Sparta, æ.
Speak, dicere, loqui.
Speech, sermo, 331.
Spend, consumere.
Spiritedly, acriter. *
Splendid, splendidus, a, um.
Spoil, praeda, æ.
Spur, calcar, 325.
Stag, cervus, i.
Stain, maculare.
Stand, stare; *stand in the way*, obstare.
Standard, signum, i.
Star, sidus, (sider) is, 344; stella, æ.
State, civitas, (civitat) is; republica, 351, 3.
Station, statio, 333, R; *to station*, constituere, collocare.
Stimulate, inducere.
Stir up, instigare.
Stoic, Stoicus, i.
Stone, lapis, (lapid) is (m.).
Stormy, turbidus, a, um.
Strange, novus, a, um.
Strength, vis, 301; robur, 344.
Strengthen, confirmare.
Strive after, persequi, 206.
Strong, validus, a, um.
Strong desire, cupiditas, 293.
Study, studium, i.
Subdue, subigere.
Succour, subsidium, i.
Such, talis, e, 184.
Sudden, repentinus, a, um.
Suddenly, subito, adv.
Sufficiently, satis.
Sum of money, pecunia, æ.
Summer, æstas, (æstat) is, 293.
Sun, sol, (söl) is (m.).
Sup, cœnare.
Superior, superior, oris.
Support, alere.

Surrender, deditio, 333, R.
Surround, circumvenire; circumstare, 391; cingere, 401, 2.
Sure, certus, a, um.
Suspicion, suspicio, 333, R.
Sustain, sustinere.
Swallow, hirundo, 339.
Sweet, dulcis, e, 104.
Swift, celer, velox, 107.
Swiftly, celeriter, 217.
Swim, natare; *swim across*, transnare.
Sword, gladius, i.
Syracuse, Syracusæ, arum.

T.

Take, sumere; *take away*, eripere; *take back*, recipere; *take captive*, capere; *take care of*, curare; *take by storm*, expugnare; *take possession of*, occupare.
Talent, ingenium, i.
Tame, domare.
Teach, docere.
Teacher, magister, tri.
Tear, lacryma, æ.
Tell, dicere, nuntiare.
Tempest, procella, æ: tempestas.
Temple, templum, i.
Tenacious, tenax, (tenac) is, 107.
Tender, tener, a, um.
Tent, pellis, 322.
Tenth, decimus, a, um.
Terrify, terrere.
Territory, finis (m.).
Than, quam.
That (pron.), ille, is, iste.
That, conj., *in order that*, ut; *that not*, ne.
Themselves, sui, 142.
Then, tum, adv.
There, ibi.
Thick, densus, a, um.
Thine, tuus, a, um.
Thing, res, rei; *this thing*, hoc; *these things*, hæc.

Think, putāre, cogitāre, existimāre, sentire, censere.
Third, tertius, a, um.
Thirst, sitis, 300.
Thirteen, tredecim.
Thirty, triginta.
This, hic, hæc, hoc.
Thither, eo.
Three, tres, ia.
Through, per (prep. with acc.).
Throw, jacere; *throw before*, projicere.
Thunder (verb), tonare.
Thus, ita.
Thy, tuus, a, um.
Tiber, Tiberis, is.
Time, tempus, (tempor) is, 344.
Timid, timidus, a, um.
To, ad (prep. with acc.).
To-day, hodie.
Together, una (adv.).
Toil, labor, 319: opera, æ.
To-morrow, cras (adv.).
Tongue, lingua, æ.
Too much, nimius, a, um.
Tooth, dens, (dent) is (m.).
Top of, summus, 297, a.
Touch, tangere; *touch upon*, attingere.
Tower, turris, 300: castellum, i.
Town, oppidum, i.
Townsman, oppidanus, i.
Treaty, fœdus, (fœder) is, 344.
Tree, arbor, (arbor) is (f.).
Trial, judicium, i.
Tribune, tribunus, i.
Tributary, stipendiarius, a, um.
Tribute, stipendium, i.
True, verus, a, um.
Truce, indutiæ, arum, 57, R.
Trust to, credere (with dat.).
Turbid, turbidus, a, um.
Turn, vertere.
Twenty, viginti.
Two-a-piece, bini, 189.

U.

Ulysses, Ulysses, is.
Uncertain, incertus, a, um.
Under, sub, prep., 323.
Understand, intelligere.
Undertake, suscipere.
Unfriendly, inimicus, a, um.
Unjust, injustus, a, um.
Unless, nisi (conj.).
Unmindful of, immemor (with gen.).
Until, donec, dum (conj.).
Use, usus, ūs; *to use*, uti, dep. abl., 316, b.
Useful, utilis, e, 104.

V.

Vacant (to be), vacare.
Vain—in vain, frustra (adv.).
Valour, virtus, (virtut) is, 293.
Value, pretium, i: *to value*, aestimare.
Vast, vastus, a, um.
Vaunt, ostentare.
Vehemently, vehementer (adv.).
Venetian, Venetus, i.
Very, valde, admodum; *very easy* perfacilis, e; *very few*, perpauci
very near, proximus.
Vice, vitium, i.
Victory, victoria, æ.
Vile, vilis, e, 104.
Village, vicus, i.
Violate, violare.
Virgin, virgo, 339.
Virtue, virtus, (virtut) is, 293
Virtuous, probus, a, um.
Voice, vox, (vōc) is, 293.
Vow, spondere, 395, IV.

W.

Wage (e. g., war), gerere: bellum inferre.
Wagon, carrus, i.
Wait for, expectare.

Walk, ambulāre.
Wall, murus, i; *walls*, mœnia, um.
Wander, vagari, errare.
Want, carere, 348.
Wanting (to be), deesse, 267, b.
War, bellum, i.
Warlike, bellicosus, a, um.
Warn, monere.
Wash, alluere.
Watch, watching, vigilia, æ; *to watch*, vigilare.
Water, aqua, æ.
Wave, fluctus, ñs.
Way, via, æ; *to make* (their) *way*, iter facere.
Wearied, defessus, a, um.
Wear y of, tædet, 579.
Weep, flere.
Well (to be), valere.
West, Occidens.
What (in number)? quotus? *what is the difference?* quid interest?
When, quum (conj.).
Whence, unde (adv.).
Whether, num, 174: utrum.
Where, ubi (adv.).
Which of the two, uter, 194, B. 1.
Whirlwind, turbo, (turbīn) is (m.).
Who, qui, quæ, quod; *who?* quis, quæ, quid?
Whole, omnis, e; universus, a, um; totus, a, um; cunctus, 441.
Why? cār?
Wicked, improbus,*a, um.
Wide, latus, a, um; *widely*, latè; *more widely*, latius.
Wild beast, fera, æ.
Wind, ventus, i.
Willingly, libenter.
Wine, vinum, i.
Wing, ala, æ.
Winter, hyems, (hyem) is, 293; *to winter*, hiemare; *winter-quarters*, hiberna, orum (pl.).
Wisdom, sapientia, æ.

Wise, sapiens, (sapiēt) is, 107, *wisely*, sapienter.
Wish, velle, cupere.
With, cum (prep., abl.).
Without, sine (prep., abl.); *to be without*, carere.
Withstand, resistere, 390.
Wolf, lupus, i.
Woman, femina, æ; mulier, is (f.).
Wonder at, admirari, dep.
Wonderful, mirabilis, e, 104.
Wood (a), sylva, æ.
Word, verbum, i; *word is brought*, nuntiātum est.
Work, opus, (oper) is, 344.
World, mundus, i: orbis terrarum.
Worse, pejus, adv.; *worst*, pessimus, 370.
Worship, colere, adorare.
Worthy, dignus, a, um (with abl.).
Would-that, utinam, 526.
Wound, vulnus, (vulner) is, 344; *to wound*, vulnerare.
Wretched, miser, 77, b.
Write, scribere.
Writer, scriptor, 319.

X.

Xenophon, Xenophon, (Xenophōn) is.

Y.

Year, annus, adv.
Yearly, quotannis, i.
Yes, immo.
Yesterday, heri.
Yet, tamen.
Yoke, jugum, i.
Young-man, juvenis, is (m.): adolescens.
You, vos (sing., tu).
Your, vester, tra, trum, 134.
Youth, juvenis, (juventū) is, 293 *a youth*. See *young man*.

Z:

Zeal, studium, i.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

WHAT is a *monosyllable*? a *dissyllable*? a *polysyllable*? (8.)—What is *inflection*?—What is the inflection of *nouns* called? of *verbs*? (21, 2 R.)—Name the *vowels*: the *liquids*: the *c-sounds*: *p-sounds*: *t-sounds*: *double consonants*: *diphthongs*, (23.)—Repeat the *general rules of quantity*, (24.)—Repeat the *general rules of gender*, (25, a.)

Has the Latin any *article*? (27.)—What is the *stem* of a noun? (30.)—How many *cases* of nouns are there? (31.)—What is the use of the *nominative*? the *vocative*? the *genitive*? (33.)—How many *declensions*?—How distinguished? (34.)—Give *nom.*, *voc.*, and *gen.* endings of 1st decl. (nom. and voc., a *short*; abl., a *long*).—What is the *gender* of 1st decl.? (36, c.)

Where do you put the *unemphatic gen.*? (*After* its noun, 38, a.)—The *emphatic*? (*Before* its noun, 38, b.)

What is the *subject* of a sentence? the *predicate*? (41.)—What is an *active verb*? *transitive*? *intransitive*? (42.)—What does the *infinitive* express? the *indicative*? (43.)—What does the *present tense* express? the *imperfect*? the *future*? (44.)—What is the *infinitive-ending* of 1st conj.?—How do you find the *stem* of a verb? (45.)—Give the 3d *person endings* of the indicative, (46.)—Are the *personal pronouns* necessarily used in Latin? (47, R.)—Where do you put the *subject nominative* in a sentence? (48, II.)

What is the case of the *direct object*? (51.)—Give the *accusative-endings* of 1st decl. (52.)—Rule of position for the *object accusative*? (53, II.)

What does the *dative* express? (54): the *ablative*? (55.)—Give the *case-endings* complete, 1st decl. (618): *quantity* of final syllables (618, R. 1): *gender* (618, R. 2): rule of position for *remote object* (58, II., a): for *preposition and its noun* (58, II., b.)

Case-endings, 2d decl., masc. (61.)—Name the *feminine nouns* of 2d decl. (*alvus*, *cōlus*, *hūmus*, *vannus*).—What nouns have *i* for *vocative-ending*? (62, R. 2.)—When *to* implies *motion*, how do you render it in Latin? (63, 37.)

What nouns of 2d decl. reject the endings *ūs* and *ō*? (64.)—Which of

these retain the *ë* in the oblique cases ? (65, R.)—What case is used with words of *abounding* and *wanting* ? (66, II., a.)

Case-endings, 2d decl., neut. (68.)—Short final syllables in 2d decl. (*üs, ë, üm, ä*).—Long final syllables (*i, ö, is, ös*).—What is the infinitive-ending of verbs, 2d conj. ? (70.)—Give the 3d person endings, indic. present: imperfect: future, (71.)

Give the endings of adjectives of Class I. (76.)—What adjectives reject the endings *üs* and *ë* ? (77.)—Where do you put the unemphatic adjective in a sentence ? (78, II., a.)—Where do you put the adjective belonging to a noun which governs another in the genitive ? (*Before* the genitive, 78 II., b.)

Give the 3d pers. endings of *esse*, indic. (79): rule of syntax for predicate noun (80, a): for predicate adjective, (81, b.)

Infinitive-ending, 3d conj. (83.)—Indic., 3d pers. endings, present: imperfect: future, (84.)—Infinitive-ending, 4th conj. (86.)—Indic., 3d pers., present: imperfect: future, (87.)—Where do you put the adjective belonging to a noun governed by a preposition ? (89, II.)

What syllable forms the 3d pers. *pass.* ending, indic. ? (90.)—In putting an active sentence into the passive form, what changes occur ? (93, II.)—When is the preposition omitted ? (93, II., R.)

Case-endings, 3d decl. (98.)—What is the gender of most nouns which add *s* to form the nom. ? (99.)—Decline *sermo: urbs: lex*.

What is the gender of nouns in *a, ar, e* ? (102, R. 2.)—Endings of adjectives of 2d class ? (104.)—Decline *brëvis*. (105.)—What adjectives take *ë* instead of *i* in abl. ? (105, R. 2.)—What case is used with adjectives of *advantage* or *disadvantage*? of *likeness* or *unlikeness* ? (106, II., c.)

What adjectives form Class III. ? (107.)—Decline *fëlix*. (108.)—Which ending do *participles* in *ns* take in *abl. sing.*, *ë* or *i* ? (108, R. 1, b.)

What nouns belong to 4th decl. ? (110.)—Give the case-endings, masc. (111): neut. (111): quantity of final syllables, 4th decl. (621, R. 1): fem. nouns of 4th decl. (621, R. 2.)—What nouns take *übüs* in *abl. plur.* ? (621, R. 3.)—Decline *döms*, (112, 3.)—What does *dömi* mean ? (112, 4.)—Rule of syntax for verbs compounded with *trans*, (113, II., a.)—Is *trans* ever repeated ?

What nouns belong to 5th decl. ? (114.)—Case-endings, 5th decl. ? (116.)—When is the *e* in *ei long* ? when *short* ? (116, R.)—What nouns of 5th

decl. have plur. complete ? (117, R.)—Time *when* is put in what case ? (118, II, c.)

Decline ego, (120.)—What is the *adj. personal* pron. of 1st pers. sing. ? of 1st pers. plur. ? (122.)—Give 1st pers. endings, 1st conj., act. indic. *present* : *imperfect* : *future*.—Also, pass. *present* : *imperfect* : *future*. (123.)—What case is used with *esse* to denote the possessor ? (125, II, a.)—Is *cum* prefixed or suffixed to the personal pronouns ? (125, II, b.)

What are the 1st person endings, act. and pass., for 2d conj., indic. present ? imperfect ? future ? (126.)—The same for 3d conj. (127.)—Fourth, (128.)

Decline tu, (130.)—What are the 2d pers. endings, 1st conj., act. and pass., indic. present ? imperfect ? future ? (131.)—The same for 2d conj. (133.)—What are the *possessive* pronouns of 2d pers. ? (134.)—How is *ne* used ? (135, II, a.)—Where is *canis* placed in a sentence ? (135, II, b.)

What are the 2d pers. endings of verbs, 3d conj., act. and pass., indic. pres. ? imperfect ? future ? (136.)—The same for 4th conj. (137.)

Decline the *reflexive* pronoun *se*, (142.)—What is the *adjective personal* pronoun of 3d pers. ? (143.)—What case does *imperare* govern ? (147.)

Why are *demonstrative* pronouns so called ? (149.)—Decline *is*, *ei*, *id*, (150.)—Inflect *esse*, pres., imperf., and fut. indic. (151.)—Distinguish *suus* and *eius*, (153.)—What is the demonstrative of the 1st person ? (156) : of 2d ? (157) : of 3d ? (158.)

Decline *qui*, (164.)—Syntax of the relative, (167, b.)

Decline *quis*, (170.)—How is the answer *yes* given ? (173.)—What answer does *num* expect ? (175, b.)

Name the seven *indefinite* pronouns, (178.)—How are indef. pronouns used with a genitive ? (180, a.)

Name the *correlative* pronouns, (184.)—Give the Latin for *much gold* (186, a) : for *much money* (186, a).—Distinguish *tantum* and *tantus*. (186, obs.)

Repeat the first twelve numerals in all four classes, (189.)—Give the rule for accus. of *time* or *space*, (191.)

Decline *unus*, *duo*, and *tres*, (194.)—What words are declined like *unus* ? (194, R. 1.)—Is the penult of *unus* *long* or *short* ?

Inflect *capere* in pres., imperf., and fut. indic. (199.)

What are *deponent* verbs? (206.)—How are they conjugated? (Ans., like passives.)

How do you form *derivative adverbs* from adjectives of Class I. ? (215, 1): of Class II. ? (215, 2.)—What is the general *position* of the adverb in a sentence? (218, a.)—Where is *ferè* placed? (218, b.)—How is *nequidem* used? (218, c.)

What prepositions govern the accus. or ablat. ? (223.)—Give the rule of *apposition*, (225, a.)

Give the person-endings, *pres. indic. act.*: tense-stem: connecting-vowel: 1st conj.: 2d: 3d: 4th, (234.)

Imperfect tense, person-endings: tense-stem, four conj's.: connecting-vowel, (237.)—*Future* tense, 1st and 2d conj., person-endings: tense-stems: connecting-vowels (238): 3d and 4th conj., fut., person-ending: tense-stem: connecting-vowel, (240.)

Passive-endings, (243.)—Apparent irregularities, viz., 1st pers. pres. indic.: 3d conj., 2d pers. sing. pres.: 1st and 2d conj., fut., 2d pers. sing. (244.)

Rules of Quantity.—Monosyllables ending in a vowel (247, a.): exceptions.—Monosyllables ending in a consonant: exceptions, (247, b.)—Quantity of *a* final (248): *e* final (249): of *i* final (250): of *o* final (251): of *u* final, (252.)—Final syllables ending in a consonant, (253.)—Final *as*, *es*, *os*: exceptions, (254.)—Final *is* and *us*: exceptions, (255.)—Increase of nouns (257): of verbs, (258.)—Penults of perf. tense, (259.)—*Adjectives* in *idus*, *icus*: in *inus*: in *ilis*, *bilis*, (260.)

What are the tenses for action *completed*? (262): their endings? (263.)—Give the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf. of *esse*, (264.)—Distinguish perf. pres. from perf. aorist, (265.)—What case do the compounds of *esse* with prepositions govern? (267, b.)

How is perf. stem formed in most verbs of 1st conj. ? of 2d ? of 4th ? (270.)—Give perf. of *amare*, *monere*, *audire*, (271.)

How is perf. stem formed of most verbs of 3d conj. ? (276.)—Euphonic rules: (1) *k*-sound before *s*: (2) *b* before *s*: (3) *t*-sound before *s*, (277.)—What answer does *nonne* expect? (280.)—How is the pluperf. formed? the fut. perf. ? (283.)

Name the six classes of nouns of 3d decl. (291.)—Euphonic rules, (292.)
 —How do you express “on the top of the mountain” in Latin? (297.)

Decline *Jupiter*: *Bos*: *Respublica*: *Jusjurandum*, (351.)

Repeat the rules of gender, 3d decl., from nominative formation, with the exceptions under each, (355.)

Comparison of Adjectives.—What is the *compar.* ending? (357.)—If the stem ends in a vowel, how is the *compar.* formed? (357, R.)—Syntax of *compar.*, when *quam* is omitted, (360, c.)

Superl. ending, (363.)—Stems in *er* add what ending? (364.)—Stems in *l*, what ending? (365.)—What case is used with superlatives? (367, b.)

Compare *bonus*, *malus*, *magnus*, *multus*, *parvus*, *senex*, *juvenis*, *exterus*, *inferus*, *superus*, *posterus*, (370.)—Comp. *dives* *benevolus*.

Are adverbs compared?—How? (376.)

What is the supine? (377.)—Form supine-stem, 1st conj.: 2d: 3d: 4th, (378.)—How is supine in *am* used? (379.)—How is supine in *u* used? (380.)—Name the supines in *u* which are in common use, (381.)—What case answers the question *whither*? (383.)

What are the four ways of forming perf. stem, 1st conj.? (387.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (387.)—How do you form perf., pluperf., or fut. perf. of these verbs? (388.)

What are the five ways of forming the perf. stem, 2d conj.? (394.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (395.)—What rules of euphony are to be applied here? (395, III., a, b, c.)

Name the six ways of forming the perf. stem, 3d conj. (400.)—What rules of euphony are to be applied in forming perf. stems of verbs of 1st class? (401, 1, &c.)

How do verbs of 2d class form perf. stem? (406): verbs of 3d class?—In what sense is *ad* often used by Cæsar? (408, c.)

How do verbs of 4th class form perf. stem? (411.)—What vowel changes must be observed here? (411, a, b, c.)—Give the rule for verbs of demanding (413, 1): for verbs of sparing (413, 4.)—What is the perf. of *adërë*? of *candërë*? (413, ~~EP~~.)

How do verbs of 5th class form perf. stem? (416.)—Form the perf. stems of the 10 verbs in (416, c).—What is said of the *prænomēn*? (418, c.)

How do verbs of 6th class form perf. stem? (421.)—What cases are used after *distribuere*? (423, c.)

What are the *five* ways of forming the perf. stem in 4th conj.? (426.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (427.)—How is the *manner* of an action expressed in Latin? (428, a.)

How are the passive tenses for completed action formed? (431.)—How is the perf. part. formed? (432, b.)—How is it inflected? (432, a.)—Inflect the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf. pass. of *amare*, (433.)—How is the perf. pass. part. sometimes used with *est*? (435, c.)

How many participles are there in Latin, act. and pass.? (438.)—Give the endings of the present part. act. in the four conjugations, (439, a.)—How is it declined? (440.)—Has the Latin any *active* part. to express *complete* action? (None, excepting in *deponent* verbs, 440, a, b.)—What is the use of the part. in discourse? (442, c.)—Give the words in which cannot stand first in a clause or sentence, (442, c.)

How is the fut. part. act. formed? (445.)—Inflect the periphrastic pres., past, and fut. of *amare*, (446.)—Give the rule for the use of the fut. part. with verbs of motion, (448.)

How is the perf. pass. part. formed? (451, a.)—How is it inflected? (451, b.)—How do *deponent* verbs use the perf. part. form? (451, c.)—What is the case of the place *where*? (453, a): of the place *whence*? (453, b): of the place *whither*? (453, c.)

When is the part. used in the ablative with a noun? (456.)—How is the want of a perf. act. part. supplied in Latin? (457.)—Can a noun be used in the ablative absolute with another noun? (Yes: 458.)

How does the infin. express action? (465.)—Give the infin. forms, act and pass., in all the conjugations, (466.)—Give the rule for the complementary infin. (468, a.)

Name the classes of verbs which take after them the accus. and infin. (471.)—Give the method of changing English sentences commencing with *that* into the Latin accus. and infin. (472, 1, 2, 3.)

Give the formation of the perf. infin. pass. (478.)—When the accus. is used with this infin., with what does its part. agree? (478.)

How is the infin. fut. act. formed? (482): the infin. fut. pass.? (483.)

Under what form does the gerund express the action of the verb ? (487 a.)—How is the gerund-stem formed ? (487, b.)—How the *cases* of the gerund ? (487, c.)—What rules apply to the cases of the infin. and gerund ? (489.)—Is the infin. or the accus. ger. used with a preposition ? (489, R.)—What case does the ger. govern ? (490.)

How does the gerundive express the action of a verb ? (495, a.)—How are its cases formed ? (495, b.)—How is it used ? (496.)—When *must* the gerundive be used instead of the gerund ?—When *may* it be so used ? (496, R.)—After what verbs does the gerundive express a purpose or object ? (498, R.)

What does the gerundive in the nom. neut. with *esse* express ? (501, a.)—What does it express when used with *esse* as a *verbal adjective* ? (502.)—What is the case of the person in both these constructions ? (The dative.)

How does *imper.* mood express the action of the verb ? (507.)—What is *not* with the imper. ? (510, Rule.)

When is a sentence compound ? (513, a.)—Give an example of a principal sentence : of a subordinate sentence, (513, c.)—Give *some* of the classes of subordinate sentences, (514, a, &c.)

Repeat the copulative conjunctions, (515.)—How are *et* and *que* used ? (517, a) : *ac* ? (517, b.)—What does *et* followed by another *et* mean ? (517, c.)—What is the Latin for *again and again* ? for *not only—but also* ? (517, d.)

Name the disjunctive conjunctions, (519.)—What does *aut* indicate ? *vel* ? (519, R. 1 and 2.)—How is *ve* used ? (519, R. 3.)—What do these conj. mean when repeated ? (519, R. 4.)—Give the adversatives, (520.)—What does *sed* express ? (522, a) : *autem* ? (522, b.)

How does the subjunc. mood express affirmation ? (524.)—Inflect subjunc. pres. of *esse*, (525.)—Inflect subjunc. pres. act. and pass. of *amārē*, *mōnērē*, *rēgērē*, *audīre*, (526, b.)—How may a *wish* be expressed in Latin ? (528, a.)—How may a *softened command* be expressed ? (528, b.)—How do you express a direct question when *doubt* is implied ? (528, c.)

Inflect subjunc. perf. of *esse*, (531.)—How do regular verbs form subjunc. perf. act. ? (532, 1) : subjunc. perf. pass. ? (532, 2.)—Inflect the subjunc. perf. act. and pass. of *amārē*, *mōnērē*, *rēgērē*, *audīre*, (532, 3.)—How is the subjunc. perf. used imperatively ? (534, a.)—How may a *supposed* case be expressed ? (534, b.)—How may a *softened assertion* be expressed ? (534, c.)—What interrogative sentences take the subjunc. ? (534, c.)

How is the subjunc. imperf. formed ? (537.)—Repeat the paradigm (538.)—How is the subjunc. pluperf. act. and pass. formed ? (539, *a* and *b*.)—Give the paradigm, (539, *c*.)—Repeat the conditional conjunctions, (540, *a*.)—What is a conditional sentence ? (540, *b*.)—In conditional sentences how do you express a *real* condition ? a *possible* condition ? an *unreal* or *impossible* in present time ? an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in past time ? (542, *b*, Rule.)—Can the perf. or pluperf. indic. ever be used with *si* ? (No.)

Inflect *posse* in subjunc. pres. : imperf. : perf. : pluperf. (545.)—State the composition of *posse*.—Repeat the final conjunctions, (546.)—How is purpose or aim expressed in English ? how in Latin ? (548, *a*.)—How is an object to be provided against introduced in English ? how in Latin ? (548, *b*.)—Can a purpose or aim be expressed in Latin by an infin. ? (No.)

Give the primary tenses of the Latin verb : the historical, (551, 2, *a*, *b*.)—What is the rule for the succession of tenses ? (551, 3.)—How is a *result* expressed in English ? how in Latin ? (553, *a*.)—What is the rule for ut signifying *that* ? (553, *b*.)

How is the want of a fut. subjunc. supplied in Latin ? (556.)—Give the paradigm, periph. conj. subjunc. (556.)—When does *quo* express a purpose instead of *ut* ? (558, *a*.)—In what sense is *quin* used ? (1) after negative sentences ? (2) after *non dubito*, &c. ? (558, *b*.)—When is *quominus* used in preference to *ne* ? (558, *c*.)

What are the two uses of *quum* ? (561.)—What is the first use called ? the second ? (561.)—When is *quum* followed by the indic. ? (563, *a*.)—When is *quum* *temporal* followed by the imperf. or pluperf. subjunc. ? (563, *b*.)—What is the rule for *quum* causal ? (563, *c*.)

When is the rel. pronoun followed by the subjunc. ? (566.)—Give the rule for the use of subjunc. in a rel. sentence, (568, *d*.)—Is the rel. to express a purpose very common in Cæsar ? (Yes.)

In what two ways may we relate the words of another ? (571.)—What is each method called ? (571.)—What kinds of sentences are introduced in *oratio obliqua* ? (Either principal or subordinate.)—What mood is used in principal sentences in *oratio obliqua* ? (574, *a*.) : in subordinate sentences ? (574, *b*.)

What are impersonal verbs ? (577.)—Give the classes of impersonals (578.)—What impersonals are followed by the accus. of the person and the gen. of the cause ? (579, *a*.)

Give the rule for *oportet* and *decet* (584, a): for *placet* (584, b).
for *licet* and *libet* (584, c): for *interest* and *refert* (584, d).

State the composition of *possum*, and repeat the paradigm, (587.)

Give the composition of *nolo* and *maio*, and repeat the paradigm (592.)—Give the three rules for *velle*, *nolle*, and *maie*, in (594).

Repeat the paradigm of irregular forms of *ferre*, (596.)—How are the remaining tenses formed? (596, b.)—What is the meaning of *ferunt*? (598, b.)

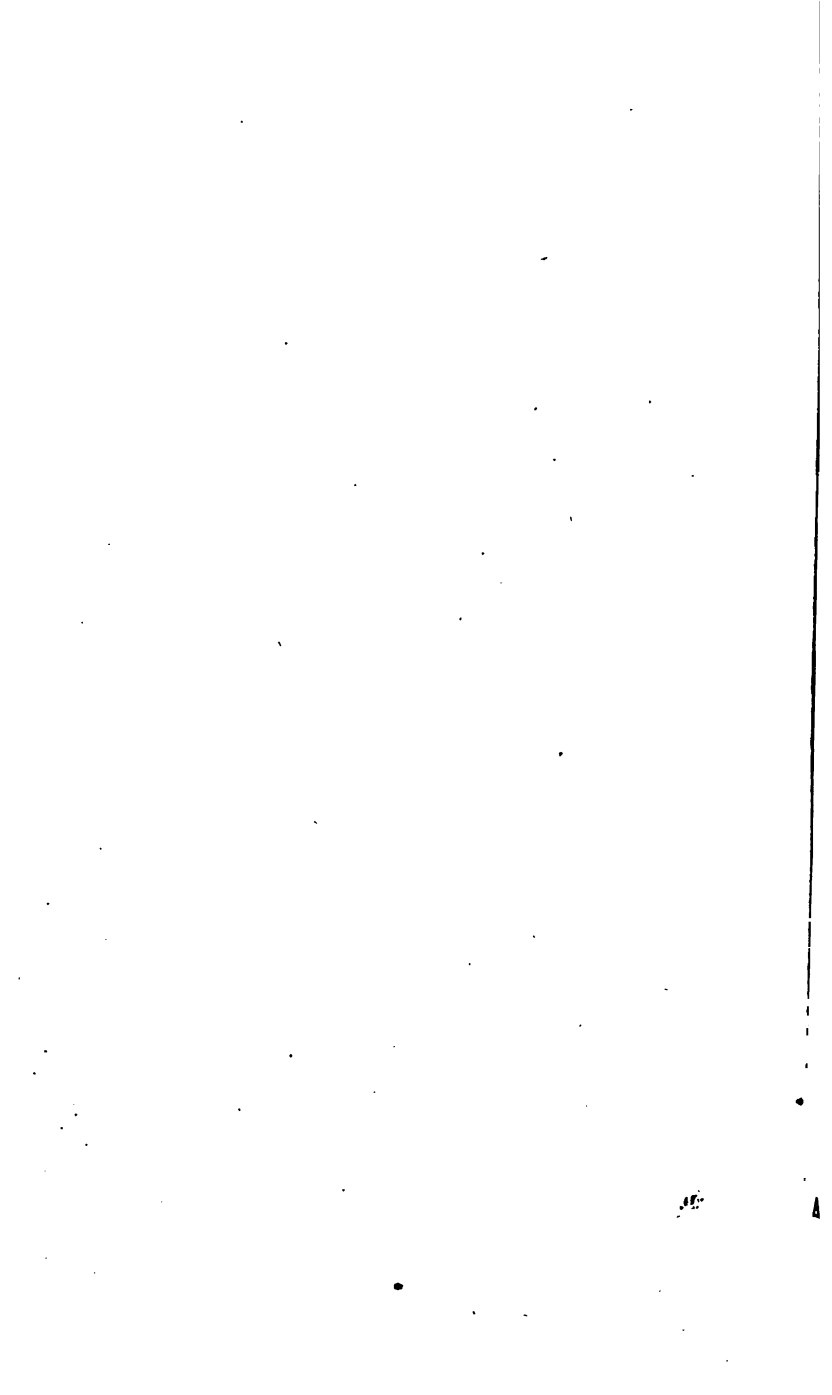
Of what verb does *fieri* form the pass.? (600.)—How are the tenses formed? (600.)—Give the paradigm.—What is the quantity of *i* in *fieri*? (600, R.)—What forms of *edere* are similar to those of *esse*? (601.)—Give the paradigm.—What is the quantity of *es*, from *esse*? of *es*, from *edere*? (601, R.)

What conjugation does *ire* follow? (605.)—Give the paradigm.—What is said of the compounds? (605, 1, 2.)—How are *queo* and *nequeo* conjugated? (606.)

Inflect *ao* (609): *inquam* (610): *novi* (611).—How do you distinguish between the use of *ao* and of *inquam*? (613, b, )—What form of *cœpi* is used with a pass. infin.? (613, c )

M M

THE END



BOOKS FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES,

AT GREATLY REDUCED PRICES,

PUBLISHED BY

HARPER & BROTHERS, NEW YORK.

Abbott's Illustrated Histories.

Suitable for Reading Books in Schools. Illuminated Title-pages and numerous Engravings. 16mo, Muslin, 60 cents each; Muslin, gilt edges, 75 cents each.

Cleopatra.—Josephine.—Madame Roland.—Xerxes.—Cyrus.—Darius.—Alexander.—Hannibal.—Julius Cæsar.—Alfred.—William the Conqueror.—Queen Elizabeth.—Mary Queen of Scots.—Charles I.—Charles II.—Maria Antoinette.—Romulus.—Pyrrhus.—Nero.

Abercrombie on the Intellectual Powers.

Essay on the Intellectual Powers. Inquiries concerning the Intellectual Powers and the Investigation of Truth. With Questions. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents; Half Bound, 50 cents.

Abercrombie on the Moral Feelings.

The Philosophy of the Moral Feelings. With Questions. 18mo, Muslin, 40 cents; Half Bound, 50 cents.

Alison's Essay on Taste.

Essay on the Nature and Principles of Taste. With Corrections and Improvements, by ABRAHAM MILLA. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Andrews's Latin-English Lexicon.

Founded on the larger German-Latin Lexicon of Dr. WILLIAM FREUND. With Additions and Corrections from the Lexicons of Gesner, Facciolati, Scheller, Georges, &c. Royal 8vo, Sheep, \$5 00.

Anthony's Classical Dictionary.

Containing an Account of the Principal Proper Names mentioned in Ancient Authors, and intended to elucidate all the important Points connected with the Geography, History, Biography, Mythology, and Fine Arts of the Greeks and Romans, together with an Account of the Coins, Weights, and Measures of the Ancients, with Tabular Values of the same. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra, \$4 00.

Anton's Latin-English Dictionary.

A Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary, for the use of Schools. Chiefly from the Lexicons of Freund, Georges, and Kaltschmidt. Small 4to, Sheep, \$2 00.

Antho'n's Classical Series.

Latin Lessons. Latin Grammar, Part I: Containing the most important Parts of the Grammar of the Latin Language, together with appropriate Exercises in the Translating and Writing of Latin. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Latin Prose Composition. Latin Grammar, Part II. An Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, with a complete Course of Exercises, illustrative of all the important Principles of Latin Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

A KEY to the Above is published, which may be obtained by Teachers. 12mo, Half Sheep, 50 cents.

Zumpt's Latin Grammar. From the ninth Edition of the Original, adapted to the use of English Students. By LEONHARD SCHMITZ, Ph.D. Corrected and enlarged. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

An ABBRIDGMENT of the Above. 12mo, Sheep extra, 50 cents.

Latin Prosody and Metre. From the best Authorities, Ancient and Modern. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Latin Versification. In a Series of Progressive Exercises, including Specimens of Translation from English and German Poetry into Latin Verse. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

A KEY to the Above is published, which may be obtained by Teachers. 12mo, Half Sheep, 50 cents.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War, and the First Book of the Greek Paraphrase; with English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, Plans of Battles, Sieges, &c., and Historical, Geographical, and Archæological Indexes. Map, Portrait, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

The Æneid of Virgil. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, a Metrical Clavis, and an Historical, Geographical, and Mythological Index. Portrait and many Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 25.

Eclogues and Georgics of Virgil. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 25.

Sallust's Jugurthine War and Conspiracy of Catiline. With an English Commentary, and Geographical and Historical Indexes. New Edition, corrected and enlarged. Portrait. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

The Works of Horace. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. A new Edition, corrected and enlarged, with Excursions relative to the Vines and Vineyards of the Ancients; a Life of Horace, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 25.

Cicero Select Orations. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, and Historical, Geographical, and Legal Indexes. An improved Edition. Portrait. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Antho's Classical Series, continued.

Cicero de Senectute, De Amicitia, and Paradoxa, and the life of Atticus by Nepos. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Cicero's Tusculan Disputations. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

The Germania and Agricola, and also Selections from the Annals, of Tacitus. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Cornelius Nepos. Cornelii Nepotis Vitæ Imperatorum Excellentium. With English Notes, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Terence. Terentii Comædiæ, with English Notes, Metrical Tables, and an Essay on the Scanning of Terence, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra. (*In press.*)

First Greek Lessons. Containing the most important Parts of the Grammar of the Greek Language, together with appropriate Exercises in the Translating and Writing of Greek; for the use of Beginners. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Greek Prose Composition. Greek Lessons, Part II: An Introduction to Greek Prose Composition, with a complete Course of Exercises illustrative of all the important Principles of Greek Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Grammar of the Greek Language. For the use of Schools and Colleges. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

A New Greek Grammar. From the German of Kühner, Matthiæ, Buttmann, Rost, and Thiersch; to which are appended Remarks on the Pronunciation of the Greek Language, and Chronological Tables explanatory of the same. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Greek Prosody and Metre. For the use of Schools and Colleges; together with the Choral Scanning of the Prometheus Vincetus of Æschylus, and Œdipus Tyrannus of Sophocles, to which are appended Remarks on the Indo-Germanic Analogies. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

A Greek Reader. Principally from the German of Jacobs. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, a Metrical Index to Homer and Anacreon, and a copious Lexicon. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Homer. The First Six Books of Homer's Iliad, to which are appended English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, a Metrical Index, and Homeric Glossary. New and enlarged Edition. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 25.

The Anabasis of Xenophon. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, a Map arranged according to the latest and best Authorities, and a Plan of the Battle of Cunaxa. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 25.

Antho'n's Classical Series, continued.

Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates. From the Text of Kühner. With Explanatory Notes, &c., by D. B. HICKIE, LL.D. First American Edition, corrected and enlarged. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Manual of Roman Antiquities. From the most recent German Works. With a Description of the City of Rome, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra, 87½ cents.

Manual of Greek Literature. With a Critical History of the Greek Language. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Manual of Greek Antiquities. From the best and most recent Sources. 12mo, Sheep extra, 87½ cents.

Manual of Greek and Roman Mythology. 12mo, Sheep extra.

Latin Syntax. Latin Lessons, Part II. Containing Latin Syntax, with Reading Lessons, and Exercises in double translation, on the basis of Kühner's. 12mo, Sheep extra. (Uniform with Latin Lessons, Part I.)

Ovid. Selections from the Metamorphoses of Ovid. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. 12mo. (*In press.*)

Euripides. The Hecuba, Hippolytus, Medea, and Bacchæ of Euripides. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. 12mo. (*In press.*)

Juvenal. The Satires of Juvenal. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. (*In press.*)

Bigelow on the Useful Arts,

considered in Connection with the Applications of Science. With numerous Engravings. •2 vols. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 50.

Boucharlat's Mechanics.

An Elementary Treatise on Mechanics. Translated from the French, with Additions and Emendations, by Prof. EDWARD H. COURTENAY. Plates. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$2 25.

Boyd's Eclectic Moral Philosophy;

prepared for Literary Institutions and general Use. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Boyd's Rhetoric and Criticism.

Elements of Rhetoric and Literary Criticism, with copious Practical Exercises and Examples. Including, also, a succinct History of the English Language, and of British and American Literature, from the earliest to the present Times. On the Basis of the recent Works of ALEXANDER REID and R. CUNNELL; with large Additions from other Sources. 12mo, Half Bound, 50 cents.

Brande's Encyclopedia.

A Dictionary of Science, Literature, and Art; comprising the History, Description, and Scientific Principles of every Branch of Human Knowledge; with the Derivation and Definition of all the Terms in general use. Illustrated by numerous Engravings on Wood. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$4 00.

Burke on the Sublime and Beautiful.

Essay on the Sublime and Beautiful. A Philosophical Inquiry into the Origin of our Ideas of the Sublime and the Beautiful. With an Introductory Discourse concerning Taste. Edited by ABRAHAM MILLS. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Buttmann's Greek Grammar.

A Greek Grammar, for the use of High Schools and Universities. Revised and enlarged by ALEXANDER BUTTMANN. Translated from the 18th German Edition, by EDWARD ROBINSON, D.D., LL.D. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$2 00.

Campbell's Philosophy of Rhetoric.

Revised Edition. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 25.

Cicero's Orator.

Cicero's Three Dialogues on the Orator. Translated into English, by W. GUTHRIE. Revised and Corrected, with Notes. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents.

Clark's Elements of Algebra.

Embracing, also, the Theory and Application of Logarithms; together with an Appendix, containing Infinite Series, the General Theory of Equations, and the most approved Methods of resolving the higher Equations. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Comte's Philosophy of Mathematics.

Translated from the Cours de Philosophie Positive, by W. M. GILLESPIE, A.M. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 25.

Crabb's Synonyms.

English Synonyms explained. With copious Illustrations and Explanations, drawn from the best Writers. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$2 00.

Dickens's Child's History of England.

2 vols. or 1, 16mo, Muslin, \$1 00.

Docharty's Arithmetic.

12mo, Sheep extra. (*In press.*)

Docharty's Institutes of Algebra.

Being the First Part of a Course of Mathematics, designed for the use of Schools, Academies, and Colleges. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Draper's Text-book on Chemistry,

for the use of Schools and Colleges. Carefully revised, with Additions. With 300 Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep, 75 cents.

Draper's Text-book on Natural Philosophy,

for the use of Schools and Colleges. Containing the most recent Discoveries and Facts, compiled from the best Authorities. With nearly 400 Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Draper's Chemical Organization of Plants.

A Treatise on the Forces which produce the Organization of Plants. With an Appendix, containing several Memoirs on Capillary Attraction, Electricity, and the Chemical Action of Light. Engravings. 4to, Muslin, \$2 50.

Duff's Book-keeping.

The North American Accountant: embracing Single and Double Entry Book-keeping, practically adapted to the Inland and Maritime Commerce of the United States. Exemplifying all Modern Improvements in the Science, with a new and certain Method of detecting Errors and proving the Ledger. Embracing an improved Plan of Instruction. Complete in Two Parts. 8vo, School Edition, Half Sheep, 75 cents; Mercantile Edition, Muslin, \$1 50.

Findlay's Classical Atlas,

to Illustrate Ancient Geography. Comprised in 25 Maps, showing the various Divisions of the World as known to the Ancients. With an Index of the Ancient and Modern Names. 8vo, Half Bound, \$3 25.

Fowler's English Language,

in its Elements and Forms. With a History of its Origin and Development, and a full Grammar. Designed for use in Colleges and Schools. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 50; Sheep extra, \$1 75.

Goldsmith's History of Greece.

Abridged by the Author. Edited by the Author of "American Popular Lessons." 18mo, Half Sheep, 45 cents.

Goldsmith's History of Rome.

Abridged by the Author. Edited by H. W. HERBERT. 18mo, Half Sheep, 45 cents.

Gray's and Adams's Elements of Geology.

Engravings. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Gray's Elements of Natural Philosophy.

Designed as a Text-book for Academies, High Schools, and Colleges. Illustrated by 360 Wood-cuts. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Griscom's Animal Mechanism

and Physiology; being a plain and familiar Exposition of the Structure and Functions of the Human System. Designed for Families and Schools. Engravings. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents; Half Sheep, 50 cents.

Hackley's Algebra.

A Treatise on Algebra. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$1 50. A School and College Edition, 8vo, Muslin, \$1 00.

Hackley's Geometry.

An Elementary Course of Geometry, for the use of Schools and Colleges. 8vo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Hale's History of the United States,

from their first Settlement as Colonies to the Close of the Administration of Mr. Madison in 1817. 2 vols. 18mo, Muslin, 90 cents.

Harper's Statistical Gazetteer of the World,

particularly describing the United States of America, Canada, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia. By J. CALVIN SMITH. Illustrated by Seven Maps. 8vo, \$5 00.

Harper's Map of the United States and Canada.

Showing the Canals, Rail-roads, and principal Stage Routes. By SAMUEL BREESE, A.M. On Rollers, States traced, \$2 00; States colored, \$2 00; States colored and bordered, \$2 25; Counties colored, \$2 50.

Harper's New York Class-book.

Comprising Outlines of the Geography and History of New York; Biographical Notices of Eminent Individuals; Sketches of Scenery and Natural History; Accounts of Public Institutions. Arranged as a Reading-book for Schools. By WILLIAM RUSSELL. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Harrison's Latin Grammar.

An Exposition of some of the Laws of the Latin Grammar. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Haswell's Engineering.

Engineers' and Mechanics' Pocket-book, containing United States and Foreign Weights and Measures; Tables of Areas and Circumferences of Circles, Circular Segments, and Zones of a Circle; Squares and Cubes, Square and Cube Roots; Lengths of Circular and Semi-elliptic Arcs; and Rules of Arithmetic. Mensuration of Surfaces and Solids; the Mechanical Powers; Geometry, Trigonometry, Gravity, Strength of Materials, Water Wheels, Hydraulics, Hydrostatics, Pneumatics, Statics, Dynamics, Gunnery, Heat, Winding Engines, Tonnage, Shot, Shells, &c. Steam and the Steam Engine; Combustion, Water, Gunpowder, Cables and Anchors, Fuel, Air, Guns, &c., &c. Tables of the Weights of Metals, Pipes, &c. Miscellaneous Notes, Dimensions of Steamers, Mills, Motion of Bodies in Fluids, Orthography of Technical Terms, &c., &c. Eighth Edition and Eighteenth Thousand. With Additions. 12mo, Pocket-book form, \$1 25.

Hazen's Popular Technology;

or, Professions and Trades. Illustrated by 81 Engravings. 18mo, Half Sheep, 75 cents; 2 vols., Muslin, 90 cents.

Henry's History of Philosophy.

Epitome of the History of Philosophy. Being the Work adopted by the University of France for Instruction in the Colleges and High Schools. Translated from the French, with Additions, and a Continuation of the History. 2 vols. 18mo, Muslin, 90 cents.

Herschel's Natural Philosophy.

A Preliminary Discourse on the Study of Natural Philosophy. 12mo, Muslin, 60 cents.

Kane's Elements of Chemistry;

including the most recent Discoveries, and Applications of the Science to Medicine and Pharmacy, and to the Arts. Edited by JOHN W. DRAPER, M.D. With about 250 Woodcuts. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 50; Sheep extra, \$1 75.

Keightley's History of England,

from the earliest Period to 1839. With Notes, &c., by an American. 5 vols. 18mo, Muslin, \$2 25.

Lee's Elements of Geology,

for Popular Use; containing a Description of the Geological Formations and Mineral Resources of the United States. Engravings. 18mo, Half Sheep, 50 cents.

Lewis's Platonic Theology.

Plato contra Atheos. Plato against the Atheists; or, the Tenth Book of the Dialogue on Laws, accompanied with Critical Notes, and followed by extended Dissertations on some of the main Points of the Platonic Philosophy and Theology, especially as compared with the Holy Scriptures. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 50.

Liddell and Scott's Greek-English Lexicon,

based on the German Work of FRANCIS PASSOW. With Corrections and Additions, and the Insertion, in Alphabetical Order, of the Proper Names occurring in the principal Greek Authors, by HENRY DRISLER, M.A. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra, \$5 00.

Loomis's Mathematical Series.

Elements of Algebra. For the use of Beginners. 12mo, Sheep extra, 62½ cents.

Treatise on Algebra. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Elements of Geometry and Conic Sections. 8vo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Introduction to Practical Astronomy. 8vo, Sheep extra. (*In press.*)

The Recent Progress of Astronomy, especially in the United States. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00.

Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Loomis's Mathematical Series, continued.

Tables of Logarithms of Numbers, and of Sines and Tangents for every Ten Seconds of the Quadrant. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

 The *Trigonometry and Tables*, bound together, may be had for \$1 50.

Analytical Geometry and Calculus. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$1 50.

Lowry's Universal Atlas.

Constructed and Engraved from the most recent Authorities. Quarto, Half Roan, \$6 00.

Mahan's System of Intellectual Philosophy.

12mo, Muslin, 90 cents.

Mrs. Markham's History of France,

from the Conquest of Gaul by Julius Cæsar to the Reign of Louis Philippe. With Conversations at the End of each Chapter. For the use of Young Persons. Edited by JACOB ABBOTT. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00.

Maury's Principles of Eloquence.

With an Introduction, by Bishop POTTER. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents.

McClintock's Classical Series.

A First Book in Latin. Containing Grammar Exercises, and Vocabularies, on the Method of constant Imitation and Repetition. With Summaries of Etymology and Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

A Second Book in Latin. Containing Syntax, and Reading Lessons selected from Cæsar and Cicero, with Imitative Exercises, Notes, and a full Vocabulary. Forming a sufficient Latin Reader. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

A First Book in Greek. Containing a full View of the Forms of Words, with Vocabularies and copious Exercises, on the Method of constant Imitation and Repetition. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

A Second Book in Greek. Containing a Syntax, with Reading Lessons in Prose; Prosody, and Reading Lessons in Verse. Forming a sufficient Greek Reader. With Notes and copious Vocabulary. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

MoQueen's The Orator's Touchstone;

or, Eloquence Simplified. Embracing a comprehensive System of Instruction for the Improvement of the Voice, and for advancement in the general Art of Public Speaking. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Mill's Logic,

Ratiocinative and Inductive; being a connected View of the Principles of Evidence and the Methods of Scientific Investigation. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 50.

dbl

2

4



2.

3.



